OWNER'S MANUAL

Operation
Maintenance
Specifications

All information in this Owner's Manual is current at the time of publication. However, Genesis Branded Vehicle reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement may be carried out.

This manual applies to all models of this vehicle and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment.
As a result, you may find material in this manual that does not apply to your specific vehicle.

Please note that some models are equipped with Right-Hand Drive (RHD). The explanations and illustrations for some operations in RHD models are opposite of those written in this manual.

CAUTION: MODIFICATIONS TO YOUR GENESIS BRANDED VEHICLE

Your Genesis Branded Vehicle should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your Genesis Branded Vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle. Certain modifications may also be in violation of regulations established by the Department of Transportation and other government agencies in your country.

TWO-WAY RADIO OR CELLULAR TELEPHONE INSTALLATION

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic fuel injection and other electronic components. It is possible for an improperly installed/adjusted two-way radio or cellular telephone to adversely affect electronic systems. For this reason, we recommend that you carefully follow the radio manufacturer's instructions or consult your authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for precautionary measures or special instructions if you choose to install one of these devices.

WARNING! (IF EQUIPPED)

The vehicle is equipped with a device of the system Pan-european eCall which calls emergency services.Any self-or unauthorized interference in the system Pan-european eCall, in vehicle systems and its components, installing of equipment which is not recommended by vehicle manufacturer and/ or in authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products can cause incorrect operation (of the device of) the system Pan-european eCall, making erroneous calls, causing failure of the device (in cars) in case of traffic accident or other accidents, when you need emergency care.

This may be dangerous and threaten your life!

SAFETY AND VEHICLE DAMAGE WARNING

This manual includes information titled as DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION and NOTICE.

These titles indicate the following:

DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.

Table of contents

Foreword / Electric vehicle system overview	1
Vehicle information	2
Safety system	3
Instrument cluster	4
Convenience features	5
Driving your vehicle	6
Driver assistance system	7
Emergency situations	8
Maintenance	9
Index	I

1. Foreword / Electric vehicle system overview

Electric vehicle 1-6
Electric vehicle 1-6
Characteristics of electric vehicles 1-6
Battery Information 1-6
Main components of electric vehicle 1-7
Main components of electric vehicle 1-7
High voltage battery(lithium-ion battery) 1-7
High voltage battery warmer system 1-8
EV mode 1-9
EV mode screen 1-9
Energy information 1-10
Next departure 1-10
Charging and climate 1-11
Vehicle to load (V2L) 1-13
Nearby charging stations 1-19
EV settings 1-19
Charge types for electric vehicle 1-22
Charging Information 1-22
Charging time information 1-22
Charging types 1-23
Charge indicator lamp for electric vehicle 1-24
Charging status 1-24
Locking charging cable 1-25
Scheduled charging 1-26
Scheduled charging 1-26
Charging precautions 1-26
How to check the symbol on the charging label (For Europe) 1-28
Electric charging label 1-29
Electric charging label symbol table 1-30
Disconnecting charging connector in emergency 1-31
AC charge 1-31
DC charge 1-35
Portable charge 1-39
Charging the electric vehicle (abrupt stop) 1-50
Action to be taken when charging stops abruptly 1-50

Driving electric vehicle 1-51
How to start the vehicle 1-51
How to stop the vehicle 1-51
Virtual engine sound system 1-52
Distance to empty 1-52
Tips for improving distance to empty 1-53
Electricity use 1-54
Power/Charge Gauge 1-55
State of charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery 1-55
Warning and Indicator lights (related to electric vehicle) 1-56
Cluster display messages 1-58
Safety precautions for electric vehicle 1-63
If an accident occurs 1-63
Other precautions for electric vehicle 1-64
High voltage cut-off switch 1-65

FOREWORD

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing Genesis Branded Vehicle. We are pleased to welcome you to the growing number of discerning people who drive Genesis Branded Vehicle. We are very proud of the advanced engineering and high-quality construction of each Genesis Branded Vehicle we build.

Your Owner's Manual will introduce you to the features and operation of your new Genesis Branded Vehicle. To become familiar with your new Genesis Branded Vehicle, so that you can fully enjoy it, read this Owner's Manual carefully before driving your new vehicle.

This manual contains important safety information and instructions intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's controls and safety features so you can safely operate your vehicle.

This manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance safe operation of the vehicle. It is recommended that all service and maintenance on your car be performed by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products. An authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products are prepared to provide high-quality service, maintenance and any other assistance that may be required.

This Owner's Manual should be considered a permanent part of your vehicle, and should be kept in the vehicle so you can refer to it at any time. The manual should stay with the vehicle if you sell it to provide the next owner with important operating, safety and maintenance information.

GENESIS BRAND MOTOR COMPANY

CAUTION

Severe vehicle damage may result from the use of poor quality fuels and lubricants that do not meet Genesis Branded Vehicle specifications. You must always use high quality lubricants that meet the specifications listed on Page 2-14 in the Vehicle Specifications section of the Owner's Manual.

Copyright 2022 Genesis Brand Motor Company. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of Genesis Brand Motor Company.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimize the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you will learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. Use the index when looking for a specific area or subject; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has nine chapters plus an index. Each section begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

SAFETY MESSAGES

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. This Owner's Manual provides you with many safety precautions and operating procedures. This information alerts you to potential hazards that may hurt you or others, as well as damage your vehicle.

Safety messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe these hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce the risks.

Warnings and instructions contained in this manual are for your safety. Failure to follow safety warnings and instructions can lead to serious injury or death.

Throughout this manual DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION, NOTICE and the SAFETY ALERT SYMBOL will be used.

This is the safety alert symbol. It is used to alert you to potential physical injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death. The safety alert symbol precedes the signal words DANGER, WARNING and CAUTION.

DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.

VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS

- This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

  In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.
- If you use unauthorized electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire.

NOTICE

Some warning sounds (including welcome/good-bye sound, etc.) are generated from the external amplifiers. If necessary, we recommend you to purchase Genesis/ Hyundai Part to replace an external amplifier. Any unauthorized product may cause a malfunction of the external amplifiers.

RETURNING USED VEHICLES (FOR EUROPE)

Genesis Branded Vehicle promotes an environmentally sound treatment for end of life vehicles and offers to take back your Genesis Branded Vehicle end of life vehicles in accordance with the European Union (EU) End of Life Vehicles Directive.

You can get detailed information from your national Genesis Branded Vehicle homepage.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Electric vehicle

An electric vehicle is driven using a battery and an electric motor. While general vehicles use an internal combustion engine and gasoline as fuel, electric vehicles use electrical energy that is charged inside the high voltage battery. As a result, electric vehicles are eco-friendly in that they do not require fuel and do not emit exhaust gases.

Characteristics of electric vehicles

1. It is driven using the electrical energy that is charged inside the high voltage battery. This method prevents air pollution since fuel, like gasoline, is not required, negating the emission of exhaust gases.
2. A high performance motor is used in the vehicle as well. Compared to standard, internal combustion engine vehicles, engine noise and vibrations are much more minimal when driving.
3. When decelerating or driving downhill, regenerative braking is utilized to charge the high voltage battery. This minimizes energy loss and increases the distance to empty.
4. When the battery charge is not sufficient, AC charge, DC charge and trickle charge are available. (Refer to “Charge Types for Electric Vehicle” for details.)

Information

What does regenerative braking do?

It uses an electric motor when decelerating and braking and transforms kinetic energy to electrical energy in order to charge the high voltage battery. (Torque is applied in the opposite direction when decelerating to generate braking force and electric energy.)

Battery Information

- The vehicle is composed of a high voltage battery that drives the motor and air-conditioner, and an auxiliary battery (12 V) that drives the lamps, wipers, and audio system.
- The auxiliary battery is automatically charged when the vehicle is in the ready (READY) mode or the high voltage battery is being charged.

MAIN COMPONENTS OF ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Main components of electric vehicle

- On-Board Charger (OBC): A device that charges the high voltage battery by converting AC power of the power grid to DC power.
- Inverter: Transforms direct current into alternate current to supply power to the motor, and transforms alternate current into direct current to charge the high voltage battery.
- LDC: Transforms power from the high voltage battery to low voltage (12 V) to supply power to the vehicle (DC-DC).
- VCU: Control the various controls on the vehicle.
- Motor: Uses electrical energy stored inside the high voltage battery to drive the vehicle (functions like an engine in a standard vehicle).
- Reduction gear: Delivers rotational force of the motor to the tires at appropriate speeds and torque.
- High voltage battery (lithium-ion battery): Stores and supplies power necessary for the electric vehicle to operate (12 V auxiliary battery provides power to the vehicle features such as lights and wipers).

✳ OBC: On-Board Charger

✳ LDC: Low Voltage DC-DC Converter

✳ VCU: Vehicle Control Unit

WARNING

- **Do not intentionally remove or disassemble high voltage components and high voltage battery connectors and wires. Also, be careful not to damage high voltage components and the high voltage battery. It may cause serious injury and significantly impact the performance and durability of the vehicle.**
- **When inspection and maintenance is required for high voltage components and the high voltage battery, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

High voltage battery (lithium-ion battery)

- The charge amount of the high voltage battery may gradually decrease when the vehicle is not being driven.
- The battery capacity of the high voltage battery may decrease when the vehicle is stored in high/low temperatures.
- Distance to empty may vary depending on the driving conditions (such as outside temperature), even if the charge amount is the same. The high voltage battery may expend more energy when driving at high-speed or uphill. These actions may reduce the distance to empty.
- The high voltage battery is used when using the air-conditioner / heater. This may reduce the distance to empty. Make sure to set moderate temperatures when using the air-conditioner/heater.

- Natural degradation may occur with the high voltage battery depending on the number of years the vehicle is used. This may reduce the distance to empty.
- When the charge capacity and distance to empty keep falling, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for inspection and maintenance.
- If the vehicle will not be in use for an extended period of time, charge the high voltage battery once every three months to prevent it from discharging. Also, if the charge amount is not enough, immediately charge to full and store the vehicle.
- AC charge is recommended to keep the high voltage battery in optimal condition.

  If the high voltage battery charge amount is below 20%, you can keep the high voltage battery performance in optimal condition if you charge the high voltage battery to 100%. (Once a month or more is recommended.)

  The value of the high voltage battery charge level may vary according to the charging conditions (state of charger, outside temperature, battery temperature, etc.). In order to fully charge the battery, the current of the high voltage battery will be gradually decreased, so that the longevity and safety of the battery can be secured.

CAUTION

- **If the vehicle is kept with insufficient charge for a long period, it may damage the high voltage battery and the high voltage battery may have to be replaced depending on the level of degradation.**
- **If the vehicle is in a collision, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products to inspect whether the high voltage battery is still connected.**
- **Using the V2L function may reduce the mileage due to the use of high voltage battery energy, and repeated use of the V2L function may cause a decrease in the life of the high voltage battery.**
- **Using the V2L function may reduce the driving distance due to the use of high voltage battery energy, and repeated use of the V2L function may cause a decrease in the life of the high voltage battery.**

High voltage battery warmer system

The high voltage battery warmer system prevents reduction of battery output when battery temperature is low. If the charging connector is connected, the warmer system automatically operates according to the battery temperature.

Charging time may shorten compare to vehicles without the high voltage battery warmer system. But, electricity charge may increase because of high voltage battery warmer system operation.

CAUTION

The high voltage battery warmer system operates when the charging connector is connected to the vehicle.

However, the high voltage warmer system may not operate when battery temperature drops below -35°C (-31°F).

EV MODE

OJWEVQ011113L

If you select the “EV” menu at the home screen you can enter EV mode.

Information

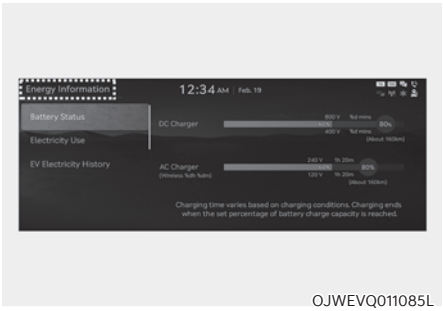
The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

EV mode screen

OJWEVQ011054L

(1) Energy Information
(2) Next Departure
(3) Charging and Climate
(4) Vehicle to Load (V2L)
(5) EV Settings
(6) Menu

Energy information

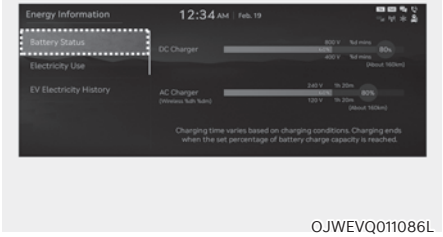


OJWEVQ011085L

Select 'EV → Energy Information' on the screen.

You can check battery information and energy consumption.

Battery information

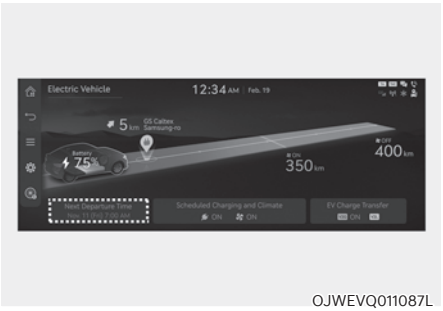


OJWEVQ011086L

You can check the reachable range, total battery power remaining, and expected charging time for each charge type.

- The distance to empty is calculated based on the electric energy efficiency while driving. The distance may change if the driving pattern changes.
- The distance to empty may vary according to the change of the driving pattern even if the same target battery charge level is set.

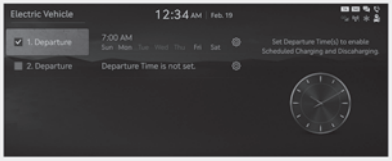
Next departure



OJWEVQ011087L

Select 'EV → Next Departure' on the screen. You can set the date and time of when to charge the battery, climate control temperature, and other various functions.

Departure time



OJWEVQ011088L

OJWEVQ011089L

1. Set anticipated departure time for scheduled charging and target temperature.
2. Select the day of the week to activate scheduled charging and target temperature for departure time.

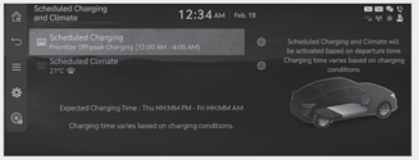
Charging and climate

OJWEVQ011091L

Select ‘EV → Schedule Charge and Climate’ on the screen.

Information

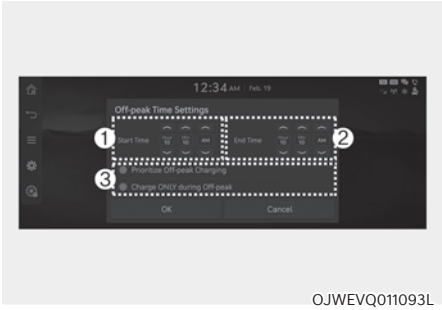
Vehicle must be connected with the charging connector at the time pre-scheduled time for the scheduled charging.



OJWEVQ011092L

You can set the date and time of when to charge the battery and the climate control temperature. Also, you may select the time to start charging using the off-peak time setting.

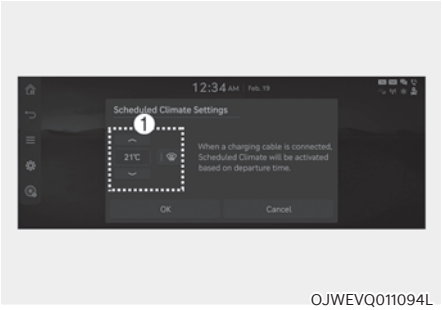
Off-peak time settings



OJWEVQ011093L

1. If selected, starts charging only on the designated off-peak time.
2. Set the most inexpensive time to complete charging.
3. You may select:
   - Prioritize Off-peak Charging: If selected, starts charging at off-peak time (may keep on charging pass off-peak time to charge 100%).
   - Charge ONLY during Off-peak: If selected, charges only within off-peak time (may not charge 100%).

Target temperature settings



OJWEVQ011094L

1. Set target temperature.
   - If the target temperature (1) is set with the cable connected, the cabin temperature will be adjusted to the target temperature at departure time (without loss of high voltage battery charging level). The target temperature control starts 30 minutes before the departure time. In cold weather, preschedule heating helps enhance electric vehicle performance by heating the vehicle in advance.

Vehicle to load (V2L)

V2L is the system provides AC power using the high voltage battery for driving to operate several electronical products.

OJWEVQ011095L

Select 'EV → EV Charge Transfer' on the screen.

You can set the battery discharging limit for high voltage battery for driving.

OJWEVQ011096L

If the vehicle reaches to the limit, it automatically cut supply of electricity.

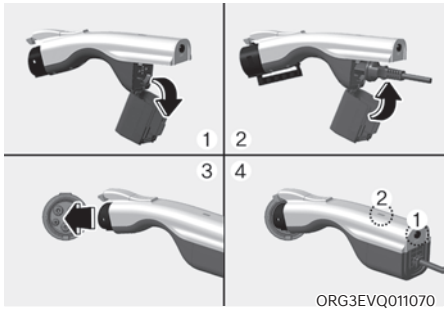
Energy information

Select 'EV → Energy Information' on the screen.

You can check battery discharging level.

How to connect

Outdoor



ORG3EVQ011070

1. Open the cover of the V2L connector.
2. Close the cover after connecting home appliances and electronical products to the power outlet.

WARNING

Some types of plugs may not fit into the outlet cover of the V2L connector, causing incomplete closing of the cover.

Do not use the V2L connector on a rainy or snowy day if the outlet cover is not completely closed. There is a risk of fire and/or injury.

3. Connect the V2L connector to the charging inlet on the vehicle.
4. Press the switch (1) of the V2L connector and check whether the light (2) is on or off. The light (2) may not turn on normally when:
   - See the battery discharging limit for high voltage battery for driving in 'Electricity Use' menu on the screen. If it is higher than the current amounts of high voltage battery, the light (2) does not turn on.
   - Check whether the light of V2L connector turns on or not.

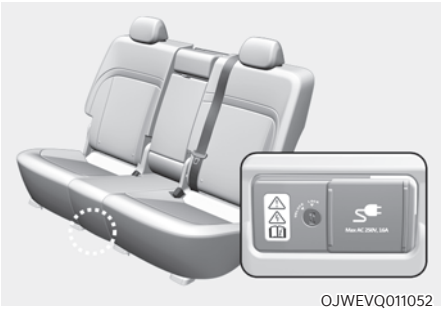
- If the warning message for V2L appears on the cluster display, refer to the message entirely.
- If V2L does not operate previously when you connects another home appliances, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

5. Press the switch (1) to turn off the light (2) the the V2L will be off. You can disconnect the V2L connector when the light (2) turns off or the charging connecter lock is deactivated pressing the door unlock button on the smart key.

Information

- **Please connect the V2L connector to the charging inlet within 60 seconds after the charging cover opens. To prevent theft after connecting, it is changed to auto lock automatically so that it is impossible to disconnect.**
- **When using V2L, cancel the scheduled air conditioning setting. V2L operation may be blocked by scheduled air conditioning operation conditions.**

Indoor (if equipped)

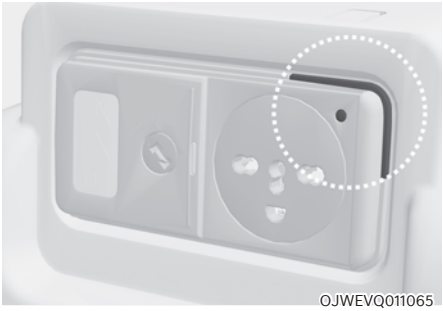


OJWEVQ011052

1. Connect to the power outlet located in bottom of the rear seat with the Vehicle Stop/Start button in the ON position.

OJWEVQ011064

2. Use the smart key to unlock the power outlet cover.


OJWEVQ011065

3. Check the operation status through the front indicator of the power outlet.
   - Blue: Standby
   - Red: No power supply even the power outlet is connected
   - Green: Normal power supply through the normal connection of the power outlet.

Information

- **V2L discharging mode will shut off if the vehicle is off using indoor V2L on the vehicle state of ON.**
- **Opening the charging door or connecting the V2L connector to the charging inlet, the V2L discharging mode will shut off. If you want to use the indoor and outdoor V2L simultaneously, firstly connect the V2L connector to the charging inlet and use the indoor V2L.**

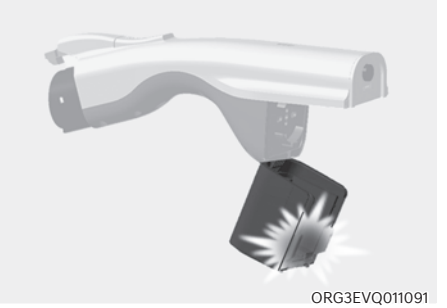
CAUTION

- **Be well-informed of the manual to prevent accidents.**
- **The V2L discharging mode is blocked automatically in case of overheating. (When the discharging mode is blocked, check whether the V2L connector or power plug is contaminated, worn, corroded or broken. If the temperature falls to proper level after it is left unattended, you can use it again. Use proper home appliances.)**
- **Do not remodel or disassemble the provided V2L connector. The failure caused by remodeling or disassembling is not covered by the warranty.**
- **Do not drop the V2L connector or give a strong impact to it.**
- **Do not place objects on the V2L connector.**
- **Be sure to disconnect the V2L connector from the vehicle when you are finished using V2L.**
- **When the high voltage battery charge reaches the set discharging limit(%), the operation stops, and a warning message is displayed on the instrument panel. If you want V2L operation, set the discharging limit(%) lower than the current battery charge.**
- **When using various electric products, use them below the maximum power capacity that can be supplied by the vehicle.**

- **If you use an electrical appliance that exceeds the maximum power capacity that the vehicle can supply, the operation will stop and a warning message will be displayed on the instrument panel. Make sure the total power consumption of the electrical appliance you use exceeds the V2L maximum power capacity.**
- **Some of the electric products may not operate normally even if the product has power consumption less than the maximum power capacity provided by the vehicle.**
  - **Electrical products that require high power during initial operation.**
  - **Measuring devices that need to process accurate data.**
  - **Electrical products that are sensitive to inverter type AC charger. (inverter : AC power is supplied through power semiconductor switching)**
- **Do not use products that require a continuous power supply, such as medical equipment. The power supply may be interrupted depending on the vehicle's condition.**
- **Put the power plug fully and use the qualified plug that meets the standard. If you use worn, corroded or broken plug or improper plug, it might be a cause of malfunction.**
- **Use a power plug with ground connection.**
- **Do not use high power home appliances such as air conditioning, washing machine or dryer.**
- **Do not hang the home appliances on to the wire.**
- **For various devices connected to an power outlet, use only products that have obtained national safety certification. For usage and precautions, refer to the manual of the device. (Electrical appliances, multi-outlets, cord extension cables, etc.)**
- **For devices used outdoors in a vehicle, use a product with a waterproof function or use it in a waterproof environment. Do not use in environments with rain or high humidity. (Electrical appliances, multi-outlets, cord extension cables, etc.)**
- **If there is a risk of lightning, do not use the V2L function outside the vehicle.**
- **Do not connect multiple portable multi-outlets.**
- **When using an extension cable, if the cable is twisted or overlapped by itself may cause a fire. Be sure to use the cable without twisting it.**
- **When using the vehicle's outdoor V2L connector, power is also supplied to the vehicle's indoor power outlet. Unplug electrical appliances that are not in use from the indoor power outlet.**
- **When using the V2L, the cooling fan in the vehicle motor compartment can operate automatically even if the vehicle is turned off. Do not put your hand near the cooling fan in the V2L operating state.**

WARNING

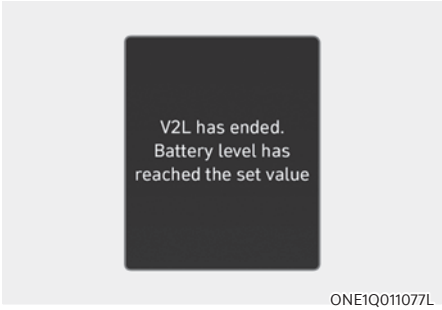
- **Do not touch the V2L connector of the terminal or the vehicle charging inlet.**
- **Do not put metal objects to the V2L connector or charging inlet. It might be a cause of electric shock.**
- **Do not touch the V2L connector, charging inlet or power plug with a wet hand. It might be a cause of electric shock. Please handle with a dry hand all the time.**
- **Confirm whether there is foreign substance such as water or dust on the V2L connector, charging inlet or power plug before connecting. If you connect it with foreign substances, it may be a cause of fire or electric shock.**
- **Do not remodel or disassemble the V2L connector. There is a risk of fire, electric shock or injury.**



ORG3EVQ011091

- **When the power plug is connected or disconnected to the V2L connector or open or close the connector cover of the V2L, be careful not to be scratched on the hand.**
- **Do not charge in the following conditions. The accident might occur.**
  - **The V2L connector, charging inlet, power plug or cable is damaged, corroded or rusted.**
  - **The connection part is loose.**
- **Do not use if the sheath of home appliance cables is damaged or broken. There is a risk of fire, electric shock or injury.**
- **Never use an electric heating appliance like iron, coffee pot, and toaster in the vehicle. It may cause a fire and injury.**
- **When using the V2L, the cooling fan in the vehicle motor compartment can operate automatically even if the vehicle is turned off. Do not put your hand near the cooling fan in the V2L operating state.**

Cluster display messages



ONE1Q011077L

V2L has ended. Battery level has reached the set value

When the high voltage battery level reaches the discharging limit set level, the V2L will stop and the warning will be displayed. If you want to use the V2L continuously, make the discharging limit set level lower than the present battery level.

ONE1Q011078L

V2L stopped due to excessive power use

If you use an electrical appliance that exceeds the maximum power output the vehicle can supply, it will stop working and display a warning message. Make sure that the total power consumption of your electrical appliance exceeds the V2L maximum power output.

ONE1Q011079L

V2L conditions not met

If V2L is interrupted for any of the following reasons, a warning message is displayed.

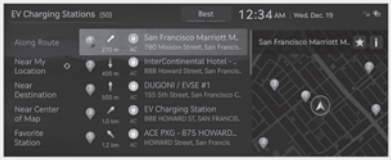
- V2L connector switch off
- V2L connector overheating
- Opening the charging door while using the V2L indoor outlet

Make sure there are no problems with the V2L connector and the vehicle indoor outlet.

Nearby charging stations

OJWEVQ011097L

Select 'Search for charging stations' on the screen.



OJWEVQ011107L

Around the course, around the current site, around the selected destination or charging stations of interest will be searched. If you choose the charging station, the detailed information will be provided.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

EV settings

OJWEVQ011098L

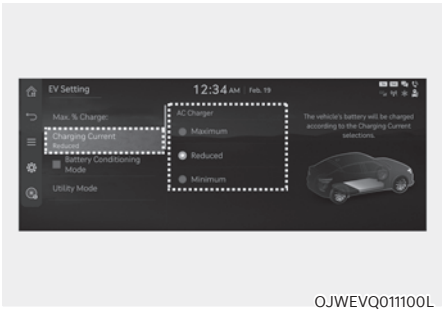
Select 'EV → EV Settings' on the screen. You can set the charging limit, charging current, winter mode and utility mode functions.

Charging limit (Max. % Charge)

OJWEVQ011099L

- The target battery charge level can be selected when charged with AC charger or DC charger.
- The charging level can be changed by 10%.
- If the target battery charge level is lower than the high voltage battery charge level, the battery will not be charged.

Charging current



OJWEVQ011100L

- You can adjust the charging current for an AC charger. Select an appropriate charging current.
- If the charging process does not start or abruptly stops in the middle, reselect another proper current and re-try charging the vehicle.
- Charging time varies depending on which charging current is selected.

Battery conditioning mode

OJWEVQ011101L

You can select or deselect the Battery conditioning mode.

The Battery conditioning mode is efficient during the winter time when the high voltage battery temperature is low.

This mode is recommended to maintain driving and DC charging performances during winter by raising the battery temperature to an adequate level.

However, the driving distance may be reduced as the energy is required to increase battery temperature.

Also, if the battery temperature is low during driving or when the scheduled air conditioner/heater is activated, this mode is operated to improve driving performance.

However, the mode is not operated to ensure driving distance when the battery level is low.

Information

This mode is available for the vehicles equipped with the battery heater.

Utility Mode

The high voltage battery is used instead of the 12V auxiliary battery for operating the convenient features of the vehicle. When driving is not necessary such as while camping or when stopping the vehicle for a long time, it is possible to use the electrical devices (audio, lights, air conditioner, heater, etc.) for long hours.

OJWEVQ011102L

System Setting and Activation

System setting

The driver can activate the Utility mode function when the following conditions are satisfied.

- The vehicle is in the ready (READY) mode and the gear is shifted to P (Park).
- The EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is not a malfunction.
- 'EV Settings→Utility Mode' is selected on the infotainment system screen.

System Activation

When the system is activated:

- The ready (READY) indicator will turn off, and the utility (UTIL) indicator will illuminate on the cluster and the EPB is applied.
- All electric devices are usable but the vehicle cannot be driven.
- The EPB can be cancelled by pressing the EPB switch.

  Gear cannot be shifted out of P (Park). If a shift attempt is made, a message "Shifting conditions not met" will be displayed on the infotainment system screen.

System Deactivation

The Utility mode can be deactivated by pressing the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. The function cannot be deactivated from the EV settings.

CHARGE TYPES FOR ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Charging Information

- AC Charge: The electric vehicle is charged by plugging into a AC charger installed at your home or a public charging station. (For further details, refer to the 'AC Charge'.)
- DC Charge: You can charge at high speeds at public charging stations. Refer to the respective company's manual that is provided for each DC charger type.

  Battery performance and durability can deteriorate if the DC charger is used constantly.

  Use of DC charge should be minimized in order to help prolong high voltage battery life.
- Portable Charge: The Electric vehicle can be charged by using household electricity. The electrical outlet at your home must comply with regulations and can safely accommodate the Voltage / Current (Amps) / Power (Watts) ratings specified on the portable charge.

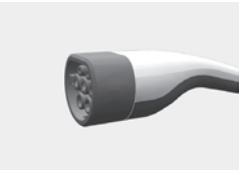
Charging time information

Charging type	Standard battery type	
AC charge	Takes approx. 7 hours 20 minutes at room temperature when charged to 100%	
DC charge	350 kW charger	Takes about 18 minutes at room temperature when charged from 10% to 80%. Can be charged to 100%.
	50 kW charger	Takes about 73 minutes at room temperature when charged from 10% to 80%. Can be charged to 100%.
Portable charge	Takes approx. 33 hours at room temperature when charged to 100%.	

i Information

Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the high voltage battery may vary.

Charging types

Category	AC Charge	DC Charge	Portable Charge
Charging Inlet (Vehicle)	OJWEVQ011001L	OJWEVQ011003L	OJWEVQ011001L
Charging Connector	ONE1Q011088L	OAEEQ016022L	 ONE1Q011088L
Charging Outlet	ORG3EVQ011071	OSQCEQ019005	ONX4EPHQ011019L
How to Charge	Use AC charger installed at home or public charging stations	Use the DC charger at public charging stations	Use household current

- Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the high voltage battery may vary.
- Actual charger image and charging method may vary in accordance with the charger manufacturer.

CHARGE INDICATOR LAMP FOR ELECTRIC VEHICLE

When charging the high voltage battery, the charge level can be checked from outside the vehicle.

Charging status

Electric charging door

OJWEVQ011002L

Lamp status	Battery SOC [%]
OJWEVQ011005L	0~12.5
OJWEVQ011006L	12.5~25
OJWEVQ011007L	25~37.5
OJWEVQ011008L	37.5~50
OJWEVQ011009L	50~62.5
OJWEVQ011010L	62.5~75
OJWEVQ011011L	75~87.5
OJWEVQ011012L	87.5~100

Locking charging cable

OJWEVQ011103L

You may select when the charging connector can be locked and unlocked in the charging inlet.

Select 'EV → Charging Connector Locking Mode' in the infotainment.

Information

- **The charging inlet is locked during the DC charge regardless of 'Always lock'/'Locking while charging' mode. After charging is complete the locked charging inlet is unlocked.**
- **The charging inlet locks when the V2L connector is connected, regardless of the settings of charging connector locking.**

  After use, the lights can be turned off by pressing the switch on the V2L connector, and the charging inlet can be unlocked by pressing the vehicle door unlock button.

When the Charging Connector Is Locked

	Always lock	Lock while charging	Do not lock (if equipped)
Before charging	O	X	X
While charging	O	O	X
Finished charging	O	X	X

- 'Always lock' mode:

  The connector locks when the charging connector is plugged into the charging inlet. The connector is locked until all doors are unlocked by the driver. This mode can be used to prevent charging cable theft.

  - If the charging connector is unlocked when all doors are unlocked, but the charging cable is not disconnected within 15 seconds, the connector will be automatically locked again.
  - If the charging connector is unlocked when all doors are unlocked, but all doors are locked again, immediately, the connector will be automatically locked again.
- 'Lock while charging' mode:

  The connector locks when charging starts. The connector unlocks when charging is complete. This mode can be used when charging in a public charging station.
- 'Do not lock' mode (if equipped):

  The connector unlocks regardless of the state of charging. Press the charging connector release button, disconnect the connector. Be careful to theft of the charging cable.

SCHEDULED CHARGING

Scheduled charging (if equipped)

- You can set-up a charging schedule for your vehicle using the Infotainment system or Genesis Connected Service application.

  Refer to the Multimedia manual or the Genesis Connected Service for detailed information about setting scheduled charging.
- Scheduled charging can only be done when using a AC charger or the portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box).

OJWEVQ011008L

- When scheduled charging is set and the AC charger or the portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box) is connected for charging, the indicator lamp blinks from the first level to the last for about 3 minutes to indicate that scheduled charging is set.
- When scheduled charging is set, charging is not initiated immediately when the AC charger or portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box) is connected. When immediate charging is required, press the charging door open button in the smart key for 2 seconds or deactivate the scheduled charge setting with the infotainment system.

Refer to “AC Charge (Station) or Trickle Charge” for details about connecting the AC charger and the portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box).

Charging precautions

■ AC Charger

ORG3EVQ011071

■ DC Charger

OSQCEQ019005

Actual charger image and charging method may vary in accordance with the charger manufacturer.

WARNING

- **Electromagnetic waves that are generated from the charger can seriously impact medical electric devices such as an implantable cardiac pacemaker.**

  When using medical electric devices such as an implantable cardiac pacemaker, make sure to ask the medical team and manufacturer whether charging your electric vehicle will impact the operation of the medical electric devices such as an implantable cardiac pacemaker.
- **Check to make sure there is no water or dust on the charging cable connector and plug before connecting to the charger and charging inlet. Connecting while there is water or dust on the charging cable connector and plug may cause a fire or electric shock.**

WARNING

- **Be careful not to touch the charging connector, charging plug, and the charging inlet when connecting the cable to the charger and the charging inlet on the vehicle.**
- **Comply with the following in order to prevent electrical shock when charging:**
  - **Use a waterproof charger.**
  - **Be careful when touching the charging connector and charging plug with your hands wet, or when standing in water or snow while connecting the charging cable.**
  - **Be careful when there is lightning.**
  - **Be careful when the charging connector and plug are wet.**

WARNING

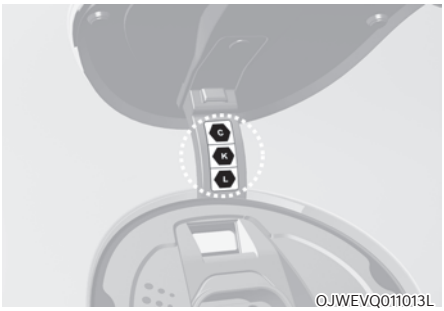
- **Immediately stop charging when you find abnormal symptoms (odor, smoke).**
- **Replace the charging cable if the cable coating is damaged to prevent electrical shock.**
- **When connecting or removing the charging cable, make sure to hold the charging connector handle and charging plug.**

  If you pull the cable itself (without using the handle), the internal wires may disconnect or get damaged. This may lead to electric shock or fire.

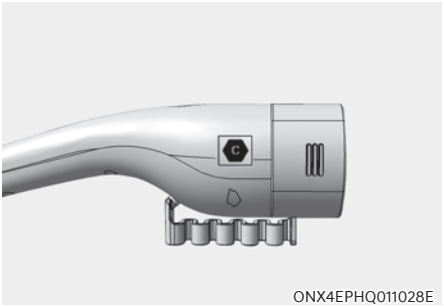
CAUTION

- **Always keep the charging connector and charging plug in clean and dry condition. Be sure to keep the charging cable in a condition where there is no water or moisture.**
- **Be sure to use only certified electric vehicle charger. Using uncertified charger may cause the damage to the vehicle.**
- **Before charging the battery, turn the vehicle OFF.**
- **When the vehicle is switched OFF while charging, the cooling fan inside the motor compartment may automatically operate. Do not touch the cooling fan while charging.**
- **Be careful not to drop the charging connector. The charging connector can be damaged.**

How to check the symbol on the charging label (For Europe)



OJWEVQ011013L



ONX4EPHQ011028E

Charging label is located near charging inlet and you can find the suitable symbol for your vehicle type in the charging connector outlet.

Precautions for AC and portable charger charging

1. After opening the charging door, check the charging symbol at the bottom of the warning label.
2. Check the charging connector symbol of the AC and Trickle charger cable.
3. After checking the alphabet letter of the charging symbol, proceed the charging step (Refer to “Electric charging label symbol table” in this chapter).

Precautions for DC charging

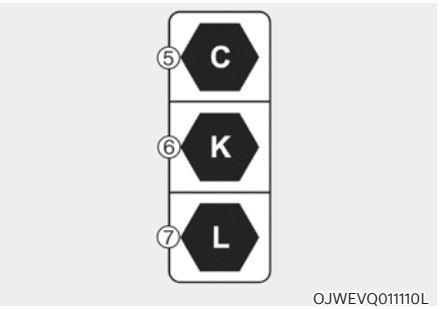
1. After opening the charging door, check the charging symbol at the bottom of the warning label.
2. Check the charging connector symbol at the high speed charging station.
3. After checking the alphabet letter of the charging symbol, proceed the charging step (Refer to Electric charging label symbol table in this chapter).

WARNING

Risk of failure, fire, injury, etc., expected when using the charging connector with unmatched symbol.

Electric charging label

OJWEVQ011109L



OJWEVQ011110L

1. Warning for high voltage
2. Symbol for charging door
3. For further details, refer to “How to check the symbol on the charging label ” in this chapter.
4. Charging voltage and current

   ~ : AC single phase

   ≋ : AC 3 phase

5, 6, 7. Symbols for charging type. Refer to “Electric charging label symbol table”.

Electric charging label symbol table

AC and portable charger charging

Supply Type	Configuration	Type of accessory	Voltage range	Symbol
AC	7P	Vehicle connector and vehicle inlet	≤480V RMS	

DC charging

Supply Type	Configuration	Type of accessory	Voltage range	Symbol
DC	7P COMBO	Vehicle connector and vehicle inlet	50 V to 500 V	
			200 V to 920 V	

Disconnecting charging connector in emergency

OJWEVQ011032

If the charging connector does not disconnect from the charging inlet due to battery discharge and failure of electric wires, open the tailgate and slightly pull the emergency cable located on the right side of the cargo area. The charging connector will be disconnected from the charging inlet.

AC charge

■ AC Charger

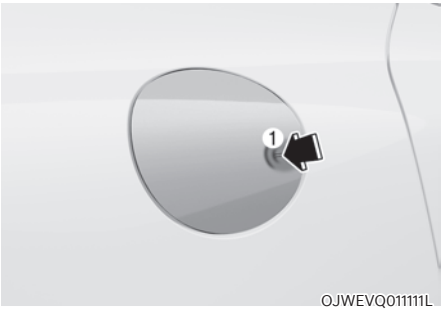
ORG3EVQ011071

Actual charger image and charging method may vary in accordance with the charger manufacturer.

How to Connect AC Charger

1. Depress the brake pedal and apply the parking brake.
2. Turn OFF all switches, shift to P (Park), and turn OFF the vehicle.

   If charging is initiated without the gear in P (Park), the charging will start after the gear is automatically shifted to P (Park).



OJWEVQ011111L

3. Push the charging door where the triangle symbol (1) is located to open. The charging door opens only when the vehicle is unlocked.

Information

If you cannot open the charging door due to freezing weather, tap lightly or remove any ice near the charging door. Do not try to forcibly open the charging door.

4. Check if there is dust on the charging connector and charging inlet.
5. Hold the charging connector handle and connect it to the vehicle charging inlet. Push the connector all the way in. If the charging connector and charging terminal are not connected properly, this may cause a fire.

Information

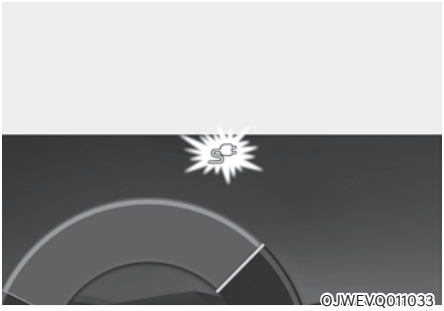
Locking Charging Cable

Select 'EV → Charging Connector Locking Mode' in the infotainment. The charging connector is locked in the inlet at a different period according to which mode is selected.

- **Always mode: The connector locks when the charging connector is plugged into the charging inlet.**
- **While charging mode: The connector locks when charging starts.**

For more details, refer to "Locking Charging Cable" in this chapter.

6. Connect the charging plug to the electric outlet at a AC charging station to start charging.



7. Check if the charging indicator light ( ) of the high voltage battery in the instrument cluster is turned ON. Charging is not active when the charging indicator light ( ) is OFF.

   When the charging connector and charging plug are not connected properly, reconnect the charging cable to charge.

Information

To control the temperature of the high voltage battery while charging or when the battery temperature is high, the air conditioner is used to cool down the battery. It may generate noise or vibration from operation of the air conditioner compressor and cooling fan, but it is a normal condition when charging the high voltage battery. Also, the air conditioner's performance may be degraded due to operation of the cooling system to charge the high voltage battery. This is a normal condition.

Information

- **Even though charging is possible with the Start/Stop button in the ON/START position, for you safety, start charging when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the vehicle shifted to P (Park). After charging has started, you can use electrical components such as the radio by pressing the Start/Stop button to the ACC or ON position.**
- **During AC charging, the radio reception may be bad.**
- **During charging, the gear cannot be shifted from P (Park) to any other gear.**

ORG3EVQ011054L

8. After charging has started, the estimated charging time is displayed on the cluster display for about 1 minute.

   If you open the driver seat door while charging, the estimated charging time is also displayed on the cluster display for about 1 minute. When scheduled charging or scheduled air conditioner/ heater is set, the estimated charging time is displayed as “--” .

Information

Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the battery may vary.

Checking Charging Status

When charging the high voltage battery, the charge level can be checked from outside the vehicle.

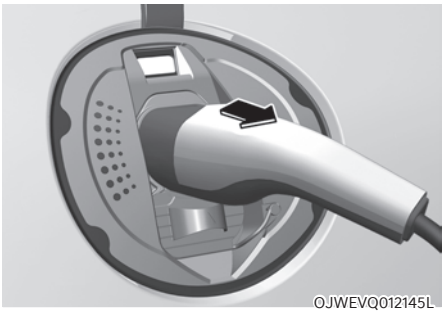
For more details, refer to ‘Charge Indicator Lamp for Electric Vehicle’ in this chapter.

How to Disconnect AC Charger

■ AC Charger

ORG3EVQ011071

1. When charging is complete, remove the charging plug from the electrical outlet of the AC charging station.



2. Hold the charging connector handle and pull it out.

Information

To prevent charging cable theft, the charging connector cannot be disconnected from the inlet when the doors are locked or the charging connector is in the 'Locking while charging' mode. Unlock all doors to disconnect the charging connector from the inlet.

However, if the vehicle is in the charging connector 'Lock while charging' mode, the charging connector automatically unlocks from the inlet when charging is completed.

If you attempt to disconnect the charging connector without pressing the release button, the connector and the inlet may be damaged. For more details, refer to "Charging Connector 'Always lock'/'Locking while charging' Mode" in this chapter.

If the release button does not work even after the all doors are unlocked, pull the emergency lift cable in the motor room and press the release button in the connector to disconnect it from the vehicle. If the release button still does not work, we recommend to consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Information

Some connectors installed in public charging stations stop charging by pressing the charge release button while charging is locked, and the connector can be disconnected.

3. Make sure to completely close the charging door.
4. Close the protection caps of the charging connector and the charging plug to protect them from foreign substances.
5. If the personal charging connector is used, store the connector in the cable compartment.

DC charge

■ DC Charger

OSQCEQ019005

You can charge at high speeds at public charging stations. Refer to the respective company's manual that is provided for each DC charger type.

Battery performance and durability can deteriorate if the DC charger is used constantly.

Use of DC charge should be minimized in order to help prolong high voltage battery life.

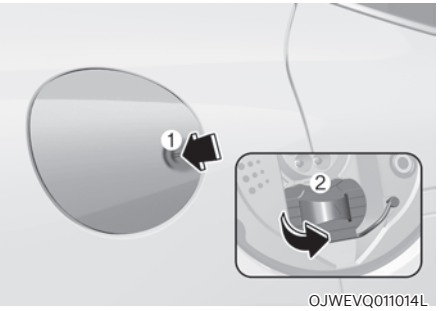
Actual charger image and charging method may vary in accordance with the charger manufacturer.

Information

If you use a DC charger when the vehicle is already fully charged, some DC chargers will send out an error message. When the vehicle is fully charged, do not charge the vehicle.

How to Connect DC Charger

1. Depress the brake pedal and apply the parking brake.
2. Turn OFF all switches, shift to P (Park), and turn OFF the vehicle.



OJWEVQ011014L

3. Push the charging door where the triangle symbol (1) is located to open. The charging door opens only when the vehicle is unlocked.
4. Open the inlet cover (2).

Information

If you cannot open the charging door due to freezing weather, tap lightly or remove any ice near the charging door. Do not try to forcibly open the charging door.

5. Check whether there is dust or foreign substances inside the charging connector and charging inlet.
6. Hold the charging connector handle and connect it to the vehicle charging inlet. Push the connector all the way in. If the charging connector and charging terminal are not connected properly, this may cause a fire.

   Refer to the manual for each type of DC charger for how to charge and remove the charger.

7. Check if the charging indicator light ( ) of the high voltage battery in the instrument cluster is turned ON. Charging is not active when the charging indicator light ( ) is OFF.

   When the charging connector is not connected properly, reconnect the charging cable to charge it again.

   During cold weather, DC charging may not be available to prevent high voltage battery degradation.

Information

To control the temperature of the high voltage battery while charging or when the battery temperature is high, the air conditioner is used to cool down the battery. It may generate noise or vibration from operation of the air conditioner compressor and cooling fan, but it is a normal condition when charging the high voltage battery. Also, the air conditioner's performance may be degraded due to operation of the cooling system to charge the high voltage battery. This is a normal condition.

Information

- **Even though charging is possible with the Start/Stop button in the ON/START position, for you safety, start charging when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the vehicle shifted to P (Park). After charging has started, you can use electrical components such as the radio by pressing the Start/Stop button to the ACC or ON position.**
- **During charging, the gear cannot be shifted from P (Park) to any other gear.**

ORG3EVQ011055L

8. After charging has started, the estimated charging time is displayed on the cluster display for about 1 minute.

   If you open the driver seat door while charging, the estimated charging time is also displayed on the cluster display for about 1 minute.

Information

- **Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the battery may vary.**
- **In rare cases, you might hear high frequency noise (very little beep sound) outside the car when charging with 400V DC charger that is deteriorated or has long communication delay. The high frequency noise can be generated only when the vehicle tries to reduce its own electromagnetic waves to keep DC charging as possible.**

  Do not worry about this little beep noise, because it is the intentional operation of the car that does not affect any charging performance or the vehicle itself at all.

Checking Charging Status

When charging the high voltage battery, the charge level can be checked from outside the vehicle.

For more details, refer to 'Charge Indicator Lamp for Electric Vehicle' in this chapter.

How to Disconnect DC Charger

1. Remove the charging connector when DC charging is completed, or after you stop charging using the DC charger. Refer to each respective DC charger manual for details about how to disconnect the charging connector.
2. Make sure to completely close the charging door.

Using Plug n charge (PnC) (For Europe)

When charging with a DC charger, you can use the PnC function to charge your electric vehicle quickly and easily.

Turning PnC on and off

CAUTION

If you do not have a PnC contract, turn off the PnC function. If the function is turned on, problems with the charging process may occur.

On the infotainment system, select 'EV Settings → Plug n charge'.

- Select the check box to turn the PnC function on.
- Uncheck the check box to turn the PnC function off.

Renewing the PnC

If the PnC does not proceed or fails during the process, check the expiration and renewal status of the contract certificate.

CAUTION

- **The PnC will not proceed if the certificate has expired.**
- **Turn off the PnC function and use an external payment method until you check the certificate status. If the PnC fails more than two times, the payment method is forcibly switched to an external payment method from the third attempt.**

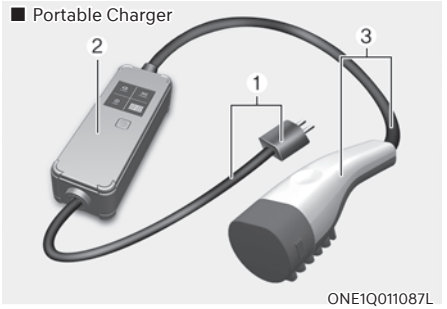
Information

- **To reset and enable PnC again after the payment method is forcibly switched to an external payment method, follow one of the instructions below:**
  - **Charge once using an external payment method. PnC will be available from the next charge.**
  - **Disconnect the charging plug, close the charging door, and wait at least one minute with the vehicle on.**
  - **Use another charger that is PnC enabled.**

If the contract certificate for the PnC has expired or withdrawn, follow the instructions below:

1. Make a new contract to issue or renew the certificate.
2. Connect the charging plug and try PnC once.
   - The charger will display the expiration and withdrawal status of the certificate and the charging will be failed.
3. Disconnect and reconnect the charging plug and retry charging.
   - The newly contracted certificate will be installed and charging will proceed normally.

Portable charge



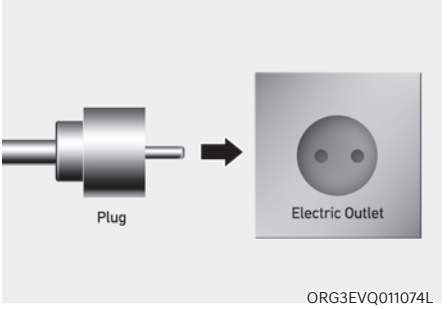
(1) Code and Plug (Code set)

(2) Control Box

(3) Charging Cable and Charging Connector

Portable Charge can be used when AC Charge or DC Charge is not available by using household electricity.

How to Set the Charge Level of the Portable Charger

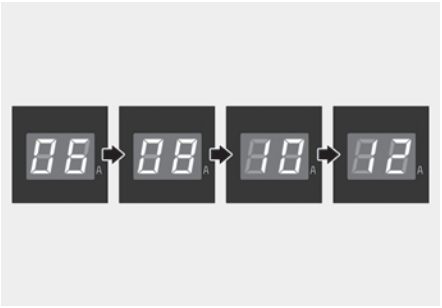


1. Check the rated current of the electric outlet prior to connecting the plug to the outlet.
2. Connect the plug to a household electric outlet.
3. Check the display window on the control box.

4. Press the button (1) on the front of the control box for 2 to 8 seconds to adjust the charge level. (Refer to charging cable type and example for setting the charge level.)
5. The charge level on the display window of the control box changes every time you press the button (1).
6. When setting the charge level is complete, start charging according to the portable charge instructions.

✳ Example for setting the ICCB charge level

The example is only for reference and may vary according to the surrounding environment.

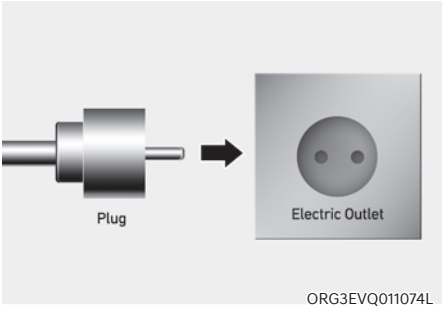
Outlet current	ICCB charge level	Control box display window
14-16A	12A	
13-12A	10A	
11-10A	8A	
9-8A	6A	

ORG3EVQ011076

CAUTION

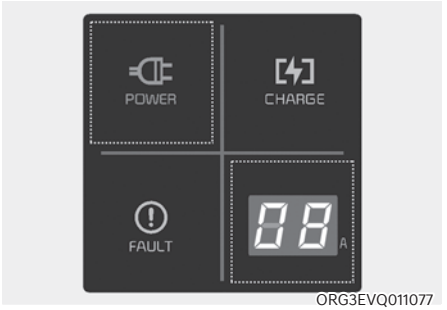
Please make sure that charge level selection matches the capacity of your circuit breaker to avoid blown fuse.

How to Connect Portable Charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box)



ORG3EVQ011074L

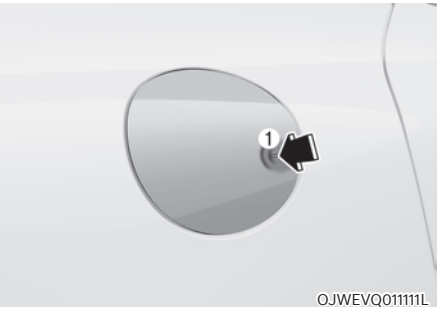
1. Connect the plug to a household electric outlet.



ORG3EVQ011077

2. Check if the power lamp (green) illuminates on the control box.
3. Depress the brake pedal and apply the parking brake.
4. Turn OFF all switches, shift to P (Park), and turn OFF the vehicle.

   If charging is initiated without the gear in P (Park), the charging will start after the gear is automatically shifted to P (Park).



OJWEVQ011111L

5. Push the charging door where the tringle symbol (1) is located to open. The charging door opens only when the vehicle is unlocked.

Information

If you cannot open the charging door due to freezing weather, tap lightly or remove any ice near the charging door. Do not try to forcibly open the charging door.

6. Open the protection caps of the charging connector and the charging plug. Check if there are any foreign substances or dust.
7. Hold the charging connector handle and connect it to the vehicle charging inlet. Push the connector all the way in. If the charging connector and charging terminal are not connected properly, this may cause a fire.

Information

Locking Charging Cable

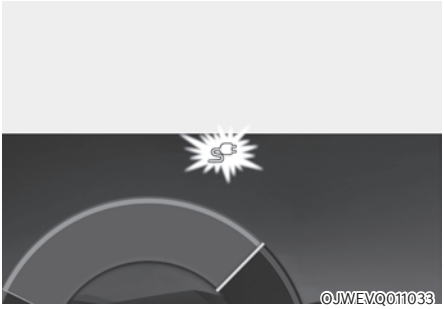
Select 'EV → Charging Connector Locking Mode' in the infotainment system menu. The charging connector is locked in the inlet at a different period according to which mode is selected.

- **Always mode: The connector locks when the charging connector is plugged into the charging inlet.**
- **While charging mode: The connector locks when charging starts.**

For more details, refer to "Locking Charging Cable" in this chapter.

ORG3EVQ011078

8. Charging starts automatically (charging lamp illuminates).


OJWEVQ011033

9. Check if the charging indicator light ( ) of the high voltage battery on the instrument cluster is turned ON. Charging is not active when the charging indicator light ( ) is OFF.

   When the charging connector is not connected properly, reconnect the charging cable to charge it again.

Information

Even though charging is possible with the Start/Stop button in the ON/START position, for you safety, start charging when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the vehicle shifted to P (Park). After charging has started, you can use electrical components such as the radio by pressing the Start/Stop button to the START or ON position.

During charging, the gear cannot be shifted from P (Park) to any other gear.

ORG3EVQ011054L

10. After charging has started, the estimated charging time is displayed on the cluster display for about 1 minute.

    If you open the driver seat door while charging, the estimated charging time is also displayed on the cluster display for about 1 minute. When scheduled charging or scheduled air conditioning/heating is set, the estimated charging time is displayed as “--” .

Information

Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the battery may vary.

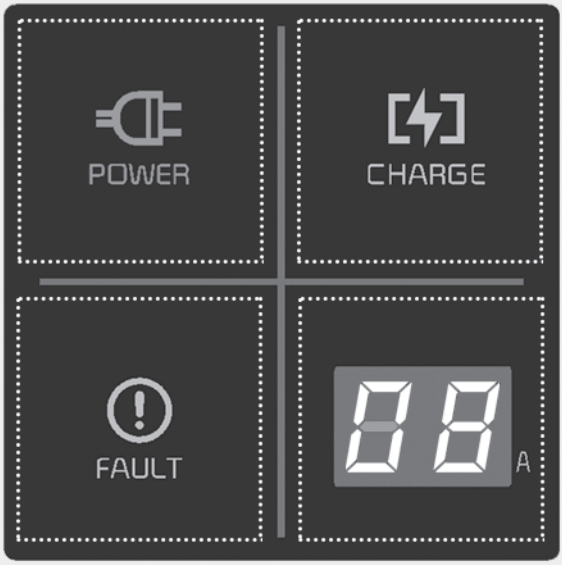
Checking Charging Status

When charging the high voltage battery, the charge level can be checked from outside the vehicle.

For more details, refer to ‘Charge Indicator Lamp for Electric Vehicle’ in this chapter.

Charging Status Indicator Lamp for Portable Charger

■ Control Box



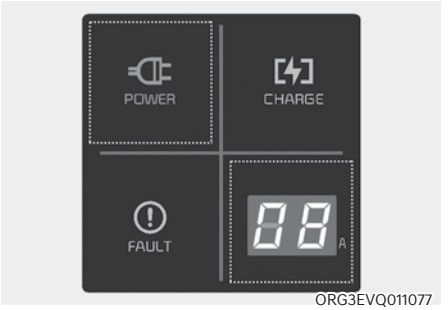
ORG3EVQ011079

Indicator		Details
POWER	POWER	On: Power on
CHARGE	CHARGE	On: Charge Blink: Current limit due to high plug temperature or high internal temperature
FAULT	FAULT	Blink: Charging interrupted

Indicator		Details		
Error code		On: Error while charging/ Error during self-diagnosis		
		Error code	Item	Cause
		E1	Control Pilot communication	Vehicle communication error
		E2	Leakage	Current leakage
		E3		Charger error
		E4	Plug temperature	Plug overtemperature warning
		E5		Plug temperature failure
		E6		Charger error
		E7	Overcurrent	Charging overcurrent warning
		E8	Internal temperature	Charger overheating
		E9		Charger error
		F1	Relay fusion	Charger error
		F2	Ground Monitoring/ Interrupt (North America Only)	Poor grounding of outlet
		F3	Switched mode power supply power failure	Switched mode power supply error (voltage failure)
		F4		Switched mode power supply error (abnormal voltage)
		F5	Control Pilot voltage error	Control Pilot (-) voltage error
		F6		Control Pilot (+) voltage error
		F7	Temperature sensor error	Plug temperature sensor error
		F8		PCB internal temperature sensor error

Indicator		Details
CHARGE LEVEL		12 A
		10 A
		8 A
		6 A
	The charging current changes whenever the button (1) is pressed for less than 1 sec with the charger plugged into an electrical outlet but not the vehicle.	* The control box ORG3EVQ011075

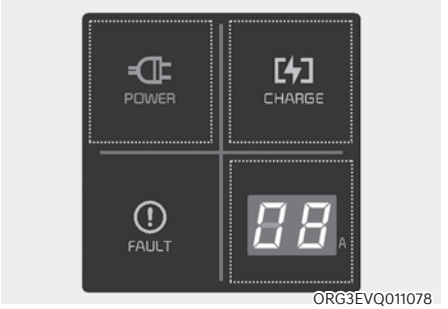
Status / Diagnosis / Countermeasure



ORG3EVQ011077

- Charging connector plugged into vehicle (POWER Green ON)
- Plug connected to an electric outlet (POWER Green ON)

We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.



ORG3EVQ011078

While charging

- Charge indicator (POWER Green ON / CHARGE Blue ON)
- Charging current

ORG3EVQ011125L

Before plugging charging connector into vehicle (POWER Green ON, FAULT Red blink)

- Abnormal temperature
- ICCB (In-Cable Control Box) failure

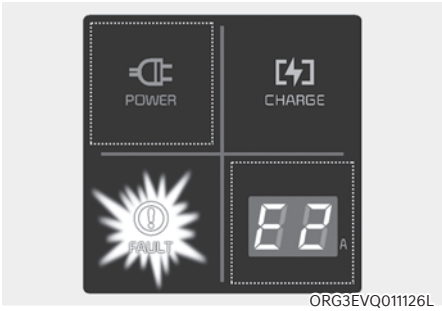
We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

ORG3EVQ011125L

Plugged into vehicle (POWER Green ON, FAULT Red Blink)

- Diagnostic device failure
- Current leakage
- Abnormal temperature

We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.



ORG3EVQ011126L

- Leakage current failure (POWER Green ON, FAULT Red Blink)
- After disconnecting and reconnecting the power plug, press and release the button for 2 seconds or longer to clear the error.

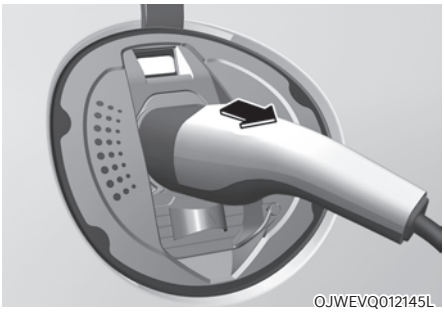
We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

ORG3EVQ011127L

Power saving mode

- 7-segment display is turned off if there is no status change for more than 1 minute.

How to Disconnect Portable Charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box)


OJWEVQ012145L

1. Hold the charging connector handle and pull it out.

Information

To prevent charging cable theft, the charging connector cannot be disconnected from the inlet when the doors are locked or the charging connector is in the 'Locking while charging' mode. Unlock all doors to disconnect the charging connector from the inlet.

However, if the vehicle is in the charging connector 'Always lock' mode, the charging connector automatically unlocks from the inlet when charging is completed.

If you attempt to disconnect the charging connector without pressing the release button, the connector and the inlet may be damaged.

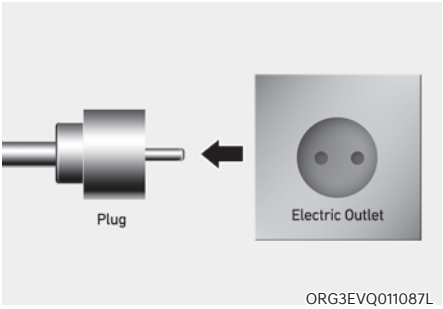
For more details, refer to "Charging Connector 'Always lock'/'Locking while charging' Mode" in this chapter.

If the release button does not work even after the all doors are unlocked, pull the emergency lift cable in the motor room and press the release button in the connector to disconnect it from the vehicle. If the release button still does not work, we recommend to consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Information

Some connectors installed in public charging stations stop charging by pressing the charge release button while charging is locked, and the connector can be disconnected.

2. Make sure to completely close the charging door.



ORG3EVQ011087L

3. Disconnect the plug from the household electric outlet. Do not pull the cable when disconnecting the plug.
4. Close the protection caps of the charging connector and the charging plug to protect them from foreign substances.
5. If the personal charging connector is used, store the connector in the cable compartment.

Precautions for Portable Charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box)

- Use the portable charger that is certified by Genesis Branded Vehicle.
- Do not try to repair, disassemble, or adjust the portable charger.
- Do not use an extension cord or adapter.
- Stop using immediately when failure occurs.
- Do not touch the plug and charging connector with wet hands.
- Do not touch the terminal part of the AC charging connector and the AC charging inlet on the vehicle.
- Do not connect the charging connector to voltage that does not comply with regulations.
- Do not use the portable charger if it is worn out, exposed, or there exists any type of damage on the portable charger.
- If the ICCB case and AC charging connector is damaged, cracked, or the wires are exposed in any way, do not use the portable charger.
- Do not let children operate or touch the portable charger.
- Keep the control box free of water.
- Keep the normal charging connector or plug terminal free of foreign substances.
- Do not step on the cable or cord. Do not pull the cable or cord and do not twist or bend it.
- Do not charge when there is lightning.
- Do not drop the control box or place a heavy object on the control box.
- Do not place an object that can generate high temperatures near the charger when charging.
- Charging with the worn out or damaged household electric outlet can result in a risk of electric shock. If you have doubts about the condition of a household electric outlet, have it checked by a licensed electrician.
- Stop using the portable charger immediately if the household electric outlet or any components is overheated or you notice burnt odors.

CHARGING THE ELECTRIC VEHICLE (ABRUPT STOP)

Action to be taken when charging stops abruptly

When the high voltage battery does not charge, check the followings:

1. Check the charging setting for the vehicle. Refer to “Charge Management”, in this chapter (for example, When scheduled charging is set, charging is not initiated immediately when the AC charger or portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box) is connected.)
2. Check the operation status of AC charger, portable charger and DC charger.

   (Charging Status Indicator Lamp for Portable Charger, refer to “Checking Charging Status” for trickle charge in this chapter.)

✳ Actual method for indicating the charging status may vary in accordance with the charger manufacturer.

3. When the vehicle does not charge and a warning message appears on the cluster display, check the corresponding message. Refer to “Cluster display Messages”, in this chapter.
   - If the charging connector and charging inlet are not connected properly, the connector may droop or vibrate.
     - In this case, hold the charging connector handle and push it all the way in.
4. If the vehicle is properly charged when charged with another normally working charger, contact the charger manufacturer.
5. If the vehicle does not charge when charged with another normally working charger, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for inspection.
6. If charging fails and the service warning light ( ) is lit in the instrument cluster, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Stopping charging immediately

If you cannot stop charging the electric vehicle through the charger while charging with an AC charger, DC charger, or portable charger, follow the instructions below:

1. Press the door lock or unlock button of the vehicle.
2. Within 15 seconds after pressing the button, press the HOLD button on the charging door open button on the smart key for more than two seconds.

DRIVING ELECTRIC VEHICLE

How to start the vehicle

1. Holding the smart key, sit in the driver's seat.
2. Fasten the seat belt before starting the vehicle.
3. Make sure to engage the parking brake.
4. Turn OFF all electrical devices.
5. Make sure to depress and hold the brake pedal.
6. While depressing the brake pedal, shift to P (Park).
7. Depress and hold the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

OJWEVQ012034

8. When the ready (**READY**) indicator is ON, you can drive the vehicle.

   When the ready (**READY**) indicator is OFF, you cannot drive the vehicle. Start the vehicle again.
9. Depress and hold the brake pedal and shift to the desired position.

Information

While the charging cable is connected, the gear cannot be shift from P (Park) to any other gear for safety reasons.

10. Release the parking brake and slowly release the brake pedal. Check if the vehicle slowly moves forward, then depress the accelerator pedal.

How to stop the vehicle

1. Hold down the brake pedal while the vehicle is parked.
2. While depressing the brake pedal, shift to P (Park).
3. While depressing the brake pedal, engage the parking brake.
4. While depressing the brake pedal, press the Start/Stop button and turn off the vehicle.

OJWEVQ012035

5. Check if the ready (**READY**) indicator is turned OFF on the instrument cluster.

   When the ready (**READY**) indicator is ON and the gear is in a position other than P (Park), the driver can accidently depress the accelerator pedal, causing the vehicle to move unexpectedly.

Virtual engine sound system

The Virtual Engine Sound System generates engine sound for pedestrians to hear vehicle sound because there is no sound while the Electric Vehicle (EV) is operating.

- If the vehicle is in the ready (READY) mode and the gear is not in P (Park), the VESS will be operated.
- When the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), an additional warning sound will be heard.

CAUTION

- **The vehicle is much quieter while driving than a conventional gasoline-powered vehicle. Be aware of your surroundings and always drive safely.**
- **After you park the vehicle or while you are waiting at a traffic light, check whether there are children or obstacles around the vehicle.**
- **Check if there is something behind the vehicle when driving in reverse. Pedestrians may not hear the sound of the vehicle.**

Distance to empty

OJWEVQ011036

The distance to empty is displayed differently according to the selected drive mode in the Drive Mode Integrated Control System.

For more information, refer to “Drive Mode Integrated Control System” in chapter 6.

When destination is not set

- On average, a vehicle can drive about 320 km (198 miles).
- Under certain circumstances where the air conditioner/heater is ON, the distance to empty is impacted, resulting in a possible distance range from 300 km (186 miles). When using the heater during cold weather or driving at high speed, the high voltage battery consumes a lot more electricity. This may reduce the distance to empty significantly.
- After ‘0 km’ has been displayed, the vehicle can drive an additional 3~8 km (2~5 miles) depending on driving speed, heater/air conditioner, weather, driving style, and other factors.

- Distance to empty that is displayed on the instrument cluster after completing a recharge may vary significantly depending on previous operating patterns.

  When previous driving patterns include high speed driving, resulting in the high voltage battery using more electricity than usual, the estimated distance to empty is reduced. When the high voltage battery uses little electricity in ECO mode, the estimated distance to empty increases.
- Distance to empty may depend on many factors such as the charge amount of the high voltage battery, weather, temperature, durability of the battery, geographical features, and driving style. When the ambient temperature is low such as in winter, the actual driving distance may reduce due to degradation of the battery.
- Natural degradation may occur with the high voltage battery depending on the number of years the vehicle is used. This may reduce the distance to empty.

When destination is set

When the destination is set, the distance to empty may change. The distance to empty is recalculated using the information of the destination. However, the distance to empty may vary significantly based on traffic conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.

Tips for improving distance to empty

- If you operate the air conditioner / heater too much, the driving battery uses too much electricity. This may reduce the distance to empty. Therefore, it is recommended that you set the cabin temperature to 22°C AUTO. This setting that has been certified by various assessment tests to maintain optimal energy consumption rates while keeping the temperature fresh.

  Turn OFF the heater and air conditioner if you do not need them.
- When the heater or air conditioning system is on the energy consumption is reduced if recirculation mode is selected instead of selecting the fresh mode. The fresh mode requires large amount of energy consumption as the outside air has to be re-heated or cooled.
- When using the heater or air conditioning system use the DRIVER ONLY or scheduled air conditioner/ heater function.
- Depress and hold the accelerator pedal to maintain speed and drive economically.
- Gradually depress and release the accelerator pedal when accelerating or decelerating.
- Always maintain specified tire pressures.
- Do not use unnecessary electrical components while driving.
- Do not load unnecessary items in the vehicle.
- Do not mount parts that may increase air resistance.

Electric energy economy history

OJWEVQ012105L

It is possible to check the history of electric energy economy with the date and distance of previous driving. The icon is displayed on the most efficient electric energy economy record.

Electricity use

OJWEVQ012106L

In order to check the current energy consumption for each system of the vehicle, select 'EV → Electricity Use' on the screen.

1. 'Climate' shows the power and energy consumption which are used by the heater or air conditioner.
2. 'Electronics' shows the power and energy consumption which are used by the vehicle systems including the instrument cluster, infotainment system(speaker and navigation), headlamp, vehicle control unit, etc.
3. 'Battery care' shows the momentary power and energy consumption which are used when:
   - Operating the winter mode to increase the battery temperature during winter to improve the driving performance.
   - Cooling down the battery temperature during summer to prevent over temperature of the battery.
4. 'Driving' shows the total power and energy consumption of the driving motor's driving energy and regenerative energy.

Power/Charge Gauge

OJWEVQ011037

The Power/Charge Gauge shows the energy consumption and recovery status of the electric motor.

- POWER:

  It shows discharging status of the electric motor when vehicle is accelerating or driving on a uphill road. The more electric energy is discharged (used), the higher the gauge level.
- CHARGE:

  It shows the charging status of the electric motor when vehicle is decelerating or driving on a downhill road (being charged by the regenerative brakes). The more electric energy is charged, the lower the gauge level.

State of charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery

OJWEVQ011019

- The SOC gauge shows the charging status of the high voltage battery.
- The low percentage number on the indicator indicates that there is not enough energy in the high voltage battery. 100 % indicates that the driving battery is fully charged.
- When driving on highways or motorways, make sure to check in advance if the driving battery is charged enough.

OJWEVQ011039

1. When the remaining battery is lower than 10 % on the SOC gauge, the warning light ( ) turns ON to alert you of the battery level.
2. When the warning light ( ) turns ON, the vehicle can drive an additional 30~50 km (18~30 miles) depending on the driving speed, heater/air conditioner, weather, driving style, and other factors. Charging is required.

NOTICE

When the high voltage battery level is low, the power down indicator light illuminates and the vehicle power is limited. Charge the battery immediately since your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the indicator light ON.

Warning and Indicator lights (related to electric vehicle)

Ready indicator

READY

This indicator illuminates:

When the vehicle is ready to be driven.

- ON: Normal driving is possible.
- OFF: Normal driving is not possible, or a problem has occurred.
- Blinking: Emergency driving.

When the ready indicator goes OFF or blinks, there is a problem with the system. In this case, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Service Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a problem with related parts of the electric vehicle control system, such as sensors, etc.

When the warning light illuminates while driving, or does not go OFF after starting the vehicle, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Power down indicator light

This warning light illuminates:

- For the safety of high-powered components of electric vehicles, the power is limited due to the following reasons. (Unless both Service Warning Light and Power Down Indicator Light illuminate at the same time, it is not a failure.)
  - The high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing
  - The temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low
  - The temperature of the motor is high

NOTICE

- **Do not accelerate or start the vehicle suddenly when the power down indicator light is ON.**
- **When the power is limited for the safety of the high-powered parts of an electric vehicle, the power down indicator light illuminates. Your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the indicator light ON due to the limitation of vehicle power.**

Charging Indicator Light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the charging cable is connected.

High Voltage Battery Level Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the high voltage battery level is low.
- When the warning light turns ON, charge the battery immediately.

Regenerative Brake Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

When the regenerative brake does not operate and the brake does not perform well. This causes the Brake Warning light (red) and Regenerative Brake Warning Light (yellow) to illuminate simultaneously.

In this case, drive safely and we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The operation of the brake pedal may be more difficult than normal and the braking distance can increase.

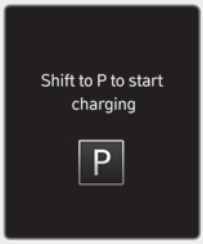
Cluster display messages

Shift to P to start charging/Shift to P to start charging

■ Type A

ORG3EVQ011117L

■ Type B



ORG3EVQ011118L

This message is displayed if you connect the charging cable without the gear in the P (Park) position.

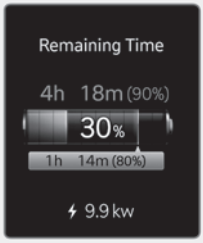
Shift to P (Park) before connecting the charging cable.

Remaining time

■ AC charge

ORG3EVQ011054L

■ DC charge



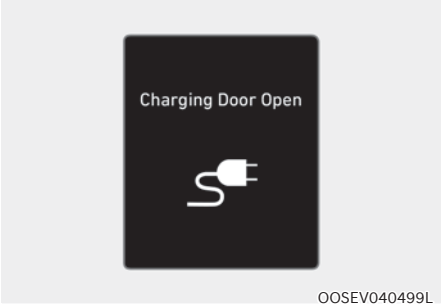
ORG3EVQ011055L

This message displays how much time remains until the battery is charged to the selected target battery charge level.

Unplug vehicle to start

OOSEV040498L

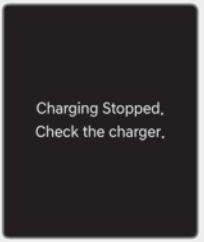
This message is displayed when you start the vehicle without unplugging the charging cable. Unplug the charging cable, and then turn on the vehicle.



OOSEV040499L

This message is displayed when the vehicle is driven with the charging door opened. Close the charging door and then start driving.

Charging Stopped. Check the charger

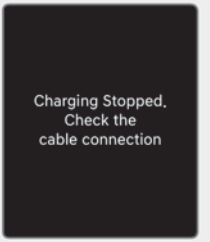


OJWEVQ011112L

- This warning message is displayed when charging is stopped for the reasons below:
  - There is a problem with the external AC charger or DC charger
  - The external AC charger stopped charging
  - The charging cable is damaged

In this case, check whether there is any problem with the external AC or DC charger and charging cable.
If the same problem occurs when charging the vehicle with a normally operating AC charger or genuine Genesis portable charger, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Charging Stopped. Check the cable connection



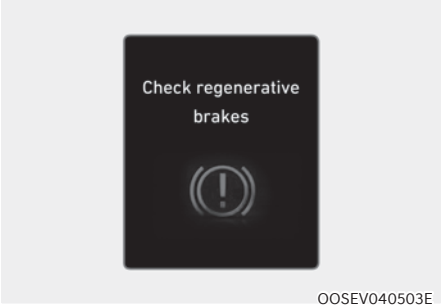
OJWEVQ012146L

This warning message is displayed when charging is stopped because the charging connector is not correctly connected to the charging inlet

In this case, separate the charging connector and re-connect it and check whether there is any problem (external damage, foreign substances, etc.) with the charging connector and charging inlet.

If the same problem occurs when charging the vehicle with a replaced charging cable or genuine Genesis portable charger, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Check regenerative brakes



OOSEV040503E

This warning message is displayed when the regenerative brake system does not work properly.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Low EV battery/Low battery

■ Type A

ORG3EVQ011001L

■ Type B

ORG3EVQ011121L

When the high voltage battery level reaches below approximately 12%, this warning message is displayed.

The warning light on the instrument cluster ( ) will turn ON simultaneously.

Charge the high voltage battery immediately.

Charge immediately. Power limited

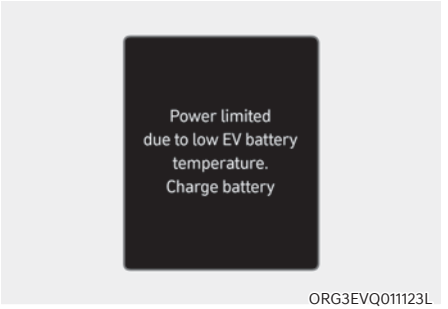
ORG3EVQ011122L

When the high voltage battery level reaches below approximately 6%, this warning message is displayed.

The warning light on the instrument cluster ( ) will turn on simultaneously.

The vehicle's power will be reduced to minimize the energy consumption of the high voltage battery. Charge the battery immediately.

Power limited due to low EV batter temperature. Charge battery



ORG3EVQ011123L

Both warning messages are displayed to protect electric vehicle system when outside temperature is low. If the high voltage battery charging level is low and parked outside in low temperature for a long time, vehicle power could be limited.

Charging the battery before driving helps increase power.

NOTICE

If these warning messages are is still displayed even after the ambient temperature has increased, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

EV Battery Overheated! Stop vehicle/Battery overheated! Stop safely

■ Type A

ORG3EVQ011050L

■ Type B

ORG3EVQ011124L

This warning message is displayed to protect battery and electric vehicle system when the high voltage battery temperature is too high.

Turn off the Start/Stop button and stop the vehicle so that the battery temperature decreases.

Power limited

ORG3EVQ011003L

This Indicator light illuminates:

- To ensure the safety of high-powered components of electric vehicles, the power is limited the following reasons. (Unless both Service Warning Light and Power Down Indicator Light illuminate at the same time, it is not a failure.)
  - The high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing
  - The temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low
  - The temperature of the motor is high

NOTICE

- **When this warning message is displayed, do not accelerate or start the vehicle suddenly.**
- **When the power is limited for the safety of the high-powered parts of for electric vehicle, the warning message is displayed. Your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the warning message displayed due to the limitation of vehicle power.**

Stop vehicle and check power supply

ORG3EVQ011051L

This warning message is displayed when a failure occurs in the power supply system.

In this case, park the vehicle in a safe location and we recommend that you have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products and have the vehicle inspected.

Check electric vehicle system

ORG3EVQ011048L

This warning message is displayed when there is a problem with the electric vehicle control system.

Refrain from driving when the warning message is displayed.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS FOR ELECTRIC VEHICLE

If an accident occurs

WARNING

- When a vehicle accident occurs, move the vehicle to a safe place, turn OFF the vehicle and disconnect the high voltage cut-off switch from the auxiliary battery (12V) to prevent high voltage electricity from flowing.
- If electric wires are exposed from inside or outside the vehicle, do not touch the wires.

  Also, do not touch the high voltage electric wire (orange), connector, and all electric components and devices. This may cause electric shock and lead to injuries.

WARNING

- When a vehicle accident occurs and the high voltage battery is damaged, harmful gas and electrolytes may leak. Be careful not to touch the leaked liquid.
- When you suspect leakage of inflammable gas and other harmful gases, open the windows and evacuate to a safe location. If any leaked fluid comes in contact with your eyes or skin, immediately clean the affected area thoroughly with tap water or saline solution and have doctors inspect it as soon as possible.

WARNING

- If a small scale fire occurs, use a fire extinguisher (ABC, BC) that is meant for electrical fires. If it is impossible to extinguish the fire in the early stage, remain a safe distance from the vehicle and immediately call your local fire emergency responders. Also, advise them that an electric vehicle is involved.
- If the fire spreads to the high voltage battery, large amount of water is needed to put out the fire. Using small amount of water or fire extinguishers not meant for electrical fires could cause serious injury or death from electrical shocks.

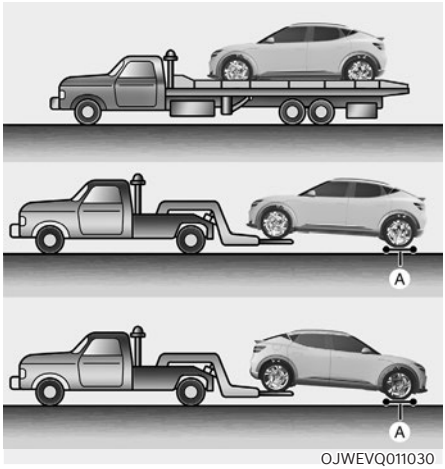
WARNING

If you cannot put out the fire immediately, the high voltage battery may explode. Evacuate to a safe place and do not let other people approach the site.

Contact the fire department and notify them of an electric vehicle fire.

- If the vehicle is flooded with water, immediately turn off the vehicle and evacuate to a safe place. We recommend to contact the fire deprtment or an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

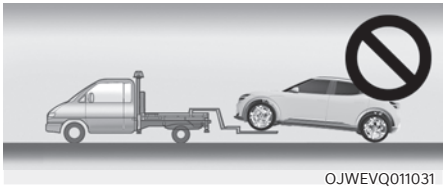


OJWEVQ011030

[A]: Dollies

- **For AWD vehicles, it must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground.**

WARNING



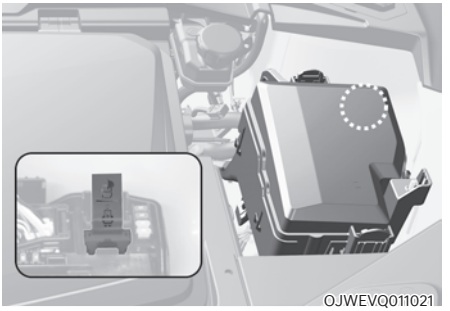
OJWEVQ011031

- **If you tow the vehicle while the 2WD: rear, AWD: front/rear wheels are touching the ground, the vehicle motor may generate electricity and the motor components may be damaged or a fire may occur.**
- **When a vehicle fire occurs due to the battery, there is a risk of a second fire. Contact the fire department when towing the vehicle.**

Other precautions for electric vehicle

- When you paint or apply heat treatment to the vehicle as a result of an accident, the performance of the high voltage battery can be reduced.
- If heat treatment is required, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- When you clean the motor compartment, do not use high pressure water to wash. This may cause an electric shock due to a discharge in high voltage electricity, or damage the vehicle's electric system.
- We recommend that you use or install genuine Genesis part or the equivalent (of the genuine part) specified for your vehicle.

High voltage cut-off switch



Pull the yellow label in the high voltage cut-off switch to shut down the high voltage battery.

WARNING

Never disconnect the high voltage cut-off switch except in an emergency situation.

Serious problems may occur, such as the vehicle will not start.

NOTICE

Putting the excessive force to the switch lever while shutting down the high voltage battery may severely damage the high voltage cut-off switch.

2. Vehicle information

Exterior overview (front view) 2-2
Exterior overview (rear view) 2-3
Interior overview (left-hand drive) 2-4
Interior overview (right-hand drive) 2-5
Center console overview (left-hand drive) 2-6
Center console overview (right-hand drive) 2-7
Steering wheel control overview 2-8
Motor compartment overview 2-9
Dimensions 2-10
Electric vehicle specifications 2-10
Bulb wattage 2-11
Tires and wheels 2-12
Load and speed capacity tires (for europe) 2-13
Air conditioning system 2-13
Vehicle weight and luggage volume 2-13
Recommended lubricants and capacities 2-14
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 2-15
Vehicle certification label 2-15
Tire specification and pressure label 2-16
Motor number 2-16
Air conditioner compressor label 2-17
Refrigerant label 2-17
Declaration of conformity 2-18
Open Source Software Notice 2-18

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW (FRONT VIEW)

The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJWEV011001

1. Hood 5-78
2. Headlamp 9-46
3. Tires and wheels 9-23
4. Outside rearview mirror 5-58
5. Vision roof 5-74
6. Front windshield wiper blades .. 5-109, 9-17
7. Windows 5-68
8. Front radar 7-4

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW (REAR VIEW)

The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJWEV011002L

1. Door 5-38
2. Rear combination lamp 9-49
3. Rear turn signal lamp & Rear retro reflector 9-49
4. Tailgate 5-81
5. Tailgate open/close button 5-83
6. High mounted stop lamp 9-50
7. Antenna 5-148
8. Wide-rear view camera 7-127
9. Backup lamp 9-49
10. Rear fog lamp 9-49

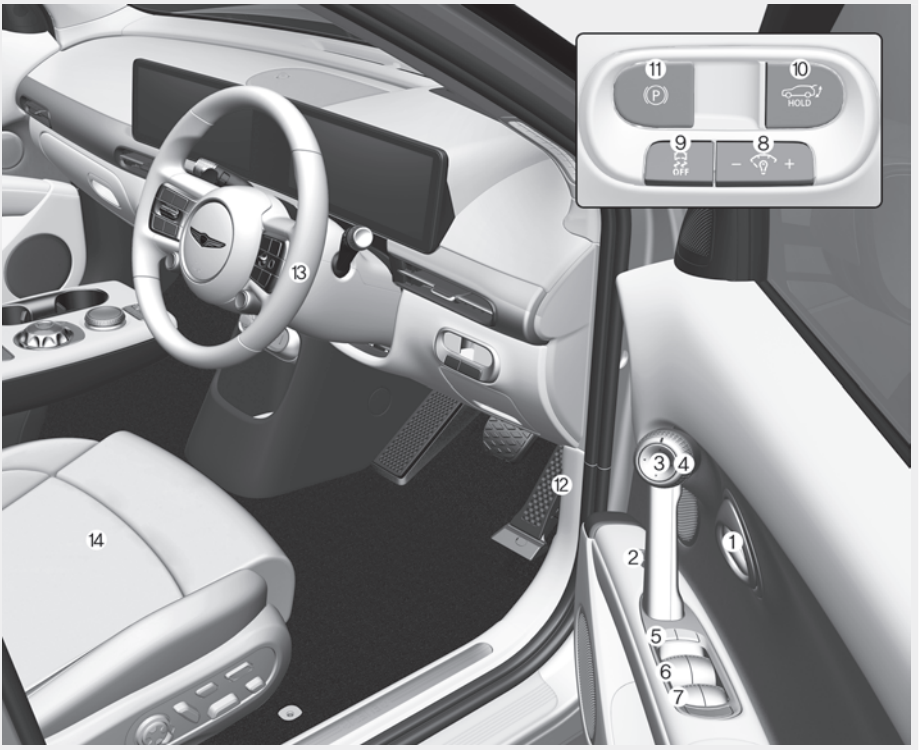
INTERIOR OVERVIEW (LEFT-HAND DRIVE)

The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJWEV011003

1. Inside door handle..... 5-39
2. Integrated memory system 5-49
3. Outside rearview mirror control switch 5-64
4. Outside rearview mirror folding button 5-65
5. Central door lock switch 5-40
6. Power window switches 5-70
7. Power window lock button / 5-72
   Electronic child safety lock button..... 5-72
8. Instrument panel illumination control switch 4-5
9. ESC (Electronic Stability Control) OFF button..... 6-41
10. Tailgate open/close button..... 5-83
11. EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) switch 6-32
12. Hood release lever..... 5-78
13. Steering wheel tilt/telescopic switch.. 5-53
14. Steering wheel..... 5-52
15. Seat..... 3-3

INTERIOR OVERVIEW (RIGHT-HAND DRIVE)



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJWEV011007R

1. Inside door handle..... 5-39
2. Integrated memory system 5-49
3. Outside rearview mirror control switch 5-64
4. Outside rearview mirror folding button 5-65
5. Central door lock switch 5-40
6. Power window switches 5-70
7. Power window lock button / 5-72
   Electronic child safety lock button..... 5-72
8. Instrument panel illumination control switch 4-5
9. ESC (Electronic Stability Control) OFF button..... 6-41
10. Tailgate open/close button..... 5-83
11. EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) switch 6-32
12. Hood release lever..... 5-78
13. Steering wheel..... 5-52
14. Seat..... 3-3

CENTER CONSOLE OVERVIEW (LEFT-HAND DRIVE)

The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJWEV011004L

1. Instrument cluster 4-4
2. Horn 5-55
3. Driver's front air bag 3-53
4. Start/Stop button 6-5
5. Infotainment system 5-149
6. Hazard warning flasher button 8-2
7. Automatic climate control system 5-112
8. Passenger's front air bag 3-53
9. Glove box 5-135
10. Wireless charging system indicator 5-141
11. Wireless charging system pad 5-141
12. USB port 5-148
13. USB charger 5-140
14. Power outlet 5-139
15. Cup holder 5-137
16. Rotary shifter (Rotary gear shift dial) ... 6-10
17. Fingerprint authentication system 5-32
18. Heated steering wheel button 5-55
19. Auto Hold button 6-36
20. Parking/View button 7-129
21. Parking Safety button 7-154
22. Seat Warmer/Air ventilation seat ... 3-23, 3-25
23. Rear seat USB charger 5-140

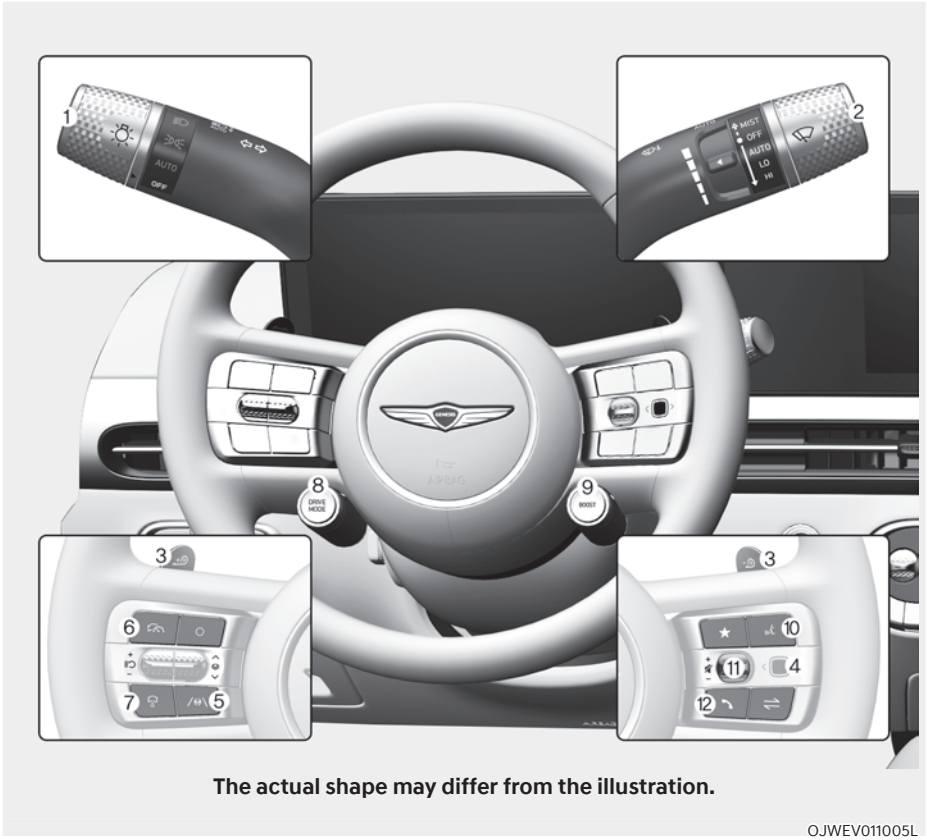
CENTER CONSOLE OVERVIEW (RIGHT-HAND DRIVE)

The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJWEV011008R

1. Instrument cluster 4-4
2. Horn 5-55
3. Driver's front air bag 3-53
4. Start/Stop button 6-5
5. Infotainment system 5-149
6. Hazard warning flasher button 8-2
7. Automatic climate control system 5-112
8. Passenger's front air bag 3-53
9. Glove box 5-135
10. Wireless charging system indicator 5-141
11. Wireless charging system pad 5-141
12. USB charger 5-140
13. USB port 5-148
14. Power outlet 5-139
15. Cup holder 5-137
16. Rotary shifter (Rotary gear shift dial) 6-10
17. Fingerprint authentication system 5-32
18. Heated steering wheel button 5-55
19. Auto Hold button 6-36
20. Parking/View button 7-129
21. Parking Safety button 7-154
22. Seat Warmer/Air ventilation seat 3-23, 3-25
23. Rear seat USB charger 5-140

STEERING WHEEL CONTROL OVERVIEW

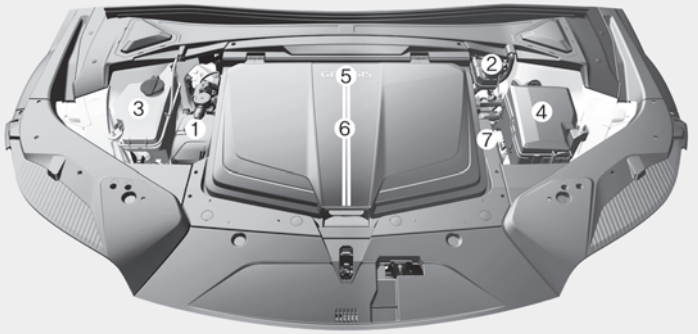


The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJWEV011005L

1. Lighting control lever 5-93
2. Wiper and washer control lever.....5-109
3. Paddle shifter..... 6-20
4. Cluster display control 4-30
5. Lane Driving Assist button.....7-29
6. Driving Assist button 7-87
7. Vehicle Distance button..... 7-88
8. Drive mode button 6-57
9. Boost mode button 6-61
10. Voice recognition button 5-149
11. Steering wheel audio controls.....5-148
12. Bluetooth wireless technology hands-free button.....5-150

MOTOR COMPARTMENT OVERVIEW



The actual motor compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJWEV091001

1. Coolant reservoir 9-12
2. Brake fluid reservoir 9-14
3. Windshield washer fluid reservoir 9-15
4. Fuse box 9-33
5. Cabin air filter 9-16
6. Front trunk 5-79
7. Battery 9-20

DIMENSIONS

Items		mm (in)	
Overall length		4,515 (177.8)	
Overall width		1,890 (74.4)	
Overall height		1,580 (62.2) / 1,590 (62.6)*1/1,595(62.8)*2	
Tread	Tire size	Front	Rear
	235/55 R19	1,633 (64.3)	1,642 (64.6)
	255/45 R20	1,628 (64.1)	1,637 (64.4)
	255/40 R21		
Wheelbase		2,900 (114.2)	

*1: if equipped with roof rack
*2: with shark fin antenna

ELECTRIC VEHICLE SPECIFICATIONS

Items		Standard type		Performance type
		2WD	AWD	AWD
Motor (Front/Rear)	Max. output (kW)	168	234	320/360*3
	Max. torqu (Nm)	350	605	700
Battery (Lithium-ion)	Capacity (kWh)	77.4	77.4	77.4
	Power output (kW)	350	350	394
	Voltage (V)	697	697	697
Charger (OBC)	Max. output (kW)	10.5	10.5	10.5

OBC: On-Board Battery Chargers
*3: if equipped with boost mode

BULB WATTAGE

Light bulb			Bulb type	Wattage
Front	Headlamp	Low	LED	LED
		High	LED	LED
	Turn signal lamp		LED	LED
	Position lamp		LED	LED
	Daytime Running Lamp (DRL)		LED	LED
	Puddle lamp		LED	LED
	Side repeater lamp		LED	LED
Rear	Stop lamp		LED	LED
	Tail lamp		LED	LED
	Turn signal lamp		LED	LED
	Backup lamp		LED	LED
	License plate lamp		LED	LED
	Fog lamp		LED	LED
	High mounted stop lamp		LED	LED
Interior	Map lamp		LED	LED
	Room lamp (without Vision roof)		LED	LED
	Personal lamp (with Vision roof)		LED	LED
	Vanity mirror lamp		LED	LED
	Glove box lamp		LED	LED
	Mood lamp		LED	LED
	Luggage compartment lamp		LED	LED
	Front trunk lamp		LED	LED

TIRES AND WHEELS

Items	Tire size	Wheel size	Inflation pressure kPa (psi)				Wheel bolt torque [kgf·m (lbf·ft, N·m)]
			Normal load		Maximum load		
			Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
Full size tire	235/55 R19	8.0J x 19	250 (36)		260 (38)	290 (42)	14~16 (101~116, 137~157)
	255/45 R20	8.5J x 20					
	255/40 R21	8.5J x 21					

NOTICE

- **Ambient temperature affects the tire pressure (about 7kPa (psi) for every 7°C (12°F) change). If colder temperatures are anticipated, it is permissible to increase cold tire inflation pressure by up to 20 kPa (3 psi) over the specification. If extreme temperature changes are expected, be sure to check and adjust tire pressure accordingly.**
- **Tire inflation pressure decreases with higher elevation, and increases with lower elevation (about 10 kPa (2.4 psi) for every kilometer (or mile) elevation change). Be sure to check and adjust tire pressure accordingly when driving through changing elevations.**
- **Do not exceed the maximum inflation pressure, as found on the sidewall of the tire(s).**

CAUTION

When replacing tires, ALWAYS use the same size, type, brand, construction and tread pattern supplied with the vehicle. If not, it can damage the related parts or make it work irregularly.

LOAD AND SPEED CAPACITY TIRES (FOR EUROPE)

Items	Tire size	Wheel size	Load capacity		Speed capacity	
			LI *1	kg	SS *2	km/h
Full size tire	235/55 R19	8.0J x 19	105	925	W	270
	255/45 R20	8.5J x 20	105	925	W	270
	255/40 R21	8.5J x 21	102	850	Y	300

*1 LI: LOAD INDEX
*2 SS: SPEED SYMBOL

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

g (oz.)

Item		Weight of volume	Classification
Refrigerant	Type A	900±25g (32±0.9 oz.)	R-1234yf
	Type B	950±25g (34±0.9 oz.)	R-134a
Compressor lubricant		190±10 (6.7±0.35)	POE

We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products dealer for more details.

VEHICLE WEIGHT AND LUGGAGE VOLUME

Items	Standard type		Performance type
	2WD	AWD	AWD
Gross vehicle weight	2,475 kg (5,456 lbs.)	2,595 kg (5,720 lbs.)	2,640 kg (5,820 lbs.)
Luggage volume	680 ℓ (24 cu ft)		

Information

Elevator type automated parking is not possible due to the weight of the vehicle.

RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

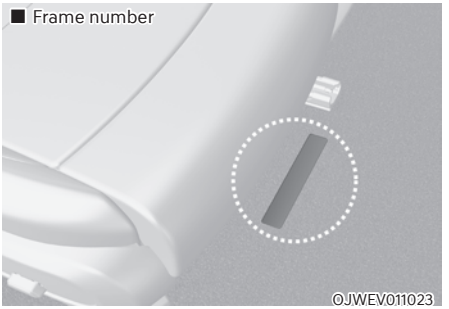
To help achieve proper vehicle performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

Lubricant			Volume	Classification
Reduction gear fluid	2WD	Rear	3.4~3.5 ℓ (3.6~3.7 US qt.)	HK ATF 65 SP4M-1
	AWD	Front	3.2~3.3 ℓ (3.4~3.5 US qt.)	
		Rear	3.4~3.5 ℓ (3.6~3.7 US qt.)	
Coolant	2WD		18.07 ℓ (19.09 US qt.)	Mixture of antifreeze and water (Phosphate-based Ethylene glycol coolant for aluminum radiator)
	AWD	Standard	17.13 ℓ (18.10 US qt.)	
		Performance	17.20 ℓ (18.17 US qt.)	
Brake fluid			As required	SAE J1704 DOT-4 LV, FMVSS 116 DOT-4, ISO 4925 CLASS-6

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

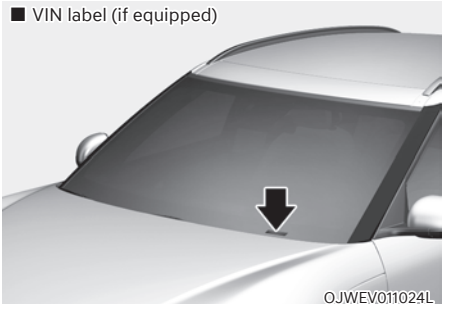
■ Frame number



The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

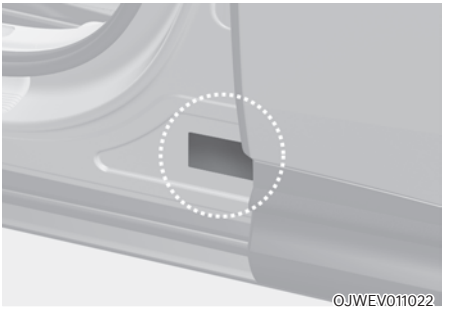
The number is punched on the floor under glove box. To check the number, open the cover.

■ VIN label (if equipped)



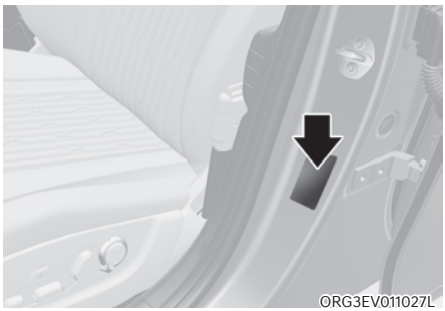
The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the left side dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windshield from outside.

VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL



The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's (or front passenger's) side center pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

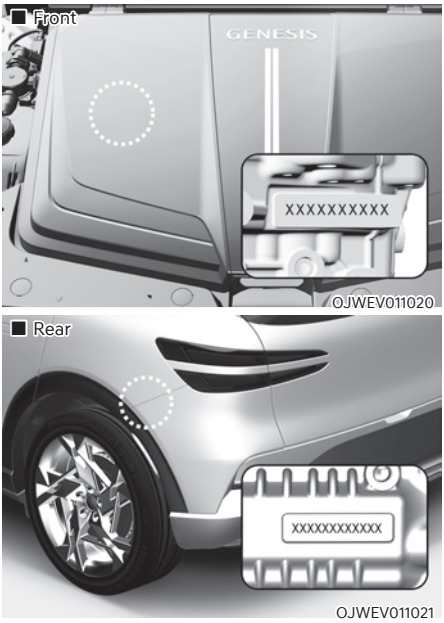
TIRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL



The tires supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

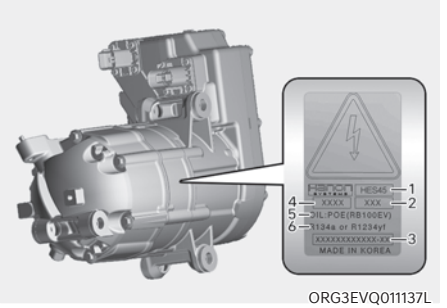
The tire label located on the driver's side center pillar gives the tire pressures recommended for your vehicle.

MOTOR NUMBER



The motor number are stamped as shown in the drawing.

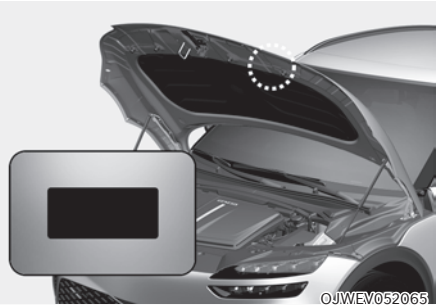
AIR CONDITIONER COMPRESSOR LABEL



ORG3EVQ011137L

A compressor label informs you the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as model (1), serial number (2), supplier part number (3), lot number (4), refrigerant oil (5) and refrigerant (6).

REFRIGERANT LABEL (IF EQUIPPED)


OJWEV052065

You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label located inside of the hood.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Example

The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

Further information including the manufacturer's declaration of conformity is available on Genesis Branded Vehicle web site as follows;

http://service.hyundai-motor.com

OPEN SOURCE SOFTWARE NOTICE

This vehicle contains software with open source licenses.

Open source software information including the source code, copyright notices and referred license terms may be obtained on the website

https://www.genesis.com/worldwide/en/opensource.html

Hyundai Motor Company will provide the open source code to you in storage medium such as CD-ROM for minimum charge covering the cost of performing source distribution upon email request to opensource@genesis.com within a period of 3 years from the date of product purchase.

3. Safety system

Important safety precautions 3-2
- Always wear your seat belt 3-2
- Restrain all children 3-2
- Air bag hazards 3-2
- Driver distraction 3-2
- Control your speed 3-2
- Keep your vehicle in safe condition 3-2

Seats 3-3
- Safety precautions 3-6
- Front seats 3-7
- Rear seats 3-14
- Headrest 3-18
- Seat warmers 3-22
- Air ventilation seats 3-24

Seat belts 3-26
- Seat belt safety precautions 3-26
- Seat belt warning light 3-27
- Seat belt restraint system 3-29
- Pre-Active Seat Belt (PSB) 3-33
- Additional seat belt safety precautions 3-34
- Care of seat belts 3-36

Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-37
- Our recommendation: Children always in the rear 3-37
- Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-38
- Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-40

Air bag - supplemental restraint system 3-50
- Where are the air bags? 3-53
- How does the air bags system operate? 3-58
- What to expect after an air bag inflates 3-61
- Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat 3-62
- Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? 3-63
- SRS care 3-68
- Additional safety precautions 3-69
- Air bag warning labels 3-69

IMPORTANT SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

You will find many safety precautions and recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The safety precautions in this section are among the most important.

Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of accidents. Air bags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with air bags, ALWAYS make sure you and your passengers wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

Restrain all children

All children under age 13 should ride in your vehicle properly restrained in a rear seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in an appropriate Child Restraint System. Larger children should use a booster seat with the lap/shoulder belt until they can use the seat belt properly without a booster seat.

Air bag hazards

While air bags can save lives, they can also cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or who are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. Follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Driver distraction

Driver distraction presents a serious and potentially deadly danger, especially for inexperienced drivers. Safety should be the first concern when behind the wheel and drivers need to be aware of the wide array of potential distractions, such as drowsiness, reaching for objects, eating, personal grooming, other passengers, and using mobile phones.

Drivers can become distracted when they take their eyes and attention off the road or their hands off the wheel to focus on activities other than driving. To reduce your risk of distraction and an accident:

- ALWAYS set up your mobile devices (for example, MP3 players, phones, navigation units, etc.) when your vehicle is parked or safely stopped.
- ONLY use your mobile device when allowed by laws and conditions permit safe use. NEVER text or email while driving. Most countries have laws prohibiting drivers from texting. Some countries and cities also prohibit drivers from using handheld phones.
- NEVER let the use of a mobile device distract you from driving. You have a responsibility to your passengers and others on the road to always drive safely, with your hands on the wheel as well as your eyes and attention on the road.

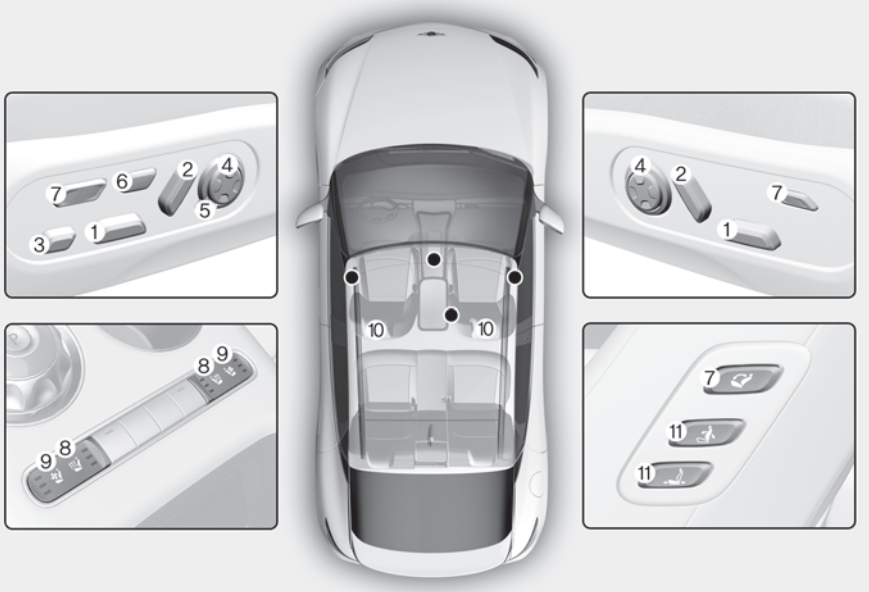
Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

SEATS



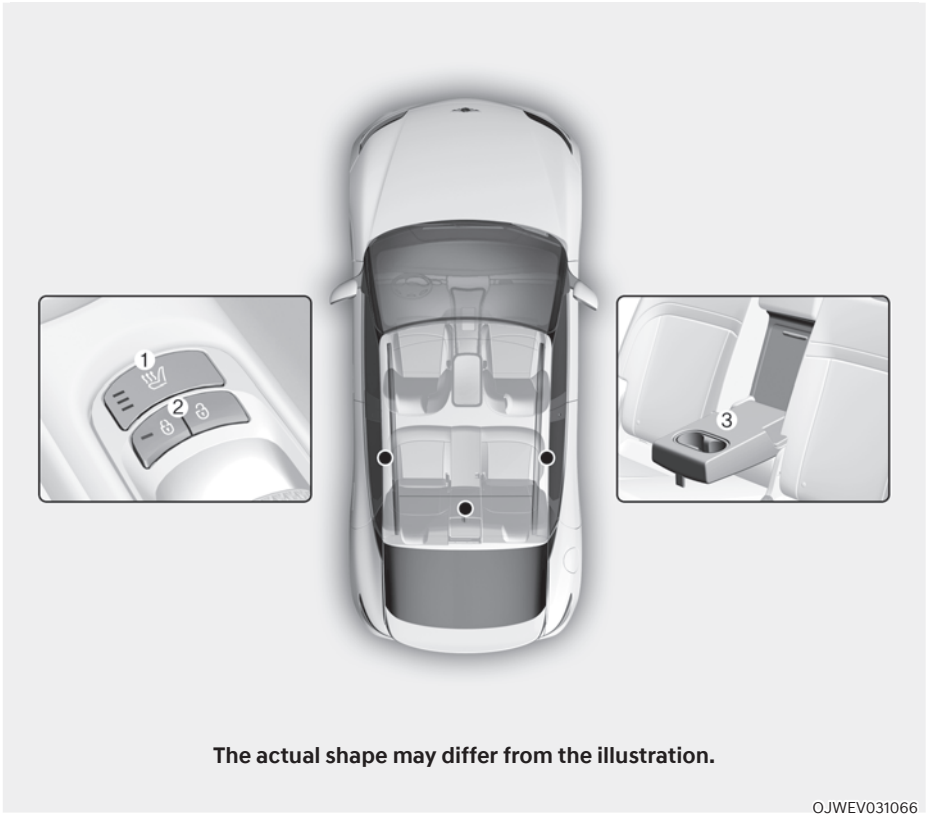
The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJWEV031065

[A]: Driver's side, [B]: Passenger's side

Front seat

(1) Seat sliding forward or rearward / Seat cushion tilt / Seat height
(2) Seatback angle
(3) Seat cushion extension / Seat cushion support
(4) Lumbar support
(5) Seatback bolster
(6) Comfortable stretch
(7) Relaxation comfort seat switch
(8) Seat warmer
(9) Air ventilation seat
(10) Headrest
(11) Walk-in seat switch



The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJWEV031066

Rear seat

(1) Seat warmer
(2) LOCK button
(3) Armrest

OJWEV071312L

Infotainment system

Select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen, you may use various convenience functions.

- Seat position change alert: Detailed information of the seat switch and image is displayed when the seat position moves.
- Heated/Ventilated features
  - Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat): The seat temperature is automatically controlled.
  - Seat heater balance: When the seat heater is on, you may lower the seat heater (warmer) setting, or may turn the seat heater off for either the seatback or seat cushion.
- Seating easy access
  - Steering wheel easy access: Moves the steering wheel when the driver enters or leaves the vehicle.
  - Driver seat easy access: The distance (Normal/Extended/Off) the seat automatically moves when the driver enters or leaves the vehicle may be selected.
  - Passenger seat easy access: Moves the passenger seat when the passenger enters or leaves the vehicle.

i Information

- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**
- **The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.**

Safety precautions

Adjusting the seats so that you are sitting in a safe, comfortable position plays an important role in driver and passenger safety, together with seat belts and air bags, in an accident.

WARNING

Do not use a cushion that reduces friction between the seat and the passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop.

Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt cannot operate properly.

Air bags

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. Sitting too close to an air bag greatly increases the risk of injury in the event the air bag inflates. Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating air bag, take the following precautions:

- **Adjust the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible maintaining the ability to control the vehicle.**
- **Adjust the front passenger seat as far to the rear as possible.**
- **Hold the steering wheel by the rim with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to minimize the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.**
- **NEVER place anything or anyone between you and the air bag.**
- **Do not allow the front passenger to place feet or legs on the dashboard to minimize the risk of leg injuries.**

Seat belts

Always fasten your seat belt before starting any trip. At all times, passengers should sit upright and be properly restrained. Infants and small children must be restrained in appropriate Child Restraint Systems. Children who have outgrown a booster seat and adults must be restrained using the seat belts.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when adjusting your seat belt:

- **NEVER use one seat belt for more than one occupant.**
- **Always position the seatback upright with the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips.**
- **NEVER allow children or small infants to ride on a passenger's lap.**
- **Do not route the seat belt across your neck, across sharp edges, or reroute the shoulder strap away from your body.**
- **Do not allow the seat belt to become caught or jammed.**

Front seats

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so that you can easily control the steering wheel, foot pedals and controls on the instrument panel.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when adjusting your seat:

- **NEVER attempt to adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **Do not place anything under the front seats. Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, causing an accident.**
- **Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position and proper locking of the seatback.**
- **Do not place a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may exit out of the lighter causing a fire.**
- **Use extreme caution when picking up small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the center console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.**
- **If there are occupants in the rear seats, be careful while adjusting the front seat position.**
- **Make sure that the seat is locked in place after the adjustment. If not, the seat might move unexpectedly resulting in an accident.**

CAUTION

To prevent injury:

- **Do not adjust your seat while wearing your seat belt. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on your abdomen.**
- **Do not allow your hands or fingers to get caught in the seat mechanisms while the seat is moving.**

WARNING

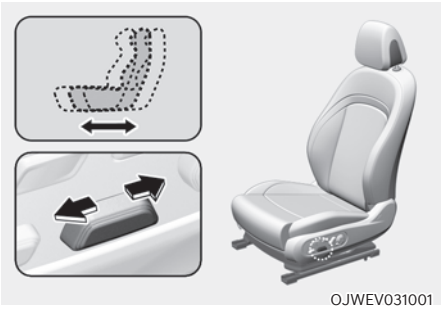
NEVER allow children in the vehicle unattended. The power seats are operable when the vehicle is turned off.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seats:

- **Always stop adjusting the seats when the seat has been adjusted as far forward or rearward as possible.**
- **Do not adjust the seats longer than necessary when the vehicle is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.**
- **Do not operate two or more seats at the same time. This may result in an electrical malfunction.**

Forward and rearward adjustment

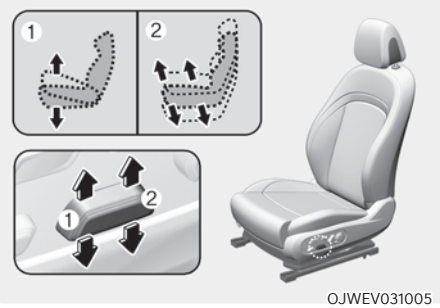


OJWEV031001

To move the seat forward or rearward:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Seat cushion tilt/height adjustment



OJWEV031005

Seat cushion tilt (1)

To change the angle of the front part of the seat cushion:

Push the front portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the front part of the seat cushion.

Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

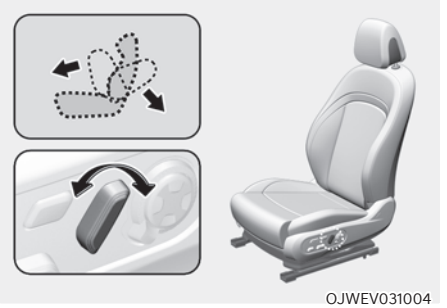
Seat height (2)

To change the height of the seat cushion:

Push the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the height of the seat cushion.

Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Seatback angle adjustment



OJWEV031004

To recline the seatback:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seatback reaches the desired position.

Reclining seatback

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

WARNING

NEVER ride with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.

Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.

Driver and passengers should ALWAYS sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. When the seatback is reclined, the shoulder belt cannot do its job because it will not be snug against your chest. Instead, it will be in front of you. During an accident, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater chance the passenger's hips will slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck will strike the shoulder belt.

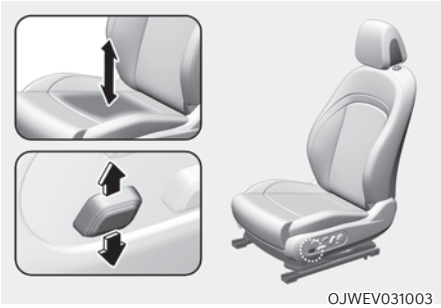
Seat cushion extension adjustment (for driver's seat) (if equipped)

OJWEV031002

To move the front part of the cushion forward or rearward:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seat cushion reaches the desired length.

Seat cushion support adjustment (for driver's seat) (if equipped)

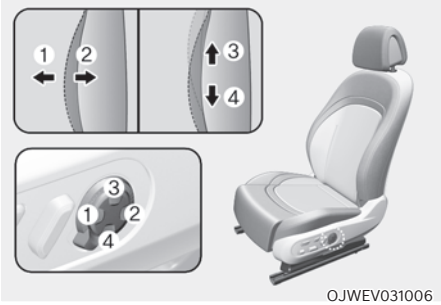


OJWEV031003

To adjust cushion support:

1. Push the control switch up to increase cushion support or down to decrease cushion support.
2. Release the switch once the seat cushion support reaches the desired position.

Lumbar support (if equipped)



OJWEV031006

To adjust the lumbar support:

1. Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support or the rear portion of the switch (2) to decrease support.
2. Press switch (3) or (4) to move the support position up or down.
3. Release the switch once the lumbar support reaches the desired position.

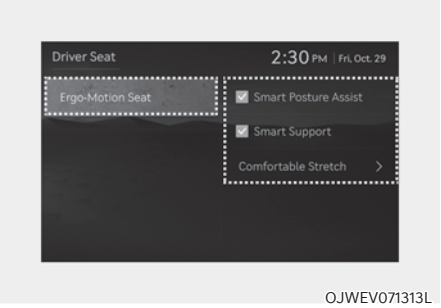
Seat bolster adjustment (for driver's seat) (if equipped)

OJWEV031007

To adjust seat bolster:

1. Push the adjustment lever clockwise, the seatback bolster will be adjusted inward. Push the switch counterclockwise, the seatback bolster will be adjusted outward.
2. Release the lever once the bolster reaches the desired position.

Ergo-motion seat (for driver's seat) (if equipped)



OJWEV071313L

Select 'Seat → Driver Seat → Ergo Motion Seat' from the infotainment system's Settings menu to select and set up supplemental functions for the driver.

WARNING

Before actually using each function, try the functions with the vehicle parked.

Comfortable stretch

Comfortable stretch is a function that helps relieve fatigue of the driver's pelvis and lower back due to driving.

OJWEV031008

Every time you press the button, you may select a mode or turn off the function in the following order.

- Pelvic stretching: The cushion portion moves, helping the left and right movement of the pelvis.
- Lumbar stretching: The seatback portion moves, helping back and forth movement of the lower back.
- Whole Body stretching: The cushion and seatback moves in sequence, helping the whole body reduce fatigue.
- OFF: Turns off Comfortable Stretch.

Also, you can change the operation intensity and operation time from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.

- Intensity: Seat → Driver Seat → Ergo-Motion Seat → Comfortable Stretch → Strong/Normal
- Time: Seat → Driver Seat → Ergo-Motion Seat → Comfortable Stretch → Operational Time → Short(10min.)/ Normal(15min.)/Long(20min.)

Smart Posture assist

After driving for an hour, Posture Assist automatically adjusts the pelvis and back portion of the driver's seat to assist the driver's posture.

You can activate or deactivate Posture Assist function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Seat → Driver Seat → Ergo-Motion Seat → Posture Assist

Smart support

The driver's seat bolster support increases when SPORT mode is selected for Drive Mode or when driving at high speed.

You can activate or deactivate Posture Assist function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Seat → Driver Seat → Ergo-Motion Seat → Smart Support

i Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Walk-in switch (if equipped)

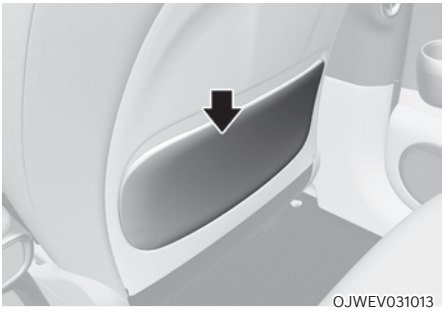
The rear seat passenger may use the switches to control the front passenger seat.

- Sliding forward or rearward:

  Press the switch (1) or (2) to move the front passenger seat forward or rearward.
- Seatback angle:

  Press the switch (3) or (4) to recline the front passenger seatback forward or rearward.

Seatback pocket



The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front seatbacks.

CAUTION

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure occupants.

Pre-active Safety Seat (PSS) (if equipped)

Pre-active Safety Seat enhances crashworthiness and driving stability by pulling up the backrest before collision and hazardous situations when the passenger seat is reclined.

WARNING

Pre-active Safety Seat is a supplementary device. The drivers should keep their eyes on the road and verify that there are no obstructions ahead. If there is not a passenger or the seatbelt is not fastened, the system does not work. In addition, the seat belt interval is increased while a passenger's seat is reclined so that its performance might be degraded.

System Operation

- Crashworthiness

  Pre-active Safety Seat limits passenger's movement and decreases the chance of injury from the early stage of collision by reducing the seat belt interval with putting the seat in the upright position. The operation conditions are as follows.

  - It is considered as a risky situation due to emergency braking.
  - It is considered as a dangerous situation due to the difficulties of vehicle operation.
  - It is considered as a hazardous situation due to vehicle distance detection sensor.

- Driving stability

  Pre-active Safety Seat pulls up the backset while sudden braking or rapid turning to boost the tightness of seat belt in order to prevent leaning forward or laterally and increase driving stability. The operation conditions are as follows.

  - There is a leaning forward of the upper body due to sudden braking.
  - There is a lateral leaning of the upper body because of rapid turning.
  - Driving on the slippery frozen road
  - Driving on the unpaved road
  - High risk of rollover

WARNING

While the system operates automatically, please do not be surprised or misunderstand it as a system failure.

- Inoperative status

  If the passenger adjusts the seat manually, the system stops immediately. However, it restarts to operate after 5 seconds when the hazardous signal continues.

- Malfunction

  If the Pre-active Safety Seat system does not operate properly, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Rear seats

Additional switches for adjusting the front passenger seat

Walk-in seat switch (if equipped)

The rear seat passenger may use the switches to control the front passenger seat.

- Sliding forward or rearward:

  To move the front passenger seat forward, press the switch (1). To move the front passenger seat rearward, press the switch (2).

- Angle adjustment:

  To recline the front passenger seat forward, press the switch (3). To recline the front passenger seat rearward, press the switch (4).

WARNING

Do not adjust the passenger seat when a passenger is seated.

WARNING

Take the following precautions:

- **Adjusting the seats**
  - **NEVER attempt to adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat may suddenly move and may injure the passenger.**
  - **Make sure that the seat is locked in place after the adjustment. If not, the seat might move unexpectedly resulting in an accident.**
- **Folding the seats**
  - **Do not fold the seatback when the seat is occupied (for example, passenger, pets or luggage). It may injure the passenger or pet, or damage the luggage.**
  - **Never allow passengers to sit on top of the folded down seatback while the vehicle is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop.**
  - **Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.**

  - When returning the rear seatback from a folded to an upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly. Ensure that the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback. In an accident or sudden stop, the unlocked seatback could allow cargo to move forward with great force and enter the passenger compartment, which could result in serious injury or death.
- Loading cargo
  - Make sure the vehicle is off, the gear shifted to P (Park), and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the shift button or shift dial is inadvertently pressed or rotated to another position.
  - When cargo is loaded through the rear passenger seats, ensure the cargo is properly secured to prevent it from moving while driving.
- Do not place objects in the rear seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit vehicle occupants in a collision causing serious injury or death.

CAUTION

Do not allow your hands or fingers to get caught in the seat mechanisms while adjusting the seats.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

- Rear seat belts

  Before folding the seatback, insert the seat belt buckle in the holder between the seatback and cushion. And insert the seat belt webbing in the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.
- Cargo

  Be careful when loading cargo through the rear passenger seats to prevent damage to the vehicle interior.

Manual adjustment

OJWEV031082

Seatback angle

To recline the seatback:

1. Pull up the seatback recline lever.
2. Hold the lever and adjust the seatback of the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. The lever MUST return to its original position for the seatback to lock.

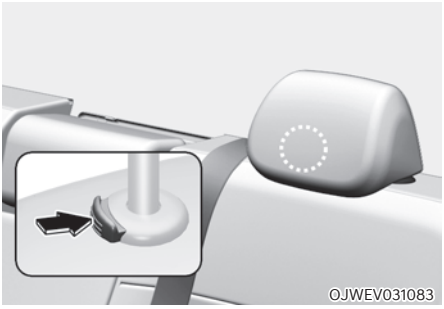
✳ The seatbacks can be folded with the seatback recline lever.

Folding the rear seats

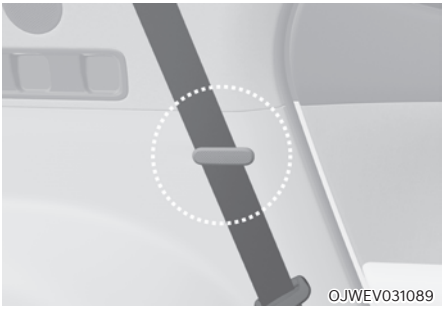
The rear seatbacks can be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

To fold down the rear seatback:

1. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.


OJWEV031083

2. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.


OJWEV031089

3. Route the seat belt webbing through the rear seat belt guides to prevent the belts from being trapped behind or under the seats.

OJWEV031104L

OJWEV031105L

4. Pull up the seatback folding lever, then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle. When you return the seatback to its upright position, always be sure it has locked into position by pushing on the top of the seatback.

OJWEV031085

5. To use the rear seat, lift and unfold the seatback to the upright position by pulling up the folding lever. Push the seatback firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
6. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.

Armrest

The armrest is located in the center of the rear seat.

Grab the handle (1) on the upper end of the arm rest. Then, pull down the handle to use the arm rest.

NOTICE

- **Do not put any items on the rear center seat.Those items may get damaged, when the arm rest is pulled down.**

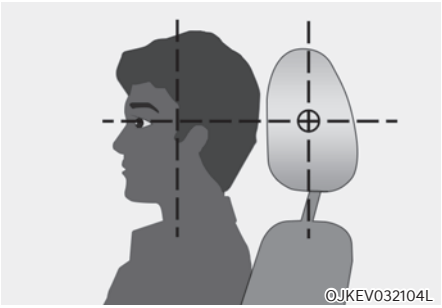
Headrest

The vehicle's front and rear seats have adjustable headrests. The headrests provide comfort for passengers, but more importantly they are designed to help protect passengers from whiplash and other neck and spinal injuries during an accident, especially in a rear impact collision.

WARNING

To help reduce the risk of serious injury or death in an accident, take the following precautions when adjusting your headrests:

- **Always properly adjust the headrests for all passengers BEFORE starting the vehicle.**
- **NEVER let anyone ride in a seat with the headrest removed or reversed.**



- **Adjust the headrests so the middle of the headrest is at the same height as the height of the top of the eyes.**
- **NEVER adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat when the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Adjust the headrest as close to the passenger's head as possible. Do not use a seat cushion that holds the body away from the seatback.**
- **Make sure the headrest locks into position after adjusting it.**

WARNING

OJX1039115

When sitting on the rear seat, do not adjust the height of the headrest to the lowest position.

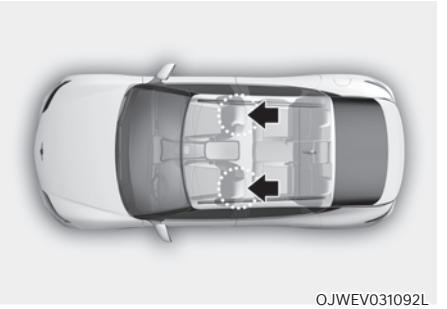
CAUTION

When there is no occupant in the rear seats, adjust the height of the headrest to the lowest position. The rear seat headrest can reduce the visibility of the rear area.

NOTICE

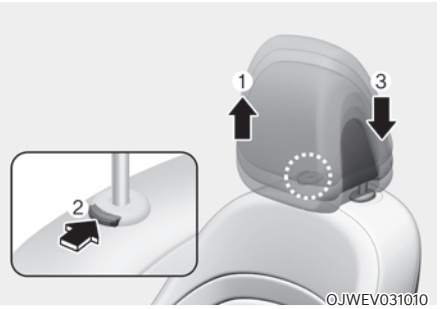
To prevent damage, NEVER hit or pull on the headrests.

Front seat headrests



OJWEV031092L

The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with adjustable headrests for the passengers safety and comfort.



OJWEV031010

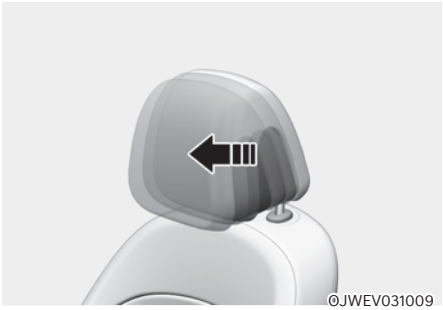
Adjusting the height up and down

To raise the headrest:

1. Pull it up to the desired position (1).

To lower the headrest:

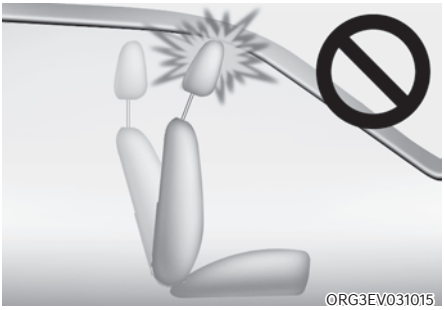
1. Push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
2. Lower the headrest to the desired position (3).



Forward and rearward adjustment

The headrest can be adjusted forward to 3 different positions by pulling the headrest forward to the desired detent. To adjust the headrest to it's furthest rearwards position, pull it fully forward to the farthest position and release it.

NOTICE



If you recline the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.

Removal/Reinstall

To remove the headrest:

1. Recline the seatback (2) with the seatback angle switch (1).
2. Raise the headrest as far as it can go.
3. Press the headrest release button (3) while pulling the headrest up (4).

WARNING

NEVER allow anyone to travel in a seat with the headrest removed.

OJWEV031093L

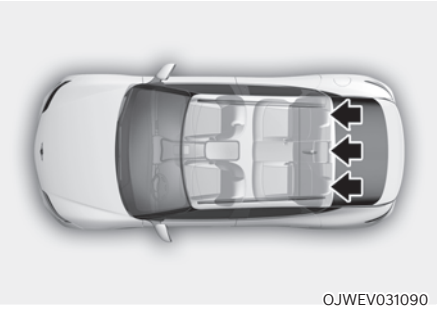
To reinstall the headrest :

1. Recline the seatback.
2. Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes while pressing the release button (1).
3. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.
4. Recline the seatback (4) with the seatback angle switch (3).

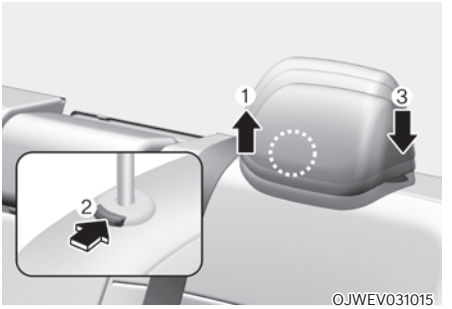
WARNING

Always make sure the headrest locks into position after reinstalling and adjusting it properly.

Rear seat headrests


OJWEV031090

The rear seats are equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the passenger's safety and comfort.



OJWEV031015

Adjusting the height up and down

To raise the headrest:

1. Pull it up to the desired position (1).

To lower the headrest:

1. Push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
2. Lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

Seat warmers

Seat warmers are provided to warm the seats during cold weather.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the seat warmers OFF.

WARNING

The seat warmers can cause a SERIOUS BURN, even at low temperatures and especially if used for long periods of time.

Passengers must be able to feel if the seat is becoming too warm so they can turn it off, if needed.

People who cannot detect temperature change or pain to the skin should use extreme caution, especially the following types of passengers:

- **Infants, children, elderly or disabled persons, or hospital outpatients.**
- **People with sensitive skin or who burn easily.**
- **Fatigued individuals.**
- **Intoxicated individuals.**
- **People taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness.**

WARNING

NEVER place anything on the seat that insulates against heat when the seat warmer is in operation, such as a blanket or seat cushion. This may cause the seat warmer to overheat, causing a burn or damage to the seat.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seat warmers and seats:

- **Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol or gasoline to clean the seats.**
- **Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers.**
- **Do not change the seat cover. It may damage the seat warmer.**

Front seat warmers

- While the vehicle is running, press either of the seat warmer switches to warm the driver's seat or front passenger's seat.
- Each time you press either of the seat warmer switches, Each time you touch the icon, the temperature setting of the seat is changed as follows :

- Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)

  The seat warmer automatically controls the seat temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the vehicle is running.

  To use this function, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

  - Setup → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings → Seat Warmer/Ventilation
- Seat Heater Balance

  You may lower the seat warmer setting, or may turn the seat warmer off for either the seatback or seat cushion, when the seat warmer is on.

  To use this function, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

  - Setup → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Seat Heater Balance
- When pressing the seat warmer switches for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat warmer operating, the seat warmer will turn OFF.
- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position. However, if the Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings function is ON, the driver's seat warmer will turn on and off depending on the ambient temperature.

Rear seat warmers (if equipped)

- While the vehicle is running, press either of the seat warmer switches to warm the rear seat.
- Each time you press the switch, the temperature setting of the seat is changed as follows :

OFF → HIGH → MEDIUM → LOW

You may manually push the switch to increase seat temperature. However, the seat temperature is automatically adjusted again.

- When pressing the switch for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat warmer operating, the seat warmer will turn OFF.
- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position.

Air ventilation seats

The air ventilation seats are provided to cool the front seats by blowing air through small vent holes on the surface of the seat cushions and seatbacks.

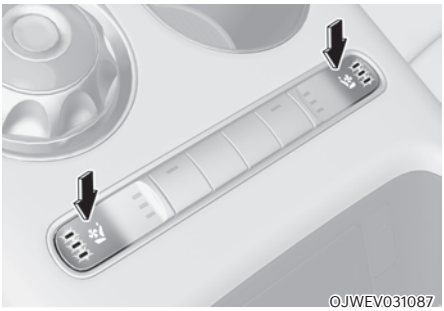
When the operation of the air ventilation seat is not needed, keep the air ventilation seats OFF.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the air ventilation seats:

- **Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol or gasoline to clean the seats.**
- **Avoid spilling liquids on the surface of the front seats and seatbacks; this may cause the air vent holes to become blocked and not work properly.**
- **Do not place materials such as plastic bags or newspapers under the seats. They may block the air intake causing the air vents to not work properly.**
- **Do not change the seat covers. It may damage the air ventilation seat.**
- **If the air vents do not operate, restart the vehicle. If there is no change, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer Genesis Branded products.**

Front air ventilation seats (if equipped)



- While the vehicle is running, press either of the air ventilation switches to cool the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.
- Each time you press the air ventilation switches, the airflow changes as follows:

OFF → HIGH → MEDIUM → LOW

- If the air ventilation seat is positioned at HIGH, the airflow speed will increase according to vehicle speed.
- Use the air ventilation seat with the air conditioning on for more effective ventilation.
- It may take 3~5 minutes after switch operation to feel the temperature change.
- Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)

  The air ventilation seat automatically controls the seat temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the vehicle is running.

  To use this function, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

  - Setup → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings → Seat Warmer/Ventilation
- When Pressing the air ventilation switches for more than 1.5 seconds with the air ventilation seat operating, the operation will turn OFF.
- The air ventilation seats defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position. However, if the Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings function is ON, the driver's seat warmer will turn on and off depending on the ambient temperature.

SEAT BELTS

This section describes how to use the seat belts properly. It also describes some of the things not to do when using seat belts.

Seat belt safety precautions

Always fasten your seat belt and make sure all passengers have fastened their seat belts before starting any trip. Air bags are designed to supplement the seat belt as an additional safety device, but they are not a substitute. Most countries require all occupants of a vehicle to wear seat belts.

WARNING

Seat belts must be used by ALL passengers whenever the vehicle is moving. Take the following precautions when adjusting and wearing seat belts:

- **Children under the age of 13 should be properly restrained in the rear seats.**
- **Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat, unless the air bag is deactivated. If a child is seated in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible and properly restrain them in the seat.**
- **NEVER allow an infant or child to be carried on an occupant's lap.**
- **NEVER ride with the seatback reclined when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Do not allow children to share a seat or seat belt.**
- **Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back.**
- **Never wear a seat belt over fragile objects. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the seat belt can damage it.**
- **Do not use the seat belt if it is twisted. A twisted seat belt will not protect you properly in an accident.**
- **Do not use a seat belt if the webbing or hardware is damaged.**
- **Do not latch the seat belt into the buckles of other seats.**
- **NEVER unfasten the seat belt while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **Make sure there is nothing in the buckle interfering with the seat belt latch mechanism. This may prevent the seat belt from fastening securely.**
- **No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.**

WARNING

Damaged seat belts and seat belt assemblies will not operate properly. Always replace:

- **Frayed, contaminated, or damaged webbing.**
- **Damaged hardware.**
- **The entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in an accident, even if damage to webbing or assembly is not apparent.**

Seat belt warning light

Driver's seat belt warning

As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Start/Stop button is in the ON position regardless of belt fastening.

If the driver's seat belt is not fastened, the warning chime will sound for about 6 seconds and the waning light will stay ON until the driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the seat belt is not fastened, when vehicle speed is above 20 km/h (12 mph), the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds. (warning chime will sound in three stages)

Front passenger's seat belt warning

As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger's seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Start/Stop button is in the ON position regardless of belt fastening.

If the passenger's seat belt is not fastened, the waning light will stay ON until the passenger's seat belt is fastened.

If the seat belt is not fastened, when vehicle speed is above 20 km/h (12 mph), the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds. (warning chime will sound in three stages)

WARNING

Riding in an improper position adversely affects the front passenger's seat belt warning system. It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger to properly be seated as instructed in this manual.

Information

- **Although the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for 6 seconds.**
- **The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.**

Rear passenger's seat belt warning (if equipped)

OJWEV031074

Rear outboard seat seatbelt

As a reminder to the rear outboard seat passengers, the corresponding seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Start/Stop button is in the ON position regardless of belt fastening.

And then, if the seat belt is still not fastened while driving, or unfastened while driving, it will operate as follows depending on vehicle speed.

- Below 20 km/h (12 mph):

The corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate until the seatbelt is fastened.

- Above 20 km/h (12 mph):

The corresponding seat belt warning light will blink and the warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds, and the warning light will continue to illuminate until the seatbelt is fastened.

Rear center seatbelt

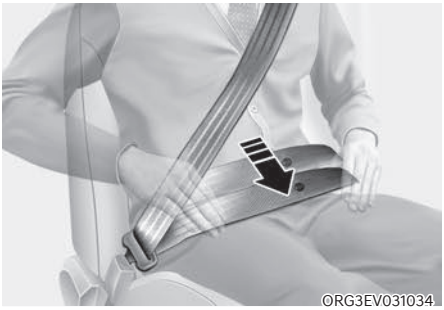
With the Start/Stop button in the ON position, if the second row center seat passenger's seat belt is not fastened, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate for 70 seconds. But, if the seatbelt is fastened after 6 seconds, the corresponding seat belt warning light will immediately turn off.

If the seat belt was fastened, and was unfastened while driving below 20 km/h (12 mph), the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate for 70 seconds.

If the seat belt was fastened, and was unfastened while driving above 20 km/h (12 mph), the corresponding seat belt warning light will blink and the warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds.

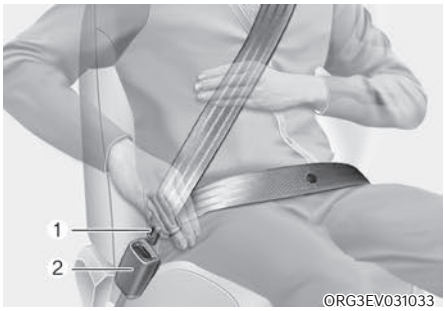
Seat belt restraint system

WARNING


ORG3EV031034

Improperly positioned seat belts may increase the risk of serious injury in an accident. Take the following precautions when adjusting the seat belt:

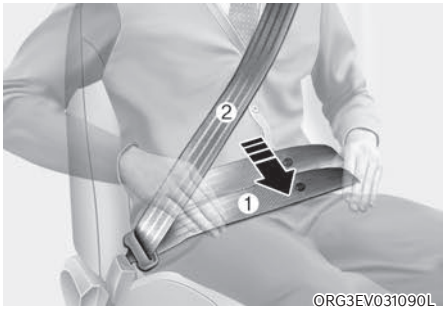
- **Position the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible across your hips, not on your waist, so that it fits snugly. This allows your strong pelvic bones to absorb the force of the crash, reducing the chance of internal injuries.**
- **Position one arm under the shoulder belt and the other over the belt, as shown in the illustration.**
- **Always position the shoulder belt anchor into the locked position at the appropriate height.**
- **Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face.**



ORG3EV031033

To fasten your seat belt:

Pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible “click” when the tab locks into the buckle.



ORG3EV031090L

You should place the lap belt (1) portion across your hips and the shoulder belt (2) portion across your chest.

The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and move with you.

If there is a sudden stop or impact, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

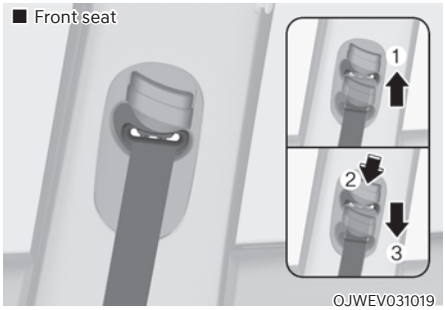
NOTICE

If you are not able to smoothly pull enough of the seat belt out from the retractor, firmly pull the seat belt out and release it. After release, you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.

Height adjustment

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of the four different positions for maximum comfort and safety.

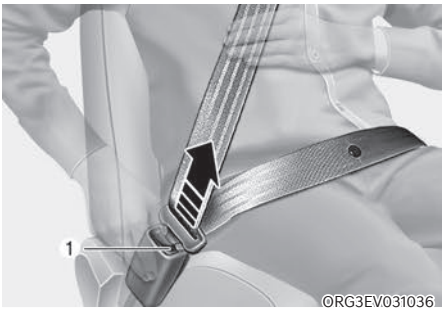
The shoulder portion should be adjusted so it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door, not over your neck.



To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) while pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

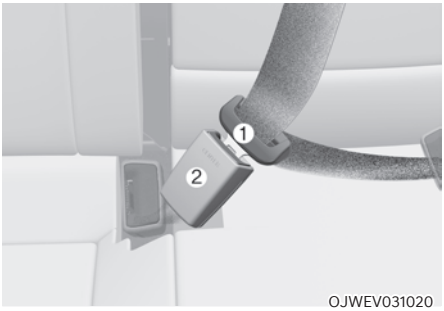


To release your seat belt:

Press the release button (1) in the locking buckle.

When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor. If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

Rear center seat belt (if equipped)



OJWEV031020

1. Take out the buckle (2), which is stored between the seat/seatback cushions.
2. Insert the metal plate (1) into the buckle (2), until it clicks.

   You can make sure its secure fastening by pulling the seatbelt webbing. The buckle with 'CENTER' mark should be used for the 3-point seatbelt.
3. Restore the buckle between the seat/seatback cushion after unfastening the seatbelt.

Pre-tensioner seat belt

OJX1039118

[1]: Retractor pre-tensioner seat belt Front seat and second row outboard seat (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's and rear passengers Pre-tensioner Seat Belts (Retractor Pre-tensioner). The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain frontal or side collision(s). The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in crashes where the frontal or side collision(s) is severe enough, together with the air bags or sometimes it activate alone when wearing a seat belt.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position.

In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

If the system senses excessive tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner system activates, the load limiter inside the retractor pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt (if equipped with load limiter).

WARNING

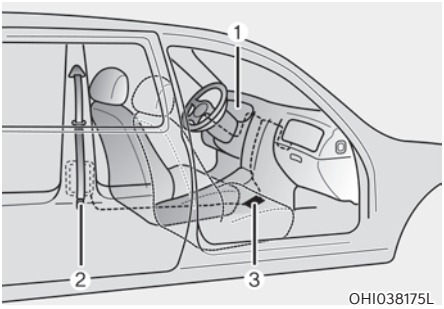
- **Always wear your seat belt and sit properly in your seat.**
- **Do not use the seat belt if it is loose or twisted. A loose or twisted seat belt will not protect you properly in an accident.**
- **Do not place anything near the buckle. This may adversely affect the buckle and cause it to function improperly.**
- **Always replace your pre-tensioners after activation or an accident.**
- **NEVER inspect, service, repair or replace the pre-tensioners yourself. We recommend that you have the pre-tensioners inspected, serviced, repaired or replaced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Do not hit the seat belt assemblies.**

WARNING

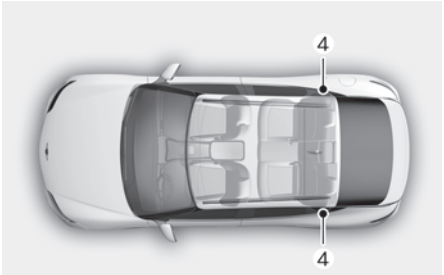
Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated. When the pre-tensioner seat belt mechanism deploys during a collision, the pre-tensioner can become hot and can burn you.

CAUTION

Body work on the front area of the vehicle may damage the pre-tensioner seat belt system. Therefore, we recommend the system to be serviced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.



OHI038175L



OJWEV031094L

The Pre-Tensioner Seat Belt System consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration above:

(1) SRS air bag warning light
(2) Retractor pre-tensioner
(3) SRS control module
(4) Rear Retractor pre-tensioner (if equipped)

NOTICE

The sensor that activates the SRS control module is connected with the pre–tensioner seat belts. The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument cluster will illuminate for approximately three to six seconds after the Start/Stop button is in the ON position, and then it should turn off.

If the pre-tensioner is not working properly, the warning light will illuminate even if the SRS air bag is not malfunctioning. If the warning light does not illuminate, stays illuminated or illuminates when the vehicle is being driven, we recommend the pre-tensioner seat belts and/or SRS control module be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

Information

- **Pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in certain frontal or side collisions or rollover situations (if equipped with rollover sensor).**
- **When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.**
- **Although it is non-toxic, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be inhaled for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.**

Pre-Active Seat Belt (PSB) (if equipped)

The purpose of the Pre-Active Seat Belt is to tighten the seat belt when a collision is sensed, during emergency braking, or when a loss of control is sensed.

NOTICE

Pre-Active Seat Belt is a supplementary system. Pre-Active Seat Belt activates only when the passenger is wearing his/her seat belt.

Pre-Active Seat Belt operation

In order to help maximize the safety of the passenger, Pre-Active Seat Belt system may operate in the situations below.

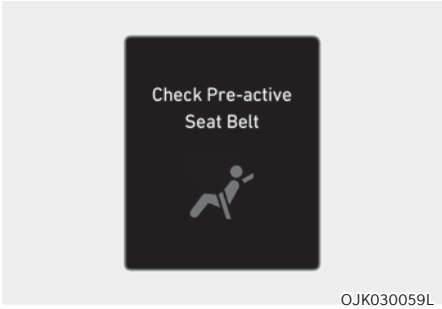
- Full retraction

  The seat belt is tightened when:
  - Emergency braking situation occurs
  - Losing control of the vehicle
  - The vehicle senses a collision
  - Driving on a slippery frozen road
  - Driving on a rough road with severe impact
  - Unstable rolling of the vehicle occurs
- Slack removal

  Tightens a loose seat belt if vehicle speed is over 15 km/h (9.3 mph).
- Belt parking

  Tightens a loose seat belt when the seat belt is unfastened.

Warning message



OJK030059L

Check Pre-Active Seat Belt

The Pre-Active Seat Belt warning message will appear if there is a problem with your Pre-Active Seat Belt.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products if the warning message comes on while the vehicle is in motion. When the Pre-Active Seat Belt warning message disappears, the master warning light (⚠) will illuminate.

Additional seat belt safety precautions

Seat belt use during pregnancy

The seat belt should always be used during pregnancy. The best way to protect your unborn child is to protect yourself by always wearing the seat belt.

Pregnant women should always wear a lap-shoulder seat belt. Place the shoulder belt across your chest, routed between your breasts and away from your neck. Place the lap belt below your belly so that it fits SNUGLY across your hips and pelvic bone, under the rounded part of the belly.

⚠ WARNING

- **A pregnant woman or a patient is more vulnerable to any impacts on the abdomen during an abrupt stop or accident. If you are in an accident while pregnant, consult your doctor.**
- **To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to an unborn child during an accident, pregnant women should NEVER place the lap portion of the seat belt above or over the area of the abdomen where the unborn child is located.**

Seat belt use and children

Infant and small children

Most countries have Child Restraint System laws which require children to travel in approved Child Restraint System devices, including booster seats. The age at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling. Infant and Child Restraint System must be properly placed and installed in a rear seat.

For more information refer to the “Child Restraint Systems” section in this chapter.

WARNING

ALWAYS properly restrain infants and small children in a Child Restraint System appropriate for the child's height and weight.

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to a child and other passengers, NEVER hold a child in your lap or arms when the vehicle is moving. The violent forces created during an accident will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior of the vehicle.

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any Child Restraint System, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets Safety Standard of your country.

The Child Restraint System must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the Child Restraint System for this information. Refer to "Child Restraint Systems" section in this chapter.

Larger children

Children under age 13 and who are too large for a booster seat should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. A seat belt should lie across the upper thighs and be snug across the shoulder and chest to restrain the child safely. Check belt fit periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. In the event of an accident, children are afforded the best safety restrained by a proper Child Restraint System in the rear seats.

If a larger child over age 13 must be seated in the front seat, the child must be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the center of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck, they need to be returned to an appropriate booster seat in the rear seat.

WARNING

- **Always make sure larger children's seat belts are worn and properly adjusted.**
- **NEVER allow the shoulder belt to contact the child's neck or face.**
- **Do not allow more than one child to use a single seat belt.**

Seat belt use and injured people

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. Consult a physician for specific recommendations.

One person per belt

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

Do not lie down

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and/or air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly.

During an accident, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seat back is reclined, the greater the chance for the passenger's hips to slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck to strike the shoulder belt.

WARNING

- **NEVER ride with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.**
- **Driver and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.**

Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

Periodic inspection

All seat belts should be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

Keep belts clean and dry

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

When to replace seat belts

The entire seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. We recommend that you consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM (CRS)

Our recommendation: Children always in the rear

WARNING

Always properly restrain children in the vehicle. Children of all ages are safer when riding in the rear seats. Never place a rearward-facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the air bag is deactivated.

Children under age 13 should always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimize the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden maneuver.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Children too large for a Child Restraint System must use the seat belts provided.

Most countries have regulations which require children to travel in approved Child Restraint Systems.

The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling.

Child Restraint Systems must be properly installed in the vehicle seat. Always use a commercially available Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of your country.

Child Restraint System (CRS)

Infants and younger children must be restrained in an appropriate rearward-facing or forward-facing CRS that has first been properly secured to the seat of the vehicle. Read and comply with the instructions for installation and use provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

WARNING

- **Always follow the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.**
- **Always properly restrain your child in the Child Restraint System.**
- **Do not use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate protection in an accident.**
- **After an accident, we recommend a retailer of Genesis Branded products to check the Child Restraint System, seat belts, ISOFIX anchorages and top-tether anchorages.**

Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)

When selecting a Child Restraint System for your child, always:

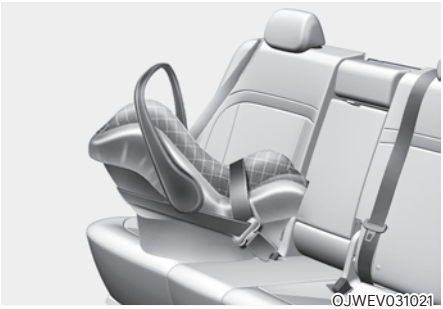
- Make sure the Child Restraint System has a label certifying that it meets applicable Safety Standards of your country.

  A Child Restraint System may only be installed if it was approved in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R44 or ECE-R129.
- Select a Child Restraint System based on your child's height and weight. The required label or the instructions for use typically provide this information.
- Select a Child Restraint System that fits the vehicle seating position where it will be used.
- Read and comply with the warnings and instructions for installation and use provided with the Child Restraint System.

Child Restraint System types

There are three main types of Child Restraint Systems: rearward-facing, forward-facing and booster Child Restraint Systems.

They are classified according to the child's age, height and weight.



Rearward-facing Child Restraint System

A rearward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the child. The harness system holds the child in place, and in an accident, acts to keep the child positioned in the Child Restraint Systems and reduce the stress to the fragile neck and spinal cord.

All children under the age of one year must always ride in a rearward-facing Child Restraint System. There are different types of rearward-facing Child Restraint Systems: infant-only Child Restraint Systems can only be used rearward-facing. Convertible and 3-in-1 Child Restraint Systems typically have higher height and weight limits for the rearward-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rearward-facing for a longer period of time.

Keep using Child Restraint Systems in the rearward-facing position as long as children fit within the height and weight limits allowed by the Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

Forward-facing Child Restraint System

A forward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing Child Restraint System with a harness until they reach the top height or weight limit allowed by your Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

Once your child outgrows the forward-facing Child Restraint System, your child is ready for a booster seat.

Booster seats

A booster seat is a Child Restraint System designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system. A booster seat positions the seat belt so that it fits properly over the stronger parts of your child's body. Keep your children in booster seats until they are big enough to fit in a seat belt properly.

For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie comfortable across the upper thighs, not the stomach. The shoulder belt should lie comfortable across the shoulder and chest and not across the neck or face. Children under age 13 must always be properly restrained to minimize the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden maneuver.

Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)

WARNING

Before installing your Child Restraint System always:

Read and follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

Failure to follow all warnings and instructions could increase the risk of the SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH if an accident occurs.

WARNING

If the vehicle headrest prevents proper installation of a Child Restraint System, the headrest of the respective seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.

After selecting a proper Child Restraint System for your child and checking that the Child Restraint System fits properly on the seating position, there are three general steps for a proper installation:

- **Properly secure the Child Restraint System to the vehicle.** All Child Restraint Systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt or lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the ISOFIX top-tether and/or ISOFIX anchorage and/or with the support leg.
- **Make sure the Child Restraint System is firmly secured.** After installing a Child Restraint System to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat. A Child Restraint System secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, some side-to-side movement can be expected.

  When installing a Child Restraint System, adjust the vehicle seat and seatback (up and down, forward and rearward) so that your child fits in the Child Restraint System in a confortable manner.
- **Secure the child in the Child Restraint System.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the Child Restraint System according to the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions.

CAUTION

A Child Restraint System in a closed vehicle can become very hot. To prevent burns, check the seating surface and buckles before placing your child in the Child Restraint System.

Suitability of each seating position for belted & ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems (CRS)according to UN regulations (for Europe)

(Information for use by vehicle users and CRS manufacturers)

- Yes: Suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- No: Not suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- "-": Not applicable
- The table is based on LHD vehicle. Except for the front passenger seat, the table is valid for RHD vehicle.

  For RHD vehicle front passenger of number 1 , please use information for the seating position number 3.

✳ **F**: Forward facing, **R**: Rearward facing

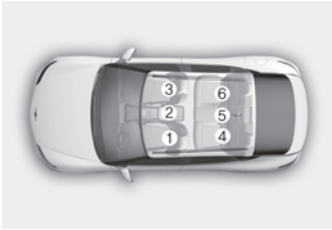
CRS categories		Seating positions					
		1,2	3		4	5	6
			Airbag ON	Airbag OFF			
Universal belted CRS	All mass groups	-	No	Yes[1)] F, R	Yes F, R	Yes F, R	Yes F, R
i-size CRS	ISOFIX CRF: F2, F2X, R1, R2	-	No	No	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R
Carry-cot (ISOFIX lateral facing CRS)	ISOFIX CRF: L1, L2	-	No	No	No	No	No
ISOFIX infant* CRS (* : ISOFIX baby CRS)	ISOFIX CRF: R1	-	No	No	Yes R	No	Yes R
ISOFIX toddler CRS - small	ISOFIX CRF: F2,F2X, R2,R2X	-	No	No	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R
ISOFIX toddler CRS – large* (* : not booster seats)	ISOFIX CRF: F3,R3	-	No	No	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R
Booster Seat – reduced Width	ISO CRF: B2	-	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Booster Seat – full Width	ISO CRF: B3	-	No	No	Yes	No	Yes

Note[1)]: To install Universal CRS, 1st row passenger seat height should be at its highest possible position.

✳ Never place a rearward facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the air bag is deactivated.

✳ For semi-universal or vehicle specific CRS (ISOFIX or belted CRS), please see the vehicle list provided in the manual of CRS.

✳ If the vehicle headrest prevents proper installation of a CRS, the headrest of the seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.

Seat Number	Position in the vehicle	Seating positions
1	Front left	 OJWEV031095L
2	Front center	
3	Front right	
4	2nd row left	
5	2nd row center	
6	2nd row right	

Recommended CRS (for Europe)

(Information for use by vehicle users and CRS manufacturers)

Child Height or Mass Group	Name	Manufacturer	Type of Fixation	ECE Approval Number
40 - 83 cm	BABY-SAFE2 i-SIZE and BABY-SAFE i-SIZE BASE	Britax Römer	ISOFIX with support leg, rearward facing	E1*129R00/ 05*0008
76 – 105 cm	Trifix2 i-Size	Britax Römer	ISOFIX and top-tether	E1*129R02/ 06*0015
100 – 150 cm	KidFix 2 R	Britax Römer	ISOFIX and vehicle belt, using CRS lap belt guide	E1*129R03/ 04*0061
Group III	Junior III /Booster Basic	Graco	Vehicle belt	R44: E11-0444165

CRS Manufacturer information
Britax Römer: https://www.britax-roemer.com
Graco: https://www.gracobaby.com

Suitability of each seating position for belted & ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems according to UN regulations (except Europe)

(Information for vehicle users and CRS manufacturers)

- Yes: Suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- No: Not suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- ''-'': Not applicable
- The table is based on left-hand drive vehicle. Except for the front passenger seat, the table is valid for right-hand drive vehicle. For right-hand drive vehicle front passenger seat, please use information for the seating position number 3.

CRS categories		Seating positions					
		1,2	3		4	5	6
			Airbag ON	Airbag OFF			
Universal belted CRS	All mass groups	-	No	Yes[1)] F, R	Yes F, R	Yes F, R	Yes F, R
i-size CRS	ISOFIX CRF: F2, F2X, R1, R2	-	No	No	No	No	No
Carry-cot (ISOFIX lateral facing CRS)	ISOFIX CRF: L1, L2	-	No	No	No	No	No
ISOFIX infant* CRS (* : ISOFIX baby CRS)	ISOFIX CRF: R1	-	No	No	Yes R	No	Yes R
ISOFIX toddler CRS - small	ISOFIX CRF: F2,F2X, R2,R2X	-	No	No	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R
ISOFIX toddler CRS – large* (* : not booster seats)	ISOFIX CRF: F3,R3	-	No	No	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R
Booster Seat – reduced Width	ISO CRF: B2	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
Booster Seat – full Width	ISO CRF: B3	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes

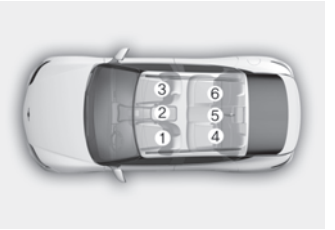
✳ **F**: Forward facing, **R**: Rearward facing

Note[1)]: To install Universal CRS, 1st row passenger seat height should be at its highest position.

✳ Never place a rearward facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the air bag is deactivated.

✳ For semi-universal or vehicle specific CRS(ISOFIX or belted CRS), please see the vehicle list provided in the manual of CRS.

✳ If the vehicle headrest prevents proper installation of a CRS, the headrest of the seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.

Seat number	Position in the vehicle	Seating positions
1	Front left	 OJWEV031095L
2	Front center	
3	Front right	
4	Second row left	
5	Second row center	
6	Second row right	

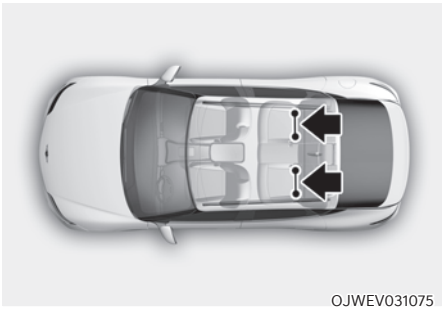
ISOFIX anchorage and top-tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorage system) for children

The ISOFIX system holds a Child Restraint System during driving and in an accident. This system is designed to make installation of the Child Restraint System easier and reduce the possibility of improperly installing your Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the Child Restraint System to the rear seats.

ISOFIX anchorages are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each ISOFIX seating position that will accommodate a Child Restraint System with lower attachments.

To use the ISOFIX system in your vehicle, you must have a Child Restraint System with ISOFIX attachments.

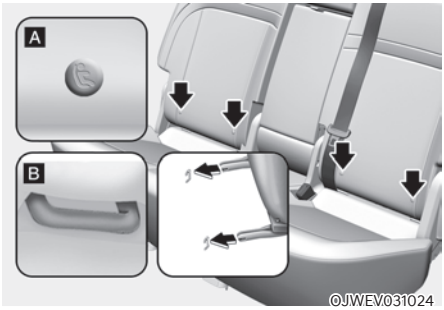
The Child Restraint System manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the Child Restraint System with its attachments for the ISOFIX anchorages.


OJWEV031075

ISOFIX anchorages have been provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are shown in the illustration.

WARNING

Do not attempt to install a Child Restraint System using ISOFIX anchorages in the rear center seating position. There are no ISOFIX anchorages provided for this seat. Using the outboard seat anchorages, for the CRS installation on the rear center seating position, can damage the anchorages.



[A]: ISOFIX Anchorage Position Indicator (Type A- , Type B-),
[B]: ISOFIX Anchorage

ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the rear seat left and right outboard seating positions, indicated by the symbols.

Securing a Child Restraint System with the "ISOFIX Anchorage System"

To install an i-Size or ISOFIX-compatible Child Restraint System in either of the rear outboard seating positions:

1. Move the seat belt buckle away from the ISOFIX anchorages.
2. Move any other objects away from the anchorages that could prevent a secure connection between the Child Restraint System and the ISOFIX anchorages.

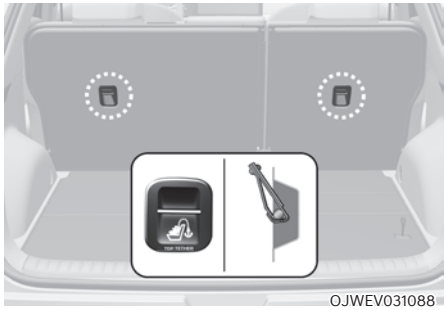
3. Place the Child Restraint System on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the ISOFIX anchorages according to the instructions provided by the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
4. Follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System's manufacturer for proper installation and connection of the ISOFIX attachments on the Child Restraint System to the ISOFIX anchorages.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using the ISOFIX system:

- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.**
- **To prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts, buckle all unused rear seat belts and retract the seat belt webbing behind the child. Children can be strangled if a shoulder belt becomes wrapped around their neck and the seat belt tightens.**
- **NEVER attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single anchorage. This could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or break.**
- **Always have the ISOFIX system inspected by your dealer after an accident. An accident can damage the ISOFIX system and may not properly secure the Child Restraint System.**

Securing a Child Restraint System seat with "Top-tether Anchorage" system


OJWEV031088

Top-tether anchorages for Child Restraint Systems are located on the package tray.

OJWEV031023

1. Route the Child Restraint System top-tether strap over the seatback. Placing the top tether strap, please follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
2. Connect the top-tether strap to the top-tether anchorage, then tighten the top-tether strap according to the instructions of your Child Restraint System's manufacturer to firmly attach the Child Restraint System to the seat.

WARNING

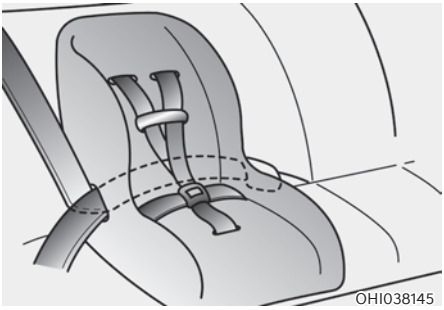
Take the following precautions when installing the top-tether:

- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.**
- **NEVER attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single ISOFIX top-tether anchorage. This could cause the anchorage or attachment to come loose or break.**
- **Do not attach the top-tether to anything other than the correct top-tether anchorage. It may not work properly if attached to something else.**
- **Child Restraint System anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted Child Restraint System.**

  Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Securing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt

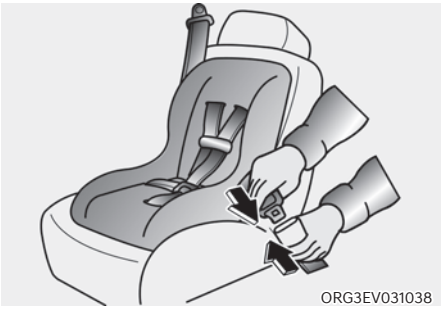
When not using the ISOFIX system, all Child Restraint Systems must be secured to a rear seat with the lap part of a lap/ shoulder belt.



Installing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt

To install a Child Restraint System on the rear seats, do the following:

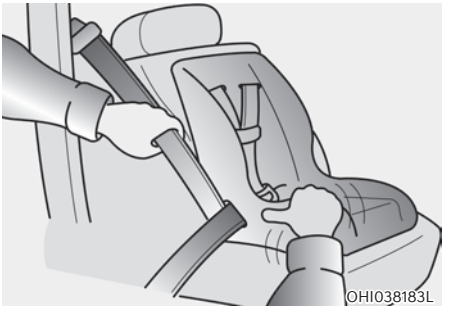
1. Place the Child Restraint System on a rear seat and route the lap/ shoulder belt around or through the Child Restraint System, following the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.



2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct “click” sound.

Information

Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.



3. Remove as much slack from the belt as possible by pushing down on the Child Restraint System while feeding the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
4. Push and pull on the Child Restraint System to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place.

If your Child Restraint System manufacturer recommends the use of a top-tether with the lap/shoulder belt, see page 3-47.

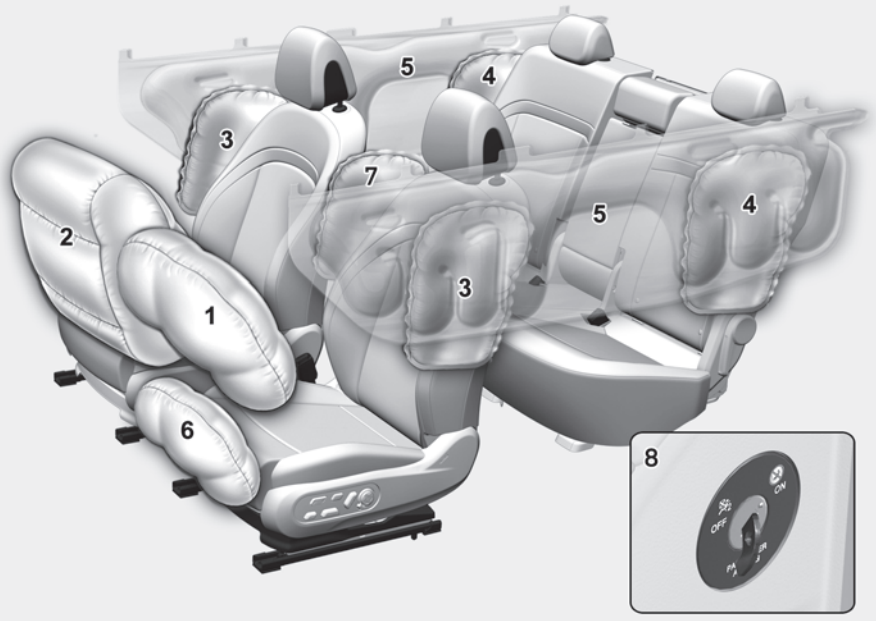
To remove the Child Restraint System, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the lap/shoulder belt out of the Child Restraint System and allow the seat belt to retract fully.

WARNING

If a child restraint is installed in the second row center seat, move the second row seat far back as possible, to minimize contact with the front center side air bag (if equipped with front center side air bag).

AIR BAG - SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Left-hand drive

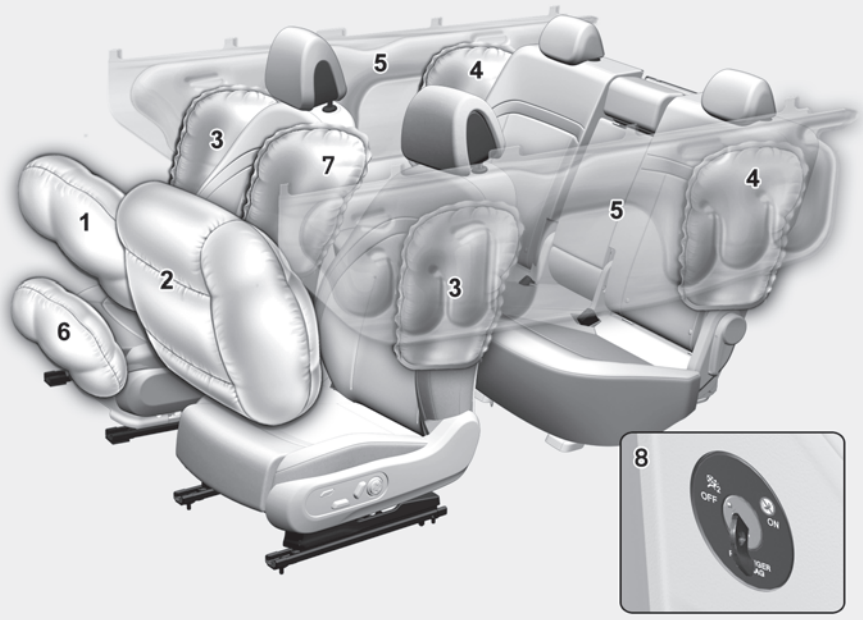


The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJWEV032025L

1. Driver's front air bag
2. Passenger's front air bag
3. Front side air bag
4. Rear side air bag (if equipped)
5. Curtain air bag
6. Driver's knee air bag
7. Front center side air bag
8. Front passenger air bag ON/OFF switch

■ Right-hand drive



The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJWEV032025R

1. Driver's front air bag
2. Passenger's front air bag
3. Front side air bag
4. Rear side air bag (if equipped)
5. Curtain air bag
6. Driver's knee air bag
7. Front center side air bag
8. Front passenger air bag ON/OFF switch

This vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Air Bag System for the driver's seat and front passenger's seats.

The front air bags are designed to supplement the three-point seat belts. For these air bags to provide protection, the seat belts must be worn at all times when driving.

You can be severely injured or killed in an accident if you are not wearing a seat belt. Air bags are designed to supplement seat belts, but do not replace them. Also, air bags are not designed to deploy in every collision. In some accidents, the seat belts are the only restraint protecting you.

WARNING

AIR BAG SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

ALWAYS use seat belts and Child Restraint Systems - every trip, every time, everyone! Even with air bags, you can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if you are improperly belted or not wearing your seat belt when the air bag inflates.

NEVER place a child in any Child Restraint System or booster seat in the front passenger seat, unless the air bag is deactivated.

An inflating air bag could forcefully strike the infant or child causing serious or fatal injuries.

ABC - Always Buckle Children under age 13 in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride. If a child age 13 or older must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.

All occupants should sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the vehicle is turned off. If an occupant is out of position during an accident, the rapidly deploying air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.

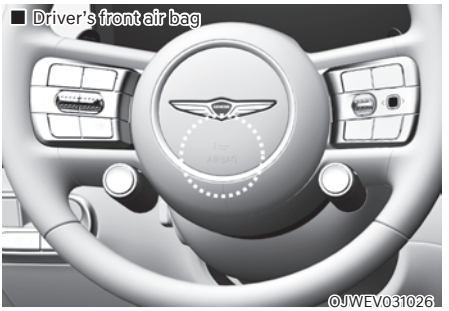
You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags or lean against the door or center console.

Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Where are the air bags?

Driver's and passenger's front air bags

■ Driver's front air bag



OJWEV031026

■ Driver's knee air bag

OJWEV031027

■ Passenger's front air bag

OJWEV031028

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) and lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

The SRS consists of air bags which are located in the center of the steering wheel, in the driver's side lower crash pad below the steering wheel, and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The air bags are labeled with the letters "AIR BAG" embossed on the pad covers.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and front passengers with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from inflating front air bags, take the following precautions:

- **Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.**
- **Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, while still maintaining control of the vehicle.**
- **Never lean against the door or center console.**
- **Do not allow the front passenger to place their feet or legs on the dashboard.**
- **No objects (such as crash pad cover, mobile phone holder, cup holder, perfume or stickers) should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield glass, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.**
- **Do not attach any objects on the front windshield and inside mirror.**

OJWEV031096L

Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)

The purpose of the switch is to disable the passenger's front air bag in order to transport occupants who are at increased risk for air bag-related injury due to age, size, or medical condition.

ORG3EV031092L

To deactivate the passenger's front air bag:

Insert the key or a similar rigid device into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the OFF position. The passenger air bag OFF indicator ( ) will illuminate and stay on until the passenger's front air bag is reactivated.

ORG3EV031093L

To reactivate the passenger's front air bag:

Insert the key or a similar rigid device into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the ON position. The passenger air bag ON indicator ( ) will illuminate.

Information

The passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator generally illuminates for about 4 seconds after the Start/Stop button is in the ON position. But, if the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position within 3 minutes after the vehicle was turned off, the indicator will not illuminate.

WARNING

Never allow an adult passenger to ride in the front passenger seat when the passenger air bag OFF indicator is illuminated. During a collision, the air bag will not inflate if the indicator is illuminated. Turn on the passenger's front air bag or have your passenger move to the rear seat.

WARNING

If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch malfunctions, the following conditions may occur:

- **The air bag warning light () on the instrument cluster will illuminate.**
- **The passenger air bag OFF indicator () will not illuminate and the ON indicator () will come on. The passenger's front air bag will inflate in a frontal impact even though the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.**
- **We recommend that an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products inspect the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and the SRS air bag system as soon as possible.**

Side air bags and front center side air bag (if equipped)

■ Front side air bag

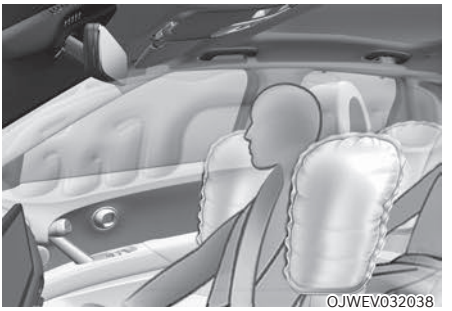
OJWEV031035

■ Rear side air bag

OJWEV032108

■ Front center side air bag (Driver's seat)

OJWEV031037



OJWEV032038

Your vehicle is equipped with a side air bag in each front and outboard second row seat. Additionally, a front center side air bag is provided in the inboard side of the driver seatback. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

The side air bags and front center side air bag are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity.

For vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor the front center side air bag, side and/or curtain air bags and pretensioners on both sides of the vehicle may deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

The side air bags and front center side air bag are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

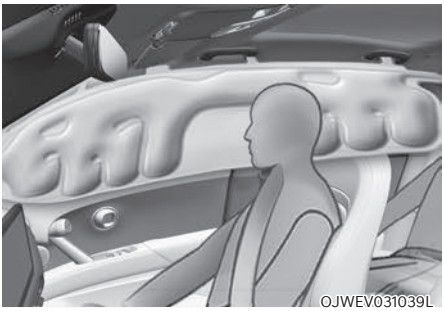
WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating side air bag and front center side air bag, take the following precautions:

- **Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.**
- **Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.**
- **Hold the steering wheel at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, to minimize the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.**
- **Do not use any accessory seat covers. This could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.**
- **Do not hang other objects except clothes. In an accident it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury especially when air bag is inflated.**
- **Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar.**
- **Do not place any objects between the door and the seat. They may become dangerous projectiles if the side air bag inflates.**
- **Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side air bags.**
- **Do not cause impact to the doors when the Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position as this may cause the side air bags to inflate.**
- **If the seat or seat cover is damaged, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

Curtain air bags

OJWEV031040


OJWEV031039L

Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity.

For vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor the side and/or curtain air bags and pre-tensioners on both sides of the vehicle may deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

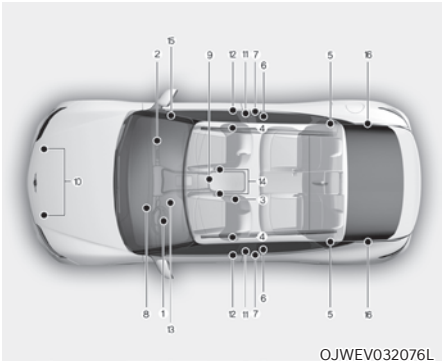
WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating curtain air bag, take the following precautions:

- **All seat occupants must wear seat belts at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.**
- **Properly secure Child Restraint System as far away from the door as possible.**
- **Do not place any objects over the air bag. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar, roof side rail.**
- **Do not hang other objects except clothes, especially hard or breakable objects.**

  In an accident, it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.
- **Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.**
- **Do not attempt to open or repair the side curtain airbags. If the side curtain airbags require repair or maintenance, we recommend that the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

How does the air bags system operate?



OJWEV032076L

The SRS consists of the following components:

(1) Driver's front air bag module
(2) Passenger's front air bag module
(3) Front center side air bag module (if equipped)
(4) Front side air bag modules
(5) Rear side air bag modules (if equipped)
(6) Curtain air bag modules
(7) Front retractor pre-tensioner
(8) Air bag warning light
(9) SRS control module (SRSCM) / Rollover sensor
(10) Front impact sensors
(11) Side impact sensors (acceleration)
(12) Side impact sensors (pressure)
(13) Driver's knee air bag module
(14) Driver's and passenger's seat belt buckle sensors
(15) Front passenger's air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)
(16) Rear Retractor Pretensioner (if equipped)

✳ Front passenger's air bag ON/OFF lamp is located on the overhead console.

The SRSCM (Supplemental Restraint System Control Module) continually monitors all SRS components while the Start/Stop button is ON to determine if a crash impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.

SRS warning light

The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) air bag warning light on the instrument panel displays the air bag symbol depicted in the illustration. The system checks the air bag electrical system for malfunctions. The light indicates that there is a potential problem with your air bag system, which could include your side and/or curtain air bags used for rollover protection (if equipped with rollover sensor).

WARNING

If your SRS malfunctions, the air bag may not inflate properly during an accident increasing the risk of serious injury or death.

If any of the following conditions occur, your SRS is malfunctioning:

- **The light does not turn on for approximately three to six seconds when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.**
- **The light stays on after illuminating for approximately three to six seconds.**
- **The light comes on while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **The light blinks when the vehicle is running.**

We recommend that an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products inspect the SRS as soon as possible if any of these conditions occur.

During a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors will detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration. If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will inflate the front air bags, at the time and with the force needed.

The front air bags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which seat belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the side air bags help provide protection in the event of a side impact or rollover by supporting the side upper body area.

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position and it can be activated within about 3 minutes after the vehicle is turned off.
- Air bags inflate in the event of certain frontal or side collisions to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate. Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/inflation signal.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant. It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.

- In addition to inflating in serious side collisions, vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor, side and/or curtain air bags and front center side air bag will inflate if the sensing system detects a rollover.

  When a rollover is detected, curtain air bags will remain inflated longer to help provide protection from ejection, especially when used in conjunction with the seat belts. (if equipped with a rollover sensor)
- To help provide protection, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which to inflate the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries and is thus a necessary part of air bag design.

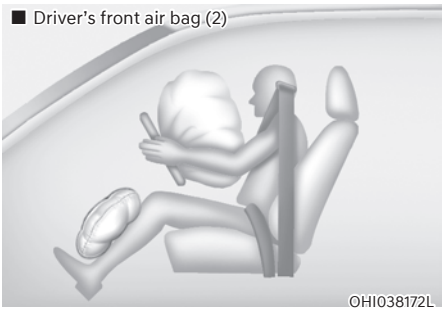
  However, the rapid air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- There are even circumstances under which contact with the air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the air bag.

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. The greatest risk is sitting too close to the air bag. An air bag needs space to inflate. It is recommended that drivers sit as far as possible between the center of the steering wheel and the chest while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

■ Driver's front air bag (1)

When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

■ Driver's front air bag (2)



Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers allows full inflation of the air bags.

A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the front passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

■ Driver's front air bag (3)

■ Passenger's front air bag

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

WARNING

To prevent objects from becoming dangerous projectiles when the passenger's air bag inflates:

- **Do not install or place any objects (drink holder, CD holder, stickers, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box where the passenger's air bag is located.**
- **Do not install a container of liquid air freshener near the instrument cluster or on the instrument panel surface.**

What to expect after an air bag inflates

After a frontal or side air bag inflates, it will deflate very quickly. Air bag inflation will not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer. Curtain air bags may remain partially inflated for some time after they deploy.

WARNING

After an air bag inflates, take the following precautions:

- **Open your windows and doors as soon as it is safe to do so after impact to reduce prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder released by the inflating air bag.**
- **Do not touch the air bag storage area's internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated. The parts that come into contact with an inflating air bag may be very hot.**
- **Always wash exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and mild soap.**
- **We recommend that an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products replace the air bag immediately after deployment. Air bags are designed to be used only once.**

Noise and smoke from inflating air bag

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and may produce smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing because of the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. The powder may aggravate asthma for some people. If you experience breathing problems after an air bag deployment, seek medical attention immediately.

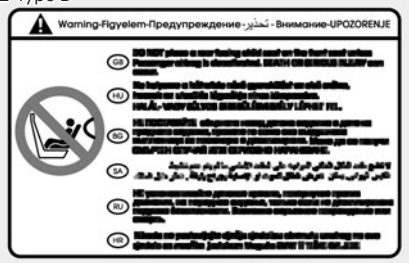
Though the smoke and powder are nontoxic, they may cause irritation to the skin, eyes, nose, throat, etc. If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and seek medical attention if the symptoms persist.

Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat

■ Type A

OHI038169L

■ Type B



OHI038170L

Never install a Child Restraint System in the front passenger seat, unless the air bag is deactivated.

WARNING

NEVER use a rearward facing Child Restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision?

There are certain types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection. These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts. Damage to the vehicle indicates a collision energy absorption, and is not an indicator of whether or not an air bag should have inflated.

Air bag collision sensors

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an air bag deploying unexpectedly and causing serious injury or death:

- **Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bags or sensors are installed.**
- **Do not perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. If the location or angle of the sensors is altered, the air bags may deploy when they should not or may not deploy when they should.**
- **Installing bumper guards with non-genuine Genesis parts or non-equivalent parts may adversely affect the collision and airbag deployment performance.**

  To ensure correct function of the airbag system, we recommend to replace the bumper with genuine Genesis part or the equivalent (of the genuine part) specified for your vehicle.
- **Press the Start/Stop button to the OFF or ACC position and wait for 3 minutes, when the vehicle is being towed to prevent inadvertent air bag deployment.**
- **We recommend that all air bag repairs are conducted by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

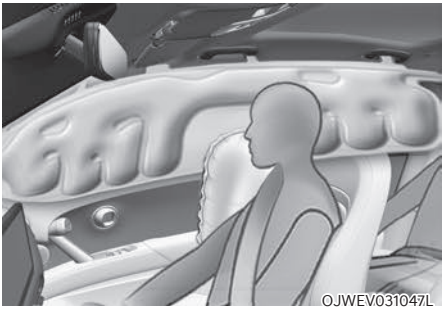
OJWEV031041/OJWEV031042/OJWEV031043/OJWEV031044/OJWEV031045/OJWEV031046

1. SRS control module / Rollover sensor
2. Front impact sensor
3. Side impact sensor (Pressure)
4. Side impact sensor (Acceleration)
5. Side impact sensor (Acceleration)

Air bag inflation conditions

Front air bags

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the severity of impact of the front collision.



Side and curtain air bags and front center side air bag

Side and curtain air bags and the front center air bag are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the severity of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Although the driver's and front passenger's air bags are designed to inflate in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side and curtain air bags and the front side air bag are designed to infcenter late in side impact collisions, but they may inflate in other collisions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

Also, the side and curtain air bags and the front center side air bag are designed to inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor (if equipped with rollover sensor).

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads, the air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

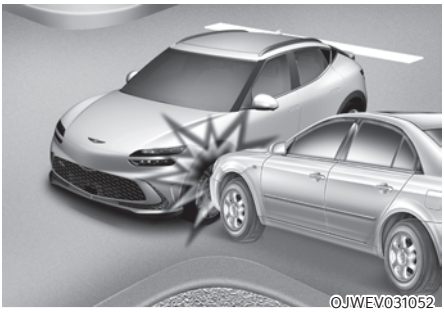
Air bag non-inflation conditions

OJWEV031050

In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts.

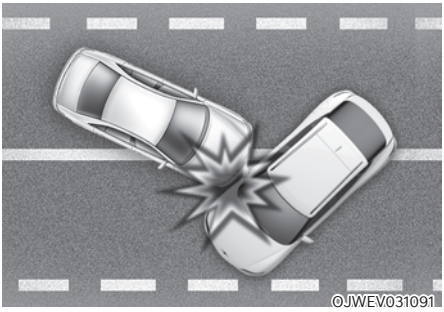
OJWEV031051

Front air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not provide any additional benefit.

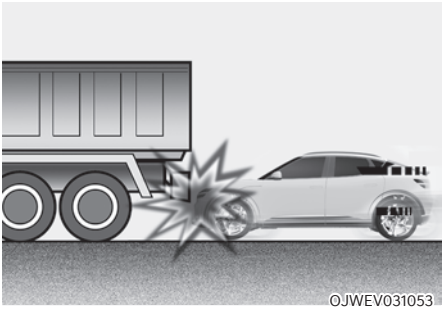

OJWEV031052

Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move in the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

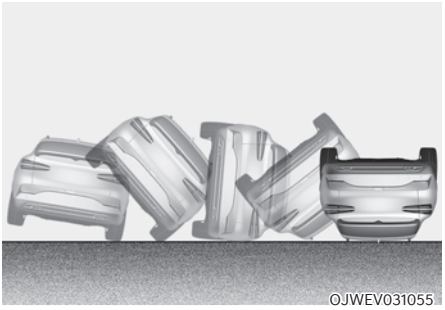
However, side and curtain air bags and the front center side air bag may inflate depending on the severity of impact.


OJWEV031091

In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.


OJWEV031053

Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this “underride” situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such “underride” collisions.


OJWEV031055

Front air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

Information

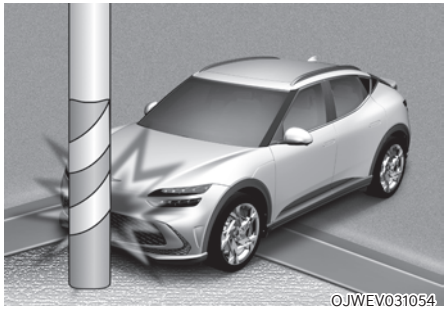
With rollover sensor

The side and curtain air bags and the front center side air bag may inflate in a rollover situation, when it is detected by the rollover sensor.

Information

Without rollover sensor

The side and/or curtain air bags and the front center side air bag may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over by a side impact collision, if the vehicle is equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.


OJWEV031054

Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated and the collision energy is absorbed by the vehicle structure.

SRS care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position, or continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be immediately inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

We recommend any work on the SRS system, such as removing, installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel, the front passenger's panel, front seats and roof rails be performed by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products. Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death take the following precautions:

- **Do not attempt to modify or disconnect the SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure.**
- **Do not place objects over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box.**
- **Clean the air bag pad covers with a soft cloth moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.**
- **We recommend that inflated air bags be replaced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. We recommend that you consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions could increase the risk of personal injury.**

Additional safety precautions

Passengers should not move out of or change seats while the vehicle is moving. A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or be ejected from the vehicle.

Do not use any accessories on seat belts. Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

Do not modify the front seats. Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.

Do not place items under the front seats. Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.

Do not cause impact to the doors. Impact to the doors when the Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position may cause the air bags to inflate.

Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

Air bag warning labels

Air bag warning labels are attached to alert the passengers of potential risks of the air bag system.

Be sure to read all of the information about the air bags that are installed on your vehicle in this Owner's Manual.

4. Instrument cluster

Instrument cluster 4-4
Instrument cluster control 4-5
Instrument panel illumination 4-5
Gauges and meters 4-6
Speedometer 4-6
Power/charge gauge 4-6
State of charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery 4-7
Outside temperature gauge 4-8
Odometer 4-8
Distance to empty 4-9
Fuel economy 4-9
Reduction gear shift indicator 4-10
Regenerative braking level indicator 4-10
Warning and indicator lights 4-11
Ready indicator 4-11
Service warning light 4-11
Power down indicator light 4-11
Charging indicator light 4-12
High voltage battery level warning light 4-12
Seat belt warning light 4-12
Air bag warning light 4-12
Regenerative brake warning light 4-12
Parking brake & brake fluid warning light 4-13
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) warning light 4-14
Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light 4-14
Electric Power Steering (EPS) warning light 4-15
Master warning light 4-15
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light 4-15
Low tire pressure warning light 4-16
Forward safety warning light 4-16
Lane safety indicator light 4-17
LED headlight warning light 4-17
Icy road warning light 4-18
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light 4-18
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF indicator light 4-18

Immobilizer indicator light 4-19
Turn signal indicator light 4-19
High beam indicator light 4-19
Low beam indicator light 4-19
Light ON indicator light 4-20
Rear fog indicator light 4-20
Intelligent Front-Lighting System indicator light 4-20
High Beam Assist indicator light 4-20
AUTO HOLD indicator light 4-20
Cluster display messages 4-21
Shift to P 4-21
Vehicle is in N. Press START button and shift to P (and turn vehicle off) 4-21
Low key battery 4-21
Press START button while turning wheel 4-21
Low washer fluid 4-21
Check steering wheel lock system 4-21
Press brake pedal to start vehicle 4-21
Key not in vehicle 4-21
Key not detected 4-21
Press START button again 4-21
Place the smart key in the emergency start slot and press the start button 4-22
Check BRAKE SWITCH fuse 4-22
Shift to P to start vehicle 4-22
Battery discharging due to external / additional electrical devices 4-22
Door, Hood, Tailgate open indicator 4-22
Low tire pressure 4-23
Lights 4-23
Wiper 4-23
Check haptic steering wheel system 4-24
Check headlight 4-24
Check turn signal 4-24
Check headlamp LED 4-24
Shift to P to charge/Shift to P to start charging 4-24
Remaining time 4-24
Unplug vehicle to start 4-25
Charging door open 4-25
Charging stopped. Check the charger 4-25
Charging stopped. Check the cable connection 4-26
Check regenerative brakes 4-26

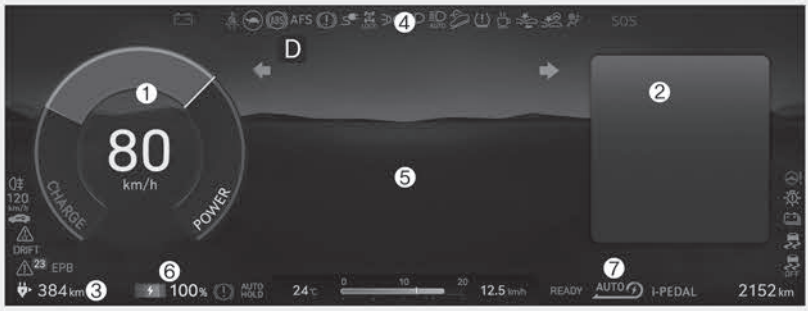
4. Instrument cluster

Low EV battery / Low battery 4-26
Charge immediately. Power limited 4-27
Power limited due to low EV battery temperature. Charge battery 4-27
EV Battery overheated! Stop vehicle / Battery overheated! Stop safely 4-28
Power limited 4-28
Stop vehicle and check power supply 4-29
Check virtual engine sound system 4-29
Check electric vehicle system 4-29

Cluster display 4-30
Cluster display control 4-30
View modes 4-30
Driving assist view 4-31
Utility view 4-31
Option menu 4-34

Vehicle settings (infotainment system) 4-35
Setting your vehicle 4-35

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER



The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more information, refer to “Gauges and meters” section in this chapter.

OJWEV042062L

1. Speedometer
2. Power/Charge gauge
3. Distance to empty
4. Warning indicator light
5. Cluster display
6. Battery SOC (State of Charge) gauge
7. Smart recuperation system

Information

COMFORT/ECO/SPORT mode by pressing the drive mode button will change the main theme of the instrument cluster.

Instrument cluster control

Instrument panel illumination (if equipped)

When the vehicle's position lights or headlamps are on, press the illumination control switch to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination.

When pressing the illumination control switch, the interior switch illumination intensity is also adjusted.

WARNING

Never adjust the instrument cluster while driving. This could result in loss of control and lead to an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or vehicle damage.

- The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is displayed.
- If the brightness reaches to the maximum or minimum level, a chime will sound.

Gauges and meters

Speedometer

■ km/h

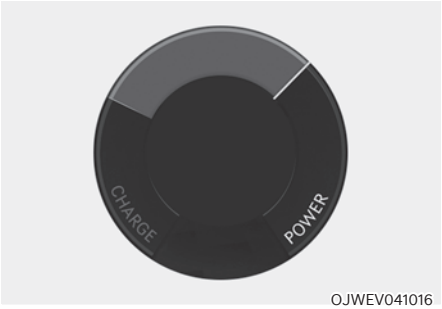
OJWEV041010

■ km/h, MPH

OJWEV041039L

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and is calibrated in kilometers per hour (km/h) and/or miles per hour (MPH).

Power/charge gauge



OJWEV041016

The Power/Charge Gauge shows the energy consumption and recovery status of the electric motor.

- POWER:

  It shows discharging status of the electric motor when vehicle is accelerating or driving on a uphill road. The more electric energy is discharged (used), the higher the gauge level.
- CHARGE:

  It shows the charging status of the electric motor when vehicle is decelerating or driving on a downhill road (being charged by the regenerative brakes). The more electric energy is charged, the lower the gauge level.

State of charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery

OJWEV041017

- The SOC gauge shows the charging status of the high voltage battery.
- The low percentage number on the indicator indicates that there is not enough energy in the high voltage battery. 100% indicates that the driving battery is fully charged.
- When driving on highways or motorways, make sure to check in advance if the driving battery is charged enough.

OJWEVQ011039

1. When the remaining battery is lower than 10 % on the SOC gauge, the warning light ( ) turns ON to alert you of the battery level.
2. When the warning light ( ) turns ON, the vehicle can drive an additional 30 ~ 50 km (18 ~ 26 miles) depending on the driving speed, heater/air conditioner, weather, driving style, and other factors. Charging is required.

NOTICE

When the high voltage battery level is low, the power down indicator light illuminates and the vehicle power is limited. Charge the battery immediately since your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the indicator light ON.

Outside temperature gauge

OJWEV041014

This gauge indicates the current outside air temperatures by 1°C (1°F).

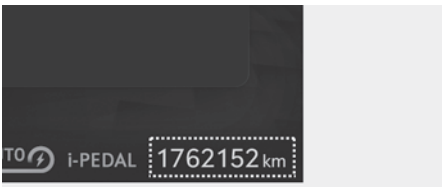
Note that the temperature indicated on the LCD display may not change as quickly as the outside temperature (there may be a slight delay before the temperature changes.)

You can change the temperature unit from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- General Settings → Unit → Temperature Unit → °C/°F

Both the temperature unit on the instrument cluster and climate control screen will change.

Odometer



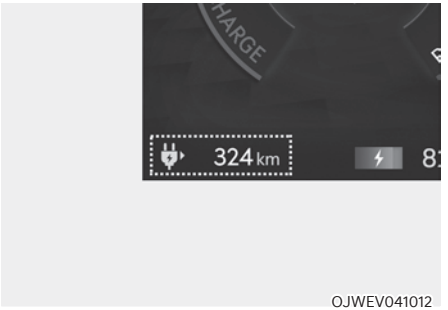
OJWEV041011

The odometer indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Distance to empty



OJWEV041012

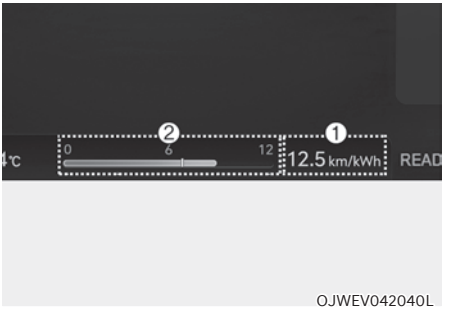
- The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining electric energy.
- The distance to empty varies depend on which drive mode is selected among ECO/COMFORT/SPORT mode.

For more detail information, refer to 'Distance to empty' in chapter 1.

Information

- **If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.**
- **The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance as it is an estimate of the available driving distance.**
- **The distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.**

Fuel economy



OJWEV042040L

The average fuel economy (1) and instant fuel economy (2) is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Automatic reset

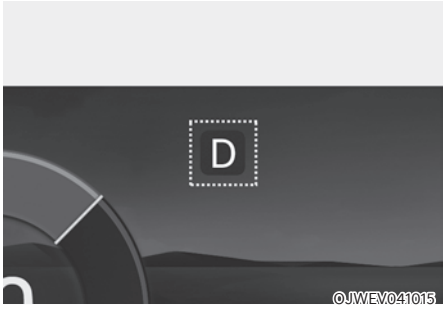
To automatically reset the average fuel economy, select between "After Ignition" or "After Refueling" from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.

Information

For 8-inch instrument cluster, you can check the fuel economy in the Utility view on the cluster.

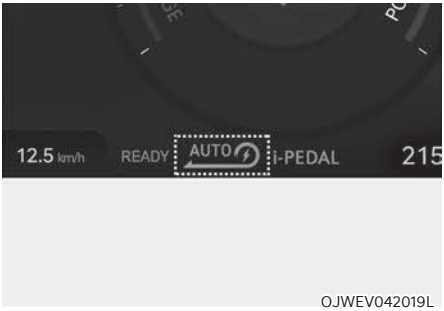
Refer to ”View Modes” section in chapter 4.

Reduction gear shift indicator



The indicator displays which gear is selected.

Regenerative braking level indicator



The regenerative brake indicates the level of the regenerative braking that you set. And it also indicates Smart regenerative system’s operation status.

For more details, refer to "Regenerative Braking System" in chapter 6.

Warning and indicator lights

Information

Make sure that all warning lights are OFF after starting the vehicle. If any light is still ON, this indicates a situation that needs attention.

Ready indicator

READY

This indicator illuminates:

- When the vehicle is ready to be driven.
  - ON: Normal driving is possible.
  - OFF: Normal driving is not possible, or a problem has occurred.
  - Blinking: Emergency driving.

When the ready indicator goes OFF or blinks, there is a problem with the system. In this case, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Service warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a problem with related parts of the electric vehicle control system, such as sensors, etc.

When the warning light illuminates while driving, or does not go OFF after starting the vehicle, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Power down indicator light

This indicator light illuminates:

- For the safety of high-powered components of electric vehicles, the power is limited due to the following reasons. (Unless both Service Warning Light and Power Down Indicator Light illuminate at the same time, it is not a failure.)
  - The high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing
  - The temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low
  - The temperature of the motor is high

NOTICE

- **Do not accelerate or start the vehicle suddenly when the power down indicator light is ON.**
- **When the power is limited for the safety of the high-powered parts of an electric vehicle, the power down indicator light illuminates. Your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the indicator light ON due to the limitation of vehicle power.**

Charging indicator light

This warning light illuminates:

- When charging the high voltage battery.

High voltage battery level warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the high voltage battery level is low.
- When the warning light turns ON, charge the battery immediately.

Seat belt warning light

This warning light informs the driver that the seat belt is not fastened.

For more details, refer to “Seat Belts” section in chapter 3.

Air bag warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The air bag warning light illuminates for about 6 seconds and then turns off when all checks have been performed.
- The air bag warning light will remain illuminated if there is a malfunction with the Safety Restraint System (SRS) air bag operation.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Regenerative brake warning light

This warning light illuminates:

When the regenerative brake does not operate and the brake does not perform well. This causes the Brake Warning light (red) and Regenerative Brake Warning Light (yellow) to illuminate simultaneously.

In this case, drive safely and we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The operation of the brake pedal may be more difficult than normal and the braking distance can increase.

Parking brake & brake fluid warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button in the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds.
  - It remains on if the parking brake is applied.
- When the parking brake is applied.
- When the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
  - If the warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
- When the regenerative brake does not operate.

If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the motor stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required **(For more details, refer to "Brake Fluid" section in chapter 9)**. After adding brake fluid, check all brake components for fluid leaks. If a brake fluid leak is found, or if the warning light remains on, or if the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Dual-diagonal braking system

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking system. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail.

With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure is required to stop the vehicle.

Also, the vehicle will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working.

If the brakes fail while you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional vehicle braking and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

WARNING

Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning light

Driving the vehicle with a warning light ON is dangerous. If the Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The ABS warning light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the ABS.

  Note that the hydraulic braking system will still be operational even if there is a malfunction with the ABS.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light

When the ABS warning and Parking Brake warning lights are on simultaneously, it may indicate a problem with the Electronic Brake Force Distribution system.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light

When both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning lights are on, the brake system will not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking.

If this occurs, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light

When the ABS warning light is on or both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or tripmeter may not work. Also, the EPS warning light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

Electric Power Steering (EPS) warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The electric powering steering warning light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the electric power steering.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Master warning light

This warning light illuminates:

When there is a malfunction in operation in any of the following systems:

- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision Warning malfunction (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision Warning radar blocked (if equipped)
- LED headlamp malfunction (if equipped)
- High Beam Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control radar blocked (if equipped)
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction

To identify the details of the warning, look at the Cluster display.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The EPB warning light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with EPB.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Information

The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light may illuminate when the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light comes on to indicate that ESC is not working properly. This does not indicate malfunction of EPB.

Low tire pressure warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The low tire pressure warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated. (The location of the underinflated tires are displayed on the Cluster display.)

For more details, refer to "Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" section in chapter 8.

This warning light remains ON after blinking for approximately 60 seconds, or repeatedly blinks ON and OFF in 3 second intervals:

When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

For more details, refer to "Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" section in chapter 8.

WARNING

Safe Stopping

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors.**
- **If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

Forward safety warning light (if equipped)

This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The Forward Safety warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- If Forward Safety is selected 'Off', Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off. The warning light will illuminate on the cluster.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off when ESC is turned off by pressing and holding the ESC OFF button. The warning light will illuminate on the cluster.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more details, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

Lane safety indicator light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- [Green] When Lane Keeping Assist operating conditions are satisfied.
- [White] When Lane Keeping Assist operating conditions are not satisfied.
- [Yellow] Whenever there is a malfunction with Lane Keeping Assist.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more details, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)" section in chapter 7.

LED headlight warning light (if equipped)

This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The LED headlight warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the LED headlight.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

This warning light blinks:

Whenever there is a malfunction with a LED headlight related part.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

NOTICE

Continuous driving with the LED Headlight warning light on or blinking can reduce LED headlight life.

Icy road warning light (if equipped)

This warning light is to warn the driver the road may be icy.

When the temperature on the outside temperature gauge is approximately below 4°C (40°F), the Icy Road warning light and Outside Temperature Gauge blinks and then illuminates. Also, the warning chime sounds 1 time.

You can activate or deactivate Icy Road Warning function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Cluster → Content Selection → Icy Road Warning

i Information

- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**
- **If the Icy Road warning light appears while driving, you should drive more attentively and safely refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.**

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light

This indicator light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The Electronic Stability Control indicator light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with ESC system.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

This indicator light blinks:

While ESC is operating.

For more details, refer to “Electronic Stability Control (ESC)” section in chapter 6.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF indicator light

This indicator light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - The ESC OFF indicator light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

For more details, refer to “Electronic Stability Control (ESC)” section in chapter 6.

Immobilizer indicator light

This indicator light illuminates for up to 30 seconds:

When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle with the Start/Stop button in the ACC or ON position.

- Once the smart key is detected, you can start the vehicle.
- The indicator light goes off after starting the vehicle.

This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:

When the smart key is not in the vehicle.

- If the smart key is not detected, you cannot start the vehicle.

This indicator light illuminates for 2 seconds and goes off:

If the smart key is in the vehicle and the Start/Stop button is ON, but the vehicle cannot detect the smart key.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

This indicator light blinks:

Whenever there is a malfunction with the immobilizer system.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Turn signal indicator light

This indicator light blinks:

When you operate the turn signal indicator stalk.

If any of the following occur, there may be a malfunction with the turn signal system.

- The turn signal indicator light illuminates but does not blink
- The turn signal indicator light blinks rapidly
- The turn signal indicator light does not illuminate at all

If any of these conditions occur, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

High beam indicator light

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the headlamps are on and in the high beam position
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

Low beam indicator light

This indicator light illuminates:

When the headlamps are on.

Light ON indicator light

This indicator light illuminates:

When the position lamps or headlamps are on.

Rear fog indicator light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

When the rear fog lamps are on.

Intelligent Front-Lighting System indicator light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

When the high-beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO position.

- White: When Intelligent Front-Lighting system is ready to operate.
- Green: When Intelligent Front-Lighting system is operating.

If your vehicle detect oncoming or preceding vehicles, the Intelligent Front-Lighting System partially turns off the high beam LED lamps.

For more details, refer to "Intelligent Front-Lighting System" section in chapter 5.

High Beam Assist indicator light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

When the high-beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO position.

- White: When High Beam Assist is ready to operate.
- Green: When High Beam Assist is operating.

If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, High Beam Assist will switch the high beam to low beam automatically.

For more details, refer to "High Beam Assist (HBA)" section in chapter 5.

AUTO HOLD indicator light

This indicator light illuminates:

- [White] When you activate Auto Hold by pressing the AUTO HOLD switch.
- [Green] When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal with Auto Hold activated.
- [Yellow] Whenever there is a malfunction with the Auto Hold function.

  If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more details, refer to "Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)" section in chapter 6.

Cluster display messages

Shift to P

This message is displayed if you try to turn off the vehicle without the gear in the P (Park) position.

If this occurs, the Start/Stop button turns to the ACC position.

Vehicle is in N. Press START button and shift to P (and turn vehicle off)

This message is displayed if you try to turn off the vehicle with the gear in N (Neutral).

To turn off the vehicle:

1. Press the Start/Stop button. The button will change to the ON position.
2. Press the P button to shift to P (Park).
3. Press the Start/Stop button again, then the vehicle will turn off.

Low key battery

This message is displayed if the battery of the smart key is discharged while changing the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

Press START button while turning wheel (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the Start/Stop button is pressed.

You should press the Start/Stop button while turning the steering wheel right and left.

Low washer fluid (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty. Have the washer fluid reservoir refilled.

Check steering wheel lock system (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the steering wheel does not lock normally while the Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position.

Press brake pedal to start vehicle

This message is displayed if the Start/Stop button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.

You can start the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal and then pressing the Start/Stop button.

Key not in vehicle

This message is displayed if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you leave the vehicle with the Start/Stop button in the ON or Start position.

Always turn off the vehicle before leaving your vehicle.

Key not detected

This message is displayed if the smart key is not detected when you press the Start/Stop button.

Press START button again

This message is displayed if you were unable to start the vehicle when the Start/Stop button was pressed.

If this occurs, attempt to start the vehicle by pressing the Start/Stop button again.

If the warning message appears each time you press the Start/Stop button, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Place the smart key in the emergency start slot and press the start button

This message is displayed if you press the Start/Stop button while the warning message “Key not detected” is displayed.

At this time, the immobilizer indicator light blinks.

Check BRAKE SWITCH fuse

This message is displayed if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.

You need to replace the fuse with a new one before starting the vehicle.

If that is not possible, you can start the vehicle by pressing the Start/Stop button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.

Shift to P to start vehicle

This message is displayed if you try to start the vehicle in any other position except P (Park).

Information

You can start the vehicle with the gear in N (Neutral). But, for your safety, we recommend that you start the vehicle with the gear shifted to P (Park).

Battery discharging due to external / additional electrical devices

This message is displayed if the 12V battery voltage is weak due to any non-factory electrical accessories (ex. dashboard camera) while parking. Be careful that the battery is not discharged.

If the message appears after removing the non-factory electrical accessories, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Door, Hood, Tailgate open indicator

OJWEV041002

This warning is displayed if any door or hood or tailgate is left open. The warning will indicate which door is open in the display.

CAUTION

Before driving the vehicle, you should confirm that the door/hood/tailgate is fully closed.

Low tire pressure

OJWEV081001L

This warning message is displayed if the tire pressure is low. The corresponding tire on the vehicle will be illuminated.

For more details, refer to "Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" section in chapter 8.

Lights

■ Type A

OJWEV041023L

■ Type B

OIK040076L

This indicator displays which exterior light is selected using the lighting control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/ Lights display function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Cluster → Content Selection → Wiper/Lights Display

Wiper

■ Type A

OJWEV041024L

■ Type B

OIK040078L

This indicator displays which wiper speed is selected using the wiper control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/ Lights display function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Cluster → Content Selection → Wiper/Lights Display

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Check haptic steering wheel system (if equipped)

This message is displayed if there is a problem with the haptic steering wheel system.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Check headlight (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the headlights are not operating properly. A lamp may need to be replaced.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Check turn signal (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the turn signal lamps are not operating properly. A lamp may need to be replaced.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Check headlamp LED (if equipped)

This message is displayed if there is a problem with the LED headlamp. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Shift to P to charge/Shift to P to start charging

■ Type A

ORG3EVQ011117L

■ Type B

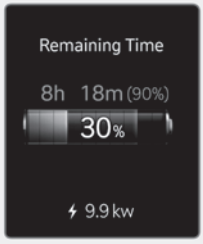
ORG3EVQ011118L

This message is displayed if you connect the charging cable without the gear in the P (Park) position.

Shift to P (Park) before connecting the charging cable.

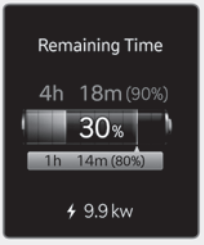
Remaining time

■ AC charge



ORG3EVQ011054L

■ DC charge



ORG3EVQ011055L

This message is displayed to notify the remaining time to charge the battery to the selected target battery charge level.

Unplug vehicle to start

OOSEV040498L

This message is displayed when you start the vehicle without unplugging the charging cable. Unplug the charging cable, and then turn on the vehicle.

Charging door open

OOSEV040499L

This message is displayed when the vehicle is driven with the charging door opened. Close the charging door and then start driving.

Charging stopped. Check the charger

OJWEVQ011112L

- This warning message is displayed when charging is stopped for the reasons below:
  - There is a problem with the external AC charger or DC charger charger
  - The external AC charger stopped charging
  - The charging cable is damaged

In this case, check whether there is any problem with the external AC or DC charger and charging cable.

If the same problem occurs when charging the vehicle with a normally operating AC charger or genuine Genesis portable charger, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Charging stopped. Check the cable connection

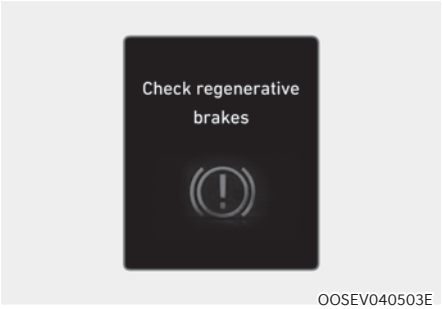
OOSEV040502L

This warning message is displayed when charging is stopped because the charging connector is not correctly connected to the charging inlet

In this case, separate the charging connector and re-connect it and check whether there is any problem (external damage, foreign substances, etc.) with the charging connector and charging inlet.

If the same problem occurs when charging the vehicle with a replaced charging cable or genuine Genesis portable charger, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Check regenerative brakes



OOSEV040503E

These warning messages are displayed when the regenerative brake system does not work properly.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Low EV battery / Low battery

■ Type A

ORG3EVQ011001L

■ Type B

ORG3EVQ011121L

When the high voltage battery level reaches below approximately 12 %, this warning message is displayed.

The warning light on the instrument cluster ( ) will turn ON simultaneously.

Charge the high voltage battery immediately.

Charge immediately. Power limited

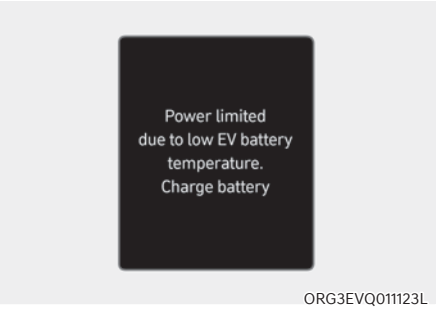
ORG3EVQ011122L

When the high voltage battery level reaches below approximately 6 %, this warning message is displayed.

The warning light on the instrument cluster ( ) will turn on simultaneously.

The vehicle's power will be reduced to minimize the energy consumption of the high voltage battery. Charge the battery immediately.

Power limited due to low EV battery temperature. Charge battery



ORG3EVQ011123L

Both warning messages are displayed to protect electric vehicle system when outside temperature is low. If the high voltage battery charging level is low and parked outside in low temperature for a long time, vehicle power could be limited.

Charging the battery before driving helps increase power.

NOTICE

If these warning messages are still displayed even after the ambient temperature has increased, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

EV Battery overheated! Stop vehicle / Battery overheated! Stop safely

■ Type A

ORG3EVQ011050L

■ Type B

ORG3EVQ011124L

This warning message is displayed to protect battery and electric vehicle system when the high voltage battery temperature is too high.

Turn off the Start/Stop button and stop the vehicle so that the battery temperature decreases.

Power limited

ORG3EVQ011003L

This Indicator light illuminates:

- For the safety of high-powered components of electric vehicles, the power is limited due to the following reasons. (Unless both Service Warning Light and Power Down Indicator Light illuminate at the same time, it is not a failure.)
  - The high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing
  - The temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low
  - The temperature of the motor is high

NOTICE

- **When this warning message is displayed, do not accelerate or start the vehicle suddenly.**
- **When the power is limited for the safety of the high-powered parts of an electric vehicle, the warning message is displayed. Your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the warning message displayed due to the limitation of vehicle power.**

Stop vehicle and check power supply

ORG3EVQ011051L

This warning message is displayed when a failure occurs in the power supply system.

In this case, park the vehicle in a safe location and we recommend that you tow your vehicle to the nearest by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

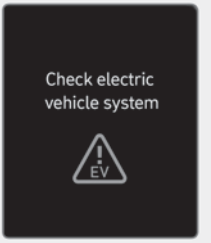
Check virtual engine sound system

OOSEV040512L

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS).

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Check electric vehicle system



ORG3EVQ011048L

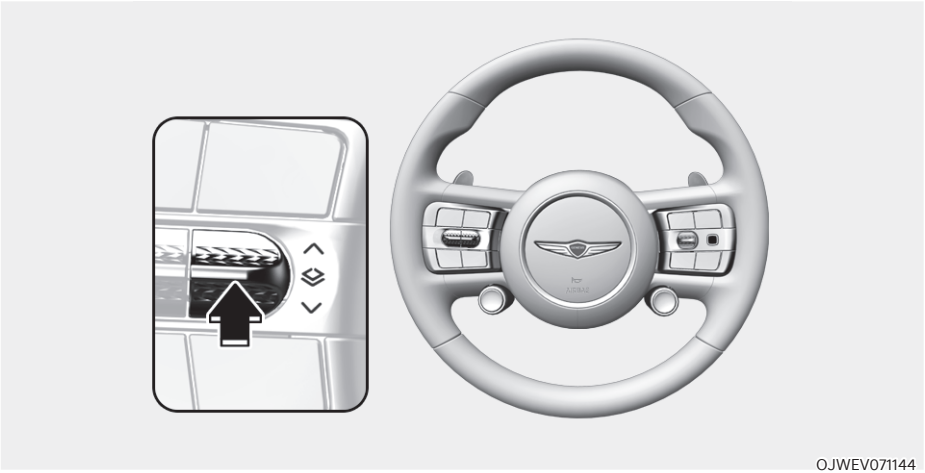
This warning message is displayed when there is a problem with the electric vehicle control system.

Refrain from driving when the warning message is displayed.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

CLUSTER DISPLAY

Cluster display control



OJWEV071144

The cluster display modes can be changed by using the control switches.

Switch	operation	Function
	Press	Classic / Digital gauge mode change
∧, ∨	Press	UP, DOWN switch for changing view mode
■	Press	Select switch for pop up Widget navigation mode on/off
	Press and hold	Select/reset switch for pop up Hide/show widget
	Triple press ■ x3	Reset for trip computer

View modes

View modes	Explanation
Driving Assist	Driving Assist view displays the status of the vehicle's Driver Assistance systems.
Map view	Show map and navigation related information
AR View	Show AR navigation and navigation related information
Normal view	Show trip computer or widget on center without background information

The information provided may differ depending on which features are applicable to your vehicle.

OJWEV041025L

Driving Assist, Turn by Turn, Utility view modes are displayed in the center of the cluster display.

Driving assist view

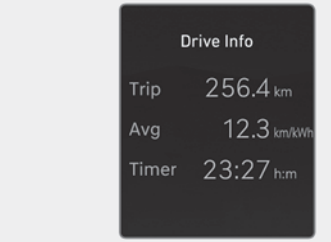
OJWEV041005

The status of Lane Keeping Assist, Smart Cruise Control, Lane Following Assist, Highway Driving Assist, etc., is displayed when Driving Assist view is selected.

For more details, refer to each function information section in chapter 7.

Utility view

In the Utility view, using the ∧, ∨ (UP, DOWN) switch, you may change through items in the following order.



OJWEV041025L

Drive info

This display shows the trip distance, the average energy consumption, and the total driving time.

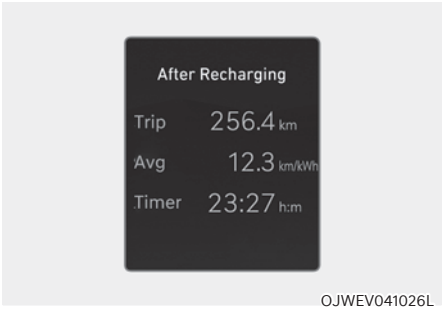
The information is combined for each ignition cycle.

To manually reset the information, triple press the (■) button when viewing the Drive Info. The trip distance, the average energy consumption, and total driving time will reset simultaneously.

The driving information will continue to be counted while the vehicle is in the ready (READY) mode (for example, when the vehicle is in traffic or stopped at a stop light.)

Information

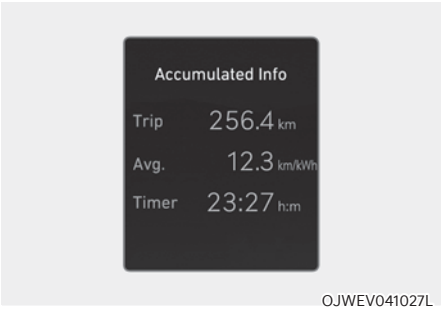
The vehicle must be driven for a minimum of 300 meters (0.19 miles) since the last ignition key cycle before the driving information is recalculated.



OJWEV041026L

After Recharging

Trip distance, total driving time and average energy consumption after the vehicle has been recharged are displayed. To reset manually, triple press the (■) button the steering wheel when 'After recharging' is displayed.



OJWEV041027L

Accumulated info

This display shows the accumulated trip distance, total driving time and average energy consumption.

The information is accumulated starting from the last reset.

To manually reset the information, triple press the (■) button when viewing the Accumulated driving info. The trip distance, the average energy consumption, and total driving time will reset simultaneously.

The accumulated driving information will continue to be counted while the vehicle is in the ready (READY) mode (for example, when the vehicle is in traffic or stopped at a stop light).

Information

The vehicle must be driven for a minimum of 300 meters (0.19 miles) since the last ignition key cycle before the accumulated driving information is recalculated.

OJWEV041033L

Tire pressure / Tyre pressure

The tire pressure of each tire is displayed.

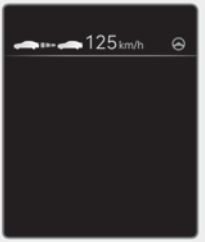
For more details, refer to “Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)” section in chapter 8.

OJWEV041008L

Energy flow / Driving force distribution (if equipped)

- The electric vehicle system informs the drivers its energy flow in various operating modes.
- The distribution status of the driving power of the front and rear wheels are displayed when Auto 4WD mode is activated.

For more details, refer to "Four Wheel Drive (4WD)" section in chapter 6.



OJWEV041046L

Driving assist information

The current operation conditions of Manual Speed Limit Assist, Smart Cruise Control, Lane Following Assist, Highway Driving Assist, etc., is displayed.

Option menu

Press the OK switch to enter Option menu.

WARNING

To avoid driver distractions, do not adjust the setting while driving which may lead to an accident.

Information

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

Menu	Explanation
Service messages	To check vehicle warning messages.
Head-up display (if equipped)	To activate or deactivate head-up display.
Driver Assistance settings	To directly display “Driver Assistance” menu on the infotainment system screen
Speed unit	To set speed unit between km/h and MPH.

VEHICLE SETTINGS (INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM)

OJWEV041034L

Vehicle Settings in the infotainment system provides user options for a variety of settings including door lock/unlock features, convenience features, driver assistance settings, etc.

Vehicle Settings menu

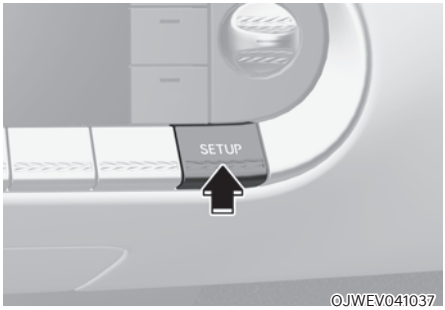
- Head-Up Display
- Driver Assistance
- Drive Mode
- Climate
- Lights
- Door
- Cluster
- Convenience
- Seat

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

WARNING

Do not operate the Vehicle Settings while driving. This may cause distraction resulting in an accident.

Setting your vehicle



OJWEV041037

1. Press the SETUP button on the main keyboard.

OJWEV041035L

2. Select ‘Vehicle’ and change the setting of the features.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

5. Convenience features

Accessing your vehicle 5-5
Smart key 5-5
Immobilizer system 5-12

Genesis digital key 5-14
Digital Key (Smart Phone) 5-14
Digital Key (Card Key) 5-21
Personalized Profile and Vehicle Settings 5-24
Used Vehicle/Digital Key Maintenance 5-27
Limitations of the System 5-27

Face connect 5-28
Face Connect Settings 5-28
Face Connect Operation 5-30
Limitations of Face Connect 5-30
When Purchasing a Used Vehicle 5-31
Legal Compliance 5-31

Fingerprint authentication system 5-32
Fingerprint authentication system settings 5-32
Fingerprint authentication system operation 5-33
Limitations of the system 5-34
Used vehicle 5-34

OTA software update 5-35
Downloading software 5-35
Approving software update 5-35
Preparing software update 5-35
Updating software 5-36

Door locks 5-38
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle 5-38
Operating door locks from inside the vehicle 5-39
Deadlocks 5-42
Automatic door lock and unlock features 5-42
Child-protector rear door locks 5-43
Electronic child safety lock 5-43

Theft-alarm system 5-45

Advanced rear occupant alert (ROA) 5-46
System setting 5-46
System operation 5-46

System precautions....5-47
Declaration of Conformity....5-48
Integrated memory system....5-49
Storing memory positions....5-49
Recalling memory positions....5-50
Resetting the system....5-50
Seat easy access....5-51
Steering wheel....5-52
Electric Power Steering (EPS)....5-52
Tilt / Telescopic steering....5-53
Horn....5-55
Heated steering wheel....5-55
Mirrors....5-57
Inside rearview mirror....5-57
Outside rearview mirrors....5-58
Reverse parking aid....5-60
Digital side mirror (DSM)....5-62
Operating the digital side mirrors....5-63
DSM warnings and indicators....5-63
Displaying the guidelines....5-63
Adjusting the DSM cameras....5-64
Folding/Unfolding the DSM cameras....5-65
Switching to wide view when backing up....5-66
Setting the DSM screen brightness....5-67
DSM camera defroster....5-67
Windows....5-68
Power windows....5-70
Remote window opening/closing function....5-73
Vision roof....5-74
Resetting the vision roof....5-76
Exterior features....5-77
Roof rack....5-77
Hood....5-78
Front trunk....5-79
Power tailgate....5-81
Smart tailgate....5-87
Charging door....5-89

5. Convenience features

Head-up display (HUD) 5-91
- Head-up display settings 5-91
- Head-up display information 5-91
- Precautions while using the head-up display 5-92

Lighting 5-93
- Exterior lights 5-93

Intelligent Front-Lighting System (IFS) 5-98
- System setting 5-98
- System operation 5-98
- System malfunction and limitations 5-99

High Beam Assist (HBA) 5-101
- High Beam Assist setting 5-101
- High Beam Assist operation 5-102
- High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations 5-103

Interior lights 5-104
- Interior lamp AUTO cut 5-104
- Front lamps 5-104
- Rear lamps 5-105
- Vanity mirror lamp 5-105
- Glove box lamp 5-105
- Door mood lamp 5-106
- Tailgate lamp 5-106
- Front trunk lamp 5-107
- Puddle lamp 5-107

Wipers and washers 5-109
- Front windshield wipers 5-109
- Windshield washers 5-111

Automatic climate control system 5-112
- Automatic temperature control mode 5-113
- Manual temperature control mode 5-114
- System operation 5-125
- System maintenance 5-126

Windshield defrosting and defogging 5-129
- To defog inside windshield 5-129
- To defrost inside windshield 5-130
- Defogging logic 5-130
- Rear window defroster 5-131

Climate control additional features 5-132
Auto defogging system 5-132
Auto dehumidify 5-133
Recirculating air when washer fluid is used 5-134
Sunroof inside air recirculation 5-134
Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat) 5-134
Storage compartment 5-135
Center console storage 5-135
Glove box 5-135
Sunglass holder 5-136
Interior features 5-137
Cup holder 5-137
Diffuser 5-138
Sunvisor 5-138
Power outlet 5-139
USB charger 5-140
Wireless smart phone charging system 5-141
Vehicle to load (V2L) 5-143
Clock 5-143
Coat hook 5-143
Floor mat anchor(s) 5-144
Rear side window sunshades 5-145
Luggage net holder 5-145
Cargo security screen 5-146
Infotainment system 5-148
USB Port 5-148
Antenna 5-148
Steering wheel remote controls 5-148
Infotainment system 5-149
Voice recognition 5-149
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology 5-150
Bang&Olufsen sound system 5-150

ACCESSING YOUR VEHICLE

Smart key

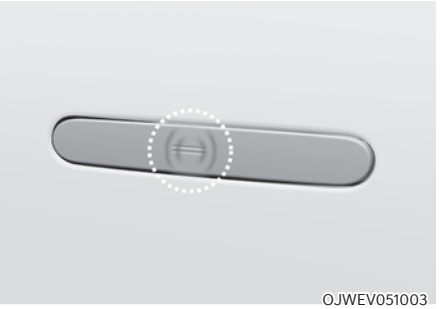
OJWEV051001L

OJWEV051002L

Your Genesis Branded Vehicle uses a Smart Key, which you can use to lock or unlock the driver and passenger doors, the charging door or the rear tailgate.

1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Tailgate open/close
4. Charging door open/close
5. Remote Start
6. Remote Smart Parking Assist (Forward)
7. Remote Smart Parking Assist (Backward)

Locking your vehicle



OJWEV051003

To lock your vehicle using the door handle touch sensor or the Smart Key:

1. Make sure all doors, the hood and the tailgate are closed.
2. Make sure you have the smart key in your possession.
3. Touch the touch sensor on the door handle (the engraved part) or press the Door Lock button (1) on the smart key. The hazard warning lights will blink.
4. Make sure the doors are locked by pulling the door handle.

Information

- **The outside rearview mirror will fold if 'Enable on Door Unlock' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:**
  - **Setup → Vehicle Settings → Convenience → Welcome Mirror/ Light → Enable on Door Unlock**
- **The door handle touch sensor will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 in.) from the outside door handle.**
- **Touching the door handle touch sensor does not unlock the doors. To unlock the doors, refer to the following page.**
- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**

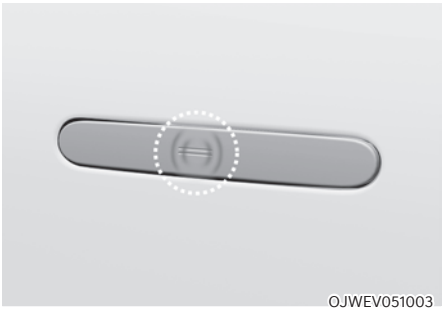
Note that you cannot lock your vehicle using the door handle touch sensor if any of the following occur:

- The Smart Key is in the vehicle.
- The Start/Stop button is from ACC or ON position.
- Any of the doors are open except for the tailgate.

WARNING

Do not leave the Smart Key in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Unattended children could press the Start/ Stop button and may operate power windows, lock the doors or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious injury or death.

Unlocking your vehicle



OJWEV051003

To unlock your vehicle using the door handle touch sensor or the Smart Key:

1. Make sure you have the smart key in your possession.
2. Touch the touch sensor on the door handle or press the Door Unlock button (2) on the smart key. All doors will unlock and the hazard warning lights will blink two times.
3. After unlocking the doors, the doors will automatically relock after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.

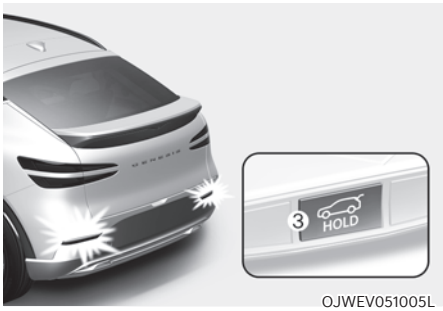
Information

- **The outside rearview mirror will unfold if 'Enable on Door Unlock' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:**
  - **Setup → Vehicle Settings → Convenience → Welcome Mirror/ Light → Enable on Door Unlock**
- **The door handle touch sensor will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 in.) from the outside door handle.**
- **The doors may lock or unlock if the touch sensor of the outer door handle is recognized while washing your car or due to heavy rain.**
- **To prevent unintentional door lock or unlock:**

  Press the lock button on the smart key and immediately press the unlock button along with the lock button for more than 4 seconds. The hazard warning lights will blink four times. At this time, the doors will not lock or unlock even though the touch sensor is touched on the outside door handle.

  To deactivate the function, press the door lock or unlock button on the smart key.
- **The doors may not lock or unlock in the following situations.**
  - **If the touch sensor is touched with gloves on**
  - **If the door is suddenly approached**
- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**

Opening the tailgate



OJWEV051005L

To open the tailgate:

1. Make sure you have the smart key in your possession.
2. Press either the tailgate open/close button on the vehicle or press and hold the Tailgate Unlock button (3) on the smart key for more than one second. The hazard warning lights will blink two times and the tailgate will open.

Information

The tailgate open/close button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 m (28 in.) from the tailgate.

Remotely opening and closing the charging door

To open charging door remotely:

Press the Charging Door Open/Close button (4) for more than one second, or press the charging door open/close button in the vehicle while carrying the smart key.

To close the charging door:

Press the Charging Door Open/Close button (4) for more than a second while the door is open, or press the charging door open/close button in the vehicle while carrying the smart key when the charging door is opened.

Remotely initiating electricity charging

To remotely start charging the vehicle:

Press the charging door open/close button in the smart key while the charging connector is connected to the vehicle.

For more details, refer to “Charging Electric Vehicle” section in chapter 1.

Remotely starting vehicle (if equipped)

You can start the vehicle using the Remote Start button (5) on the smart key.

To start the vehicle remotely:

1. Press the door lock button on the smart key within 10 m (32 feet) from the vehicle.
2. Press the Remote Start button (5) for more than 2 seconds within 4 seconds after pressing the door lock button.
3. The vehicle will start.
4. To turn off the remote start function, press the Remote Start button (5) once.

Information

- **The vehicle must be in P (Park) for the remote start function to start.**
- **The vehicle turns off if you get on the vehicle without a registered smart key.**
- **The vehicle turns off if you do not get on the vehicle within 10 minutes after remotely starting the vehicle.**
- **The Remote Start button (5) may not operate if the smart key is not within 10 m (32 feet).**
- **The vehicle will not remotely start if the vehicle hood or tailgate is opened.**

Remotely moving vehicle forward or backward (if equipped)

With the smart key, the driver can move the vehicle forward or backward using the Forward/Backward button (6, 7) on the smart key.

For more details, refer to "Remote Smart Parking Assist (RSPA)" section in chapter 7.

Start-up

You can start the vehicle without inserting the key.

For more details, refer to the "Start/ Stop Button" section in chapter 6.

Information

If the smart key is not moved for some time, the detection function for smart key operation will pause. Lift the smart key to activate the detection again.

NOTICE

To prevent damaging the smart key:

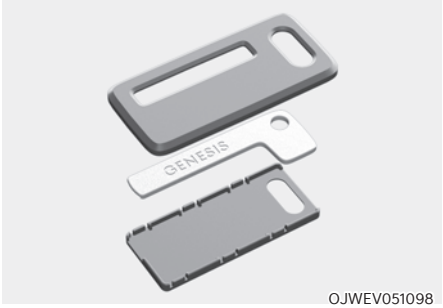
- **Keep the smart key in a cool, dry place to avoid damage or malfunction. Exposure to moisture or high temperature may cause the internal circuit of the smart key to malfunction which may not be covered under warranty.**
- **Avoid dropping or throwing the smart key.**
- **Protect the smart key from extreme temperatures.**

Mechanical key

If the Smart Key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the driver's door by using the mechanical key.

OJWEV051097

1. Press the Genesis text section of the Mechanical key to remove the case.



OJWEV051098

2. Remove the mechanical key from the case.
3. After use, reinstall the mechanical key in the reverse order of removal.

Loss of a smart key

A maximum of two Smart Keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you happen to lose your smart key, it is recommended that you should immediately take the vehicle and remaining keys to your authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products or tow the vehicle, if necessary.

Smart key precautions

The smart key may not work if any of the following occur:

- The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
- The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.
- Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.

If the smart key does not work correctly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, it is recommended to contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

If the smart key is in close proximity to your mobile phone, the signal could be blocked by your mobile phone's normal operational signals. This is specifically relevant when the phone is active such as making and receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. When possible, avoid keeping the smart key and your mobile phone in the same location such as pants or jacket pocket to avoid interference between the two devices.

- Be careful when you hang objects too much on the key chain of the smart key, It may fall out.
- The smart key may be occur excessive overheating or discoloration over time. Be careful that the discoloration does not cause defects in the part.

NOTICE

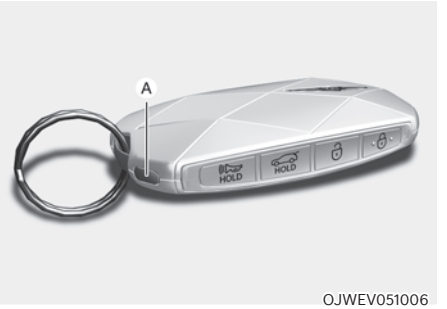
- **Keep the smart key away from electromagnetic materials that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.**
- **Always have the smart key with you when leaving the vehicle. If the smart key is left near the vehicle, the vehicle battery may be discharged.**

Battery replacement

If the Smart Key is not working properly, try replacing the battery with a new one.

Battery Type: CR2450

To replace the battery:



OJWEV051006

1. Press the button(A) to remove the keyring fixed appliance.
2. Insert a phillips screwdriver into the inner groove to remove the battery cover.

OJWEV051237

3. Remove battery cover using a phillips screwdriver.
4. Remove the old battery and insert the new battery. Make sure the battery position is correct.

5. Reinstall the battery cover and smart key cover in the reverse order of removal.

If you suspect your smart key might have sustained some damage, or you feel your smart key is not working correctly, it is recommended that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

THIS PRODUCT CONTAINS A BUTTON BATTERY

If swallowed, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries within 2 hours.

Keep batteries out of reach of children.

If you think batteries may have been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, seek immediate medical attention.

Information

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

Immobilizer system

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the vehicle is disabled.

When the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, the immobilizer system indicator should come on briefly, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, the system does not recognize the coding of the key.

Press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position, then press the Start/Stop button to the ON position again.

In some circumstances, the vehicle may not recognize your smart key if another smart key device is nearby or a metal object such as a key chain is causing interference with the smart key.

If this occurs, your vehicle may not start. Remove any metal objects or additional keys near the smart key before attempting to start the vehicle again.

If the system repeatedly does not recognize the coding of the key, it is recommended that you contact your retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle inoperable.

WARNING

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your immobilizer password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential.

NOTICE

The transponder in your key is an important part of the immobilizer system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobilizer system malfunction could occur.

GENESIS DIGITAL KEY (IF EQUIPPED)

Genesis digital key provides convenience to the driver, which the driver can use to lock or unlock the driver and passenger doors or the liftgate and turn on the vehicle.

Digital Key (Smart Phone)

Information

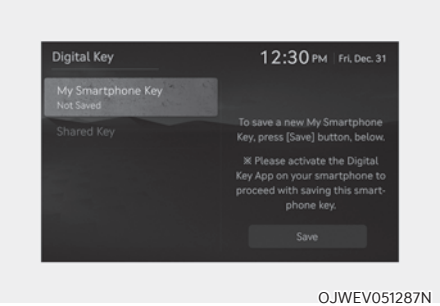
- **Genesis digital key is only available for smart phones that support the digital key feature, provided by the smart phone manufacturer.**
- **The driver can confirm supported/ compatible devices on our website (https://owners.genesis.com).**
- **Certain functions may not operate depending on whether the service is provided in the vehicle.**
- **During the digital key system update, the smart key may not work temporarily.**

Setting your smart phone

To use the digital key (smart phone), download the Genesis Intelligent Assistant App and sign up for a Genesis account and service.

Registering your digital key (smart phone)

1. Turn on the vehicle with a smart key. Have your smart key with you in the vehicle.



OJWEV051287N

[A]: Vehicle authentication pad (Wireless charging pad)

2. From the infotainment system Settings menu, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Digital Key → Smartphone Key → My Smartphone Key'.
3. After selecting 'Digital Key → Set Up Digital Key' from the Genesis Intelligent Assistant App in the smart phone, register the digital key according to the guidance in the smart phone screen.
   - Ultra Wide Band unsupported smart phone

     Place your smart phone on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) with the screen facing up.
   - Ultra Wide Band supported smart phone

     The digital key can be registered if the smart phone is inside the vehicle even without placing it on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).

4. Press the ‘Save’ button from the infotainment system screen. The saving process begins automatically.
   - When the digital key (smart phone) is saved, a message appears on the infotainment system screen.

Information

- **If you want to register a digital key (smart phone) again, refer to ‘How to Delete Digital Key (Smart Phone)’ and delete the digital key (smart phone) before re-registering.**
- **During the digital key saving process, the process will cancel when:**
  - **The smart phone is removed from the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad)**
- **The infotainment system screen is changed**
  - **The vehicle is turned off**
  - **The gear is shifted**
- **The registering process does not start if a smart key is not in the vehicle.**
- **Some smart phones may not start the registering process depending on the internal structure. Move the smart phone to the left or right on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charger pad) and try registering the smart phone.**
- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**

Using the digital key (smart phone)

Digital key touch control

The driver can lock or unlock the door by placing the smart phone on the outside door handle, and the vehicle can be started by placing the smart phone on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).

Digital key close proximity control

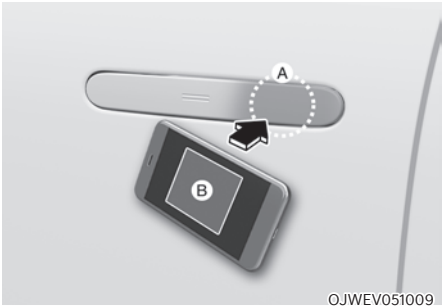
- If you have the smart phone in possession, the doors can be locked or unlocked without touching the smart phone to the door handle, but by touching the door lock/unlock sensor (engraved part) on the door handle. Also, the vehicle can be started by pressing the Start/Stop button without placing the smart phone on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).
- When the smart phone and vehicle is connected by Bluetooth, the Remote Start and Door Lock/Unlock functions are available using the App provided by the smart phone manufacturer.

Information

- **Digital key close proximity control is only available for Ultra Wide Ban supported smart phone digital keys. To use the function, the smart phone’s Bluetooth must be activated.**
- **The necessary distance between the smart phone and vehicle for Bluetooth connection may vary depending on the surroundings of the vehicle and smart phone.**

Locking/Unlocking the doors

- Ultra Wide Band unsupported smart phone



[A]: Door handle authentication pad
[B]: NFC antenna (Backside of the smart phone) (The antenna position differs depending on models.)

  - The door will lock or unlock by touching the registered digital key (card key) NFC antenna to the driver's or passenger's door handle authentication pad (A) for more than 2 seconds.
  - If the Two Press Unlock feature is set, only the driver's door pops out and unlocks when the digital key (smart phone) is placed on the driver's door handle authentication pad (A). Place the digital key (smart phone) on the driver's door handle authentication pad once more within 4 seconds to unlock all doors.

- Ultra Wide Band supported smart phone
  - If you touch the door lock/unlock sensor (engraved part) on the door handle with the smart phone in possession, the door locks or unlocks.
  - If you approach the front door handle with the smart phone in possession when 'On driver approach' is set, the door unlocks automatically.
- After unlocking the doors, the doors will automatically re-lock after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.
- If the smart phone digital key does not operate, try again after moving the smart phone away from the door handle authentication pad (more than 4 in. (0.1 m)).

Information

- **You cannot lock your vehicle using the digital key (smart phone) if any of the following occurs:**
  - **The smart key is in the vehicle.**
  - **The Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON position.**
  - **Any of the doors, hood, or liftgate are open.**
- **The door may not unlock automatically if you stay near the vehicle for several minutes with the Ultra Wide Band supported smart phone in possession.**
- **If the smart phone is kept in the back pocket or bag, it may cause poor Bluetooth connection, or the door lock/ unlock or vehicle start-up operation my be delayed.**
- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**

Starting the vehicle

- Ultra Wide Band unsupported smart phone

  After placing your registered digital key (smart phone) on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad), depress the brake pedal and press the Start/ Stop button.
- Ultra Wide Band supported smart phone

  With the smart phone inside the vehicle, depress the brake pedal and press the Start/Stop button.

  To start the vehicle remotely, use the App provided by the smart phone manufacturer to lock the vehicle with the door lock button, and press the remote start button within 4 seconds.

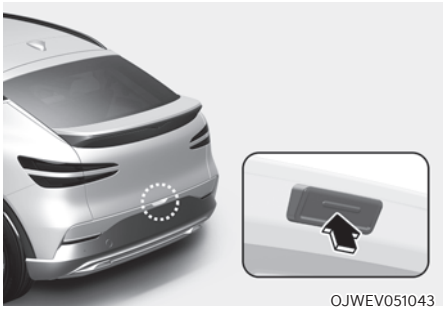
  The vehicle starts and the hazard warning lights blink.

  Press the remote start button again to turn off the vehicle.

After starting the vehicle, the digital key (smart phone) may be removed from the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).

For more details on the basic way to start the vehicle, refer to the “Start/Stop Button” section in chapter 6.

Operating the power liftgate



OJWEV051043

- Ultra Wide Band supported smart phone

  If the vehicle is locked, press the power liftgate open button with the smart phone in possession to open the liftgate.

  If you are in the detecting area behind the liftgate for more than 3 seconds with the smart phone in possession when ‘Smart Liftgate' is set, the liftgate opens automatically.

Information

If a shared digital key (smart phone) is used for the first time, the activating time may take longer.

- **Place the shared digital key (smart phone) on the door handle authentication pad until the vehicle door lock/unlock activates.**
- **If a shared digital key (smart phone) is first used on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charger pad), the initial start of the vehicle may fail.**
- **If the door lock/unlock is activated once with the shared digital key (smart phone) or the vehicle is started with the digital key (smart phone) on the vehicle authentication pad, the digital key (smart phone) will be registered in the vehicle.**

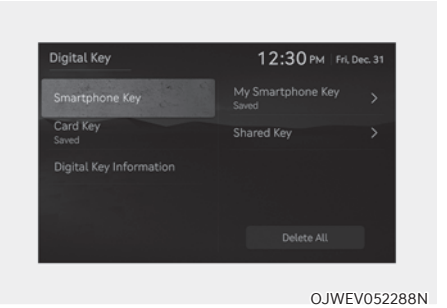
WARNING

The vehicle can be started when the registered smart phone is in the vehicle. Therefore, do not leave unsupervised children or people who are not aware of the system since it can result in serious injury or death. In addition, always have the registered smart phone with you to prevent vehicle theft when leaving the vehicle.

Information

- **The Ultra Wide Band supported smart phone digital key can be used only when the smart phone and vehicle are connected with Bluetooth.**
  - **The necessary distance between the smart phone and vehicle for Bluetooth connection may vary depending on the surroundings.**
  - **Window tinting substances may cause poor Bluetooth connection.**
  - **If the smart phone is kept in the back pocket or bag, it may cause poor Bluetooth connection, or the door lock/unlock or vehicle start-up operation my be delayed.**
- **The Ultra Wide Band supported smart phone digital key can be used only for a certain amount of time to optimize the performance of the smart phone and vehicle battery. If you stay near the vehicle for several minutes with the Ultra Wide Band supported smart phone, the Auto Unlock feature may not operate.**
- **Check the smart phone's setting menu or the App provided by the smart phone manufacturer for connection of the vehicle and smart phone.**
- **The Ultra Wide Band supported smart phone digital key can also use the NFC function.**

Deleting your digital key (smart phone)



OJWEV052288N

Deleting all registered digital key (smart phone)

To delete all the registered digital key (smart phone), from the Settings menu select 'Setup → Vehicle → Digital Key → Smartphone Key → Delete All' in the infotainment system.

- The 'Delete All' button is disabled if there is no registered digital key (smart key).

OJWEV051288N

Deleting my registered digital key (smart phone)

To delete only my registered digital key (smart phone), from the Settings menu select 'Setup → Vehicle → Digital Key → Smartphone Key → My Smartphone Key → Delete' in the infotainment system.

- If a shared digital key (smart phone) is registered, it cannot be deleted.
- A new smart phone can be registered after deleting the existing digital key (smart phone) from 'My Smartphone Key' menu.

Information

- **If the registered digital key (smart key) is deleted, the digital key saved in the smart phone will also be deleted.**
- **If the digital key is deleted from the smart phone, the digital key (smart phone) registered in the vehicle will also be deleted.**
- **The shared digital key registered in the vehicle cannot be deleted individually.**
- **Even though the Genesis Intelligent Assistant App is deleted from the smart phone, the digital key saved in the smart phone will not be deleted.**
- **Management of the digital key saved in the smart phone is available from the App provided by the smart phone manufacturer.**
- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**

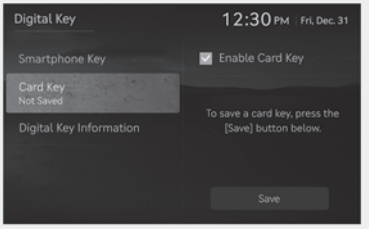
Digital Key (Card Key) (if equipped)

How to register Digital Key (Card Key)

To use the card key as a digital key, follow the following procedure.

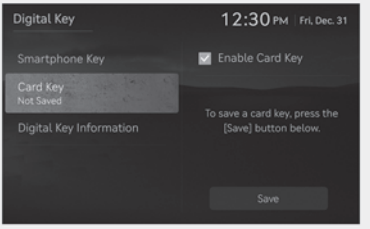
Registering your digital key (card key)

1. Have both of your smart keys with you in the vehicle.



OJWEV051290N

2. Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Digital Key → Card Key' from the Settings menu, and check whether 'Enabled Cark Key' is selected in the infotainment system.



OJWEV051290N

[A]: Vehicle authentication pad (Wireless charging pad)

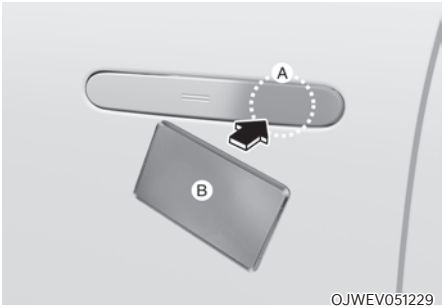
3. Place your card key on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) while the vehicle is on.
4. Register your card key by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle → Digital Key → Card Key → Save' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

Information

- **When there is a digital key (card key) already registered in the vehicle, a new digital key (card key) cannot be registered. Re-register a new digital key (card key) after deleting the exiting digital key (card key).**
- **To register a digital key (card key), both of your smart keys must be in the vehicle.**
- **A registered digital key (card key) cannot be registered in other vehicles.**
- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**

Using the digital key (card key)

The driver can lock or unlock the door by placing the card key on the outside door handle, and the vehicle can be started by placing the card key on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).



[A]: Door handle authentication pad,
[B]: Card key NFC antenna

Locking/Unlocking the doors

- If the driver places the digital key (card key) on the driver's or passenger's door handle authentication pad (A) for more than 2 seconds, the door will lock or unlock.
- If the Two Press Unlock feature is set, only the driver's door pops out and unlocks when the digital key (card key) is placed on the driver's door handle authentication pad. Hold the digital key (card key) near the driver's door handle authentication pad once more within 4 seconds to unlock all doors.
- After unlocking the doors, the doors will automatically re-lock after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.

Information

You cannot lock your vehicle using the digital key (card key) if any of the following occurs:

- **The smart key is in the vehicle.**
- **The Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON position.**
- **Any of the doors, hood, or liftgate are open.**

Starting the vehicle

After placing your registered digital key (card key) on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad), depress the brake pedal and press the Start/ Stop button.

For more details on the basic way to start the vehicle, refer to "Start/Stop Button" section in chapter 6.

WARNING

The vehicle can be started when the registered card key is placed on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad). Therefore, do not leave unsupervised children or people who are not aware of the system since it can result in serious injury or death. In addition, always have the registered card key with you to prevent vehicle theft when leaving the vehicle.

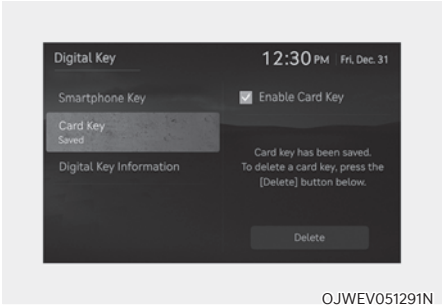
NOTICE

- **The digital key (card key) may not work under the following conditions:**
  - **The digital key (card key) is not placed on the center of the door handle authentication pad or vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) correctly.**
  - **The digital key (card key) is near NFC-enabled cards such as credit cards or smart phones.**

    If the digital key (card key) does not work, try again after moving the digital key (card key) away from the door handle authentication pad (more than 4 in. (0.1 m)).
- **The digital key (card key) can be damaged by impacts. If the digital key (card key) is damaged, replace the digital key (card key) with a new one and register it again.**
- **Long-time exposure to high temperature may cause the digital key (card key) to malfunction. Be careful not to expose the digital key (card key) to direct sunlight or high temperature.**
- **Leaving the digital key (card key) on the in-vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) while driving may cause the digital key (card key) to malfunction. Remove the digital key (card key) from the in-vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) after starting the vehicle.**
- **Remove the digital key (card key) from the smartphone before charging the smartphone. If the digital key (card key) is placed between the smartphone and the in-vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) while the smartphone is being charged, the digital key (card key) may malfunction. For example, when charging smartphone while the digital key (card key) is attached to the back of the smartphone case.**

Deleting your digital key (card key)

1. Turn on the vehicle with a smart key. Have your smart key with you in the vehicle.



OJWEV051291N

2. From the infotainment system settings menu, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Digital Key → Card Key → Delete'.
   - The 'Delete' button is disabled if there is no digital key (card key) registered.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Personalized Profile and Vehicle Settings

You can set the registered digital key (smart phone) profiles for Driver 1 and Driver 2. When you use the digital key (smart phone), the vehicle can be set to the user-defined personalized profile (includes items such as vehicle settings and audio preferences).

Linking / Unlinking profile

How to link user profile

1. Select 'Setup → User Profile → Profile Settings → Link Digital Key (Smartphone)' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.
2. Select 'Link' to connect the registered smart phone's digital key and the user's profile.
3. Follow the instructions according to the message on the infotainment system screen.

How to unlink user profile

Select 'Setup → User Profile → Profile Settings', and then deselect 'Link Digital Key (Smartphone)' from Settings menu in the infotainment system.

- Unlinking is possible only when user profile is linked.

Information

- **User profile cannot be linked to both Driver 1 and Driver 2 that are connected to a single smart phone. Personalization will operate with the recently linked user profile, and the previously linked user profile will be automatically canceled.**
- **User profile link works only when the digital key is registered to the vehicle.**
- **Digital key (Card key) cannot be linked with a user profile.**
- **If the user profile linked digital key in the smart phone is deleted, the digital key should be re-registered and personalized by linking the user profile again.**
- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**

Vehicle personalization operation

The personalization function linked with digital key works under the following conditions:

- The personalization function linked with digital key works when the profile linked smart phone is placed on the outside door handle authentication pad to lock or unlock the doors.
- The profile set by the digital key can be changed manually from the infotainment system.
- The personalization function using the digital key can be operated after linking the digital key in the infotainment system profile menu.
- The personalization function works only when the vehicle is OFF or when the vehicle is started remotely. If the vehicle is not started remotely, the personalization function does not work with the digital key.

Information

User profile operation according to door lock/unlock system is as follows:

Item	Personalization operation
Initial value	Guest
Profile linked smart phone key	Linked profile
Profile unlinked smart phone key	Recently activated profile
NFC card key	
Smart key	

Vehicle personalization with digital key

The available personalization function in the vehicle is as follows.

System	Personalization Item	
Infotainment system vehicle settings	Head Up Display (HUD)	Position adjustment of image, Information display selection
	Lamp	Blink number of one-touch signal lamps
	Cluster	Information display on the cluster, Voice volume, Welcome sound
	Seat/Mirror/Steering wheel	Seat position, O/S mirror position, Steering wheel position, Easy Access
		Smart heating wire/ventilation On/Off
	Door	Automatic door lock/unlock, Two Press Unlock
	Smart phone wireless charging	Wireless charging On/Off
	Air conditioning	Setting up temperature unit, Block air inflow/ Automatic ventilation/Window defroster On/ Off
Infotainment menu	Navigation	Preferred volume of the navigation system
		Recent destination
	User preset	My menu list settings, Radio preset
	Phone connectivity	Bluetooth preferential connection
		CarPlay/Android Auto/MirrorLink On/Off
Air conditioning	Operating condition	Latest operation setup of the following functions: Temperature (AUTO), air flow direction, air volume, air conditioner, air intake control, SYNC, Front windshield defroster, OFF

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

CAUTION

If you leave the digital key in the vehicle after locking or unlocking the doors or starting the vehicle with the smart key, the doors can be locked with the central door lock. Have the digital key with you at all times.

Used Vehicle/Digital Key Maintenance

Purchasing used vehicle

If any of the digital key devices (smart phone key, card key) are registered in the vehicle, the 'Digital key registered' message appears once on the instrument cluster when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position after unlocking the doors. When purchasing a used vehicle, be sure to check the message and delete the smart phone key and card key registered by the previous user and inform the purchase of a used vehicle through Genesis Customer Care.

If the card key comes with the vehicle, check whether it operates properly.

Digital Key Maintenance

If you need to have your Digital Key System repaired or replaced, the registered smartphone key or card key can be deleted.

Limitations of the System

- Genesis digital key may not operate if any of the following occurs:
  - The smart phone battery or the vehicle battery is discharged
  - NFC or Bluetooth is turned off in the smart phone settings
  - A credit card is near your smart phone, or a metal or thick smart phone case is used
  - The card key is near other cards, or used in a wallet or card holder
  - There is electronic interference by other vehicles, objects, etc.
- The vehicle may not be controlled by the smart phone if any of the following occurs:
  - The basic necessary functions of the smart phone are operating (general call, urgent call, audio, etc.)
  - Using a wireless earphone (general call, urgent call, audio, etc.)

FACE CONNECT

Face Connect allows the driver to lock and unlock the vehicle without a smart key, by recognizing the driver's face.

Register the face in the 'Driver Profile' from the infotainment system to use Face Connect. A maximum of 2 faces can be registered, one for each driver profile.

Face Connect Settings

The driver can register a new face or delete the registered face from the profile menu in the infotainment system.

Registering face

[A]: face recognition camera.

1. Place both smart keys inside the vehicle.
2. Select 'Vehicle Settings → User Profile → Driver 1 or Driver 2' from the infotainment system while the Start/Stop button is ON.
3. Enter the profile password and select 'Face Register/Remove → Register'. The circular light on the face recognition camera illuminates in white and starts rotating.

   It indicates the progress of face registration:

Progress	Circular light (A)
Face registration in progress	Rotating in white
Face registration completed	Green
Face registration failed	Red

4. Follow the instruction and exit the vehicle. Look into the camera lens while keeping your face 0.3 m – 0.8 m away from the camera. The system will start registering your face.
   - Keep the driver's door opened while registering your face. Audio guidance may be provided from the speaker inside the vehicle.
   - If the audio guidance is provided while the door and window are both closed, the window may open automatically.
   - Check if the camera lens is covered with foreign substances such as raindrop or dust. If so, clean the camera lens before registering your face.

Information

- **To increase recognition rates while registering the face.**
  - **Do not cover the face with masks or other accessories and look into the face recognition camera lens straight ahead.**
  - **From the center of the face, naturally change directions of the face to register.**
  - **Register the face indoors or away from direct sunlight.**
- **If face registration is not possible, audio guidance is provided from the vehicle's interior speaker 15 seconds after registration starts. Faces cannot be registered in the following situations.**
  - **When the face is covered by a mask, sunglasses, hat, etc.**
  - **When the driver is not in front of the face recognition camera.**
  - **When the face is not directly facing the camera lens.**
  - **When the face is too far away (over 0.8 m) from the camera.**
  - **When the face is too close (0.3 m or less) to the camera.**
- **Face registration may be canceled in the following situations.**
  - **When the infotainment system screen is changed.**
  - **When the vehicle is turned off.**
  - **When you start driving.**
- **After registration, if there are difficulties recognizing the face due to changes in appearance such as makeup, beard, or glasses, register the face again.**
- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**

Deleting registered face information

1. Place one or more smart keys inside the vehicle.
2. While the Start/Stop button is ON, select ‘Vehicle Settings → User Profile → Driver 1 or Driver 2 → Face Recognition’ from the infotainment system.
3. Enter the profile password and select ‘Register/Remove Face → Remove’.
4. Delete the registered face information according to the message ‘Are you sure you want to delete all information of driver 1?’.

Face Connect Operation

Lock/Unlocking doors with face recognition

OJWEV051011N

By recognizing a registered face, the vehicle door can be locked or unlocked without a smart key. Touch the center of the door lock/unlock sensor (1) on the outer door handle to start face recognition. The circular light (2) on the face recognition camera illuminates in white and starts rotating. Look into the camera lens straight ahead within a distance of 0.3 – 0.8 m. When the face recognition is complete, the circular light will change its color to green and the vehicle door will lock or unlock.

Category	Circular light color
Recognizing	White
Recognition successful	Green
Recognition failed	Red

Information

- **The camera cannot recognize the face if it is covered with a mask. Take off the mask or at least lower the mask until the nose is completely visible.**
- **Touching the sensor on the outer door handle while carrying a smart key will lock or unlock the door. At this time, Face Connect does not operate.**
- **For more details on locking and unlocking the door, refer to 'Smart Key' in chapter 5.**

Limitations of Face Connect

- Face Connect may not work when:
  - Scanning an unregistered face.
  - The registered face is not directly in front of the camera.
  - The camera lens is covered with water or foreign substances.
  - The face is significantly different from the registered face due to changes in appearance from heavy makeup, beard, or plastic surgery.
  - The eyes are not visible due to wearing sunglasses.
  - The sunlight is strong, or when there is heavy rain or snow.
  - The face is partially covered with an umbrella or raincoat during bad weather.

- Faces of similar appearance (such as twins) may be recognized by Face Connect and lock or unlock the door.
- If you cannot lock or unlock the vehicle door due to malfunction of the face recognition camera or controller, we recommend that you have your vehicle be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- When you have your vehicle serviced due to failures of the Face Connect system or related parts, all registered faces may be deleted during the repair. Carry two smart keys to your visit and re-register your face immediately after your vehicle is repaired.
- You cannot use the Face Connect system when the vehicle is discharged.
- If the face entry check box in infotainment system is unchecked, face connect system is deactivated. It is activated automatically when the face is registered.
- If you have left your smart key or digital key in your vehicle and locked the vehicle door with Face Connect, keep the smart key out of sight to prevent theft.

WARNING

Do not register a child's face on the vehicle as unexpected accidents may occur.

When Purchasing a Used Vehicle

If you purchase a used vehicle, you should confirm and delete all registered face in Driver 1 and Driver 2 profile.

If a face is registered, the message "Biometric authentication active" appears on the instrument cluster once when the vehicle is turned on while the doors are unlocked.

Legal Compliance

This system uses facial recognition and authentication which may be considered "biometrics" under law. Use of this system consents to the collection, use, and storage of your data for the disclosed activities. (By setting your Facial Recognition Profile, you consent to using facial recognition for locking and unlocking the vehicle.) We will only use or share your data as needed for system use, maintenance, and storage. Stored data cannot be converted into your facial image. You may delete your facial recognition data at any time.

FINGERPRINT AUTHENTICATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Fingerprint authentication system allows the driver to have access to personal information, unlock profile and exit valet mode with a enrolled fingerprint.

Fingerprint authentication system settings

To use the system, the driver's fingerprint should be enrolled in the driver's profile. The drivers can set or delete their fingerprint through the infotainment system. Follow the following procedure.

Enrolling fingerprint

[A]: Fingerprint sensor

1. Turn on the vehicle.
2. Select 'Setup → User Profile Settings → Driver 1 → Fingerprint Identification → Set/Delete Fingerprint→ Set' in the infotainment system screen.
3. Place your finger that you wish to enroll on the fingerprint sensor according to the instruction.
4. Following the instructions, place several parts of your fingerprint until the scanning process is complete.
5. Once the scanning process is completed, the message 'Saving fingerprint....' appears and the fingerprint enrollment process is proceeded.
6. When the fingerprint enrollment process is completed in the vehicle, the status is displayed on the infotainment system.

Deleting fingerprint

1. Select 'Setup → User Profile Settings → Driver 1 → Fingerprint Identification → Set/Delete Fingerprint→ Delete' in the infotainment system.
2. Delete the enrolled fingerprint according to the message 'Delete all Driver 1 fingerprints?'
3. Once the fingerprint is deleted, the status is displayed on the infotainment system screen.

i Information

- **If no fingerprint is enrolled in the infortainment system, the sensor will not operate.**
- **The maximum of two fingerprint can be enrolled. Driver 1 and Driver 2 can enroll one fingerprint each.**
- **Please remove all substances including protection film on the fingerprint sensor and enroll your fingerprint.**
- **The fingerprint enrollment process is cancelled when the following condition occurs:**
  - **The infotainment system screen is altered.**
  - **The Start/Stop button turns on or off.**
  - **The gear is shifted and the vehicle is driven.**

CAUTION

Do not participate in duplicating your fingerprint with anyone.

NOTICE

Touch the fingerprint authentication sensor gently. Fingerprint authentication attempts with excessive force may fail.

Fingerprint authentication system operation

Touch control

The convenient features such as personal information access, profile unlock, and valet mode exit are available with the fingerprint authentication system.

When the fingerprint shape appears on the infotainment system screen, you should place your finger on the recognition sensor in the vehicle according to the instruction message for authorization and then you can operate the linked features without entering the password.

If the fingerprint authentication system does not work, pull your finger away from the fingerprint authentication sensor and then try again.

Fingerprint linked features can be turned on or off from the Settings menu. Select:

- 'Setup → User Profile Settings → Driver 1 (or Driver 2) → Fingerprint Identification

Fingerprint linked features	Characteristic
Personal information access	Use with a fingerprint without a password
Profile unlock	
Valet mode exit	

Information

- **If the same fingerprint is registered for Driver 1 and Driver 2, the authentication result is linked to driver 1, when authentication is successful.**
- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**

Limitations of the system

- Fingerprint authentication system may not work when:
  - Trying to authorize with unregistered fingerprint.
  - Not touching the center of fingerprint authentication sensor.
  - Any water or substances is on your finger or the sensor.
  - The film on the sensor is not removed.
  - The registered fingerprint is damaged or swollen.
  - The hand is overly dry.
  - The sensor is touched shortly.
- If fingerprint authentication fails over 5 consecutive times, fingerprint recognition is temporarily restricted. You should try it later or try other methods such as inputting your password.
- When you visit an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products to repair parts due to fingerprint authorization system or related part failure, your registered fingerprint might be deleted. Have your smart key when you visit an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- You cannot use the fingerprint sensor when the vehicle is discharged.
- If you turn the vehicle on or off while proceeding the fingerprint authorization, the process will not be complete.

WARNING

Do not enroll children's fingerprints in the vehicle.

If you enroll children's fingerprints and leave them in the vehicle, unexpected accidents may occur.

Used vehicle

When purchasing a used vehicle

If you purchase a used vehicle, you should confirm and delete all of the enrolled fingerprints in Driver 1 and Driver 2 profile.

Remotely Starting the Vehicle

If Start Vehicle is selected from the Driver 1 or Driver 2 User Profile settings menu, and the door is unlocked with the Genesis Digital Key App or the Genesis Connected Service App while the vehicle is remotely started, the vehicle turns off if the fingerprint sensor does not verify your fingerprint. To remotely start the vehicle with the Genesis Digital Key App, refer to the "Genesis Digital Key" section in this chapter. And for Genesis Connected Service App, see additional information in separately supplied manual.

OTA SOFTWARE UPDATE

The OTA software update feature allows you to wirelessly update software to the latest version. Using this feature, you can keep your vehicle system up to date with the latest software.

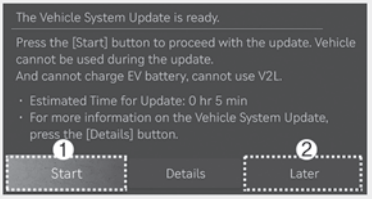
Information

The OTA software update feature is only available for Genesis Connected Services users.

Downloading software

The latest software can be downloaded automatically while driving. After the latest software has been successfully downloaded, you will receive a notification on your phone or the vehicle screen that the software update is available.

Approving software update



OJWEV051275L

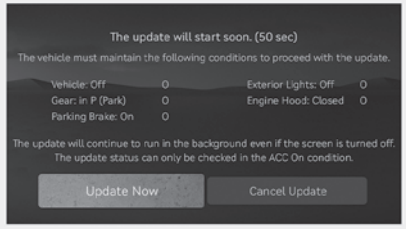
After the vehicle is turned off, the vehicle system will allow you to start the update.

- To start the update, press ‘Start’ (1).
- To postpone the update, press ‘Later’ (2).

Preparing software update

If you press the ‘Start’ button on the screen, the vehicle will begin installing the update automatically. The following conditions must be satisfied :

- The vehicle must be off.
- The gear must be in P (Park).
- The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) must be applied.
- The exterior lights must be turned off.
- The hood must be closed.
- The battery must be sufficient.
- The systems to be updated must not be running.



OJWEV051274L

- To update immediately, press ‘Update Now’.
- To cancel the update, press ‘Cancel Update’.

Updating software

OJWEV051246L

You can see the progress of the updating on the screen.

After the update is complete, you will receive a notification on your phone, e-mail or the vehicle screen that the software update is complete.

Information

The screen turns off automatically to protect the battery. If the screen turns off automatically, you can check the update progress by pressing the Start/Stop button.

Information

- **After the update starts, you can exit the vehicle.**
- **The OTA software update feature is only available for Genesis Connected Services users.**
- **The update details may vary depending on the installed software version.**
- **Check the notice for the OTA software update on the Genesis brand web.**
- **If the update fails, the update recovery will automatically proceed. If you want to retry the software update, even after a successful recovery, we recommend you to contact Genesis.**
- **If the update or recovery fails, we recommend you to contact Genesis Call Center.**
- **After the update is complete, it may provide new functions or improvements. For more information, see the "OTA Software Update" page on the Genesis brand web.**

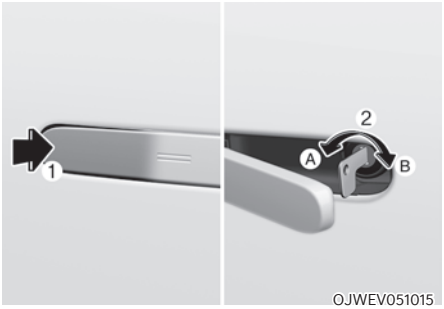
NOTICE

- **Observe the following restrictions during the update.**
  - **You cannot use the vehicle during the update. Be sure to have enough time for the update, and safely park the vehicle before starting the update process.**
  - **You cannot use remote features, including remote start.**
  - **Vehicle charging is not available. Charge the vehicle after the update is complete.**
  - **The Rear Occupant Alert feature may not work. Check if there are any occupant in the rear seat.**
- **The update will be automatically canceled if any vehicle conditions required for the update are changed before starting the update.**
- **Once the update has started, you cannot cancel the update.**
- **Note that the high-voltage-related modules for charging the 12V battery may work during the update.**
- **You cannot use the OTA software update feature if you modify or replace any vehicle software.**
- **Do not open the hood or replace the battery during updates. The update may fail.**
- **If a diagnostic tool is connected to the vehicle OBD (On-board Diagnostic) terminal, the vehicle cannot be updated. The update will proceed by removing the connected diagnostic tool from the ODB terminal and restarting the vehicle.**
- **If the update is not complete successfully, we highly recommend you to contact Genesis.**

DOOR LOCKS

Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

Mechanical key



Press the front part (1) of the door handle to pull out the rear part of the door handle. While keep pressing the front part of the door handle, insert (2) the mechanical key to the lock.

To lock the door, turn the key toward the front (B) of the vehicle. To unlock, turn the key toward the rear (A) of the vehicle.

NOTICE

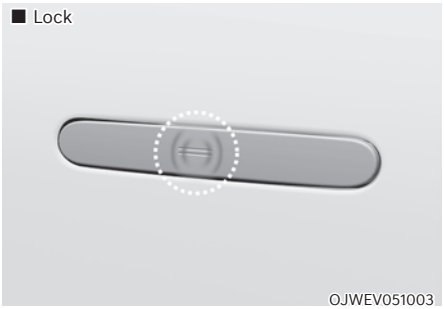
Do not apply excessive force on the door and door handle. It may damage the door and door handle.

i Information

When the keyhole freezes and does not open, lightly tap or indirectly warm (i.e. hand temperature) the keyhole.

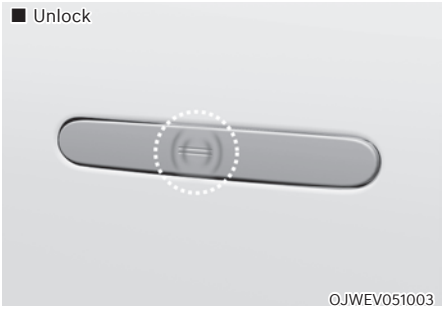
Smart key

■ Lock



Touch the touch sensor on the front outside door handle (the engraved part) while carrying the Smart Key with you or press the Door Lock button on the Smart Key, all doors will lock.

■ Unlock



Put your hand in the front outside door handle while carrying the Smart Key with you or press the Door Unlock button on the Smart Key, all doors will unlock.

Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.

When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

For more details, refer to “Smart Key” in the previous pages.

Information

- **In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.**

Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

With the door handle

Front door

If the inner door handle is pulled when the door is locked, the door will unlock and open.

Rear door

If the inner door handle is pulled once when the door is locked, the door will unlock. If the inner door handle is pulled once more, the door will open.

If any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the central door lock switch is pressed.

Information

If a power door lock ever fails to function while you are in the vehicle try one or more of the following techniques to exit:

- **Operate the door unlock feature repeatedly (both electronic and manual) while simultaneously pulling on the door handle.**
- **Operate the other door locks and handles, front and rear.**
- **Lower a front window and use the mechanical key to unlock the door from outside.**

With the central door lock switch

Driver and passenger door

The driver and passenger side door armrest is equipped with a central door lock switch. The lock switch is indicated by a (🔒) symbol. The unlock switch is indicated by a (🔓) symbol.

- When the lock switch (1) is pressed, all the vehicle doors will lock.
  - If any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the central door lock switch (1) is pressed.
- When the unlock switch (2) is pressed, all the vehicle doors will unlock.

Rear door

When the lock switch (1) is pressed (door indicator light ON), all the vehicle doors will lock.

When the unlock switch (2) is pressed, all the vehicle doors will unlock.

i Information

If all doors are locked with the rear door lock button, and the electronic child safety lock button (if equipped) in the driver's seat is turned ON (indicator light ON), the rear doors cannot be opened. If you want to open the rear doors:

- **Unlock the door with the smart key from outside.**
- **Unlock the door with Genesis Connected Service using your smartphone.**
- **Press the electronic child safety lock button on the driver's door to turn it off (indicator light OFF), then unlock the doors with the driver's or passenger's central door lock switch. (Electronic child lock OFF → Door unlocked)**
- **Press the electronic child safety lock button on the driver's door to turn it off (indicator light OFF), then pull the rear inner door handle twice.**

In case of an emergency

In case of emergency such as when the battery is discharged, the only way to lock the door(s) is with the mechanical key from the outside key hole.

Doors without an outside key hole can be locked as follows:

1. Open the door.
2. Insert the key into the emergency door lock hole and turn the key to the lock position.
3. Close the door securely.

Information

If the electrical power door lock switch does not operate (ex. dead car battery) and the tailgate is closed, you will not be able to open the tailgate until power is restored.

WARNING

- **The doors should always be fully closed and locked while the vehicle is in motion. If the doors are unlocked, the risk of being thrown from the vehicle in a crash is increased.**
- **Do not pull the inner door handle of the driver's or passenger's door while the vehicle is moving.**

WARNING

Do not leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle. An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or serious injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle.

WARNING

Always secure your vehicle.

Leaving your vehicle unlocked increases the potential risk to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle.

To secure your vehicle, while depressing the brake, shift the gear to the P (Park) position, engage the parking brake, and press the Start/ Stop button to the OFF position, close all windows, lock all doors, and always take the key with you.

CAUTION

Opening a door when something is approaching may cause damage or injury. Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door.

WARNING

If you stay in the vehicle for a long time while the weather is very hot or cold, there are risks of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when someone is in the vehicle.

Deadlocks (if equipped)

Some vehicles are equipped with a deadlock system. Deadlocks prevent opening of a door from either inside or outside the vehicle once the deadlocks have been activated providing an additional measure of vehicle security.

To lock the vehicle using the deadlock function, the doors must be locked by using the smart key. To unlock the vehicle, the smart key must be used again.

Automatic door lock and unlock features

Your vehicle is equipped with features that will automatically lock or unlock your vehicle based on settings you select in the infotainment system screen.

Auto LOCK Enable on speed

When this feature is set in the infotainment system screen, all the doors will be locked automatically when the vehicle exceeds 15 km/h (9 mph).

Auto LOCK Enable on shift

When this feature is set in the infotainment system screen, all the doors will be locked automatically when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) while the vehicle is running.

Auto UNLOCK On Shift to P

When this feature is set in the infotainment system screen, all the doors will be unlocked automatically when the vehicle is shifted back into P (Park) while the vehicle is running.

Auto UNLOCK Vehicle off

When this feature is set in the infotainment system screen, all the doors will be unlocked automatically when the vehicle is turned off.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Additional unlock safety feature air bag deployment

As an additional safety feature, all doors will be automatically unlocked when an impact causes the air bags to deploy.

Child-protector rear door locks (if equipped)

The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

The child safety lock is located on the edge of each rear door. When the child safety lock is in the lock position, the rear door will not open if the inner door handle is pulled.

To lock the child safety lock, insert a small flat blade tool (like a screwdriver or similar) (1) into the slot and turn it to the lock position as shown.

To allow a rear door to be opened from inside the vehicle, unlock the child safety lock.

WARNING

If children accidently open the rear doors while the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out of the vehicle. The rear door safety locks should always be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

Electronic child safety lock (if equipped)

When the electronic child safety lock button is pressed and the indicator light on the button illuminates, the rear doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

- The rear door window cannot be opened or closed while the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position (indicator light ON).

  For more details, refer to “Windows” section in this chapter.
- Electronic child safety lock does not automatically turn on unless the driver presses the electronic child safety lock button.
- If 3 minutes passes after the Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF or ACC, the indicator on the button turns off, and the driver cannot turn off electronic child safety lock by pressing the button. To turn off the function, press the Start/Stop button to the ON position, and then press the electronic child safety lock button.

- If the power is supplied again after removing the battery or battery is discharged while the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position, press the button once more to match the state of the indicator on the electronic child safety lock button and actual status of the electronic child safety lock function.
- If the airbag is activated while the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position (indicator light ON), the rear doors will unlock automatically.
- Vehicles equipped with the electronic child safety lock feature is not provided with a manual child safety lock.

WARNING

If children accidentally opens the rear door while the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out of the vehicle. Electronic child safety lock should always be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

NOTICE

Child safety lock failure / Child safety lock error

■ Type A

OJK050082L

■ Type B

OJK050083L

When electronic child safety lock does not work even though the button is pressed, the message will be displayed and an alarm will sound. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer Genesis Branded products.

Safe Exit Assist (if equipped with electronic child safety lock)

Safe Exit Assist prevents the rear occupant from opening the rear door. When an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected after the vehicle stops, the rear doors will not unlock even when the driver tries to unlock the rear doors using the electronic child safety lock button.

For more details, refer to “Safe Exit Assist (SEA)” section in chapter 7.

THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM

This system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables. The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously if any of the following occur:

- A door is opened without using the smart key.
- The tailgate is opened without using the smart key.
- The vehicle hood is opened.

The alarm continues for 30 seconds, then the system resets. To turn off the alarm, unlock the doors with the smart key.

The Theft Alarm System automatically sets 30 seconds after you lock the doors and the tailgate. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors and the tailgate from outside the vehicle with the smart key or by touching the touch sensor on the outside of the door handle with the smart key in your possession.

The hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound once to indicate the system is armed.

Once the security system is set, opening any door, the tailgate, or the hood without using the smart key will cause the alarm to activate.

The Theft Alarm System will not set if the hood, the tailgate, or any door is not fully closed. If the system will not set, check the hood, the tailgate, or the doors are fully closed.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.

Information

- **Do not lock the doors until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the remaining passenger leaves the vehicle when the system is armed, the alarm will be activated.**
- **If the vehicle is not disarmed with the smart key, open the doors by using the mechanical key and start the vehicle by directly pressing the Start/Stop button with the smart key.**
- **If the system is disarmed by unlocking the vehicle, but neither a door or the tailgate is opened within 30 seconds, the doors will relock and the system will rearm automatically.**

Information

OHI038181L

Vehicles equipped with a theft alarm system will have a label attached to the vehicle with the following words:

1. **WARNING**
2. **SECURITY SYSTEM**

ADVANCED REAR OCCUPANT ALERT (ROA) (IF EQUIPPED)

Advanced Rear Occupant Alert is provided to help prevent the driver from leaving the vehicle with the rear passenger left in the vehicle.

System setting

To use Rear Occupant Alert, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Convenience → Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

System operation

- First alert

  When you turn off the vehicle and open the driver's door after opening and closing the rear door or tailgate, the 'Check rear seat for passengers and belongings' warning message appears on the cluster display.

- Second alert

  After the first alert, the second alert operates when any movement is detected in the vehicle after the driver's door is closed and all the doors are locked. The horn will sound for approximately 25 seconds. Also, a text message is sent to members of Genesis Connected Services (if available). If the system continues to detect a movement, the alert operates up to 8 times.

  Unlock the doors with the smart key to stop the alert.

- The system detects movement in the vehicle for 10 minutes after the door is locked.

Information

- **The second alert is available for vehicles equipped with the ROA senor.**
- **Rear Occupant Alert also activates when movement is detected in the cargo area.**
- **The second alert is activated only after the prior activation of the first alert.**
- ■ Cluster display

OJWEV051293N

■ Steering wheel

OJWEV051078

If you do not want to use Rear Occupant Alert, press the OK button on the steering wheel when the first alert is displayed on the cluster display. Doing so will deactivate the second alert one time.

- **If the vehicle is started remotely (if equipped with Remote Start), inside movement detection will stop.**

System precautions

- Make sure that all the windows are closed. If the window is open, the alert may operate by the sensor detecting an unintended movement (for example, wind or bugs).
- The alert may operate if movement in the driver or passenger seat is detected.
- If the doors are locked with a passenger inside the vehicle, the alert may operate.
- An alert can occur if the there is an impact on the vehicle.
- If boxes or objects are stacked in the vehicle, the system may not detect passengers. Or, the alert may operate if the boxes or objects fall off.
- The alert may operate when the vehicle is pushed or shaken, or while washed, or by surrounding noise or vibration after the vehicle is locked.
- The alert may operate when there are metallic or liquid objects in the vehicle.

WARNING

Even if your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA), always make sure to check the rear seat before you leave the vehicle.

Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) may not operate when:

- **Movement does not continue for a certain period of time or the movement is small.**
- **A child is not seated in a child restraint system.**
- **The detection signal is weak because the signal is obscured by seat or CRS (for example, child is restrained in the forward-facing CRS).**
- **Movement is detected in areas other than the rear seats.**
- **The rear passenger is covered with a fabric containing metallic substance such as a blanket.**
- **An object in the vehicle blocks the sensor.**
- **The sensor is contaminated by foreign material.**
- **An animal at the rear seat or luggage compartment is not large enough to be detected by the sensor or there is hardly any movement.**
- **Attaching objects or modifying the interior ceiling, or the interior ceiling is deformed or damaged.**
- **There are electronic interference around the vehicle.**
- **Other environmental reasons that may affect the system.**

Declaration of Conformity

The radio frequency components (ROA Radar Sensor) complies:

- For Europe and CE certified countries

Declaration of Conformity
Radiocontrolled Vehicle components

CE

We, IEE International Electronics & Engineering, abbreviated "IEE S.A.", a Luxembourg société anonyme, having its registered office at Zone Industrielle, 12 rue Pierre Richardot, L-6468 Echternach, Grand-Duchy of Luxembourg and registered with the Luxembourg Trade and Companies' Register under number B 134858, declare under our sole responsibility that the above named product is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonisation legislation:

- 2011/65/EU - European RoHS Directive
- 2014/53/EU - Radio Equipment Directive

The original declaration of conformity can be consulted at: IEE S.A., Legal Department, 1 rue du Campus, L-7795 Bissen, Luxembourg.

frequency band 60-64 GHz
Maximum Output Power 13 dBm (20 mW)

OANATEL402

INTEGRATED MEMORY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

OJWEV051023

Integrated Memory System for the driver's seat is provided to store and recall the following memory settings with a simple button operation.

- Driver's seat position
- Steering wheel position (power adjustment)
- Outside rearview mirror position
- Head-Up Display (HUD) position (if equipped)

WARNING

Never attempt to operate the integrated memory system while the vehicle is moving.

This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

Information

- **If the battery is disconnected, the memory settings will be erased.**
- **If integrated memory system does not operate normally, we recommend that you have the system inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

Storing memory positions

1. Shift to P (Park) while the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
2. Adjust the driver's seat position, outside rearview mirror position, steering wheel position and head-up display height to the desired position.
3. Press and hold the memory buttons (1 or 2). The system will beep once and notify you 'Press button to save settings' on the cluster display.
4. Press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) within 4 seconds. The system will beep twice when the memory has been successfully stored.
5. 'Settings 1 (or 2) saved' will appear on the cluster display. The message appears only for the driver's seat position memory setting.

Recalling memory positions

1. Shift to P (Park) while the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
2. Press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system will beep once, and then the driver's seat position, outside rearview mirror position, steering wheel position and head-up display height will automatically adjust to the stored positions.
3. 'Settings 1(or 2) applied' will appear on the cluster display.

Information

- **In order to adjust the memory button (2) while adjusting the memory button (1), press the memory button (1) to pause the adjustment of (1), then press memory button (2).**
- **If you adjust the seat, rearview mirror, steering wheel or head-up display while recalling the stored positions, the pre-set settings will become ineffective.**

Resetting the system

Take the following procedures to reset integrated memory system, when it does not operate properly.

Resetting integrated memory system

1. Stop the vehicle and open the driver's door with the Start/Stop button in the ON position and the vehicle shifted to P (Park).
2. Adjust the driver's seat and seatback to the foremost position.
3. Press the SET button and push forward the driver's seat movement switch over 2 seconds simultaneously.

While resetting integrated memory system

1. Resetting starts with a notification sound.
2. The driver's seat and seatback is adjusted to the rearward position with the notification sound.
3. The driver's seat and seatback is re-adjusted to the default position (central position) with the notification sound.

However, in the following cases, the resetting procedure and the notification sound may stop.

- The memory button is pressed.
- The seat control switch is operated.
- The gear is shifted out of P (Park).
- The driving speed exceeds 3 km/h (2 mph).
- The driver's door is closed.

NOTICE

- **While integrated memory system is being reset, if the resetting and notification sound stops incompletely, restart the resetting procedure again.**
- **Make sure that there is no objects around the driver's seat in advance of resetting the integrated memory system.**

Seat easy access

Seat easy access will move the driver's seat and steering wheel automatically as follows:

- Exiting the vehicle:

  The driver's seat, steering wheel and seat bolster will move as follows when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position with the gear in P (Park) and the driver's door open.

  - Driver seat: Moves rearward depending on the distance selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.
  - Steering wheel: Moves upward
  - Seat bolster (if equipped): Adjusted to the default position.

  However, the driver's seat may not move rearward if there is not enough space between the driver's seat and the rear seats.

  Also, on a regular basis, the steering wheel will also move forward to adjust its location by itself.

- Entering the vehicle:

  The driver's seat, steering wheel and seat bolster will move as follows when the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ACC, ON or START position or while carrying the smart key, the driver's door is closed with the Start/Stop button in the OFF position.

  - Driver seat: Moves back to its original position.
  - Steering wheel: Moves back to its original position.
  - Seat bolster (if equipped): Adjusted to the default position.

- You can set the Seat Easy Access function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

  - Driver seat

    Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Seating Easy Access → Driver Seat Easy Access → Normal/Extended/Off

  - Steering wheel

    Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Seating Easy Access → Steering wheel easy access

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

STEERING WHEEL

Electric Power Steering (EPS)

The system assists you with steering the vehicle. If the vehicle is turned off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, you may still steer the vehicle, but it will require increased steering effort.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

CAUTION

If Electric Power Steering does not operate normally, the warning light and the message 'Check motor driven power steering' will illuminate on the instrument cluster. You may steer the vehicle, but it will require increased steering efforts. We recommend that you take the vehicle to an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products and have the system checked as soon as possible.

Information

The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:

- **The steering effort may be high immediately after pressing the Start/ Stop button to the ON position.**

  This happens as the system performs the EPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics are completed, the steering wheel effort will return to its normal condition.
- **When the battery voltage is low, you might have to put more steering effort. However, it is a temporary condition so that it will return to normal condition after charging the battery.**
- **A click noise may be heard from the EPS relay after the Start/Stop button is in the ON or OFF position.**
- **Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at a stop or at a low driving speed.**
- **When you operate the steering wheel in low temperatures, abnormal noise may occur. If the temperature rises, the noise will disappear. This is a normal condition.**
- **When an error is detected from EPS, the steering effort assist function will not be activated in order to prevent fatal accidents. Instrument cluster warning lights may be on or the steering effort may be high. If these symptoms occur, drive the vehicle to a safe area as soon as it is safe to do so. We recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.**

Tilt / Telescopic steering

When adjusting the steering wheel to a comfortable position, adjust the steering wheel so that it points toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument cluster warning lights and gauges. After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.

Always adjust the position of the steering wheel before driving.

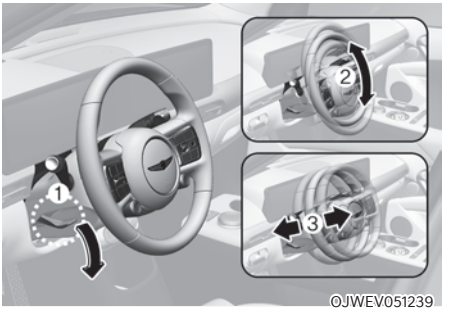
WARNING

NEVER adjust the steering wheel while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

While adjusting the steering wheel height, please do not push or pull it hard since the fixture can be damaged.

Manual adjustment



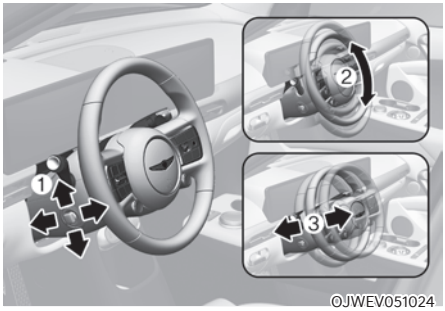
To adjust the steering wheel angle and height:

1. Pull down the lock-release lever (1).
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and distance forward/back (3).
3. Pull up the lock-release lever to lock the steering wheel in place.

Information

Sometimes the lock release lever may not engage completely. This may occur when the gears of the locking mechanism do not completely mesh. If this occurs, pull down on the lock-release lever, readjust the steering wheel again, and then pull back up on the release lever to lock the steering wheel in place.

Power adjustment



To change the steering wheel angle and height:

- Push the switch (1) up and down to adjust the angle (2).
- Push the switch forward or rearward to adjust the height (3).

NOTICE

Do not adjust the steering wheel longer than necessary when the vehicle is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.

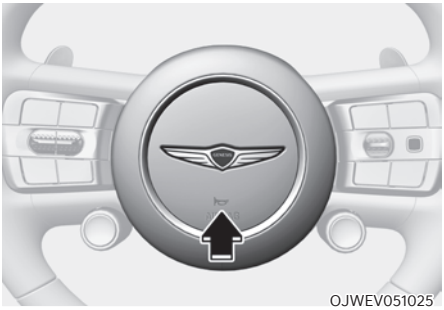
Resetting steering wheel power adjustment

If adjustment is no longer possible within the operable range while adjusting the steering wheel position (angle or height), reset as follows.

1. From the position the steering wheel has stopped, push the control switch (1) for 10 seconds in the direction you were adjusting the steering wheel. The steering wheel will move in the direction the control switch is pushed.
2. Continue pushing the switch (1) for at least 2 seconds after the steering wheel has stopped. Resetting will be complete after the operational range is recognized.

   If the adjustment is still not possible after resetting the steering wheel power adjustment, we recommend that the system be inspected by authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Horn


OJWEV051025

To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.

NOTICE

Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.

Heated steering wheel (if equipped)

OJWEV051230

While the vehicle is running, press the heated steering wheel button to warm the steering wheel.

- Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)

  The heated steering wheel automatically controls the steering wheel temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the vehicle is running.

  To use this function, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.

  Select:

  - Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings → Heated steering wheel
- The heated steering wheel defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position. However, if the Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings function is ON, the heated steering wheel will turn on and off depending on the outside temperature.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

NOTIC

Do not install any cover or accessory on the steering wheel. The cover or accessory could cause damage to the heated steering wheel system.

MIRRORS

Inside rearview mirror

Before driving your vehicle, check to see that your inside rearview mirror is properly positioned. Adjust the rearview mirror so that the view through the rear window is properly centered.

WARNING

Make sure your line of sight is not obstructed. Do not place objects in the rear seat, cargo area, or behind the rear headrests which could interfere with your vision through the rear window.

WARNING

To prevent serious injury during an accident or deployment of the air bag, do not modify the rearview mirror and do not install a wide mirror.

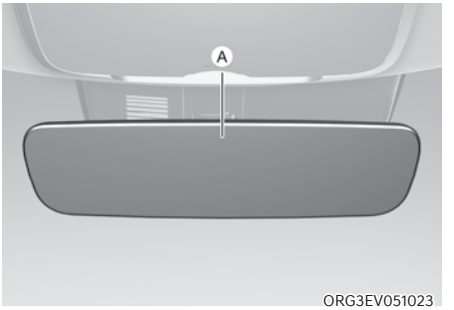
WARNING

NEVER adjust the mirror while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as this may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

Electric Chromic Mirror (ECM) (if equipped)



[A]: Indicator

Some vehicles come equipped with an electrochromic mirror that helps control glare while driving at night or under low light driving conditions.

When the vehicle is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror. The sensor detects the light level around the vehicle, and automatically adjusts to control the headlamp glare from vehicles behind you.

Whenever the the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the driver's view behind the vehicle.

Outside rearview mirrors

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the remote switch. The outside rearview mirrors can be folded to help prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash or when passing through a narrow street.

The left and right outside rearview mirrors are convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.

Use the inside rear view mirror or look back directly to determine the actual distance of other vehicles prior to changing lanes.

Make sure to adjust the outside rearview mirrors to your desired position before you begin driving.

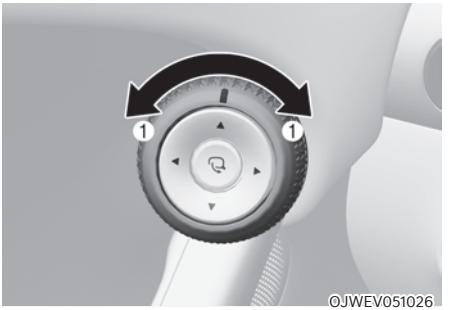
WARNING

Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

- **Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass.**
- **If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water, or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.**
- **Do not clean the mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum based cleaning products.**

Adjusting the rearview mirrors



OJWEV051026

OJWEV051027

Adjusting the rearview mirrors:

1. Press either the L (Left side) or R (Right side) button (1) to select the rearview mirror you would like to adjust.
2. Use the mirror adjustment control switch (2) to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.
3. After adjustment, press both L and R button off (indicator light off) to prevent inadvertent adjustment.

NOTICE

- **The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate while the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, because this can damage the motor.**
- **Do not attempt to adjust the rearview mirrors by hand, because this can damage the motor.**

Folding the rearview mirrors

OJWEV051028

Folding button

The rearview mirrors can be folded or unfolded by pressing the button.

Infotainment system setting

- Enable on door unlock

  If 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Welcome Mirror/Light → Enable on Door Unlock' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen,

  - The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the smart key.
  - The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the touch sensor on the outside door handle.
- Enable on driver approach

  If 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Welcome Mirror/Light → Enable on Driver Approach' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen, the mirror will unfold when the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

NOTICE

The electric type outside rearview mirror operates even though the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary while the vehicle is not running.

NOTICE

Do not fold the electric type outside rearview mirror by hand. It could cause motor failure.

Reverse parking aid (if equipped)

When the gear is shifted to the R (Reverse) position, the outside rearview mirror(s) will rotate downwards to aid with driving in reverse.

The state of the outside rearview mirror button (1) determines whether or not the mirrors will move:

How it works

- When the L or R button (1) is pressed (indicator lights ON), both outside rearview mirrors will move.
- If the L and R buttons (1) are not pressed (indicator lights OFF), both outside rearview mirrors will not move.

The outside rearview mirrors will automatically revert to their original positions if any of the following occur:

- The Start/Stop button is pressed to either the OFF position or the ACC position.
- The gear is shifted to any position except R (Reverse).
- The outside rearview mirror adjustment button is not selected.

Reverse parking aid user settings mode

You may change the angle of the outside rearview mirror if it is difficult to see the rear view with the basic downward mirror angle provided when reversing.

When the vehicle is first delivered, the set downward angle of the left and right outside rearview mirror are different to ensure driver visibility.

1. Make sure the vehicle is stopped.
2. Depress the brake pedal and shift the gear to R (Reverse). When L (Left) or R (Right) button is pressed, both outside rearview mirror angle will move downward to the basic set position.
3. Press either L or R button to select the outside rearview mirror you would like to adjust. Then press "▼, ▲, ◄, ►" switch to adjust the outside rearview mirror to the desired angle.
4. After adjusting the angle to save the adjusted outside rearview mirror angle, shift the gear to another position other than R (Reverse), or change the L and R buttons to the neutral position (L and R buttons are not pressed).
5. Set the other outside rearview mirror following the above procedure 1 to 4.

Resetting reverse parking aid user settings mode

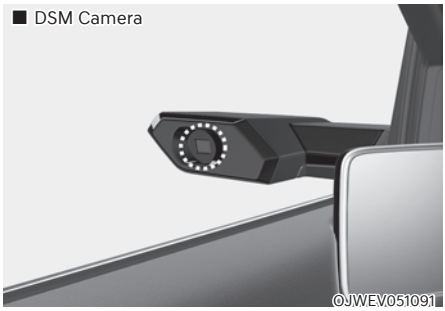
To change the outside rearview mirror angle back to the basic angle, shift the gear to R (Reverse), and adjust the mirror angle higher than when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) and D (Drive).

NOTICE

When changing the angle of both outside rearview mirrors, it is recommended to change the angle one side at a time following the procedure 1 to 4.

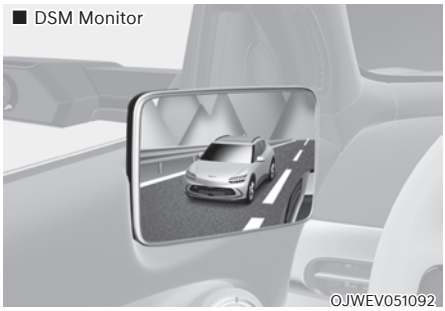
DIGITAL SIDE MIRROR (DSM)

■ DSM Camera



OJWEV051091

■ DSM Monitor



OJWEV051092

The digital side mirrors are a replacement for the outside rearview mirrors and help with changing lanes by displaying the rear view image on the monitors inside the vehicle.

Information

- **The DSM monitor brightness is linked to the instrument cluster's brightness.**
- **The DSM camera angle is linked to the integrated memory system (IMS).**

WARNING

Do not adjust or fold the DSM cameras while driving. It distracts you from driving and may cause an accident.

CAUTION

- **The digital side mirrors show the rear view as an image, so the view may differ from the actual view and you cannot see the field of view out of the set position. Be careful while driving.**
- **The DSM monitors may become blurred by strong light sources, such as direct sunlight. In this case, use the inside rearview mirror.**
- **In certain situations, an image error may occur, such as the DSM monitor being out of focus or displaying incorrect colors. This makes it difficult to clearly see moving objects and causes your eyes to feel tired due to watching the monitor for a long time.**
- **Always pay attention to the condition of your vehicle while driving. If you think there is an error in the vehicle, immediately park in a safe place and contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **If the DSM monitor display is not clear, the monitor lenses may be contaminated or foggy. Wipe the DSM camera lenses or activate the defroster to remove fog or foreign substances before driving. Be careful not to damage the lens while wiping, and be careful not to get burned by the operation of the defroster.**

Operating the digital side mirrors

Turning on the DSM monitors

When you unlock the doors or start the vehicle remotely, the digital side mirrors will prepare for operation. When you open a door or unfold the DSM cameras, the DSM monitors will turn on.

Turning off the DSM monitors

- When you stop the vehicle and lock the doors, or seven minutes after stopping the vehicle, the DSM monitors will automatically turn off and the DSM cameras will fold.
- If you fold the DSM cameras while the vehicle is on, the DSM monitors will display a black screen and notify you that the digital side mirrors are folded.
- The DSM monitors are automatically turned on or off based on various conditions, such as the vehicle and door status.

DSM warnings and indicators

The warnings and indicators displayed on the DSM monitors are as follows.

	Explanation
	Driving assistance warning • Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) • Safe Exit Warning/Assist (SEW/SEA) • Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA)
	DSM check indicator
	DSM monitor off indicator • Displayed after seven minutes after the vehicle stops • Counts 10 seconds for screen off
	Wide view mode switch indicator

Displaying the guidelines

When you turn on the turn signal indicator to change lanes, the rearview screen and the lane change guidelines will be displayed on the DSM monitors.

- Red: 3 m away from the rear of the vehicle
- Orange: 12 m away from the rear of the vehicle

Setting the feature

1. On the infotainment system, press ‘Setup → Vehicle → Convenience → Digital Side Mirror’.
2. Select ‘Lane change assistance guideline’ to activate or deactivate the feature.

Information

The infotainment system setup menu may change after updates. For detailed information, refer to the web manual of the infotainment system.

Guideline display conditions

- The vehicle is moving at a speed of 20 km/h(12 mph) or faster.
- The turn signal indicator is turned on.

Guideline removal conditions

- The vehicle is turned off.
- The turn signal indicator is turned off.
- The hazard warning light is turned on.

CAUTION

- **The lane change guidelines may differ from the actual situation depending on your vehicle and the road conditions.**
- **To change lanes, turn on the turn signal indicator in advance and secure enough space in the lane before entering.**

Adjusting the DSM cameras

1. With Start/Stop button in the ‘ACC’, ‘ON’ or ‘START’ position, move the DSM camera selection lever (1) to select L (Left) or R (Right).
2. Use the DSM camera adjustment switch (2) to adjust the camera angle.

NOTICE

Do not adjust the DSM cameras manually. Adjusting the DSM cameras manually may damage the related parts.

Folding/Unfolding the DSM cameras

DSM camera folding button

To fold or unfold the DSM cameras, press the DSM camera folding button.

Enable on door unlock (infotainment system)

If you select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Convenience → Welcome Mirror → Enable on Door Unlock' on the infotainment system,

- The DSM cameras will fold when locking the doors.
  - By pressing the door lock button ( ) on the smart key
  - By touching the door lock/unlock sensor on the front outside door handles (the engraved part)
- The DSM cameras will unfold when unlocking the doors.
  - By pressing the door unlock button ( ) on the smart key
  - By touching the door lock/unlock sensor on the front outside door handles (the engraved part)

When 'Enable on Door Unlock' is selected, you can select 'Enable on Driver Approach'. If you select 'Enable on Driver Approach', the DSM cameras will unfold when you approach the vehicle with the smart key.

i Information

- **For your safety, the DSM cameras cannot be folded when driving at a speed of 15 km/h (9 mph) or faster.**
- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**

NOTICE

- You can control the DSM cameras when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, but excessive control may discharge the vehicle's battery.
- Always use the DSM camera folding button to fold or unfold the DSM cameras. Folding or unfolding the cameras manually may damage the motor. Also, vibrations or noises may be emitted from the DSM cameras while driving, indicating that the gears are not engaged correctly. In this case, engage the gears by folding and unfolding the camera again using the folding button.
- When cleaning the DSM camera lenses or the DSM monitors, do not spray the cleaner directly. Instead, coat it on a soft towel or cloth. If you spray the cleaner directly on the lenses or monitors, the cleaner may get inside, causing a malfunction.
- Do not scrape ice off the surface of the DSM camera lenses. Doing so may damage the lenses.
- Do not use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lenses. Doing so may cause cracks in the lenses.
- If the DSM camera is jammed with ice, do not adjust the camera by force. Use an approved de-icer spray, or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

Switching to wide view when backing up

ONE1051232

Information

- The guidelines displayed on the DSM monitors while backing up indicate the following points.
  - 0.3 m (11 in.) away from the side of the vehicle
  - 0.5 m (11 in.) and 1 m (39 in.) away from the rear of the vehicle
- The wide view will be deactivated when you shift to N (Neutral) or D (Drive) and drive at a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph) or faster.
- The wide view appears only when the wide view switch feature is activated while backing up. In P (Park), N (Neutral), and D (Drive), the DSM monitors display the original view.

Setting wide view operation

Use the DSM camera selection lever (1) to select L (Left) or R (Right).

- When you shift to R (Reverse), the DSM monitors will display wide view.
- If you put the DSM camera selection lever (1) in the center, the DSM monitors will not display wide view.

CAUTION

If there is an error in the digital side mirror, the DSM monitors will not display the rear view and a warning message informing you to check the DSM system will appear on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, check the surroundings using the inside rearview mirror and immediately park your vehicle at a safe place, and contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Setting the DSM screen brightness

With the Start/Stop button in the ON position, on the infotainment system, select 'Setup → Display → Screen Brightness' to change the brightness.

- Automatic Brightness or Manual Brightness adjustment (if equipped with rain sensor)
- Screen Brightness (Day/Night) setting (if the rain sensor is not equipped)

Information

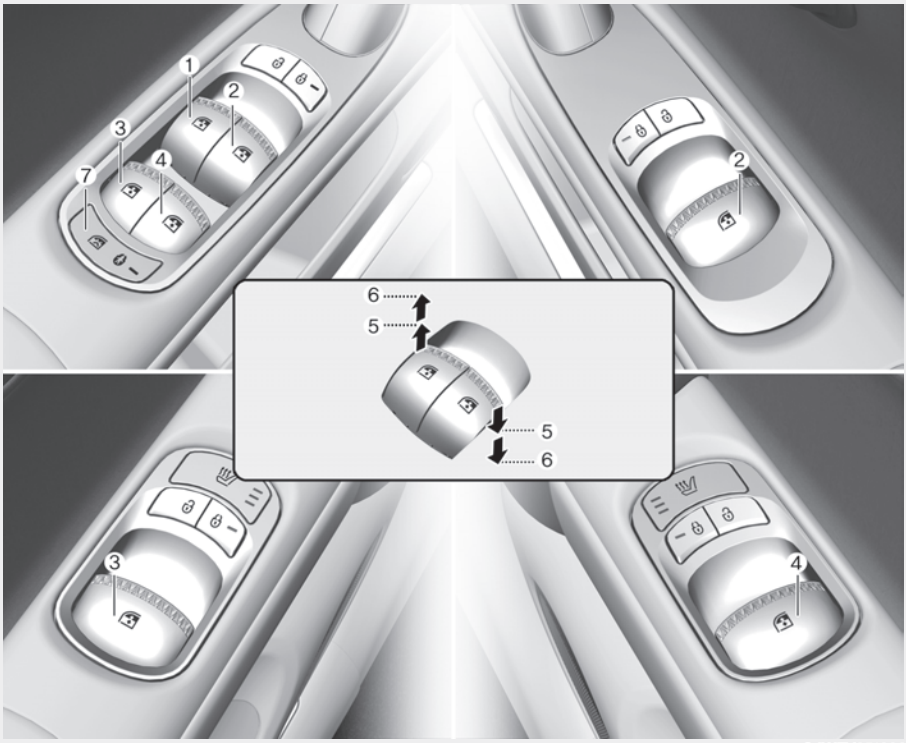
The infotainment system setup menu may change after updates. For detailed information, refer to the web manual of the infotainment system.

DSM camera defroster

To turn on the defroster manually, turn on the wiper or rear window defroster. The feature will be activated for a certain time

WINDOWS

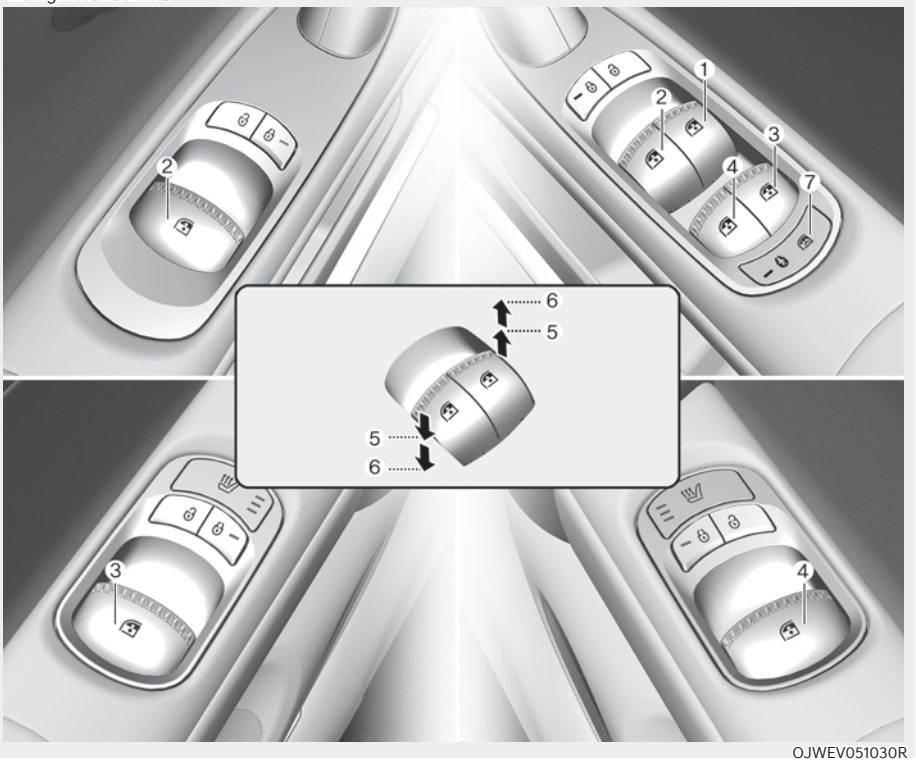
■ Left Hand Drive



OJWEV051030

(1) Driver's door power window switch
(2) Front passenger's door power window switch
(3) Rear door (left) power window switch
(4) Rear door (right) power window switch
(5) Window opening and closing
(6) Automatic power window
(7) Power window lock switch

■ Right Hand Drive



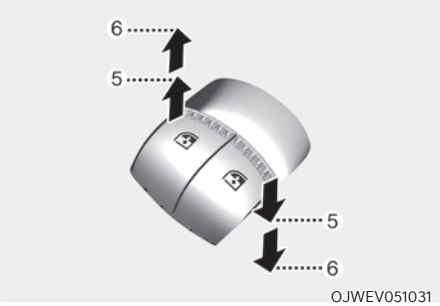
OJWEV051030R

(1) Driver's door power window switch
(2) Front passenger's door power window switch
(3) Rear door (left) power window switch
(4) Rear door (right) power window switch
(5) Window opening and closing
(6) Automatic power window
(7) Power window lock switch

Power windows

The Start/Stop button must be in the ON position to be able to raise or lower the windows. Each door has a Power Window switch to control that door's window. The driver has a Power Window Lock button which can block the operation of passenger windows. The power windows will operate for approximately 3 minutes after the Start/Stop button is in the ACC or OFF position. However, if the front doors are opened, the Power Windows will not operate even within the 3 minute period.

Window opening and closing



To open:

Press the window switch down to the first detent position (5). Release the switch when you want the window to stop.

To close:

Pull the window switch up to the first detent position (5). Release the window switch when you want the window to stop.

Auto up/down window

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or lifts the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

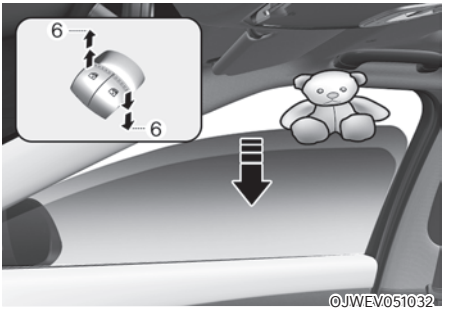
Resetting the power windows

If the power windows do not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Press the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
2. Close the window and continue pulling up on the power window switch for at least one second.

If the power windows do not operate properly after resetting, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Automatic reverse



If a window senses any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will stop and lower approximately 30 cm (12 in.) to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects the resistance while the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm (1 in.).

If the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reverse feature, the automatic window reverse will not operate.

Information

The automatic reverse feature is only active when the "Auto Up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch to the second detent.

WARNING

Make sure body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.

Objects less than 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter caught between the window glass and the upper window channel may not be detected by the automatic reverse window and the window will not stop and reverse direction.

Power window lock button

The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passenger doors by pressing the power window lock button.

When the power window lock button is pressed:

- The rear passenger control will not be able to operate the rear passenger power window.
- Note that the front passenger control is still able to operate the front passenger window, and that the driver master control can still operate all the power windows.

WARNING

Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock button in the LOCK position. Serious injury or death can result from unintentional window operation by a child.

NOTICE

- **To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.**
- **Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposite directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.**

Remote window opening/ closing function (if equipped)

OJWEV051034

You can still control the window movement with the vehicle turned off by pressing the Door Lock button (1) or the Door Unlock button (2).

- Press the door lock button for more than 3 seconds. The doors will lock and the windows will move up as long as you press the door lock button.
- Press the door unlock button for more than 3 seconds. The doors will unlock and the windows will move down as long as you press the door unlock button.

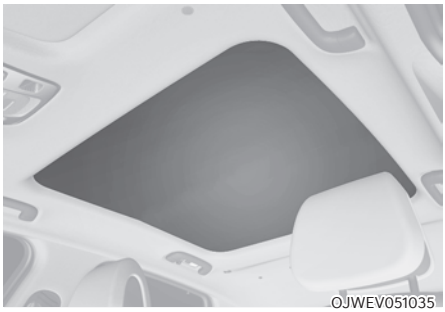
Information

- **The remote window opening/closing function may abruptly stop when you move away from your vehicle during operation. Stay in close proximity from your vehicle, while monitoring the window movement.**
- **One of the windows may stop operating when the window is interrupted by certain force. However, the other windows will keep operating. Make sure that all windows are closed.**
- **Please be aware that the doors unlock when the windows are opened using the remote window open/closing function.**

WARNING

Always double check to make sure arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before using remote window closing function.

VISION ROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

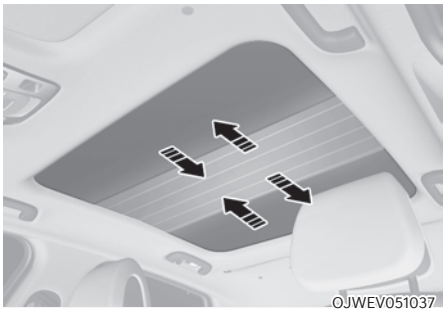

OJWEV051035

If your vehicle is equipped with a vision roof, you can slide open the power sunshade and an all-glass roof appears.

Power sunshade

Use the power sunshade to block direct sunlight coming through the sunroof glass.

OJWEV051036L


OJWEV051037

The power sunshade can only be operated when Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position.

- Push the switch rearward, the power sunshade automatically slides open.
- Push the sunroof switch forward, the power sunshade automatically closes.

To stop the power sunshade at any point, push the switch in any direction.

Information

- **The power sunshade can be operated for approximately 3 minutes after the Start/Stop button is in the ACC or OFF position. However, if the front door is open, the power sunshade cannot be operated even within the 3 minute period.**
- **Wrinkles formed on the power sunshade are normal due to material characteristic.**

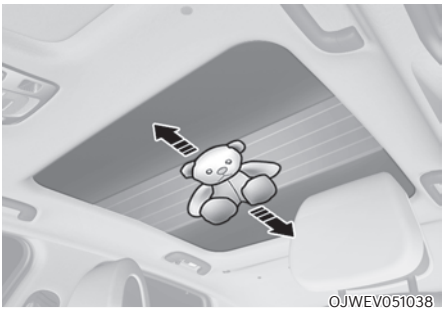
WARNING

- **Adjust the power sunshade when your vehicle stops. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause injury, or property damage.**
- **Do not leave the vehicle running and the key in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Unattended children could operate the power sunshade, which could result in injury.**
- **Do not sit on the top of the vehicle. It may cause injury or vehicle damage.**

NOTICE

Do not pull or push the power sunshade by hand as such action may damage the power sunshade or cause it to malfunction.

Automatic reverse



If the power sunshade senses any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction then stop at a certain position.

The auto reverse function may not work if an object thin or soft is caught between the sliding power sunshade and vision roof sash.

WARNING

- **Make sure heads, hands, arms or any other body parts or objects are out of the way before operating the power sunshade . Body parts or objects may get caught causing injuries or vehicle damage.**
- **Never deliberately use your body parts to test the automatic reversal function. The power sunshade may reverse direction, but there is a risk of injury.**

NOTICE

Do not continue to push the switch after the power sunshade is fully opened or closed. Damage to the power sunshade motor could occur.

Resetting the vision roof

In some circumstances resetting the power sunshade operation may need to be performed. Some instances where resetting the power sunshade may be required include:

- When the 12-volt battery is either disconnected or discharged
- When the power sunshade fuse is replaced
- If the power sunshade one-touch AUTO OPEN/CLOSE operation is not functioning properly

Sunroof resetting procedure:

1. It is recommended to perform the reset procedure with the vehicle in the ready mode. Start the vehicle in P (Park).
2. Make sure the power sunshade is in the fully closed position. If the power sunshade is open, push the switch forward until the power sunshade and is fully closed.
3. Release the switch when the power sunshade is fully closed.
4. Push the switch forward until the power sunshade moves slightly. Then release the switch.
5. Once again push and hold the switch forward until the power sunshade slides open and close. Do not release the switch until the operation is completed.

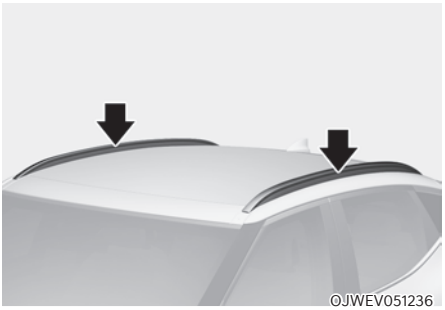
   If you release the switch during operation, start the procedure again from step 2.

Information

If the power sunshade is not reset when the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, or the power sunshade fuse is blown, the power sunshade may not operate normally.

EXTERIOR FEATURES

Roof rack (if equipped)



If the vehicle has a roof rack, you can load cargo on top of your vehicle.

NOTICE

- **If the vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, be sure not to position cargo onto the roof rack in such a way that it could interfere with sunroof operation.**
- **When carrying cargo on the roof rack, take the necessary precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof of the vehicle.**
- **When carrying large objects on the roof rack, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width.**

WARNING

- **The following specification is the maximum weight that can be loaded onto the roof rack.**

  Distribute the load as evenly as possible onto the roof rack and secure the load firmly.

ROOF RACK	100 kg (220 lbs.) EVENLY DISTRIBUTED

  Loading cargo or luggage in excess of the specified weight limit on the roof rack may damage your vehicle.
- **The vehicle center of gravity will be higher when items are loaded onto the roof rack.**

  Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt maneuvers or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or rollover resulting in an accident.
- **Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof rack.**

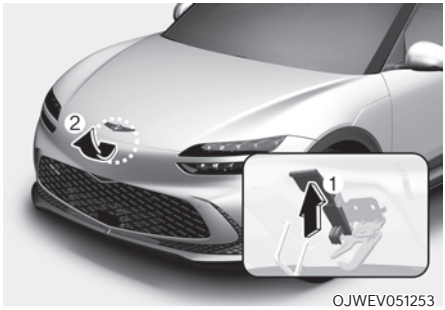
  Severe wind updrafts, caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof rack. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses.

  This could cause the items to fall off the roof rack and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.
- **To prevent damage or loss of cargo while driving, check frequently before or while driving to make sure the items on the roof rack are securely fastened.**

Hood

Opening the hood

1. Park the vehicle and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the release lever to unlatch the hood. The hood should pop open slightly.



3. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the hood slightly, push up the secondary hood release lever (1) inside of the hood center and lift the hood (2).

   After the hood has been lifted halfway, it will raise completely by itself.

Closing the hood

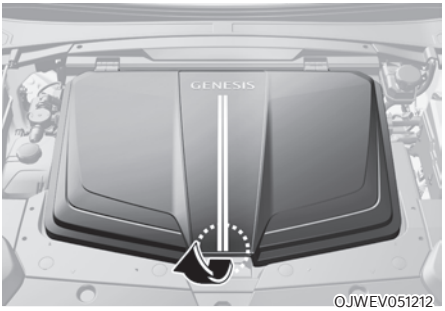
1. Before closing the hood, check in and around the vehicle compartment to ensure the following:
   - Any tools or other loose objects are removed from the motor compartment area or hood opening area
   - All glove, rags, or other combustible material is removed from the motor compartment
   - All filler caps are tightly and correctly installed
2. Lower the hood halfway (lifted approximately 30 cm (12 in.) from the closed position) and push down to securely lock in place. Then double check to be sure the hood is secure. If the hood can be raised slightly, it is not securely locked. Open it again and close it with more force.

WARNING

- **Before closing the hood, ensure all obstructions are removed from around the hood opening.**
- **Always double check to be sure that the hood is firmly latched before driving away. Check there is no hood open warning light or message displayed on the instrument cluster. Driving with the hood opened may cause a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.**
- **Do not move the vehicle with the hood in the raised position, as vision is obstructed, which might result in an accident, and the hood could fall or be damaged.**

Front trunk

Opening the front trunk



- Open the hood
- Lift up the front trunk cover while depressing the front trunk lever (1).

Closing the front trunk

Push down the front trunk cover to the right position.

Information

Available front trunk weight

- **2WD: 25kg (55lbs)**
- **4WD: 10kg (25lbs)**

Available front trunk weight depends on the specifications.

WARNING

- **NEVER make an attempt to get inside the front trunk. It will cause a fatal injury.**
- **Before closing the hood, ensure all obstructions are removed from around the hood opening. The hood will rise up or move down automatically if the height is not firmly adjusted. Be aware of the damage caused by the unintended hood movements.**
- **Never store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.**

CAUTION

- **Do not exceed the luggage volume capacity of the front trunk. The overweighted front trunk can be severely damaged.**
- **Do not store the fragile objects in the front trunk.**
- **ALWAYS keep the front trunk cover closed securely while driving. Items inside your vehicle are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, the items can be damaged.**
- **Do not spray water in the front trunk. Vehicle driving system may get damaged since the front trunk is located at the center of motor compartment.**
- **Be careful when you store any liquid in the front trunk. If liquid leak outside the front trunk, it will cause a damage to the electric devices in the motor compartment.**
- **Do not press the front trunk cover or place the objects on the front trunk cover. It may be deformed or damaged.**
- **When closing the front trunk cover, be careful not to touch objects inside the trunk. Loaded objects or the front trunk may be deformed or damaged and the front trunk cover may be opened during driving due to poor closing, resulting in joints and damage.**
- **Do not store plastic objects in the front trunk when the outside temperature is high. If the inside temperature of the front trunk rises due to sunlight during hot weather, the plastic objects may be deformed.**
- **When the front trunk cover freezes and does not open, lightly tap or indirectly warm the front trunk cover.**
- **Do not apply excessive force or sharp instruments the front trunk cover. It may damage the front trunk cover.**

NOTICE

To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartments.

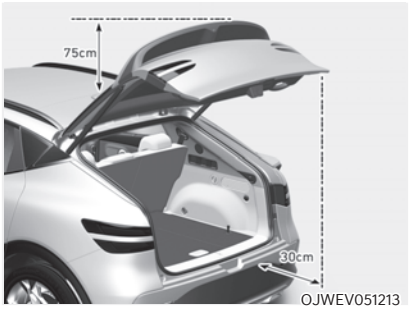
Power tailgate (if equipped)

Power tailgate operating conditions

The power tailgate operates when the gear is in P (Park) with the READY indicator on. However, the power tailgate will operate regardless of the gear position when the READY indicator off. Also, the tailgate can be opened only when vehicle speed is below 3 km/h (1.8 mph).

For safety, before attempting to open or close the tailgate, make sure the vehicle is in P (Park).

WARNING

- **Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle. Children may operate the power tailgate. Doing so can result in injury to themselves or others and can damage the vehicle.**
- 

OJWEV051213

  Make sure that there are no people or objects in the path of the power tailgate or smart tailgate prior to use. Serious injury, damage to the vehicle or damage to surrounding objects (for example, walls, ceilings, vehicles, etc.) may result if contact with the tailgate occurs.

NOTICE

- **Do not close or open the tailgate manually. This may cause damage to the power tailgate. If it is necessary to close or open the tailgate manually when the battery is discharged or disconnected, do not apply excessive force.**
- **Do not operate the power tailgate more than 10 times continuously when the READY indicator is off. Use the power tailgate with the READY indicator on when the power tailgate is used repeatedly to prevent battery discharge.**
- **Do not leave the power tailgate open for a long period of time. This may drain the battery.**
- **Do not apply excessive force when the power tailgate is operating. Doing so could result in vehicle damage.**
-
OJWEV051267L

  Do not grab or hold on to the tailgate support struts at any time. Damage to the tailgate support struts could result. Deformation of the tailgate support struts may cause vehicle damage and personal injury may occur.

- Do not modify or repair any part of the power tailgate by yourself. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Do not operate the power tailgate under the following conditions. The power tailgate may not operate properly.
  - One side of the vehicle is lifted to inspect the vehicle or change a tire
  - Parking on an uneven road such as a slope, etc.
- Close the tailgate completely and lock all doors and tailgate using the central door lock button before using an automatic car wash.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly on the power tailgate outside open/close button. The tailgate may open unintentionally.

Information

- If the tailgate is not fully closed and vehicle speed is at or above 3 km/h (1.8 mph), a warning will sound 10 times. Immediately park the vehicle at a safe place, close the tailgate, and check that the tailgate open warning on the instrument cluster is turned off.
- In cold and wet climates, the outside power tailgate open/close button may not work properly due to freezing conditions. If this occurs, remove the ice before using the outside power tailgate open/close button or use the power tailgate open/close button on the smart key or the instrument panel.
- Operating the power tailgate more than 5 times continuously could cause damage to the operating motor. If this occurs, the power tailgate will not operate to prevent the motor from overheating. If any of the power tailgate buttons are pressed to try to open the tailgate, the chime will sound 3 times, but the tailgate will remain closed. Allow the power tailgate system to cool for about 1 minute before operating the system again.

Operating the power tailgate

OJWEV051041L

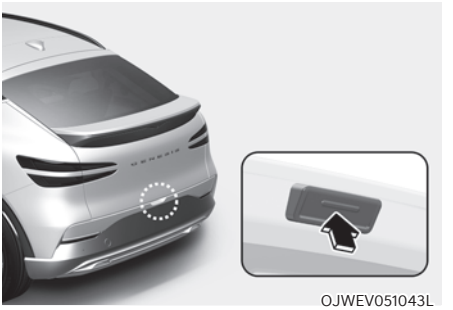
OJWEV051042

Power tailgate open/close button (Smart key, Instrument panel)

Press the power tailgate open/close button for 1 second. The tailgate opens or closes with a warning sound.

While the tailgate is opening or closing, press the button to stop tailgate operation.

If the smart key is not within operation range (approximately 10 m) from the vehicle, tailgate operation will stop with a warning sound for 5 seconds.



OJWEV051043L

Power tailgate open/close button (Outside the power tailgate)

When the tailgate is closed, press the power tailgate open/close button to open the tailgate.

If the vehicle is locked, press the power tailgate open/close button with the smart key in your possession.

If the tailgate is unlocked, the tailgate will open or close with a warning sound when the power tailgate open/close button is pressed without carrying the smart key.

OJWEV051044L

Power tailgate open/close button (Inside the power tailgate)

Press the power tailgate open/close button. The tailgate opens or closes with a warning sound.

OJWEV051045

Power tailgate lock button (Inside the power tailgate)

Press the power tailgate lock button while carrying the smart key. The tailgate closes and locks with a warning sound. Additionally, all doors will lock.

The tailgate can be closed and locked, and all doors locked only when the button is pressed while the READY indicator is off.

Automatic reverse

During power tailgate operation if the power tailgate senses any obstacle, the tailgate will stop or will fully open. The automatic reverse feature may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The automatic reverse feature may not detect the resistance if the detected resistance is below a certain level, or if the tailgate is almost fully closed near the latched position.
- The automatic reverse feature may operate if a strong impact is applied with no obstructions placed.

WARNING

Never intentionally place any object or part of your body in the path of the power tailgate to make sure the automatic reverse feature operates. Serious injury, or damage to the vehicle or object may occur.

Information

The power tailgate may stop operating if the automatic reverse feature operates more than two times while attempting to open or close the tailgate. If this occurs, carefully open or close the tailgate manually, and then after 30 seconds try to operate the power tailgate automatically again.

Setting the power tailgate

To use each feature, you must select the opening speed or opening height from the settings menu. Deselect the settings when you do not want to use the feature.

Power tailgate opening speed

To adjust the power tailgate speed, select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Door/Tailgate → Power Tailgate Opening Speed → Fast/Slow' in the infotainment system. (Default setting is 'Fast'.)

Power tailgate opening height

To adjust the power tailgate opening height, select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Door/Tailgate → Power Tailgate Opening Height → Full Open/Level 3/Level 2/Level 1/User Height Setting' in the infotainment system.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

User height setting

1. Position the tailgate manually to the height you prefer.
2. Press the power tailgate open/close button located inside the tailgate for more than 3 seconds.

   If 'User Height Setting' is selected for the power tailgate opening height, the power tailgate will automatically open to the height manually set by you.

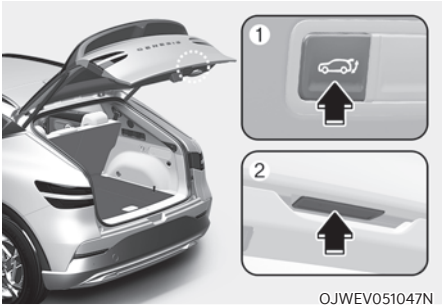
Information

- **If the power tailgate opening height has not been manually set, the power tailgate will fully open when 'User Height Setting' from the infotainment system is selected.**
- **If one of the height setting (Full Open/Level 3/Level 2/Level 1) is selected from the settings menu in the infotainment system, and then 'User Height Setting' is selected, the tailgate will open to the height manually set by you.**
- **The power tailgate opening speed and opening height settings change according to the linked User Profile. If the User Profile is changed, power tailgate opening speed and opening height settings will change accordingly.**

Resetting the power tailgate

In some circumstances resetting the power tailgate operation may need to be performed. Some instances where resetting the power tailgate may be required include:

- When the 12-volt battery is recharged
- When the 12-volt battery is reinstalled after removal or replacement
- When the related fuse is reinstalled after removal or replacement



OJWEV051047N

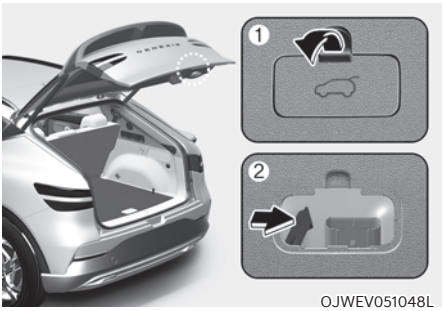
1. With the ready (READY) indicator is off or on, put the gear in P (Park).
2. Press the power tailgate open/close inner button (A) and outer button (B) simultaneously until a chime sounds.
3. Slowly close the tailgate manually.
4. Press the power tailgate open/close outer button. The power tailgate will open with a chime sound.

   Wait until the tailgate fully opens to complete resetting. If the tailgate stops before it is fully open, resetting cannot be completed.

Information

If the power tailgate does not operate properly after the above procedure, we recommend that you have the system inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Emergency tailgate safety release



OJWEV051048L

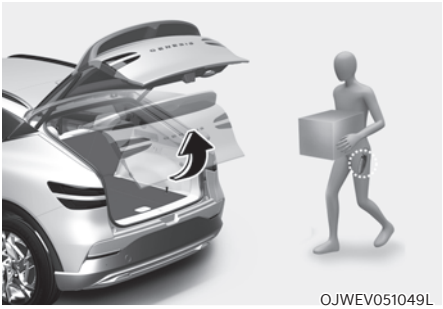
To unlock and open the tailgate manually from inside the luggage compartment, perform the following procedure:

1. Remove the cover at the bottom of the tailgate.
2. Slide the latch in the direction of the arrow to unlock the tailgate.
3. Push the tailgate to open.

WARNING

- **For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release latch in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the luggage compartment.**
- **No one, including animals, should be allowed to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. The luggage compartment is a very dangerous location in the event of an accident.**
- **Use the release latch for emergencies only. Use extreme caution, especially while the vehicle is in motion.**

Smart tailgate (if equipped)



OJWEV051049L

On a vehicle equipped with a smart key, the tailgate can be opened with hands-free activation using the smart tailgate system.

Using smart tailgate

The hands-free smart tailgate system can be opened automatically when the following conditions are met:

- The smart tailgate option is enabled in the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.
- The smart tailgate is activated and ready 15 seconds after all the doors are closed and locked.
- The smart tailgate will open when the smart key is detected in the area behind the vehicle for 3 seconds.
- When disconnecting the charging connector, the smart tailgate is activated.

Information

The smart tailgate will NOT operate when:

- **A door is not locked or closed.**
- **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds from when the doors were closed and locked.**
- **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and within 1.5 m (60 in.) from the front door handles. (for vehicles equipped with Welcome Mirror).**
- **The smart key is in the vehicle.**
- **The vehicle is on charge.**

1. Settings

   To use smart tailgate, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

   - Setup → Vehicle Settings → Door/ Tailgate → Smart Tailgate

2. Detect and Alert

   The smart tailgate detecting area extends approximately 50-100 cm (20-40 in.) behind the vehicle. If you are positioned in the detecting area and are carrying the smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound to alert you that the smart tailgate will open.

Information

- **Do not approach the detecting area if you do not want the tailgate to open. If you have unintentionally entered the detecting area and the hazard warning lights and chime starts to operate, move away from the area behind the vehicle with the smart key. The tailgate will remain closed.**
- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**

3. Automatic opening

   After the hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds 6 times, the smart tailgate will open.

Deactivating smart tailgate

OJWEV051001L

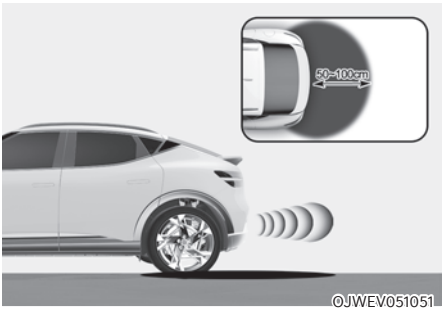
1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Tailgate open/close

If you press any button on the smart key during the Detect and Alert stage, the smart tailgate will be deactivated.

Make sure to be aware of how to deactivate the smart tailgate for emergency situations.

- If you press the door unlock button (2), the smart tailgate will be deactivated temporarily. But, if you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the smart tailgate will be activated again.
- If you press the tailgate open button (3) for more than 1 second, the tailgate opens.
- The smart tailgate will still be activated if you press the door lock button (1) or tailgate open/close button (3) on the smart key as long as the smart tailgate is not already in the Detect and Alert stage.
- In case you have deactivated the smart tailgate by pressing the smart key button and opened a door, the smart tailgate can be activated again by closing and locking all doors.

Detecting area



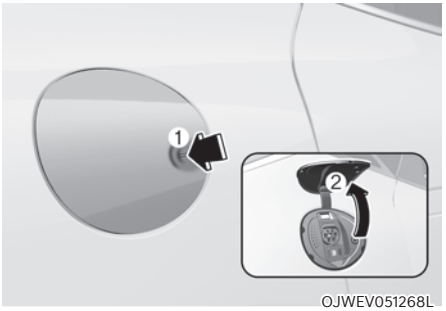
- The smart tailgate detecting area extends approximately 50-100 cm (20-40 in.) behind the vehicle. If you are positioned in the detecting area and are carrying the smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound for about 3 seconds to alert you that the tailgate will open.
- The alert stops once the smart key is moved outside of the detecting area within the 3 second period.

Information

- **Smart tailgate may not operate properly if any of the following occur:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.**
  - **Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**
- **Smart tailgate detecting area may change when:**
  - **The vehicle is parked on an incline or slope.**
  - **One side of the vehicle is raised or lowered relative to the opposite side.**

Charging door

Opening the charging door



1. Depress the brake pedal and apply the parking brake.
2. Turn OFF all switches, shift to P (Park), and turn OFF the vehicle.
3. Push the charging door where the tringle symbol (1) is located to open. The charging door opens only when the vehicle is unlocked.
4. Open the inlet cover (2).

CAUTION

- **Do not try forcibly open the charging door. If you try to force the charging door to open, the charging door may stop working.**
- **The charge door rises up when opened. When opening or closing the charge door, check the safety around the outside before opening or closing. Always be careful not to bump your face, head, etc. or get your hands caught.**
- **Do not hold the supporting part (hinge). Be careful as there may be a risk of vehicle damage or safety accidents due to deformation of parts.**
- **After closing, double check that it is completely closed.**
- **Make sure that the charge door is closed well before driving. If the charge door is not closed correctly, Mechanical parts attached to the charge door may be damaged.**
- **Make sure the charge door is closed and the charging door open warning light on the instrument cluster is turned off.**
- **If you leave the vehicle with the charge door open, there is a risk of theft, so be sure to check it.**
- **After charging, the inlet cover must be in place. Closing the charge door without opening it in place may damage the machine parts.**
- **Do not excessively spray liquid on the charging door when washing the car.**

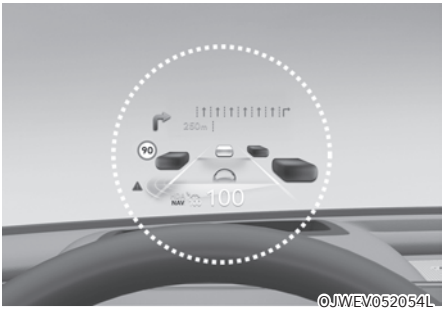
Closing the charging door

OJWEV051053L

1. After recharging, install the charging inlet cover.
2. Push the Close button located inner part of the charging door.

For more details, refer to the Electric Vehicle Guide provided in the front of the owner's manual.

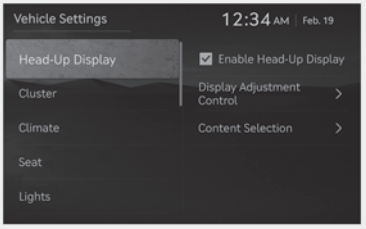
HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD) (IF EQUIPPED)



OJWEV052054L

The Head-Up Display is an optional feature that allows the driver to view information projected onto a transparent screen while still keeping your eyes safely on the road ahead while driving.

Head-up display settings



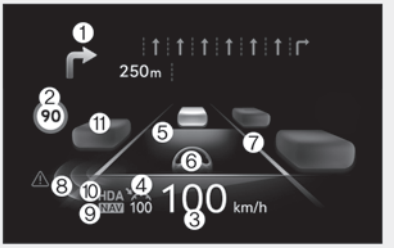
OJWEV051252L

- Head-up display can be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:
  - Setup → Vehicle Settings → Head-Up Display → Enable Head-Up Display
- After turning on the head-up display, you can change the settings of 'Display Control' and 'Content Selection' of the head-up display.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Head-up display information



OJWEV052238L

1. Turn by Turn (TBT) navigation information
2. Traffic information
3. Speedometer
4. SCC set speed information
5. SCC vehicle distance information
6. Lane Following Assist information
7. Lane Safety information
8. Blind-Spot Safety information
9. Highway Auto Speed Change information
10. Highway Driving Assist information
11. Surrounding vehicle

Precautions while using the head-up display

- It may sometimes be difficult to read information on the head-up display in the following situations.
  - The driver is improperly positioned in the driver's seat.
  - The driver wears polarizing-filter sunglasses.
  - An object is located above the head-up display cover
  - The vehicle is driven on a wet road.
  - Any improper lighting accessory is installed inside the vehicle, or there is incoming light from outside of the vehicle.
  - The driver wears glasses.
  - The driver wears contact lenses.

  When it is difficult to read the head up display information, adjust the image height or brightness level from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.
- For your safety, make sure to stop the vehicle before adjusting the settings.
- Do not tint the front windshield glass or add other types of metallic coating. Otherwise, the head-up display image may be invisible.
- Do not place any accessories on the crash pad or attach any objects on the windshield glass.
- When replacing the front windshield glass, replace it with a windshield glass designed for head-up display operation. Otherwise, duplicated images may be displayed on the windshield glass.

WARNING

The Blind-Spot Collision Warning system warnings on the head-up display are supplemental. Do not solely depend on them to change lanes. Always take a look around before changing lanes.

Information

Head-up Display includes GPL, LGPL, MPL and other open source license softwares. All license notices including related source code are provided at http://www.mobis.co.kr/opensource/list.do.

If the driver requests on-board software open source code via MOBIS_OSSrequest@mobis.co.kr within 3 years after buying this product, a CD-ROM or other storage device will be sent with the minimum cost covering storage device cost and delivery cost.

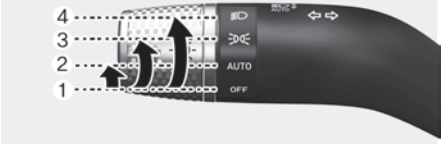
LIGHTING

Exterior lights

Lighting control

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

■ Type A



OJX1059057

■ Type B

OJX1059057L

■ Type C

OJX1059057R

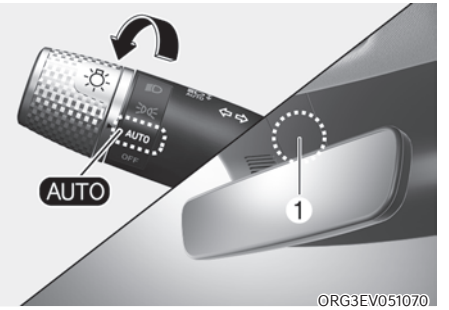
1. OFF position
2. AUTO headlamp position
3. Position lamp position
4. Headlamp position

Daytime Running Light (DRL)

The Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day, especially after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will turn the dedicated lamp OFF when :

- The headlamps are ON.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The vehicle is turned off.



ORG3EV051070

AUTO headlamp position

The position lamp and headlamp will be turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of daylight as measured by the ambient light sensor (1) at the upper end of the windshield glass.

Even with the AUTO headlamp feature in operation, it is recommended to manually turn ON the headlamps when driving at night or in a fog, driving in the rain, or when you enter dark areas, such as tunnels and parking facilities.

NOTICE

- **Do not cover or spill anything on the sensor (1) located at the upper end of the windshield glass.**
- **Do not clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleanser may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.**
- **If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windshield, the AUTO headlamp system may not work properly.**

Position lamp position ( )

The position lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel lamp are turned ON.

Headlamp position ( )

The headlamp, position lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel lamp are turned ON.

Information

The Start/Stop button must be in the ON position to turn on the headlamp.

High beam operation

ORG3EV051073

To turn on the high beam headlamp, push the lever away from you. The lever will return to its original position.

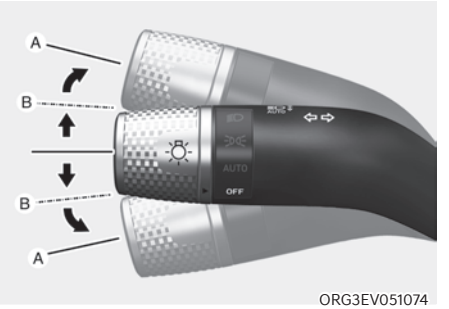
The high beam indicator will light when the headlamp high beams are switched on.

To turn off the high beam headlamp, pull the lever towards you. The low beams will turn on.

ORG3EV051072

To flash the high beam headlamp, pull the lever towards you, then release the lever. The high beams will remain ON as long as you hold the lever towards you.

Turn signals and lane change signals



ORG3EV051074

To signal a turn, push down on the lever for a left turn or up for a right turn in position (A).

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

One touch turn signal

To use One Touch Turn Signal push the turn signal lever up or down to position (B) and then release it.

The lane change signals will blink 3, 5 or 7 times.

You can enable the One Touch Turn Signal function or choose the number of blinking by selecting ‘Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → One Touch Turn Signal (or One-touch indicator) → 3 flashes/5 flashes /7 flashes/Off’ in the infotainment system screen.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Rear fog lamp (if equipped)

To turn on the rear fog lamp:

Position the headlamp switch in the headlamp position, and then turn the headlamp switch (1) to the rear fog lamp position.

To turn the rear fog lamps off, do one of the following:

- Turn off the headlamp switch.
- Turn the headlamp switch (1) to the rear fog lamp position again.

Battery saver function

The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged. The system automatically turns off the position lamp when the driver turns the vehicle off and opens the driver-side door.

With this feature, the position lamps will turn off automatically if the driver parks on the side of road at night.

However, the position lamps stay ON even when the driver-side door is opened if the headlamp switch is turned to the position lamp or AUTO (if equipped) position after the vehicle is turned off. If necessary, to keep the lamps on turn the position lamps OFF and ON again using the headlamp switch on the steering column after the vehicle is turned off.

Headlamp delay function

If the Start/Stop button is in the ACC position or the OFF position with the headlamps ON, the headlamps (and/or position lamps) remain on for about 5 minutes. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlamps are turned off after 15 seconds. Also, with the vehicle off if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlamps (and/or position lamps) are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlamps (and/or position lamps) can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the smart key twice or turning the headlamp switch to the OFF or AUTO position.

You can enable the headlamp delay function by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → Headlight Delay (or Headlight time-out)' in the infotainment system screen.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

NOTICE

If the driver exits the vehicle through another door besides the driver door, the battery saver function does not operate and the headlamp delay function does not turn OFF automatically.

This may cause the battery to discharge. To avoid battery discharge, turn OFF the headlamps manually from the headlamp switch before exiting the vehicle.

Headlight leveling device

Headlight leveling device automatically adjusts the headlamp beam level according to the number of passengers and loading weight in the luggage area.

It also adjusts to the appropriate headlamp beam level for various situations.

WARNING

If the function does not work properly, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products. Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.

Headlamp moisture removal function

When moisture fogs up inside of the headlamp, if the headlamp is on for certain period of time, the fan circulates the air inside to remove moisture. If moisture is not removed, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Reverse guide lamp

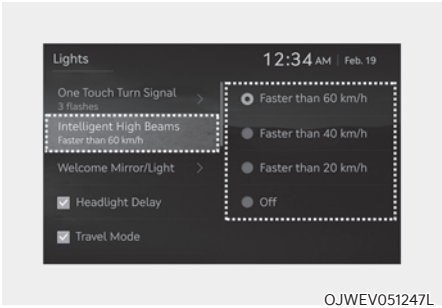
When the gear is in R (Reverse), the back-up lamp turns on and the reverse guide lamp at the back of the vehicle lights the floor.

The lamp informs nearby drivers that your vehicle is backing up.

INTELLIGENT FRONT-LIGHTING SYSTEM (IFS) (IF EQUIPPED)

Intelligent Front-Lighting System secures a clear view for the driver with the high beam on while driving at night.

System setting



OJWEV051247L

With the Start/Stop button in the ON position, select 'Lights → Intelligent High Beams (or Smart High Beam)' from the Settings menu to turn on Intelligent Front-Lighting System and deselect to turn off the system.

WARNING

For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.

Information - For Europe

- **Travel Mode must be turned on for the headlamp on the driver's side to turn off when driving from a left-hand drive country to a right-hand drive country and vice versa.**
- **To turn on the Travel mode, select 'Settings → Light →Travel Mode' from the infotainment system screen.**

System operation

Display and control

ORG3EV051075

After selecting 'Intelligent High Beams' in the Settings menu, Intelligent Front-Lighting System will operate by following the procedure below.

- Place the headlamp switch in the AUTO position and push the head lamp lever toward the instrument cluster. The Intelligent Front-Lighting System (AUTO) indicator light will illuminate on the cluster and the system will be enabled.
- When the system is enabled, the Intelligent Front-Lighting System will operate according to the set speed in the infotainment system. The initial system is set to work when vehicle speed is above 40 km/h (25 mph).
- The high beam LED partially turns off if an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle ahead is detected by the front view camera.

System malfunction and limitations

System malfunction

■ Type A

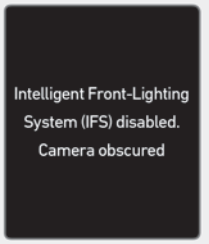
OJWEV051096L

■ Type B

OJWEV051241L

When Intelligent Front-Lighting System is not working properly, the 'Check Intelligent Front-Lighting System (IFS)' warning message will come on for a few second on the cluster. After the message disappears, the AFS and ⚠ will illuminate on the cluster display. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

■ Type A



OJK050090L

■ Type B

OIK050209L

When the front view camera is covered with dirt, snow, or debris, Intelligent Front-Lighting System may temporarily not work properly. If this occurs, a warning message will appear on the cluster display.

The system will operate properly when such dirt, snow or debris is removed.

Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain) where any objects or vehicles are not detected after turning on the vehicle.

Also, even though a warning message does not appear on the cluster, the system may not properly operate.

Limitations of the system

Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not work properly in the following situations:

- Light from a vehicle is not detected because of lamp damage, or because it is hidden from sight, etc.
- Headlamp of a vehicle is covered with dust, snow or water.
- A vehicle's headlamps are off but the fog lamps are on and etc.
- There is a lamp that has a similar shape as a vehicle's lamp.
- Headlamps have been damaged or not repaired properly.
- Headlamps are not aimed properly.
- Driving on a narrow curved road, rough road, uphill or downhill.
- Vehicle in front is partially visible on a crossroad or curved road.
- There is a traffic light, reflecting sign, flashing sign or mirror ahead.
- There is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).
- The road conditions are bad such as being wet, iced or covered with snow.
- A vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.
- The vehicle is tilted from a flat tire or is being towed.
- There are many street lights or the ambient light is bright.
- Light from an oncoming or front vehicle is not detected due to obstacles in the air such as exhaust fume, smoke, fog, snow, or water spay or blizzard on the road, or fogging in the lamp, etc.
- The front windshield is covered with foreign substance.

CAUTION

- **Never install any accessories or stickers on the front windshield, or tint the front windshield.**
- **If the front view camera have been replaced or repaired, the system may need to be calibrated. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Pay extreme caution to keep the front view camera dry, and do not remove or damage related parts of the Intelligent Front-Lighting System.**
- **Never place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) over the dashboard. Any light reflection may prevent the system from functioning properly.**

NOTICE

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

WARNING

- **At times, Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not work properly. The system is for your convenience only. It is the responsibility of the driver for safe driving practices and always check the road conditions for your safety.**
- **When the system does not operate properly, switch the headlamp position manually between high beam and low beam.**

HIGH BEAM ASSIST (HBA) (IF EQUIPPED)

ORG3EV051075

High Beam Assist will automatically switch between high beam and low beam depending on the detected brightness from the lamps of oncoming vehicles or vehicles in front.

Detecting sensor

OJWEV051058

[1]: Front view camera

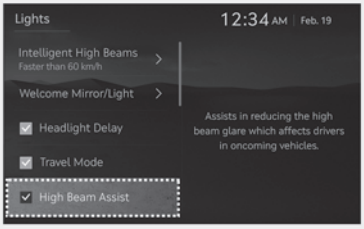
The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect ambient light and brightness while driving.

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

NOTICE

- **Always keep the front view camera in good condition to maintain optimal performance of High Beam Assist.**
- **For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.**

High Beam Assist setting



OJWEV051248L

With the Start/Stop button in the ON position, select 'Lights → High Beam Assist (or HBA (High Beam Assist))' from the Settings menu to turn on High Beam Assist and deselect to turn off the function.

WARNING

For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.

High Beam Assist operation

Display and control

- After selecting 'High Beam Assist (or HBA (High Beam Assist))' in the Settings menu, High Beam Assist will operate by following the procedure below.
  - Place the headlamp switch in the AUTO position and push the headlamp lever towards the instrument cluster. The High Beam Assist (AUTO) indicator light will illuminate on the cluster and High Beam Assist will be enabled.
  - When High Beam Assist is enabled, high beam will turn on when vehicle speed is above 40 km/h (25 mph). When vehicle speed is below 25 km/h (15 mph), high beam will turn off.
  - The High Beam indicator light will illuminate on the cluster when high beam is on.
- When High Beam Assist is operating, if the headlamp lever or switch is used, High Beam Assist operates as follow:
  - If the headlamp lever is pulled towards you when the high beam is off, the high beam will turn on without High Beam Assist cancelled. When you let go of the headlamp lever, the lever will move to the middle and the high beam will turn off.
  - If the headlamp lever is pulled towards you when the high beam is on by High Beam Assist, low beam will turn on and the High Beam Assist will turn off.
  - If the headlamp switch is placed from AUTO to another position (headlamp/position/off), High Beam Assist will turn off and the corresponding lamp will turn on.
- When High Beam Assist is operating, high beam switches to low beam if any of the following conditions occur:
  - When the headlamp of an oncoming vehicle is detected.
  - When the tail lamp of a vehicle in front is detected.
  - When the headlamp or tail lamp of a motorcycle or a bicycle is detected.
  - When the surrounding ambient light is bright enough that high beams are not required.
  - When streetlights or other lights are detected.

Information

The images and colors in the cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.

High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations

High Beam Assist malfunction

■ Type A

OJWEV051094L

■ Type B

OJWEV051242L

When High Beam Assist is not working properly, the 'Check High Beam Assist (HBA) system' or 'Check HBA (High Beam Assist system' warning message will appear and ⚠ warning light will illuminate on the cluster display.
We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Limitations of High Beam Assist

- Light from an oncoming or front vehicle is not detected because of lamp damage, or because it is hidden from sight, etc.
- Headlamp of an oncoming or front vehicle is covered with dust, snow or water.
- An oncoming or front vehicle's headlamps are off, but the fog lamps are on, etc.
- There is a lamp that has a similar shape as a vehicle's lamp.
- Headlamps have been damaged or not repaired properly.
- Headlamps are not aimed properly.
- Driving on a narrow-curved road, curved road, rough road, uphill or downhill.
- Vehicle in front is partially visible on a crossroad or curved road.
- There is a traffic light, reflecting sign, flashing sign or mirror ahead.
- There is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).
- The road conditions are bad such as being wet, iced or covered with snow.
- A vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.
- The vehicle is tilted from a flat tire or is being towed.
- Light from an oncoming or front vehicle is not detected due to obstacles in the air such as exhaust fume, smoke, fog, snow, or water spay or blizzard on the road, or fogging in the lamp, etc.

Information

For more details on the limitations of the Front View Camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

WARNING

- **At times, High Beam Assist may not work properly High Beam Assist is for your convenience only. It is the responsibility of the driver for safe driving practices and always check the road conditions for your safety.**
- **When High Beam Assist does not operate properly, change the headlamp position manually between high beam and low beam.**

INTERIOR LIGHTS

WARNING

Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. The interior lights may obscure your view and cause an accident.

NOTICE

Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the vehicle is turned off or the battery will discharge.

Interior lamp AUTO cut

The interior lamps will automatically go off approximately 20 minutes after the vehicle is turned off and the doors are closed. If a door is opened, the lamp will go off 25 minutes after the vehicle is turned off. If the doors are locked by the smart key and the vehicle enters the armed stage of the theft alarm system, the lamps will go off five seconds later.

Front lamps

Front map lamp ( ):

Touch either icons to turn the map lamp on or off. This light produces a spot beam for convenient use as a map lamp at night or as a personal lamp for the driver and the front passenger.

Door lamp ( ):

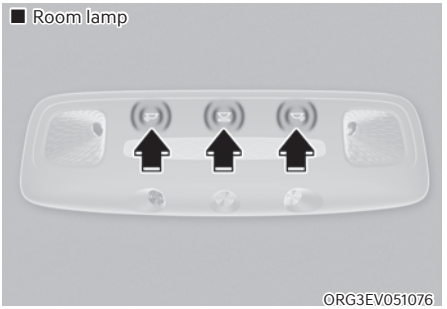
The front or rear room lamps come on when the front or rear doors are opened. When doors are unlocked by the smart key, the front and rear lamps come on for approximately 30 seconds as long as any door is not opened. The front and rear room lamps go out gradually after approximately 30 seconds when the door is closed. However, if the Start/Stop button is in the ON position or all doors are locked, the front and rear lamps will turn off. If a door is opened with the Start/Stop button in the ACC position or the OFF position, the front and rear lamps will stay on for about 5 minutes.

Room lamp ( )

- Press the button to turn ON the room lamp for the front/rear seats.

Rear lamps

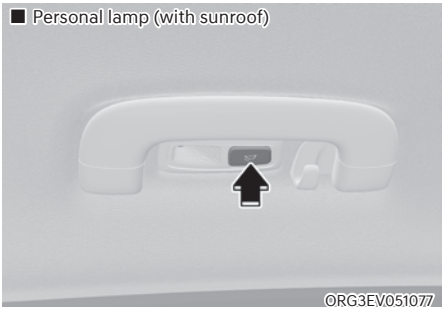
■ Room lamp



ORG3EV051076

- : Touch the icon to turn either lamp on or off.
- : Touch the icon to turn the lamp on or off.

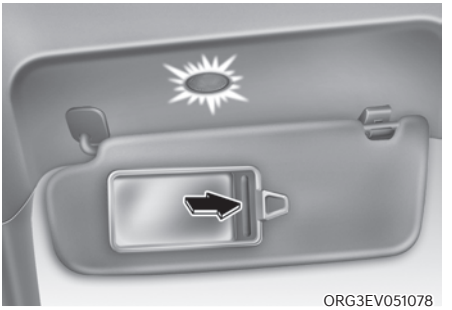
■ Personal lamp (with sunroof)



ORG3EV051077

- : Press the button to turn the lamp on or off.

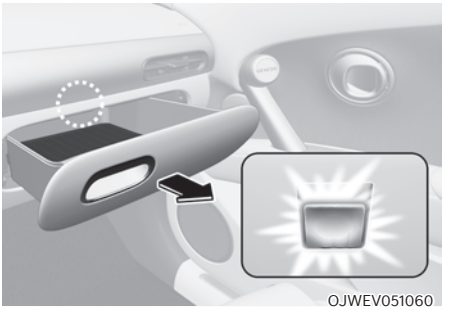
Vanity mirror lamp



ORG3EV051078

Opening the lid of the vanity mirror will automatically turn on the mirror lamp.

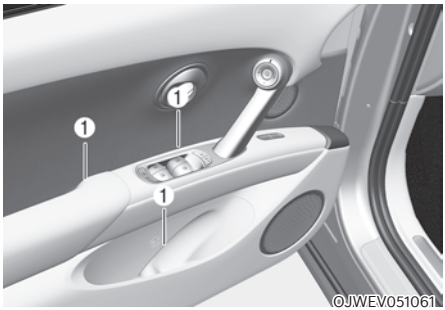
Glove box lamp

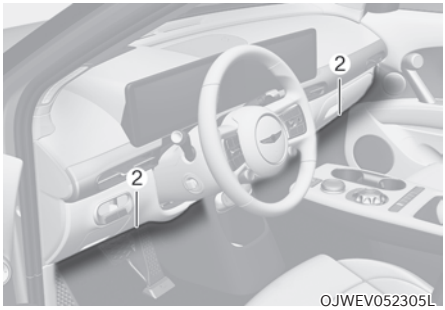


OJWEV051060

The glove box lamp turns on for about 20 minutes when the glove box is opened.

Door mood lamp





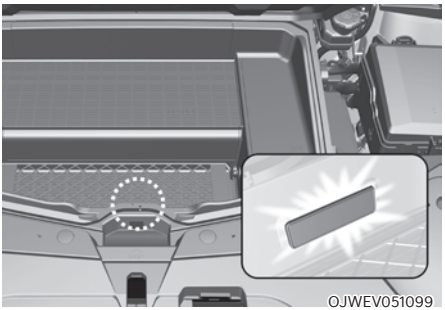
[1]: Door mood lamp,
[2]: Driver and passenger foot mood lamp (if equipped)

- To set the brightness and the color of the door mood lamp, select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → Interior mood lamp'
- When driving at night or under low light driving conditions, the sensors detect the light level around the vehicle and automatically adjust the brightness of the mood lamp. To set the automatic brightness adjustment turn On/Off, select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → Interior Mood Lamp → Brightness control'
- There are different colors for different drive modes. To set the colors for the different drive modes, select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → Interior Mood Lamp → Colors for the drive modes'
- The color of the mood lamp turns red when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit in the speed control section. To set the color change function, select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → Interior Mood Lamp → Speed limit warning'
- The color of the mood lamp turns red when booster function is activated

Tailgate lamp

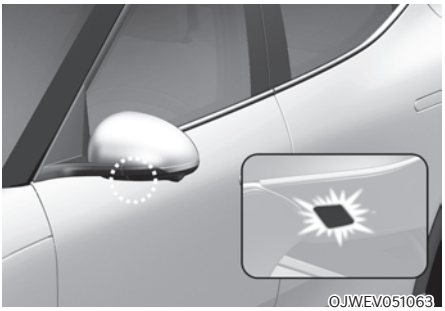
The tailgate lamp comes on when the tailgate is opened.

Front trunk lamp



The front trunk lamp comes on when the hood is opened.

Puddle lamp



Welcome light

When all doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the puddle lamp will turn on for 15 seconds if the door is unlocked by the smart key or when you put your hand in the outside door handle with the smart key in possession.

For more details, refer to “Welcome System” in this chapter.

Escort light

When the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the driver’s door is opened, the puddle lamp will turn on for 30 seconds. If the driver’s door is closed within the 30 second period, the puddle lamp will turn off after 15 seconds. If the driver’s door is closed and locked, the puddle lamp will turn off immediately.

The Puddle Lamp Escort Light will turn on only the first time the driver’s door is opened after the vehicle is turned off.

Puddle lamp and door handle lamp

When all the doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the puddle lamp and door handle lamp will turn on for approximately 15 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
- When you put your hand in the outside door handle with the smart key in possession.
- If ‘Setup → Vehicle Settings → Convenience → Welcome Mirror/ Light → Enable on Driver Approach’ is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen, the lamps will turn on when the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Headlamp and position lamp

When the light switch is ON, and all the doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the headlamp and position lamp will turn on for approximately 15 seconds if the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key. Note that if the light switch is in the AUTO position, the headlamp and position light will turn on only when it is dark outside.

Select 'Setup → Lights → Headlight Delay' from the Settings menu to turn on this function.

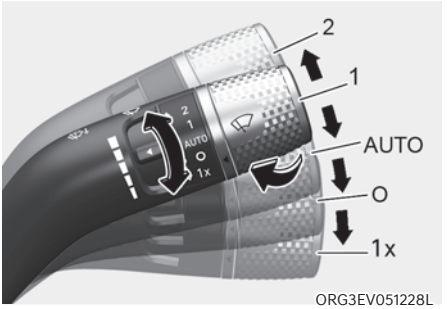
Interior lamp

When the door lamp switch is on and all doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the room lamp will come on for 30 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
- When you put your hand in the outside door handle while carrying the smart key.

At this time, if you press the door lock or unlock button on the smart key the lamps will turn off immediately.

WIPERS AND WASHERS



Front windshield wipers

Operates as follows when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

1x : For a single wiping cycle, push the lever upward (or downward) and release. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

O : Wiper is not in operation.

AUTO : The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windshield glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates. When the rain stops, the wiper stops. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.

1 : The wiper runs at a lower speed.

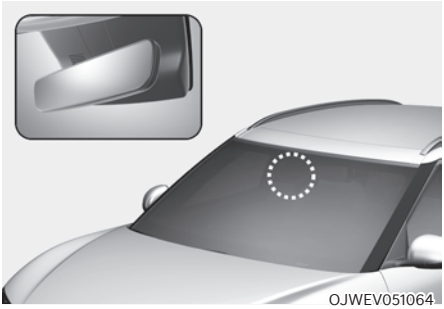
2 : The wiper runs at a higher speed.

Information

If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windshield, defrost the windshield for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windshield wipers to ensure proper operation.

If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the wiper and washer system.

AUTO (Automatic) control



The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windshield glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval.

The wiper operation time will be automatically controlled depends on rainfall.

When the rain stops, the wiper stops.

To vary the sensitivity setting, turn the sensitivity control knob.

If the wiper switch is set in AUTO mode when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position, the wiper will operate once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to the OFF (O) position when the wiper is not in use.

WARNING

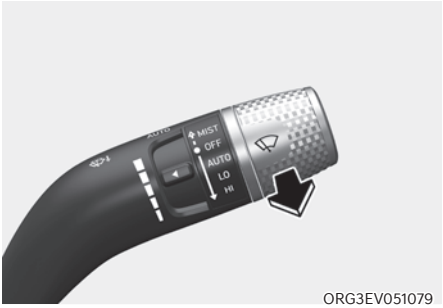
To avoid personal injury from the windshield wipers, when the vehicle is running and the windshield wiper switch is placed in the AUTO mode:

- **Do not touch the upper end of the windshield glass facing the rain sensor.**
- **Do not wipe the upper end of the windshield glass with a damp or wet cloth.**
- **Do not put pressure on the windshield glass.**

NOTICE

- **When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the OFF (O) position to stop the auto wiper operation. The wiper may operate and be damaged if the switch is set in the AUTO mode while washing the vehicle.**
- **Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the passenger side windshield glass. Damage to system components could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.**
- **Because of using a photo sensor, temporary malfunction could occur according to sudden ambient light change made by stone and dust while driving.**

Windshield washers



ORG3EV051079

In the OFF (O) position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windshield and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever. If the washer does not work, you may need to add washer fluid to the washer fluid reservoir.

Recirculating air when washer fluid is used

When washer fluid is used, in order to reduce any objectionable scent of the washer fluid from entering the cabin, recirculation mode and air conditioning are automatically activated depending on the outside temperature. If you select fresh mode while the function is operating, the function will resume after a certain amount of time. It may not work in some conditions such as cold weather or vehicle OFF.

For more details, refer to “Climate Control Additional Features” section in this chapter.

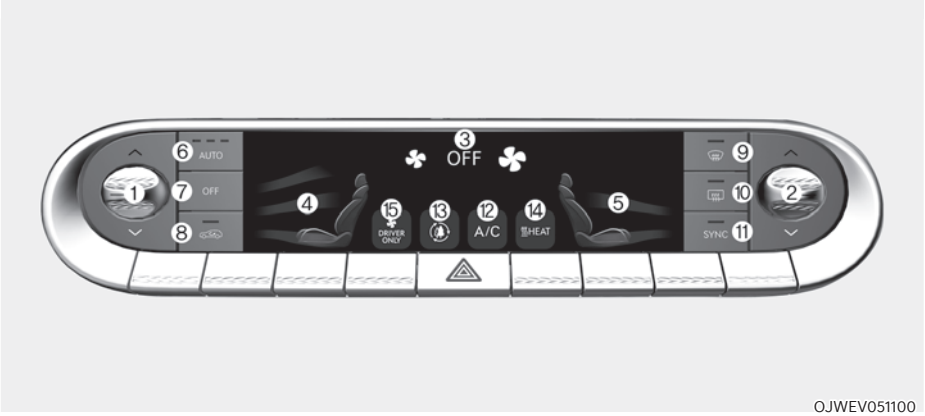
WARNING

When the outside temperature is below freezing, ALWAYS warm the windshield using the defroster to help prevent the washer fluid from freezing on the windshield and obscuring your vision which could result in an accident and serious injury or death.

NOTICE

- **To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.**
- **To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windshield, do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry.**
- **To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.**
- **To prevent possible damage to the wipers and washer system, use anti-freezing washer fluids in the winter season or cold weather.**

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM



OJWEV051100

1. Driver's temperature control
2. Passenger's temperature control
3. Fan speed control
4. Driver's mode selection
5. Passenger's mode selection
6. AUTO (automatic control)
7. OFF (System off)
8. Air intake control
9. Front windshield defroster
10. Rear Window defroster
11. SYNC
12. A/C (air conditioning)
13. Clean air system
14. HEAT button
15. Driver's seat climate control

Information

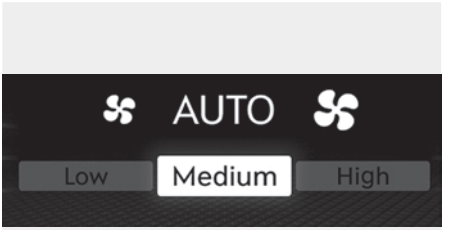
Use microfiber cloth when wiping finger prints off the touch screen.

Automatic temperature control mode

The Automatic Climate Control System is controlled by setting the desired temperature.

1. Press the AUTO button.

   The mode selection, fan speed, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically by the temperature setting you select.



OJX1059246

2. When the climate control system is being automatically controlled, fan speed can be selected (Low/Medium/High).
   - HIGH: Use when quick heating or cooling is preferred.
   - MEDIUM: Use when medium fan speed is preferred for cooling or heating.
   - LOW: Use when low fan speed is preferred for cooling or heating.
3. Turn the temperature control knob to the desired temperature. If the temperature is set to the lowest setting (Lo), the air conditioning system will operate continuously. After the interior has cooled sufficiently, adjust the knob to a higher temperature set point whenever possible.

To turn the automatic operation off, select any function of the following:

- Mode selection button (For Europe)
- Front windshield defroster button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windshield defroster function. The 'AUTO' sign will illuminate on the climate information screen once again.)
- Fan speed control icon
- A/C (air conditioning) icon (For Europe)
- HEAT button (For Europe)

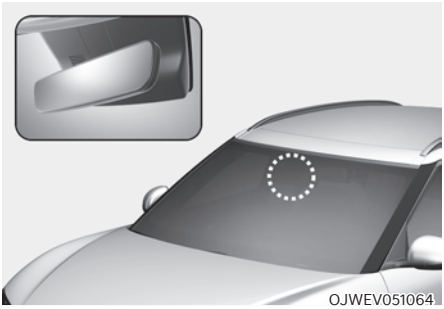
The selected function will be controlled manually while other functions operate automatically.

For your convenience and to improve the efficiency of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 22°C (72°F).

To change the temperature unit from °C to °F or °F to °C:

Press the AUTO button for 3 seconds while pressing the OFF button.

Information



Never place anything near the ambient light/solar sensor to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.

Manual temperature control mode

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pushing buttons other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons selected.

When pressing any button except the AUTO button while using automatic operation, the functions not selected will be controlled automatically.

1. Start the vehicle.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.

   To improve the effectiveness of heating and cooling, select the mode according to the following:

   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to Fresh or Recirculation mode.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.
7. Press the AUTO button to convert to full automatic control of the system.

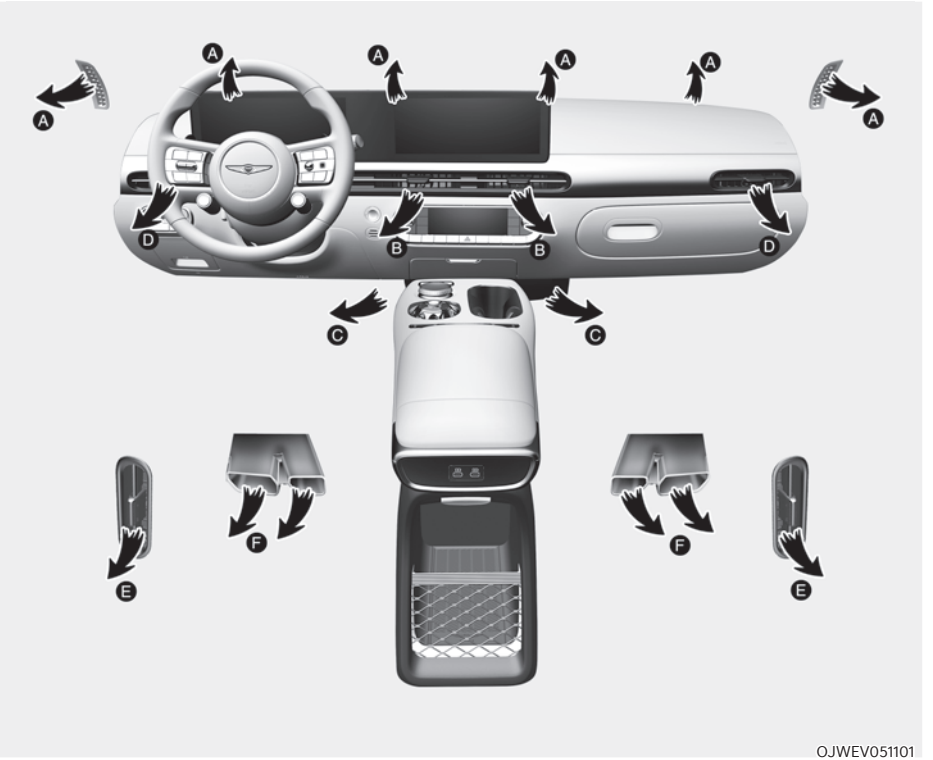
The climate control system settings will be maintained, even when the vehicle is turned OFF. However, the climate control system settings will be initialized when the battery has been discharged, or when the cables have been disconnected.

In this case, adjust the climate control system settings again.

Mode selection

Front seat mode selection

- Touch the arrows on the climate control information screen to select air flow direction.
- Press the SYNC button and when the indicator light on the button turns off, the air flow direction of the driver's seat and passenger seat can be controlled individually. However, passengers and rear seats cannot select .
- You may select 2~3 modes at the same time.



OJWEV051101

Air flow direction

The mode selection Icon or button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

Defrost (A, D)

Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield.

Face-level (B, D, E)

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

Floor-level (A, C, D, F)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windshield and side window defrosters.

Front windshield defroster

Defrost-level (A, D)

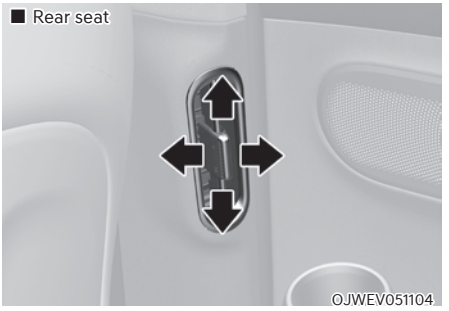
Press the button, and the indicator light on the button will illuminate and the windshield defroster indicator will appear on the climate control information screen.

Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

When Defogging logic is enabled, Fresh mode is selected and air conditioning is selected according to outside temperature.

Press the button again, the indicator light will turn off and the previous settings will be selected.

Instrument panel vents

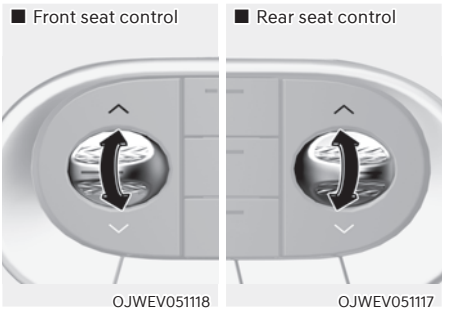


The instrument panel vent air flow can be directed up/down or left/right using the vent adjustment lever.

The air flow can also be CLOSED using the vent adjustment lever.

Move the lever to ⊗ position to close, and to position to open.

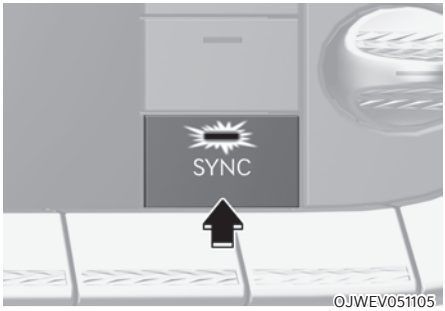
Temperature control



Turn the knob to the up to increase the temperature. Turn the knob to the down to decrease temperature.

The temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5°C (1°F) for each incremental location. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.

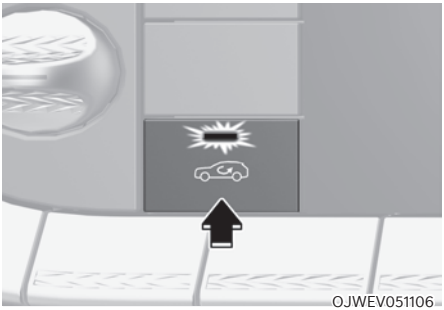
SYNC



Adjusting the temperature, air flow direction and fan speed equally

Press the SYNC button (indicator light ON), the rear seat's temperature, air flow direction and fan speed will be adjusted same as the driver's control.

Air intake control



The air intake control button is used to select either Fresh mode (outside air) or Recirculation mode (cabin air).

Recirculation mode

When Recirculation mode is selected, air from the passenger compartment will be recirculated through the system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Fresh mode

When Fresh mode is selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Information

Operating the system primarily in Fresh mode is recommended. Use Recirculation mode temporarily only when needed. Prolonged operation of the heater in Recirculation mode and without the air conditioning ON can cause fogging of the windshield. In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning ON in Recirculation mode may result in excessively dry, dehumidified air in the cabin and may promote formation of musty vent odor due to stagnant air.

WARNING

- **Continued use of the climate control system operation in Recirculation mode for a prolonged period of time may cause drowsiness to the occupants in the cabin. This may lead to loss of vehicle control which may lead to an accident.**
- **Continued use of the climate control system operation in Recirculation mode with the air conditioning OFF may allow humidity to increase inside the cabin. This may cause condensation to accumulate on the windshield and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in your vehicle or remain parked in your vehicle with the windows up and either the heater or the air conditioning ON for prolonged periods of time. Doing so may increase the levels of carbon dioxide in the cabin which may lead to serious injury or death.**

Fan speed control

The fan speed can be set to the desired speed touching the or icon.

More air is delivered with higher fan speeds.

Pressing the OFF button or touching the blower down icon at the lowest fan speed.

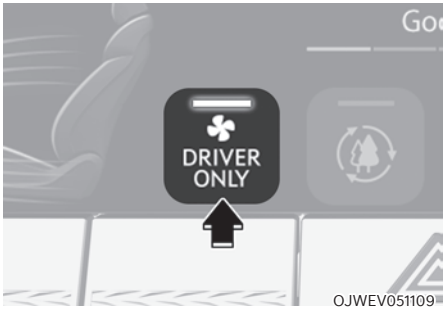
Information

For better sound quality, fan speed may automatically slow down for a couple of minutes when you activate voice recognition or hands free.

NOTICE

Operating the fan when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the fan when the vehicle is running.

Driver only



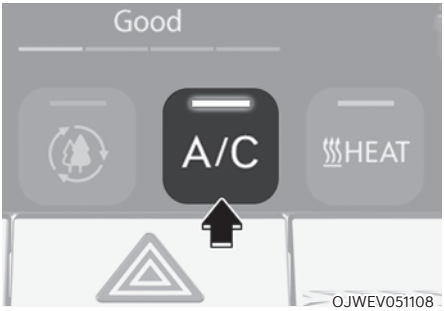
If you touch the DRIVER ONLY icon (DRIVER ONLY) and the indicator light illuminates in the infotainment climate control screen, cold air mostly blows in the driver's seat. However, some of the cold air may come out of other seating position ducts to keep indoor air pleasant.

If you use the DRIVER ONLY with no passenger in the front passenger seat, energy consumption will be reduced.

DRIVER ONLY will be turned off under the following conditions:

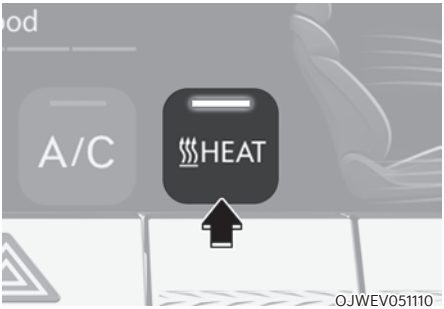
1) Defrost on
2) DRIVER ONLY icon re-touch
3) Passenger's mode selection
4) SYNC
5) Passenger's temperature control

Air conditioning



Touch the CLIMATE icon in the climate control panel. The climate information screen will appear on the infotainment screen. Touch the A/C icon in the infotainment screen to turn the air conditioning on (indicator light ON) and off.

HEAT button



Touch CLIMATE icon in the climate control panel. The climate information screen will appear on the infotainment screen. Touch the HEAT icon in the infotainment screen to turn the heater on (indicator light will illuminate).

Touch the button again to turn the heater off.

The air conditioner and heater uses energy from the battery. If you use the heater or air conditioner for too long, distance to empty can be reduced due to too much power consumption.

Turn off the heater and air conditioner if you do not need them.

Information

If the vehicle is turned off after the heating and cooling operation, a sound may occur temporarily as the air climate system mode is changed.

Clean air system (if equipped)

When the clean air system is selected, the indoor fine dust concentration is measured by the fine dust sensor equipped in the vehicle and the indoor air status is presented on the screen. If needed, it prevents the contaminated external air and the cabin air filter purifies the indoor air by filtering the fine dust to provide fresh air.

Indoor air status display

The air status is presented with the four levels as below when the climate control system turns on.

Clean Air System	ON				
	Good	Normal	Poor	Very poor	Operation Indicator
Indoor Air Condition					

If you touch the clean air system icon, it operates for 20 seconds. The system works for 20 seconds at a time and it performs automatically depending on the indoor air status.

Information

- **The cabin air filter needs to be replaced per every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) to maximize efficiency of the clean air system.**
- **If the vehicle is driven in an inner city area with high air pollution or severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads or the indoor fine dust concentration is not presented as Good on the screen due to prolonged heavy fine dust, have the cabin air filter inspected. If the cabin air filter is contaminated, fine dust concentration may be displayed as Poor or Very Poor on the screen.**
- **We recommend using genuine cabin air filter to maintain the optimal performance ofthe clean air system.**
- **Use genuine Genesis cabin air filter to maintain the optimal performance of the clean air system.**

  When a cabin air filter that has low dust collection efficiency or poor dust removal performance is used, or if you use a cabin air filter that does not meet the specification, fine dust concentration may be displayed as Poor or Very Poor on the screen.
- **Presented dust concentration is measured inside the vehicle in realtime so the measured value is differed from the dust concentration in the atmosphere.**
- **The presented figure might be varied by the mensuration or measurement locations so please use it as a reference.**
- **The fine dust concentration value is the result of measuring the number of dust and converting it to the fine dust concentration using an optical method.**
- **The fine dust concentration is displayed from 0 to 199.**
- **The measured fine dust concentration value may be different from the measurement standards of other instruments or products.**
  - **If the fine dust concentration is high, the displayed fine dust concentration may differ from the actual concentration level.**
- **The time of concentration level measurement may be delayed since the spread of fine dust is slow.**
- **Movement around the fine dust sensor interferes with normal operation of the sensor. The displayed fine dust concentration may differ from the actual concentration level.**
- **In the following environments, the fine dust concentration can be displayed differently from the actual level.**
  - **Hairy products, bugs or pets are present**
  - **A vacuum cleaner is used**
  - **Humidity is high**
  - **A door or window is opened letting the outside air in**
  - **Outside air from a construction site, factory or ventilator enters**
  - **A product that generates vapors or fine particles (humidifiers, sprays, etc.) is used**
  - **Even if the dust is generated by activities such as dusting or cleaning, the fine dust sensor may not respond if the dust is large (PM10 or higher). It will be removed by the cabin air filter.**

- **The fine dust concentration level can change by products that cause odor, such as air fresheners, odor removers, and cleaners.**
- **In an environment affected by electromagnetic waves or electrical noise, the fine dust concentration can be temporarily displayed high.**
- **It may take time to reset the fine dust sensor when the vehicle is turned on.**
- **If the air filter is not replaced regularly, fine dust concentration may be displayed as Poor or Very Poor on the screen.**

Schedule climate

Set target temperature.

For more details, refer to “EV mode” in chapter 1.

OFF mode

Press the OFF button or touch the blower down icon at the lowest fan speed to turn the climate control system off. You can still operate air intake buttons as long as the Start/Stop button is in the ON position (Europe only). You can still operate the mode and air intake buttons as long as the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

System operation

Cooling / Ventilation

1. Select the Face Level mode.
2. Set the air intake control to fresh or recirculation mode.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

Heating

1. Select the Floor Level mode.
2. Set the air intake control to fresh or recirculation mode.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If desired, turn the air conditioning ON with the temperature control knob set to heat in order to dehumidify the air before it enters into the cabin.

If the windshield fogs up, select the Front Defrost mode.

Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculation mode. Return the control to the to Fresh mode when the unpleasant air outside has diminished. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- To help prevent the inside of the windshield from fogging, set the air intake control to fresh mode and the fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to the desired temperature.

Air conditioning

Your Genesis Branded Vehicle air conditioning system is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf refrigerant.

1. Start the vehicle.
2. Press the air conditioning button.
3. Set the mode to the Face Level mode.
4. Set the air intake control to Recirculation mode temporarily to allow the cabin to cool quickly. When the desired temperature in the cabin is reached, change the air intake control back to Fresh mode.
5. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

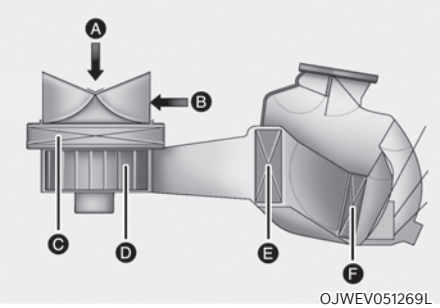
When maximum cooling is desired, set the temperature control to the lowest position, then set the fan speed control to the highest setting.

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- After sufficient cooling has been achieved, switch back from recirculation mode to fresh mode.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system with the windows and sunroof closed.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- If you operate air conditioner excessively, the difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the position and fan speed control to the lowest speed.

System maintenance

Cabin air filter



OJWEV051269L

[A]: Outside air, [B]: Recirculated air
[C]: Climate control air filter, [D]: Blower
[E]: Evaporator core, [F]: PTC & Inner condenser

The cabin air filter is installed under the front trunk cover. It filters the dust or other pollutants that enter the vehicle through the heating and air conditioning system.

We recommend that the cabin air filter be replaced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products according to the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent cabin air filter inspections and changes are required.

If the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that the system be inspected at an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also reduces the performance of the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

NOTICE

It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used. Otherwise, damage to the compressor and abnormal system operation may occur. To prevent damage, the air conditioning system in your vehicle should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

WARNING

Vehicles equipped with R-134a

Since the refrigerant is operated at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

All refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment.

Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and environment. Failure to heed these warnings can lead to serious injuries.

WARNING

Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf

Since the refrigerant is mildly flammable and operated at high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant are used.

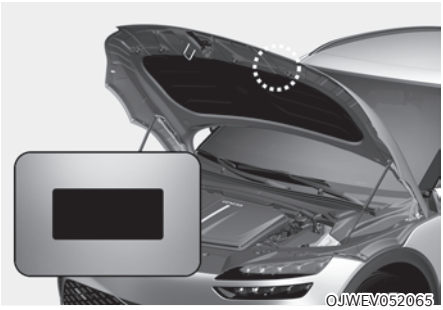
All refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment.

Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and environment. Failure to heed these warnings can lead to serious injuries.

-

  Check the coolant level when the motor compartment is cooled. Coolant level is influenced by temperature, and if the coolant reservoir cap is removed when coolant temperature is high, hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.

- **Make sure the coolant cap is properly closed after refilling coolant. Otherwise the motor could be overheated while driving.**



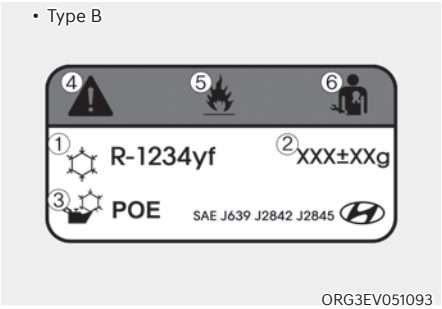
Air Conditioning refrigerant label

You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label located inside of the hood.

■ Example

• Type A

• Type B



Each symbols and specification on the air conditioning refrigerant label is represented as below:

1. Classification of refrigerant
2. Amount of refrigerant
3. Classification of compressor lubricant
4. Caution
5. Flammable refrigerant
6. To require registered technician to service air conditioning system
7. Service manual

WINDSHIELD DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

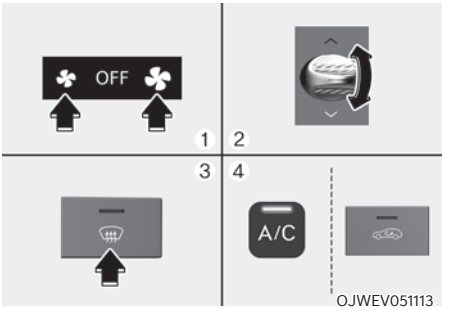
WARNING

Windshield heating

Do not use the position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, causing loss of visibility could cause an accident resulting in serious injury or death. In this case, set the mode selection button to the position and fan speed control knob to a lower speed.

- For maximum defrost performance, set the temperature control to the highest temperature setting and the fan speed control to the highest setting.
- If warm air to the floor is desired while defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windshield, rear window, outside rearview mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the hood and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windshield.

To defog inside windshield

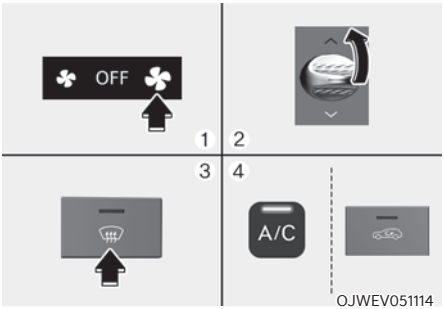


1. Select the desired fan speed.
2. Select the desired temperature.
3. Press the defroster button ().
4. Fresh mode will be selected automatically.

Check to make sure the air intake control is in Fresh mode. If the air intake control indicator light is illuminated, press the button once to enable Fresh mode (indicator light OFF).

If the position is selected, the fan speed is automatically increased.

To defrost inside windshield



1. Set the fan speed to the highest (extreme right) position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defroster button ().
4. Fresh mode will be selected automatically.

Check to make sure the air intake control is in Fresh mode. If the air intake control indicator light is illuminated, press the button once to enable Fresh mode (indicator light OFF).

If the position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.

Defogging logic

To reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windshield, the air intake or air conditioning are controlled automatically according to certain conditions such as positions. To cancel or reset the defogging logic, do the following.

1. Press the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
2. Press the defroster button () or ().
3. While pressing the air conditioning button (A/C), press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

The air intake control button indicator will blink 3 times to indicate that the defogging logic has been disabled. Repeat the steps again to re-enable the defogging logic.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it resets to the defog logic status.

Rear window defroster

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the rear window defroster conducting elements bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.

The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the interior and exterior of the rear window, while the vehicle is running.

- To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the center control panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.
- To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

Information

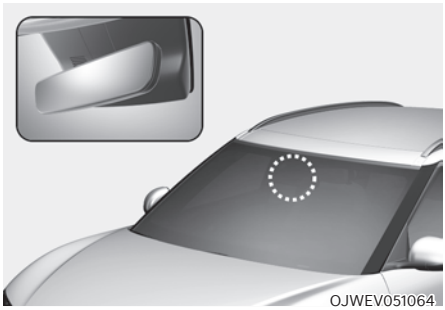
- **If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.**
- **The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.**

Outside rearview mirror defroster

If your vehicle is equipped with the rearview mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

CLIMATE CONTROL ADDITIONAL FEATURES

Auto defogging system



Auto defogging helps reduce the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windshield by automatically sensing the moisture on inside the windshield.

The auto defogging system operates when the heater or air conditioning is on.

Information

The auto defogging system may not operate normally, when the outside temperature is below -10 °C (14 °F).

AUTO

When the Auto Defogging System operates, the indicator will illuminate.

If a high amount of humidity is detected in the vehicle, the Auto Defogging System will be enabled. The following steps will be performed automatically:

Except Europe

Step 1) Air conditioning will turn ON.
Step 2) Air intake control will change to Fresh mode.
Step 3) Mode will change to defrost to direct airflow to the windshield.
Step 4) Fan speed will be set to MAX.

For Europe

Step 1) Air intake control will change to Fresh mode.
Step 2) Fan speed will be set to MAX.
Step 3) Mode Will change to defrost to direct airflow to the windshield.
Step 4) Air conditioning will turn ON.

If the air conditioning is off or recirculation mode is manually selected while Auto Defogging System is ON, the Auto Defogging System indicator will blink 3 times to signal that the manual operation has been canceled.

Turning the Auto Defogging System ON or OFF

Climate control system

Press the front windshield defroster button for 3 seconds when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position. When the Auto Defogging System is turned off, the ADS OFF symbol will blink 3 times and ADS OFF will be displayed on the climate control information screen.

When the Auto Defogging System is turned on, the ADS OFF symbol will blink 6 times without a signal.

Infotainment system

Auto Defogging System can be turned on and off by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Climate → Defog/ Defrost Options → Auto Defog' from the infotainment system screen.

Information

- **When the air conditioning is turned on by Auto Defogging System, if you try to turn off the air conditioning, the indicator will blink 3 times and the air conditioning will not be turned off.**
- **To maintain the effectiveness and efficiency of the Auto Defogging System, do not select Recirculation mode while the system is operating.**
- **When Auto Defogging System is operating, fan speed adjustment, temperature adjustment, and air intake control selection are all disabled.**
- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**

NOTICE

Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the windshield glass.

Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Auto dehumidify (if equipped)

To increase cabin air quality and reduce windshield misting, recirculation mode switches off automatically after about 5 to 30 minutes, depending on the outside temperature, and the air intake will change to fresh mode.

Turning Auto Dehumidify ON or OFF

Climate control system

To turn the Auto Dehumidify feature on or off, select Face level ( ) mode and press the air intake control ( ) button at least five times within three seconds. When Auto Dehumidify is turned on, the air intake control button indicator will blink 6 times. When turned off, the indicator will blink 3 times.

Infotainment system

Auto Dehumidify can be turned on and off by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Climate → Automatic Ventilation → Auto Dehumidify' from the infotainment system screen.

Information

- **If the battery (12V) is discharged or disconnected, Auto dehumidify settings will be reset. Readjust the settings to turning Auto dehumidify option ON or OFF.**
- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**

Recirculating air when washer fluid is used

Recirculation mode automatically activates to reduce any objectionable scent of the washer fluid from entering the cabin when the windshield washer is used.

Turning Activate upon Washer Fluid Use ON or OFF

Climate control system

To turn the Activate upon Washer Fluid Use feature on or off, select Floor level ( ) mode, and then press the air intake control ( ) button four times within two seconds while pressing the A/C icon.

When Activate upon Washer Fluid Use ON is turned on, the air intake control button indicator will blink 6 times. When turned off, the indicator will blink 3 times.

Infotainment system

Activate upon Washer Fluid Use can be turned on and off by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Climate → Recirculate Air → Activate upon Washer Fluid Use (or Interlocking washer fluid)' from the infotainment system screen.

However, in cold weather to prevent the windshield from fogging up, the recirculation mode may not be selected.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Sunroof inside air recirculation (if equipped)

When the is sunroof opened, fresh mode will be automatically selected. At this time, if you press the air intake control button, recirculation mode will be selected but will change back to fresh mode after 3 minutes. When the sunroof is closed, the air intake position will return to the original position that was selected.

Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)

The temperature of the driver's seat warmer, air ventilated seat and heated steering wheel is automatically controlled depending on the inside and outside temperature of the vehicle when the vehicle is running.

To use these features, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Heated/Ventilated Features → Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings

For more details on Auto Comfort Control, refer to "Seat Warmers" and "Air ventilation seats" section in chapter 3 and "Heated Steering Wheel" section in chapter 5.

STORAGE COMPARTMENT

WARNING

Never store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.

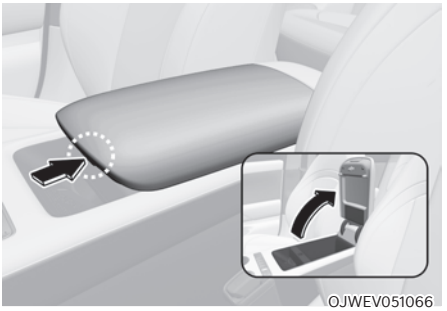
WARNING

ALWAYS keep the storage compartment covers closed securely while driving. Items inside your vehicle are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, the items may fly out of the compartment and may cause an injury if they strike the driver or a passenger.

NOTICE

To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartments.

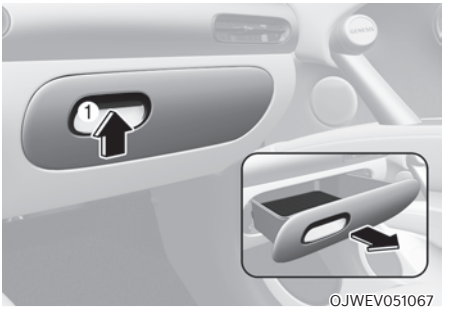
Center console storage



To open:

Press the button.

Glove box



To open:

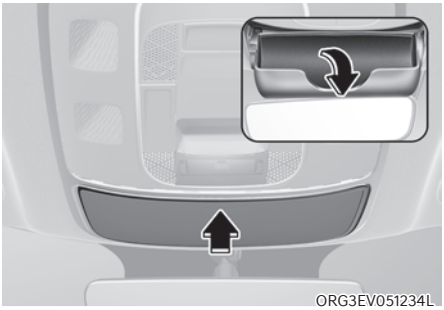
Pull the lever (1).

WARNING

ALWAYS close the glove box door after use.

An open glove box door can cause serious injury to the passenger in an accident, even if the passenger is wearing a seat belt.

Sunglass holder (if equipped)



To open:

Push and release the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses in the compartment door with the lenses facing out.

To close:

Push back into position.

Make sure the sunglass holder is closed while driving.

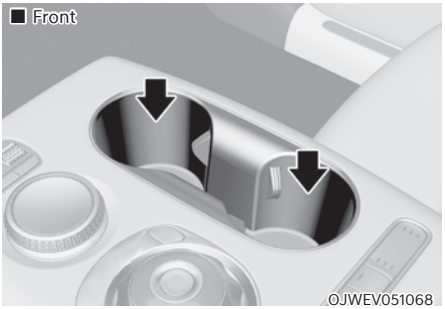
WARNING

- **Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglass holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.**
- **Do not open the sunglass holder while the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an open sunglass holder.**
- **Do not put the glasses forcibly into a sunglass holder. It may cause personal injury if you try to open it forcibly when the glasses are jammed in holder.**

INTERIOR FEATURES

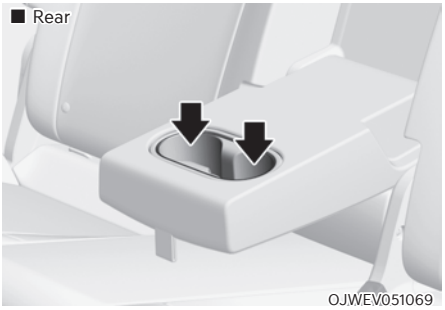
Cup holder

■ Front

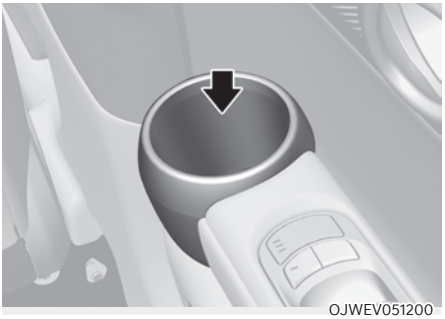


OJWEV051068

■ Rear



OJWEV051069



OJWEV051200

Cups or small beverages cups may be placed in the cup holders.

WARNING

- **Avoid abrupt starting and braking when the cup holder is in use to prevent spilling your drink. If hot liquid spills, you could be burned. Such a burn to the driver could cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **Do not place uncovered or unsecured cups, bottles, cans, etc., in the cup holder containing hot liquid while the vehicle is in motion. Injuries may result in the event of a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Only use soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in an accident.**

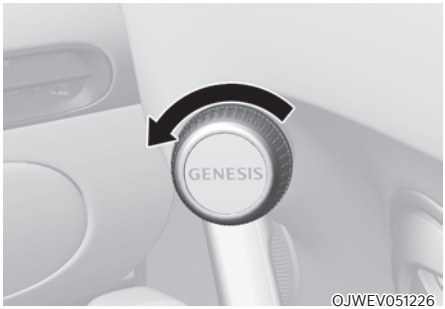
WARNING

Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a hot vehicle. It may explode.

NOTICE

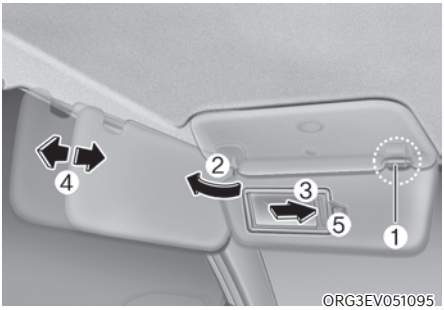
- **Keep your drinks sealed while driving to prevent spilling your drink. If liquid spills, it may get into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and damage electrical/electronic parts.**
- **When cleaning spilled liquids do not use hot air to blow out or dry the cup holder. This may damage the interior.**

Diffuser



Remove the diffuser cover on the passenger door handle by turning it counterclockwise and then insert the membrane type diffuser.

Sunvisor



To use the sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use the sunvisor to block the sun from the side window, pull it downward, release it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2) towards the window.

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the sunvisor and slide the mirror cover (3).

Adjust the sunvisor forward or backward (4) as needed (if equipped). Use the ticket holder (5) to hold tickets.

Close the vanity mirror cover securely and return the sunvisor to its original position after use.

WARNING

For your safety, do not block your view when using the sunvisor.

NOTICE

The tab (5) adjacent to the vanity mirror on the sunvisor can be used for toll road tickets or self parking tickets. Use caution when inserting tickets into the ticket holder to avoid damage. Refrain from putting several tickets in the ticket holder as this could also damage the retaining tab.

Power outlet

■ Front seat

OJWEV051071L

■ Tailgate

OJWEV051201L

The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 180 W with the vehicle running.

WARNING

Avoid electrical shocks. Do not place your fingers or foreign objects (pin, etc.) into a power outlet or touch the power outlet with a wet hand.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the power outlets:

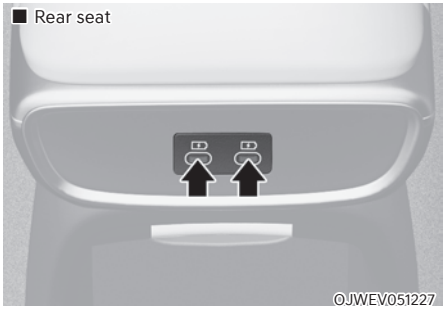
- **Use the power outlet only when the vehicle is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the vehicle off could cause the battery to discharge.**
- **Only use 12V electric accessories which are less than 180 W in electric capacity.**
- **Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.**
- **Close the cover when not in use.**
- **Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.**
- **Push the plug in as far as it will go. If good contact is not made, the plug may overheat and the fuse may open.**
- **Plug in battery equipped electrical/electronic devices with reverse current protection. The current from the battery may flow into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and cause system malfunction.**

USB charger (if equipped)

■ Front seat

OJWEV051072L

■ Rear seat



OJWEV051227

The USB charger is designed to recharge batteries of small size electrical devices using a USB cable.

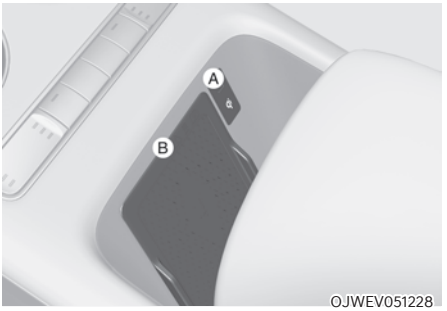
The electrical devices can be recharged when the Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position.

The battery charging state may be monitored on the electrical device.

Disconnect the USB cable from the USB port after use.

- A smart phone or a tablet PC may get warmer during the re-charging process. It does not indicate any malfunction with the charging system.
- A smart phone or a tablet PC, which adopts a different re-charging method, may not be properly re-charged. In this case, use an exclusive charger of your device.
- The charging terminal is only to recharge a device. Do not use the charging terminal either to turn ON an audio or to play media In the infotainment system.

Wireless smart phone charging system (if equipped)



[A]: Indicator light, [B]: Charging pad

On certain models, the vehicle comes equipped with a wireless smart phone charger.

The system is available when all doors are closed, and when the Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position.

Charging smart phone

The wireless smart phone charging system charges only the Qi-enabled smart phones (Qi). Read the label on the smart phone accessory cover or visit your smart phone manufacturer's website to check whether your smart phone supports the Qi technology.

The wireless charging process starts when you put a Qi-enabled smart phone on the wireless charging unit.

1. Remove other items, including the smart key, from the wireless charging unit. If not, the wireless charging process may be interrupted. Place the smart phone on the center of the charging pad.
2. The indicator light is orange when the smart phone is charging. The indicator light will turn blue when phone charging is complete.
3. You can turn ON or OFF the wireless charging function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:
   - Setup → Vehicle → Convenience → Wireless Charging

If your smart phone is not charging:

- Slightly change the position of the smart phone on the charging pad.
- Make sure the indicator light is orange.

The indicator light will blink orange for 10 seconds if there is a malfunction in the wireless charging system.

In this case, temporarily stop the charging process, and re-attempt to charge your smart phone again.

The system warns you with a message on the cluster display if the smart phone is still on the wireless charging unit after the vehicle is turned OFF and the front door is opened.

For some manufacturer's smart phones, the system may not warn you even though the smart phone is left on the wireless charging unit. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smart phone and not a malfunction of the wireless charging.

NOTICE

- The wireless smart phone charging system may not support certain smart phones, which are not verified for the Qi specification (Qi).
- When placing your smart phone on the charging pad, position the phone in the middle of the mat for optimal charging performance. If your smart phone is off to the side, the charging rate may be less and in some cases the smart phone may experience higher heat conduction.
- In some cases, the wireless charging may stop temporarily when the smart key is used, either when starting the vehicle or locking/ unlocking the doors, etc.
- When charging certain smart phones, the charging indicator may not change to blue when the smart phone is fully charged.
- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop, when temperature abnormally increases inside the wireless smart phone charging system. The wireless charging process restarts, when temperature falls to a certain level.
- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop when there is any metallic item, such as a coin, between the wireless smart phone charging system and the smart phone.
- When charging some smart phones with a self-protection feature, the wireless charging speed may decrease and the wireless charging may stop.
- If the smart phone has a thick cover, the wireless charging may not be possible.
- If the smart phone is not completely contacting the charging pad, wireless charging may not operate properly.
- Some magnetic items like credit cards, phone cards or rail tickets may be damaged if left with the smart phone during the charging process.
- When any smart phone without a wireless charging function or a metallic object is placed on the charging pad, a small noise may sound. This small sound is due to the vehicle discerning compatibility of the object placed on the charging pad. It does not affect your vehicle or the smart phone in any way.

Information

If the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, the charging also stops.

Vehicle to load (V2L) (if equipped)

OJWEVQ011052

V2L(Vehicle to Load) is installed at the central rear seat. V2L is a convenient feature which provides enough electricity to use diverse household electrical appliances in the vehicle.

V2L is installed at the central rear seat bottom.

For more details, refer to “Vehicle to load(V2L)” section in chapter 1.

Clock

The clock can be set from the infotainment system.

Information

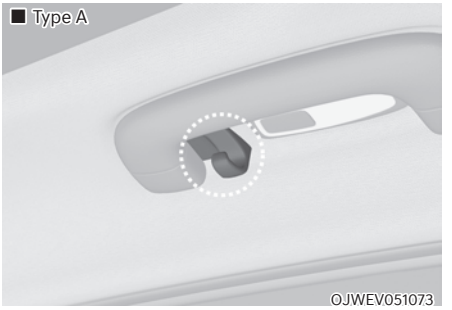
The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

WARNING

Do not attempt to adjust the clock while driving. Doing so may result in distracted driving which may lead to an accident involving personal injury or death.

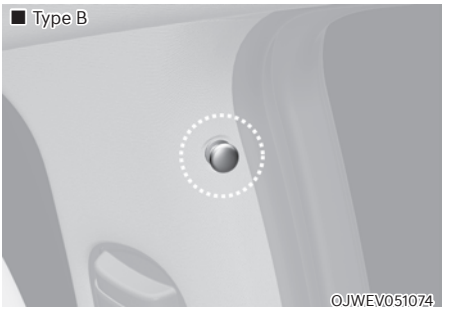
Coat hook

■ Type A



OJWEV051073

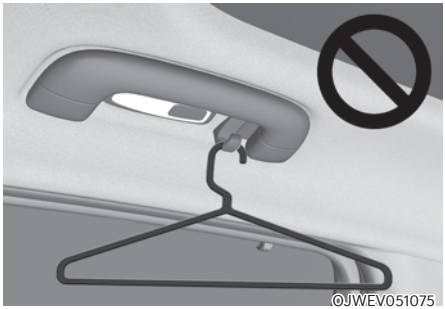
■ Type B



OJWEV051074

These hooks are not designed to hold large or heavy items.

WARNING



Do not hang other objects such as hangers or hard objects except clothes. Also, do not put heavy, sharp or breakable objects in the clothes pockets. In an accident or when the curtain air bag is inflated, it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.

Floor mat anchor(s)

ALWAYS use the Floor Mat Anchors to attach the front floor mats to the vehicle. The anchors on the front floor carpet keep the floor mats from sliding forward.

WARNING

Do not overlay additional mats or liners over the floor mats. If using All Weather mats, remove the carpeted floor mats before installing them. Only use floor mats designed to connect to the anchors.

WARNING

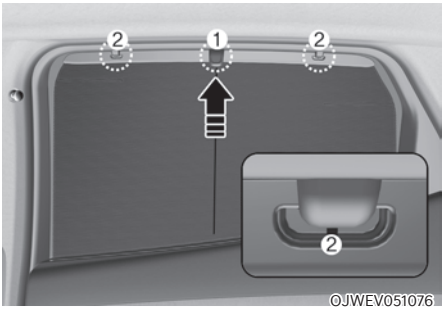
The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.

- **Ensure to remove a protective film attached on the carpet before attaching a floor mat on the front floor carpet. Otherwise, the floor mat may move freely on the protective film and it could result in unintentional braking or accelerating.**
- **Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.**
- **Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.**
- **Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (for example, all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.**

IMPORTANT Your vehicle was manufactured with driver's side floor mat anchors that are designed to securely hold the floor mat in place. To avoid any interference with pedal operation, Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends that the Genesis floor mat designed for use in your vehicle be installed.

Rear side window sunshades (if equipped)

Use the rear side window sunshade to block external light coming through the rear window glass.

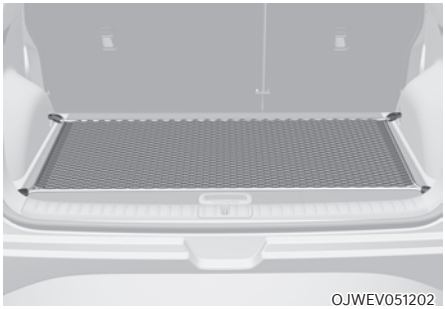


1. Lift the sunshade by the handle (1).
2. Hang the sunshade on both sides of the hook (2). If the sunshade is hung on one side of the hook, the sunshade may be wrinkled.

NOTICE

- **Do not hang any other object except the rear side window sunshade on the hooks.**
- **If you pull the rear side window sunshade or apply force to return the sunshade to its original position after use, you may find the sunshade wrinkled or out of shape. To lower the sunshade, be sure to put the handle downward and slowly return the sunshade to its original position.**
- **Sunshades may not work properly if foreign objects (coins, toys, cookies, etc.) are stuck in the door. Be careful that the foreign objects do not get into the door.**

Luggage net holder (if equipped)



To keep items from shifting in the luggage compartment, you can use the 4 holders located in the luggage board to attach the luggage net.

Make sure the luggage net is securely attached to the holders in the luggage board.

If necessary, we recommend that you contact your authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products to obtain a luggage net.

WARNING

Avoid eye injury. DO NOT overstretch the luggage net. ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. DO NOT use the luggage net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.

Use the luggage net to keep only light items from shifting in the luggage compartment.

Cargo security screen (if equipped)

OJWEV051203L

Use the cargo security screen to cover items stored in the cargo area.

Using the cargo security screen

OJWEV051204L

1. Pull the cargo security screen towards the rear of the vehicle by the handle (1).
2. Insert the guide pin (2) into the guide (3).

Information

Pull out the cargo security screen with the handle in the center to prevent the guide pin from falling out of the guide.

When the cargo security screen is not in use:

1. Pull the cargo security screen rearward and down to release it from the guides.
2. The cargo security screen will automatically slide back in.

Information

The cargo security screen may not automatically slide back in if the cargo security screen is not fully pulled out. Pull the cargo screen out all the way and then slowly allow the screen to retract back in.

NOTICE

- **Since the cargo security screen may be damaged or malformed, do not put luggage on it when it is used.**
- **The cargo security screen and rear seat may be damaged when the rear seat slides forward/rearward or when the rear seatback is reclined.**
- **Note that if you release the handle while pulling the luggage screen handle all the way, the screen may wind up quickly and be damaged.**

WARNING

- **Do not place objects on the cargo security screen. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.**
- **Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is designed for luggage only.**
- **Maintain the balance of the vehicle and locate the weight as forward as possible.**

Removing the cargo security screen

1. Push one side of the cargo screen inward to compress the spring and release the screen from the vehicle.
2. While the spring is compressed, pull out the cargo security screen.

INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM

NOTICE

- **If you install an aftermarket HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic devices may not function properly.**
- **Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration.**

USB Port

You can use an USB cable to connect audio devices to the vehicle USB port.

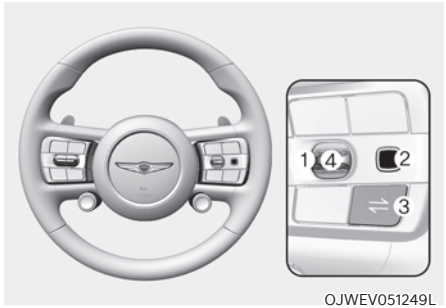
Information

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the portable audio device's power source.

Antenna

The shark fin antenna will receive AM, FM broadcast signals and transmit data.

Steering wheel remote controls



NOTICE

Do not operate multiple audio remote control buttons simultaneously.

Volume (∧, ∨) (1)

- Press the VOLUME scroll up to increase volume.
- Press the VOLUME scroll down to decrease volume.

SEEK/PRESET (< / >) (2)

If swipe left or right and hold on optical mouse edge, it will function in the following modes:

- **RADIO mode**

  It will function as the AUTO SEEK select button. It will SEEK until you release the button.
- **MEDIA mode**

  It will function as the FF/RW button.

If swipe left or right on optical mouse, it would function in the following modes:

- **RADIO mode**

  It will function by moving between stored PRESET STATIONS
- **MEDIA mode**

  It will function as the TRACK UP/ DOWN button.

MODE (⇄) (3)

Press the MODE button to change Radio/ Media mode which user set.

MUTE (🔇) (4)

- Press the MUTE button to mute the sound.
- Press the MUTE button again to activate the sound.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

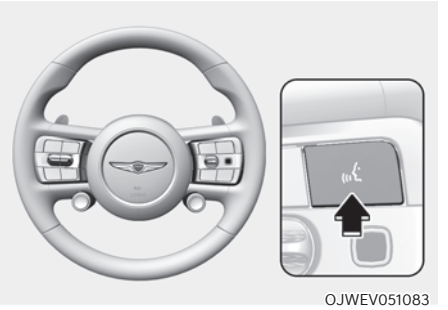
Infotainment system

OJWEV051079

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Voice recognition

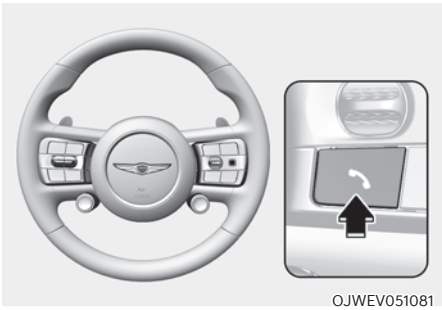


OJWEV051083

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology



OJWEV051081

OJWEV051082L

(1) Call / Answer / Call end button
(2) Microphone

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

CAUTION

To avoid driver distractions, do not excessively operate the device while driving the vehicle which may lead to an accident.

Bang&Olufsen sound system

CAUTION

Bang&Olufsen sound system is equipped with door speaker grills made of stainless steel. The grill surface can be heated when the vehicle is exposed to hot weather for a long period of time. Keep away from the speaker grill when it is hot.

6. Driving your vehicle

Before driving 6-4
Before entering the vehicle 6-4
Before starting 6-4
Start/Stop button 6-5
Start/Stop button positions 6-6
Starting the vehicle 6-7
Turning off the vehicle 6-8
Remote start 6-9
Reduction gear 6-10
Reduction gear operation 6-10
Rotate the shift dial manually in case of emergency 6-11
Cluster display messages 6-16
Good driving practices 6-18
Regenerative braking system 6-20
One pedal driving 6-21
i-Pedal 6-22
Smart recuperation system 6-23
Smart recuperation system setting 6-23
To activate smart recuperation system 6-23
Ready to operate 6-24
How to operate 6-25
Smart recuperation system will be temporarily cancelled when: 6-25
To resume Smart Recuperation System 6-25
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance recognition sensor (Front radar) 6-26
System malfunction 6-27
Limitations of the system 6-27
Braking system 6-30
Power-assist brakes 6-30
Disc brakes wear indicator 6-31
High performance brake 6-31
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) 6-32
Auto Hold 6-36
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 6-39
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 6-41
Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) 6-44

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) 6-45
Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC) 6-46
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) 6-46
Multi-Collision Brake (MCB) 6-47
Good braking practices 6-48
All Wheel Drive (AWD) 6-49
Emergency precautions 6-52
Electronic control suspension 6-53
System malfunction 6-53
Electronically controlled suspension with road preview 6-54
System malfunction 6-55
Limitations of the system 6-55
Electronic limited slip differential 6-56
Drive mode selection 6-56
Warning messages 6-56
Drive mode integrated control system 6-57
Drive mode 6-57
Drive modes characteristic 6-59
Virtual gear shift (VGS) 6-60
Boost mode 6-61
Functional description and operating conditions 6-61
Drift mode 6-62
To activate DRIFT mode 6-62
DRIFT mode disabled 6-62
Active sound design 6-63
Active noise control-road 6-63
Special driving conditions 6-64
Hazardous driving conditions 6-64
Rocking the vehicle 6-64
Smooth cornering 6-65
Driving at night 6-65

6. Driving your vehicle

Driving in the rain 6-65
Driving in flooded areas 6-66
Highway driving 6-66
Reducing the risk of a rollover 6-67

Winter driving 6-68
Snow or icy conditions 6-68
Winter precautions 6-71

Trailer towing 6-73
If you decide to pull a trailer? 6-74
Trailer towing equipment 6-77
Driving with a trailer 6-78

Vehicle weight 6-81
Overloading 6-81

BEFORE DRIVING

Before entering the vehicle

- Be sure all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean and unobstructed.
- Remove frost, snow, or ice.
- Visually check the tires for uneven wear and damage.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

Before starting

- Make sure the hood, the tailgate, and the doors are securely closed and locked.
- Adjust the position of the seat and steering wheel.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Verify all the lights work.
- Fasten your seat belt. Check that all passengers have fastened their seat belts.
- Check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel and the messages on the instrument display when the vehicle is in the ON position.
- Check that any items you are carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH, take the following precautions:

- **ALWAYS wear your seat belt. All passengers must be properly belted whenever the vehicle is moving. For more information, refer to "Seat Belts" section in chapter 3.**
- **Always drive defensively. Assume other drivers or pedestrians may be careless and make mistakes.**
- **Stay focused on the task of driving. Driver distraction can cause accidents.**
- **Leave plenty of space between you and the vehicle in front of you.**

WARNING

NEVER drink or take drugs and drive.

Drinking or taking drugs and driving is dangerous and may result in an accident and SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH.

Drunk driving is the number one contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgment. Just one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions and emergencies and your reaction time gets worse with each additional drink.

Driving while under the influence of drugs is as dangerous or more dangerous than driving under the influence of alcohol.

You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs and drive. If you are drinking or taking drugs, don't drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a taxi.

START/STOP BUTTON

Whenever the front door is opened, the Start/Stop button will illuminate and will go off 30 seconds after the door is closed.

WARNING

To turn the vehicle off in an emergency:

Press and hold the Start/Stop button for more than two seconds OR Rapidly press and release the Start/Stop button three times (within three seconds).

If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the vehicle without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the Start/Stop button with the gear in the N (Neutral) position.

WARNING

- **NEVER press the Start/Stop button while the vehicle is in motion except in an emergency. This will result in the vehicle turning off and loss of power assist for the steering and brake systems. This may lead to loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the gear is in the P (Park) position, set the parking brake, press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position, and take the Smart Key with you. Unexpected vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not followed.**
- **NEVER reach through the steering wheel for the Start/Stop button or any other control while the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area may cause a loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**

Start/Stop button positions

Button Position	Action	Notes
OFF	To turn off the vehicle, press the Start/ Stop button with the vehicle shifted to P (Park). If the Start/Stop button is pressed with the vehicle shifted to D (Drive), R (Reverse) or N (Neutral), the gear automatically shifts to P (Park). The steering wheel locks to protect the vehicle from theft.	If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime will sound.
ACC	Press the Start/Stop button when the button is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal. Some of the electrical accessories are usable. The steering wheel unlocks.	• If you leave the Start/Stop button in the ACC position for more than one hour, the battery power will turn off automatically to prevent the battery from discharging. • If the steering wheel doesn't unlock properly, the Start/Stop button will not work. Press the Start/Stop button while turning the steering wheel right and left to release.
ON	Press the Start/Stop button while it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal. The warning lights can be checked before the vehicle is started.	Do not leave the Start/Stop button in the ON position when the vehicle is not running to prevent the battery from discharging.
START	To start the vehicle, depress the brake pedal and press the Start/ Stop button with the gear shifted to the P (Park) position. For your safety, start the vehicle with the gear shifted to the P (Park) position.	If you press the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake pedal, the vehicle does not start and the Start/Stop button changes as follows: **OFF → ACC → ON → OFF or ACC**

✳ To prevent vehicle battery discharge, the Start/Stop button changes to the OFF position when the Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON position with the gear in P (Park) for a certain period of time. When the function operates, the tail lamps will turn off. To use the tail lamps again, turn the headlamp switch located on the steering column to the OFF and ON position again.

Starting the vehicle

WARNING

- **Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes, such as high heels, ski boots, sandals, flipflops, etc., may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedals.**
- **Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed.**

  The vehicle can move which can lead to an accident.

Information

- **The vehicle will start by pressing the Start/Stop button, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.**
- **Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, and when it is far away from the driver, the vehicle may not start.**
- **When the Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON position, if any door is open, the system checks for the smart key. When the smart key is not in the vehicle, the ( ) indicator will blink and the warning 'Key not in vehicle' will come on. When all doors are closed, the chime will also sound for about 5 seconds. Keep the smart key in the vehicle when in the ACC position or if the vehicle is in the ready (READY) mode.**

Starting the vehicle

1. Always carry the smart key with you.
2. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
3. Make sure the gear is in P (Park).
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Press the Start/Stop button. If the vehicle starts, the (READY) indicator will come on.

Information

- **Always start the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal. Do not depress the accelerator while starting the vehicle. Do not race the motor while warming it up.**
- **If ambient temperature is low, the ( ) indicator may remain illuminated longer than the normal amount of time.**

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

- **If the (READY) indicator turns off while you are in motion, do not attempt to shift the gear to the P (Park) position.**

  If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the gear in N (Neutral) while the vehicle is still moving and press the Start/Stop button in an attempt to restart the vehicle.
- **Do not push or tow your vehicle to start the vehicle.**

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

Do not press the Start/Stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.

When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you cannot normally start the vehicle. Replace the fuse with a new one. If you are not able to replace the fuse, you can start the vehicle by pressing and holding the Start/Stop button for 10 seconds with the Start/Stop button in the ACC position.

Pressing the brake pedal many times while (READY) indicator light is off will increase the possibility of discharging the 12V battery.

For your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the vehicle.

CAUTION

- **Because the vehicle doesn't make the vehicle sound, pay attention to the surrounding environment and drive carefully.**
- **After parking or waiting for a traffic light, please check around(children, obstacle, etc.) before departure.**
- **When reversing, check directly behind you before driving. Pedestrians may not be able to recognize vehicle sounds.**

Information

If the smart key battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the vehicle by pressing the Start/Stop button with the smart key in the direction of the picture above.

Turning off the vehicle

1. Stop the vehicle and depress the brake pedal fully.
2. Shift to P (Park).
3. Press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position and apply the parking brake.
4. Make sure the (READY) indicator light is off in the instrument cluster.

CAUTION

If the (READY) indicator light on the instrument cluster is still on, the vehicle is not turned off and can move when the gear is in any position except P (Park).

Remote start (if equipped)

OJWEV061010

You can start the vehicle using the Remote Start button of the smart key.

To start the vehicle remotely:

1. Press the door lock button within 10 m (32 feet) from the vehicle.
2. Press the remote start ((◠)) button for over 2 seconds within 4 seconds after locking the doors.
3. To turn off the remote start function, press the remote start ((◠)) button once.

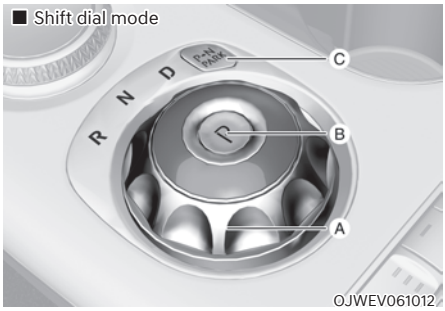
- The remote start ((◠)) button may not operate if the smart key is not within 10 m (32 feet).
- The vehicle will not remotely start if the hood or tailgate is opened.
- The vehicle must be in P (Park) for the remote start function to start.
- The vehicle turns off if you get in the vehicle without a registered smart key.
- The vehicle turns off if you do not get in the vehicle within 10 minutes after remotely starting the vehicle.

REDUCTION GEAR

■ Crystal sphere mode

OJWEV061011

■ Shift dial mode



OJWEV061012

[A]: Rotary shifter(Rotary gear shift dial),
[B]: P button,
[C]: P release cap

Reduction gear operation

Crystal sphere is a shift lever that can be shifted to shift dial mode only while the (READY) indicator light is on in the instrument cluster. If the vehicle is not in a drivable state, maintain the crystal sphere. Depress the brake pedal whenever rotating the shift dial to change gear or shifting P.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- **ALWAYS check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the vehicle is shifted to the P (Park) position, then apply the parking brake, then press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed.**

Rotate the shift dial manually in case of emergency

OJWEV061014

OJWEV061053

OJWEV061015

If the drivable indicator (READY) is on and it cannot rotate normally in 'shift dial mode', try restarting the vehicle by pressing the start button. If the same phenomenon repeats after restarting, pull the upper surface of the crystal sphere strongly toward the rear of the vehicle with your palm and rotate it until the shift dial is fully visible. At this time, you may hear a normal 'click' sound, which releases the restraint of the instrument.

CAUTION

- **The manual mode switching function must be used only in an emergency. Use under normal circumstances may cause malfunction.**
- **When switching to manual mode, be sure to pull towards the rear of the vehicle. Forcibly pushing in the forward direction may damage the part.**
- **If normal mode conversion is continuously impossible, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for inspection and maintenance.**

Rotary shifter/ Rotary gear shift dial

P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park).

To shift the gear to P (Park), press the P button while depressing the brake pedal.

If you turn the vehicle off in R (Reverse), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), the gear will automatically shift to P (Park).

WARNING

- **Shifting into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **After the vehicle has stopped, always make sure the vehicle is in P (Park), apply the parking brake, and turn the vehicle off.**
- **When parking on an incline, shift the gear to P (Park) and apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill.**

Automatic gear shift to P (Park)

The gear is shifted to P (Park) automatically for safety reasons under the following conditions:

- When the vehicle is turned off with the gear in R (Reverse), D (Drive) or N (Neutral).
- When the driver's door is open with the vehicle running, the gear in R (Reverse), D (Drive) or N (Neutral), and the vehicle at a standstill.
- When the driver's door is open with the gear in N (Neutral) and the vehicle is off.

In situations the gear must be in P (Park), always check if the gear is shifted to P (Park) by checking the instrument cluster.

R (Reverse)

Use this position to drive the vehicle rearward.

OJWEV061016

To shift the gear to R (Rear), rotate the rotary gear shift dial to R (Reverse) while depressing the brake pedal.

When the vehicle is stopped in the R (Reverse) position, if you open the driver's door, the gear will automatically shift to P (Park).

However, if the vehicle is in motion, the gear may not automatically shift to P (Park) to prevent reduction gear damage.

The direction of the rotary gear shift dial is the same as that of the wheel.

NOTICE

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the reduction gear if you shift into R (Reverse) while the vehicle is in motion.

N (Neutral)

OJWEV061018

To shift the gear to N (Neutral), rotate the shift dial clockwise from R (Reverse) or counterclockwise from D (Drive) while depressing the brake pedal.

Always depress the brake pedal when you are shifting from N (Neutral) to another gear.

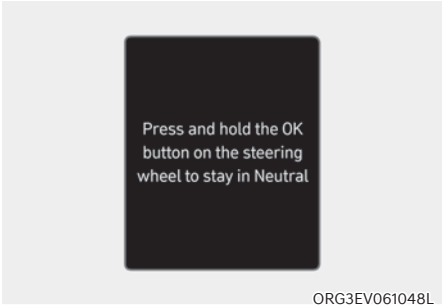
If you turn the vehicle off in N (Neutral), the gear will automatically shift to P (Park).

However, if you need to stay in N (Neutral) with the vehicle off, refer to "**To stay in N (Neutral) when vehicle is OFF**" in the following page.

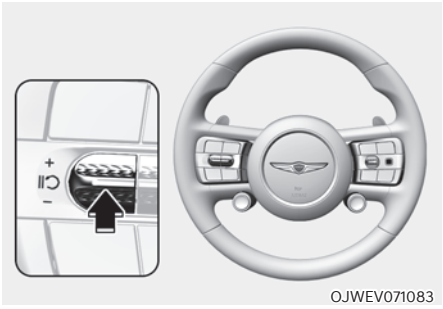
CAUTION

The vehicle can be started with the gear in N (Neutral), but for you safety, be sure to start the vehicle with the gear in P (Park).

To stay in N (Neutral) when vehicle is OFF



ORG3EV061048L



OJWEV071083

If you want to stay in N (Neutral) after the vehicle is OFF (in the ACC state), do the following.

1. Turn off Auto Hold and release Electronic Parking Brake when the vehicle is running.
2. Rotate the shift dial to N (neutral) while depressing the brake pedal.
3. When you take your foot off the brake pedal, the message ‘Press and hold the OK Button on the steering Wheel to stay in Neutral’ will appear on the cluster display.
4. Press and hold the OK button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second.
5. When the message ‘Vehicle will stay in (N). Change gear to cancel’ (or ‘N will stay engaged when the vehicle is Off’) will appear on the cluster display, press the Start/Stop button while depressing the brake pedal.

   However, if you open the driver's door, the gear will automatically shift to P (Park) and the Start/Stop button will change to the OFF position.

NOTICE

With the gear in N (Neutral) the Start/Stop button will be in the ACC position. Note that the doors cannot be locked in the ACC position or the battery may discharge if left in the ACC position for a long period.

D (Drive)

This is the normal driving position.

It automatically activates the regenerative braking system according to the road conditions.

OJWEV061017

To shift the gear to D (Drive), rotate the rotary gear shift dial to D (Drive) while depressing the brake pedal.

When the vehicle is stopped in the D (Drive) position, if you open the driver's door, the gear will automatically shift to P (Park).

However, if the vehicle is in motion, the gear may not automatically shift to P (Park) to prevent reduction gear damage.

NOTICE

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).

CAUTION

When you start after stopping on a steep incline, even if the gear is in D (Drive), if you do not depress the accelerator or brake pedal, the vehicle may roll backwards, which can cause an accident.

When the battery is discharged

You cannot shift gears, when the battery is discharged.

In emergencies, do the following to shift the gear to N (Neutral) on a level ground.

1. Connect the battery cables from another vehicle or from a another battery to the jump-starting terminals inside the vehicle compartment.

   For more details, refer to "Jump Starting" section in chapter 8.

2. Release the Electronic Parking Brake with the Start/Stop button in the ON position.

OJWEV061054L

3. Remove the cap-cover (1) and press the button (2) while depressing the brake pedal.

Shift-lock system

For your safety, your vehicle has a shiftlock system which prevents shifting the gear from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive), from R (Reverse) into D (Drive) or from D (Drive) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Rotary the dial to the R (Reverse) or D (Drive).

i Information

For your safety, you cannot shift the gear while the charging cable is connected.

Parking

Always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal. Shift the gear to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Take the Key with you when leaving the vehicle.

Cluster display messages

Press brake pedal to change gear

OJWEV061001L

This message is displayed when the brake pedal is not depressed while shifting the gear.

Depress the brake pedal and then shift the gear.

Shift to P after stopping

OJWEV061041L

This message is displayed when the gear is shifted to P (Park) while the vehicle is moving.

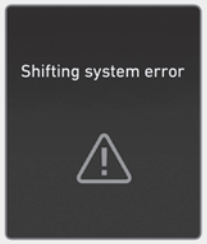
Stop the vehicle before shifting to P (Park).

Shifter system malfunction

■ Type A

OJWEV061040L

■ Type B



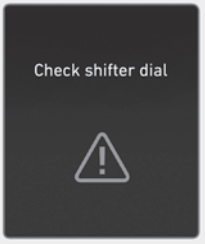
OJWEV061055L

This message is displayed when the shift gear does not properly operate in the P (Park) position.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Check shifter dial / Check rotary gear shift dial

■ Type A



OJWEV061002L

■ Type B

OJWEV061056L

This message is displayed when there is a malfunction with the rotary gear shift dial.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

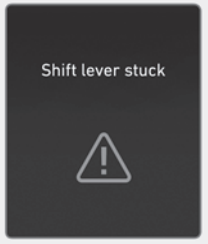
Check P button

OJWEV061003L

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the P button.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Rotary shifter stuck



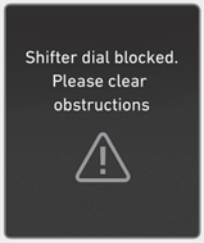
OJWEV061042L

This message is displayed when the rotary gear shift dial does not return back to it's normal position after rotating it.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

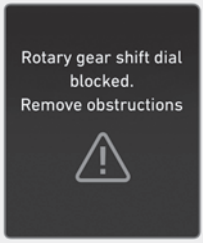
Shifter dial blocked. Please clear obstructions

■ Type A



OJWEV061005L

■ Type B



OJWEV061057L

This message is displayed when motion is not possible due to obstacles around the shift dial. We recommend that you have to clean obstruction around the shift dial.

Rotate the shift dial manually

■ Type A

OJWEV061004L

■ Type B

OJWEV061058L

This message is displayed when the driver tries to manually rotate the shift dial in case of a malfunction of the shift dial. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Good driving practices

- Never shift the gear from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never shift the gear into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.

  Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Do not shift the gear to N (Neutral) when driving. If the gear is shifted to N (Neutral) while driving. Doing so may increase the risk of an accident.

  Also, shift the gear back to D (Drive) while the vehicle is moving may severely damage the reduction gear.
- When driving uphill or downhill, always shift to D (Drive) for driving forward or shift to R (Reverse) for driving backwards, and check the gear position indicated on the instrument cluster or the rotary gear shift dial before driving. Driving in the opposite direction of the selected gear, can lead to a dangerous situation by shutting off the vehicle and affecting the braking performance.
- Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but consistent pedal pressure can result in the brakes overheating, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.
- Always apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle. Do not depend on placing the shift gear in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.

- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator.

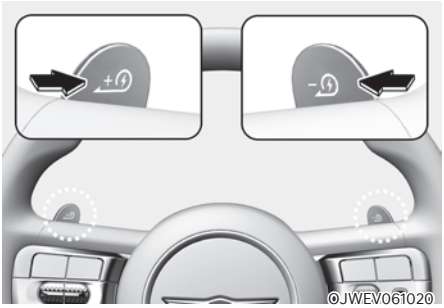
WARNING

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:

- **ALWAYS wear your seat belt. In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends you to follow all posted speed limits.**

REGENERATIVE BRAKING SYSTEM

Regenerative braking (Paddle shifter)



The paddle shifter is used to adjust the regenerative braking level from 0 to 3 during decelerating or braking.

- Left side (+): Increases regenerative braking and deceleration.
- Right side (–): Decreases regenerative braking and deceleration.
- Pull and hold the left side paddle shifter for more than 0.5 seconds and One pedal driving function is operated, increasing the regenerative braking. In this case, stopping the vehicle is possible by keep on pulling the paddle shifter.

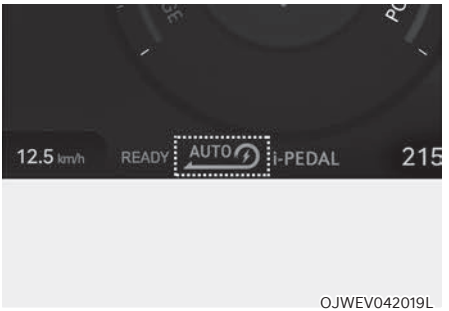
  Refer to the following pages on "One pedal driving".
- Pull and hold the right side paddle shifter for over 1 second to turn on and off the automatic change of the regenerative braking.

  Refer to the following pages on "Smart Recuperation System".

Information

The paddle shifter does not operate when:

- **The [+] and [–] paddle shifters are pulled at the same time.**
- **The vehicle is decelerating by depressing the brake pedal.**
- **Smart Cruise Control is activated.**
- **If level 0 is selected for the regenerative braking system, the brake disc cleaning function is operated. While operating to clean the brake disc, the driving distance and the regenerative braking performance can be reduced. After finishing, the regenerative braking performance will be restored. The brake disc cleaning function operates when level 0 is re-selected after adjusting the regenerative braking level.**



OJWEV042019L

The selected regenerative braking level is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Initial setting of the regenerative braking level and adjustable range vary according to the selected Drive mode.

Drive mode	Adjustable Range
SNOW	0 to 1
ECO	0 to 3
COMFORT	0 to 3
SPORT	0 to 3

For more details, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in this chapter.

One pedal driving

The driver can stop the vehicle by pulling the left side paddle shifter .

To operate:

- Pull and hold the left side paddle shifter while coasting.
- When the vehicle speed is above 3 km/h (1 mph), release the paddle shifter to return to the preset regenerative braking stage.
- When the vehicle speed is below 3 km/h (1 mph), the function maintains control to stop the vehicle even though the paddle shifter is released.
- While the One pedal driving is in activation, the driver can control the vehicle stopping position using the accelerator pedal.

Automatic engagement of EPB

After the vehicle is stopped by the One Pedal Driving function, EPB is automatically engaged when any of these conditions occur:

- The driver's seatbelt is unfastened and the driver's door is open.
- The sift gear is changed N (Neutral)
- The hood is open.
- The tailgate is open.
- 5 minutes have passed after the vehicle has stopped.
- The system operation is limited due to other reasons.

WARNING

- **Stopping the vehicle may not be possible according to the vehicle and road conditions. Pay attention to the road condition ahead and apply the brake if necessary.**
- **Please refrain to use the one pedal driving function with the road conditions are bad such as being wet, iced or covered with snow.**

CAUTION

When the vehicle is stopped or parked by One Pedal Driving on the steep hills, be sure to depress the brake pedal.

i-Pedal

i-Pedal is controlled by acceleration pedal. i-Pedal provides vehicle speed control (acceleration/deceleration, stopping) without manually controlling the paddle shifter.

To operate:

- Pull the left side paddle shifter to level 3 regenerative braking system.
- The vehicle is stopped by pulling the left shift lever when the vehicle speed is less than 3 km/h (1 mph), the vehicle is stopped even if the left paddle shift lever is released.
- When you press the accelerator pedal at the same time during one-pedal driving by pulling the left paddle shift lever, it cannot adjust the vehicle's speed and stop position.

CAUTION

When the vehicle is stopped or parked by i-Pedal on the steep hills, be sure to depress the brake pedal.

SMART RECUPERATION SYSTEM

The Smart Recuperation System controls the regenerative braking automatically according to the road gradient and driving condition of the vehicle in front. The system minimizes the unnecessary operation of the brake and acceleration pedal, improving the electric energy efficiency and assisting the driver.

Smart recuperation system setting

Pull and hold the right side paddle shifter for over 1 second to turn on and off the automatic change of the regenerative braking.

To activate smart recuperation system

OJWEV041019

When pull and hold the right side paddle shifter for 1 second or more, Smart Recuperation System is On. When Smart Recuperation System is On, 'AUTO' for the regenerative braking level is displayed on the instrument cluster.

- The road gradient changes
- Distance from the vehicle ahead reduces or increases
- Speed of the vehicle ahead reduces or increases

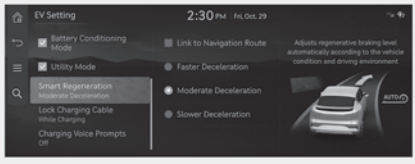
Information

The regenerative braking amount adjustment according to the road slope is reflected only when the paddle level 0 is set.

WARNING

- **When using the Smart Recuperation Braking system, you can use one-pedal driving (stopping the vehicle by pulling the left paddle shifter).**
- **i-Pedal system can stop when you are using the Smart Recuperation Braking system. Use i-Pedal after turning off the Smart Recuperation Braking system.**

Information



OJWEV071303L

The regenerative braking level can be adjusted based on the driver's deceleration style (Faster/Normal/Slower Deceleration)

To adjust the level, select 'Setup-EV-Smart Regeneration-Smart Regeneration Deceleration Intensity' in the infotainment system.

WARNING

When vehicle speed is under 10 km/h (6 mph), the Smart Recuperation System is temporarily cancelled. The driver must adjust the vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

Smart Recuperation System relies on front view radar in the vehicle. Foreign substances on the front view radar may cause the malfunction of Smart Recuperation System. Be sure to maintain clear view for the front view camera.

The Smart Recuperation System will not operate when Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist warning light on the instrument cluster. The driver must adjust the vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

Ready to operate

OJWEV041019

Regenerative braking level is displayed on instrument cluster.

How to operate

Pulling the paddle-shift (-) for 1 or more seconds, the smart recuperation system will operate. The indicator of the regenerative braking will be changed to 'AUTO' from the level indicator.

WARNING

The Smart Recuperation System which automatically controls the regenerative braking level when coasting is only a supplemental system for the driver's convenience. The system cannot completely stop the vehicle nor avoid all collisions. The brake control may be insufficient depending on the speed of the vehicle in front and when the vehicle in front suddenly stops, a vehicle cuts in suddenly and there is a steep slope. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.

Smart recuperation system will be temporarily cancelled when:

- Cancelled manually

  Pulling and holding the right side paddle shifter for more than 1 second. The Smart Recuperation System turns off temporarily and “AUTO” will be replaced with regenerative braking level indicator.
- Cancelled automatically
  - The vehicle is shifted to N (Neutral), R (Reverse) or P (Park).
  - Smart Cruise Control is in activation.
  - The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or ABS is operating.

WARNING

When the Smart Recuperation System is cancelled automatically, adjust the vehicle speed directly by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

To resume Smart Recuperation System

To re-activate the Smart Recuperation System while driving, pull and hold the right side paddle shifter for more than 1 second again. Then, AUTO for the regenerative braking level will appear on the instrument cluster.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance recognition sensor (Front radar)

[1]: Front radar

For detail location of sensor, refer to the picture above.

In order for the Smart Recuperation System to operate properly, always make sure the radar sensor cover is clean and free of dirt, snow, and debris. Dirt, snow, or foreign substances on the lens may adversely affect the sensing performance of the sensor. In this case, the system operation may stop temporarily and not operate normally.

CAUTION

- **Do not apply license plate frame or foreign objects such as a bumper sticker or a bumper guard near the radar sensor. Doing so may adversely affect the sensing performance of the radar.**
- **Always keep the radar sensor and lens cover clean and free of dirt and debris.**
- **Use only a soft cloth to wash the vehicle. Do not spray pressurized water directly on the sensor or sensor cover.**
- **Be careful not to apply unnecessary force on the radar sensor or sensor cover. If the sensor is forcibly moved out of proper alignment, the Smart Recuperation System may not operate correctly. In this case, a warning message may not be displayed. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **If the front bumper becomes damaged in the area around the radar sensor, the Smart Recuperation System may not operate properly. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Use only genuine Genesis parts or the equivalent specified for your vehicle to repair or replace a damaged sensor or sensor cover. Do not apply paint to the sensor cover.**

System malfunction

OOSEV040521L

Check Smart Regeneration System

The message will appear when the system is not functioning normally. The system will be cancelled and the word 'AUTO' on the instrument cluster will disappear and instead display regenerative braking level. Check for foreign substances on the front radar. Remove any dirt, snow, or foreign material that could interfere with the radar sensors. If the system still does not operate normally, we recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products and have the system checked.

Limitations of the system

The Smart Recuperation System may not operate properly in certain situations when the driving condition is beyond the performance of the front radar sensor.

Driver's attention is required in such cases when the system does not react properly or operate unintentionally.

Driving on a curved road

OJWEV061022

When coasting on the curve, the system may not detect the vehicle in your lane and the regenerative braking level will reduce automatically, making you feel that the vehicle is accelerating.

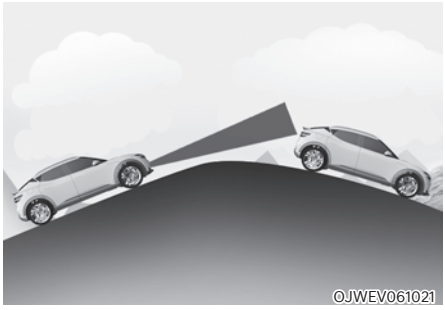
Also, if the system suddenly recognizes the vehicle in front, the regenerative braking level will increase automatically, making you feel that the vehicle is decelerating.

The driver must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane.

Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of the Smart Recuperation System.

Driving on an inclined road

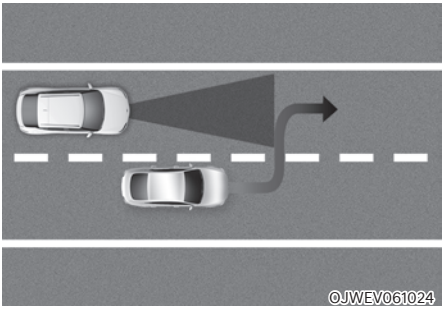


When coasting on an uphill or downhill, the system may not detect the vehicle in your lane and the regenerative braking level will reduce automatically, making you feel that the vehicle is accelerating.

Also, if the system suddenly recognizes the vehicle in front, the regenerative braking level will increase automatically, making you feel that the vehicle is decelerating.

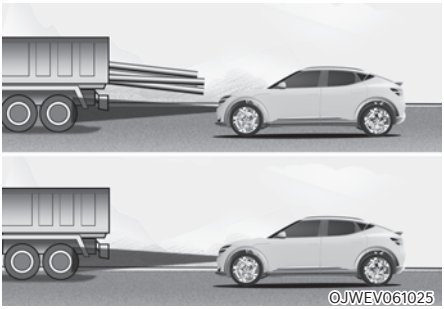
The driver must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

Lane changing



- A vehicle which moves into your lane from an adjacent lane cannot be recognized by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range.
- The radar may not detect immediately when a vehicle cuts in suddenly. Always pay attention to the traffic, road and driving conditions.

Vehicle recognition



Some vehicles in your lane cannot be recognized by the sensor:

- Narrow vehicles such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden-decelerating vehicles
- Stopped vehicles (When the vehicle ahead drives away, the system may not detect a stopped vehicle.)
- Vehicles with small rear profile such as trailers with no loads

A vehicle ahead cannot be recognized correctly by the sensor if any of following occurs:

- When the vehicle is pointing upwards due to overloading in the luggage compartment.
- While the steering wheel is operating.
- When driving to one side of the lane.
- When driving on narrow lanes or on curves.
- Apply the brake or accelerator pedal if necessary.

WARNING

When using the Smart Recuperation System take the following precautions:

- **If an emergency stop is necessary, you must apply the brakes.**
- **Keep a safe distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed. If the vehicle to vehicle distance is too close during a high-speed driving, a serious collision may result.**
- **Always maintain sufficient braking distance and decelerate your vehicle by applying the brakes if necessary.**
- **The Smart Recuperation System cannot recognize a stopped vehicle, pedestrians or an oncoming vehicle. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **Vehicles moving in front of you with a frequent lane changes may cause a delay in the system's reaction or may cause the system to react to a vehicle actually in an adjacent lane. Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **The Smart Recuperation System may not recognize complex driving situations so always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.**

NOTICE

The Smart Recuperation System may not operate temporarily due to:

- **Electrical interference**
- **Modifying the suspension**
- **Differences of tire abrasion or tire pressure**
- **Installing different type of tires**

BRAKING SYSTEM

Power-assist brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

If the vehicle is not running or is turned off while driving, the power assist for the brakes may not work. You can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than typical. The stopping distance, however, will be longer than with power brakes.

WARNING

Take the following precautions:

- **Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances. So increase the regeneration braking level with the left paddle shift lever to decrease the speed.**
- **When descending down a long or steep hill, use the paddle shifter to increase the regeneration braking level in order to decrease your speed without using the brake pedal excessively. Applying the brakes continuously will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.**
- **Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely decelerate. Because wet brakes increase braking distance and cause noise troubles, select 0 step of the regenerative braking system and depress the brake pedal around 10 times, with keeping the safe distance from other vehicles, lightly in order to dry the braking system. Such procedure may decrease the driving distance by restraining the regenerative braking system, which is not a system malfunction. Inspect the braking system after car wash or driving over wet road conditions.**

NOTICE

- **Do not continue depressing the brake pedal if the (READY) indicator is OFF. The battery may be discharged.**
- **Noise and vibration generated during braking is normal.**
- **Under normal operation, electric brake pump noise and motor vibration may occur temporarily in below cases.**
  - **When the pedal is depressed suddenly.**
  - **When the pedal is repeatedly depressed in short intervals.**
  - **When the ABS function is activated while braking.**

Disc brakes wear indicator

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high pitched warning sound from your front or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

Note that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

NOTICE

To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.

Information

Always replace brake pads as complete front or rear axle sets.

WARNING

Frequent braking may deform components and worn the disc brake causing vibration when braking. Observe the speed limit to prevent brake damage from excessive braking.

Brake wear, noise, vibration from excessive braking or deformation of the brakes caused by repeatedly braking in high speed, racing on tracks, etc., can be excluded from warranty coverage.

High performance brake

For vehicles equipped with the High Performance Brake (large diameter monoblock brakes with enhanced braking performance), noise such as a squeal, squeak or groan is generated while braking. This is normal and the friction may create circle patterns on the disc surface. This is also a normal condition which does not affect braking performance.

WARNING

Frequent braking may deform components and worn the disc brake causing vibration when braking. Observe the speed limit to prevent brake damage from excessive braking.

Brake wear, noise, vibration from excessive braking or deformation of the brakes caused by repeatedly braking in high speed, racing on tracks, etc., can be excluded from warranty coverage.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Applying the parking brake

To apply EPB (Electronic Parking Brake):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull up the EPB switch.

Make sure the Parking Brake warning light comes on.

EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) may be automatically applied when:

- Requested by other systems
- The driver turns the vehicle off while Auto Hold is operating.

Emergency braking

If there is a problem with the brake pedal while driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only while you are holding the EPB switch. However, braking distance will be longer than normal.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH, do not operate the EPB while the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the brake system and lead to an accident.

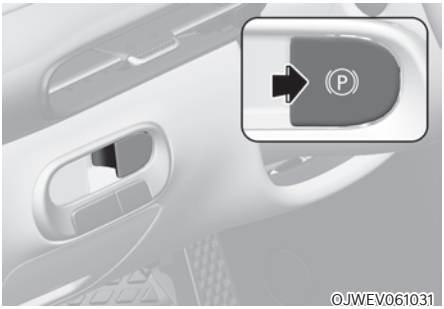
Information

During emergency braking, the Parking Brake warning light will illuminate to indicate that the system is operating.

NOTICE

If you continuously notice a noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Releasing the parking brake



To release EPB (Electronic Parking Brake):

1. Press the Start/Stop button to the ON or START position.
2. Press the EPB switch while depressing the brake pedal.

Make sure the Parking Brake warning light goes off.

To release EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) automatically:

- Gear in P (Park)

  With the vehicle running depress the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Gear in N (Neutral)

  With the vehicle running depress the brake pedal and shift out of N (Neutral) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Satisfy the following conditions

1. Ensure seat belts are fastened and the doors, hood and tailgate are closed.
2. With the vehicle running, depress the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Reverse), D (Drive) or Manual shift mode.
3. Depress the accelerator pedal.

   Make sure the Parking Brake warning light goes off.

i Information

- **For the Middle East, EPB is released regardless of seat belt fastening.**
- **For your safety, you can engage EPB even though the Vehicle Stop/Start button is in the OFF position (only if battery power is available), but you cannot release it.**
- **For your safety, depress the brake pedal and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch when you drive downhill or when backing up the vehicle.**

NOTICE

- **If the Parking Brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Do not drive your vehicle with EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.**

Warning messages

OJWEV061006L

To release EPB, fasten seatbelt and close door, hood and tailgate

- If you try to drive with EPB applied, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the hood or tailgate is opened, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If there is a problem with the vehicle, a warning may sound and a message may appear.

If the situation occurs, depress the brake pedal and release EPB by pressing the EPB switch.

WARNING

- **Whenever leaving the vehicle or parking, always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal.**

  Shift the gear into P (Park), pull the EPB switch, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Take the Key with you when leaving the vehicle.

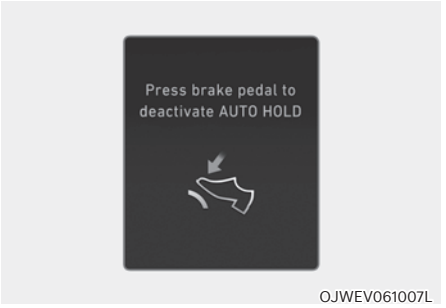
  Vehicles not fully engaged in P (Park) with the parking brake set are at risk for moving inadvertently and causing injury to yourself or others.
- **NEVER allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the EPB switch. If EPB is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **Only release EPB when you are seated inside the vehicle with your foot firmly on the brake pedal.**

NOTICE

- **Do not apply the accelerator pedal while the parking brake is engaged. If you depress the accelerator pedal with EPB engaged, a warning will sound and a message will appear. Damage to the parking brake may occur.**
- **Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the braking system and cause premature wear or damage to brake parts. Make sure EPB is released and the Parking Brake warning light is off before driving.**

Information

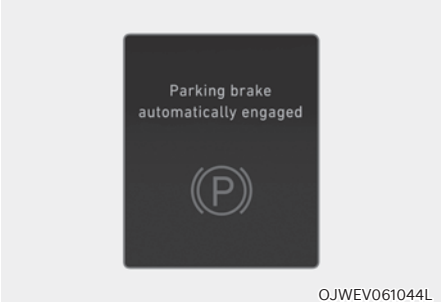
- **A clicking sound may be heard while operating or releasing the EPB. These conditions are normal and indicate that EPB is functioning properly.**
- **When leaving your keys with a parking attendant or assistant, make sure to inform him/her how to operate EPB.**



OJWEV061007L

AUTO HOLD turning Off! Press brake pedal

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.



OJWEV061044L

Parking brake automatically engaged

When EPB is applied while Auto Hold is activated, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

EPB malfunction

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light illuminates if the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the EPB warning light remains on, comes on while driving, or does not come on when the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, this indicates that the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The EPB warning light may illuminate when the ESC indicator comes on to indicate that ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of EPB.

NOTICE

- **If the EPB warning light is still on, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **If the Parking Brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks even though the EPB switch was pulled up, EPB may not be applied.**
- **If the Parking Brake warning light blinks when the EPB warning light is on, press the switch, and then pull it up. Repeat this one more time. If the EPB warning does not go off, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

Parking brake warning light

Check the Parking Brake warning light by pressing the Vehicle Stop/Start button to the ON position.

This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the Vehicle Stop/Start button in the START or ON position.

Before driving, be sure the parking brake is released and the Parking Brake warning light is OFF.

If the Parking Brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released while the motor is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution while operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location.

When the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) does not release

If the EPB does not release normally, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products by loading the vehicle on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked.

Auto Hold

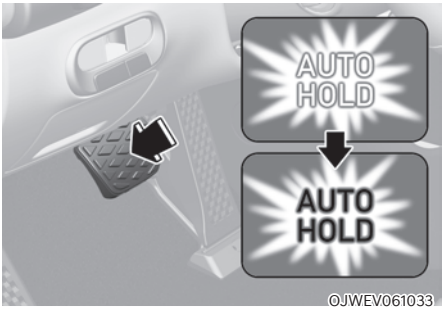
Auto Hold maintains the vehicle in a standstill even though the brake pedal is not depressed after the driver brings the vehicle to a complete stop by depressing the brake pedal.

Information

The Auto Hold On or Off setting is maintained when the vehicle is turned off. When the vehicle is restarted the last setting for Auto Hold is applied.

To apply:

1. With the driver's door and hood closed, depress the brake pedal and then press the AUTO HOLD switch. The white AUTO HOLD indicator will come on and the system will be in the standby position.



2. When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal, Auto Hold maintains the brake pressure to hold the vehicle stationary. The indicator changes from white to green.
3. The vehicle will remain stationary even if you release the brake pedal.
4. If EPB is applied, Auto Hold will be released.

To release:

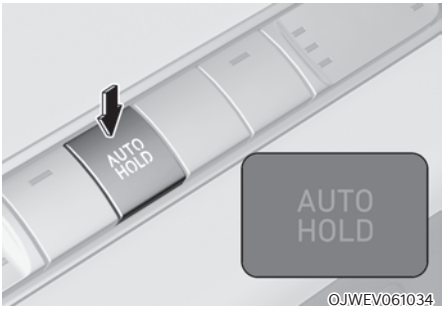
- If you depress the accelerator pedal with the gear in D (Drive), R (Reverse) or Manual shift mode, the Auto Hold will be released automatically and the vehicle will start to move. The AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white.

WARNING

When Auto Hold is automatically released by depressing the accelerator pedal, always take a look around your vehicle.

Slowly depress the accelerator pedal for a smooth start.

To cancel:



1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Press the AUTO HOLD switch.

The AUTO HOLD indicator will turn off.

WARNING

To prevent, unexpected and sudden vehicle movement, ALWAYS press your foot on the brake pedal to cancel the Auto Hold before you:

- **Drive downhill.**
- **Drive the vehicle in R (Reverse).**
- **Park the vehicle.**

Information

- **The Auto Hold does not operate when:**
  - **The gear is in P (Park)**
  - **EPB is applied**
- **For your safety, the Auto Hold automatically switches to EPB when:**
  - **The driver's door is opened**
  - **The tailgate is opened**
  - **The hood is opened**
  - **The vehicle is in a standstill for more than 10 minutes**
  - **The vehicle is standing on a steep slope**
  - **The vehicle moved several times**

  In these cases, the Parking Brake warning light comes on, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white, and a warning sound and a message will appear to inform you that EPB has been automatically engaged. Before driving off again, depress the brake pedal, check the surrounding area near your vehicle and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch.
- **While operating Auto Hold, you may hear mechanical noise. However, it is normal operating noise.**
- **If the vehicle is restarted with the Auto Hold system is in the standby position or operating, the Auto hold system will continue to operate in the standby position.**

NOTICE

If the AUTO HOLD indicator changes to yellow, Auto Hold is not working properly. We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

- **Depress the accelerator pedal slowly when you start the vehicle.**
- **For your safety, cancel Auto Hold when you drive downhill, back up the vehicle or park the vehicle.**

NOTICE

If there is a malfunction with the driver's door or hood open detection system, Auto Hold may not work properly.

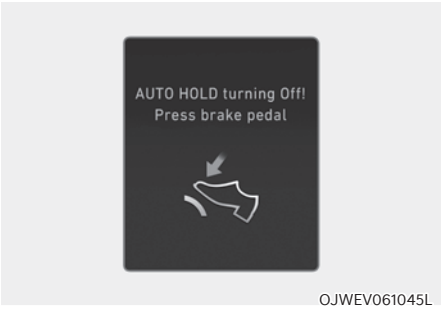
We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Warning messages

OIK060069L

Parking brake automatically engaged

When EPB is applied while Auto Hold is activated, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

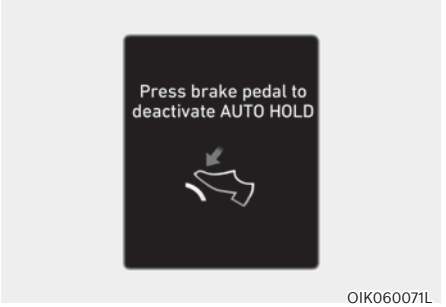


OJWEV061045L

AUTO HOLD turning Off! Press brake pedal

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.

When this message is displayed, Auto Hold and EPB may not operate. For your safety, depress the brake pedal.



OIK060071L

Press brake pedal to deactivate AUTO HOLD

If you did not apply the brake pedal when you release Auto Hold by pressing the AUTO HOLD switch, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

WARNING

Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving maneuvers. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead of you. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions. The braking distance for vehicles equipped with ABS or ESC may be longer than for those without these systems in the following road conditions.

Drive your vehicle at reduced speeds during the following conditions:

- **Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**
- **On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.**
- **Tire chains are installed on your vehicle.**

The safety features of ABS or ESC equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.

ABS is an electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid. ABS allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time.

Using ABS

To obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle.

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.

ABS will not prevent a skid that results from sudden changes in direction, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.

ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability. Always steer moderately when braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

The ABS ((ABS)) warning light will stay on for several seconds after the Start/Stop button is in the ON position. During that time, ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

WARNING

If the ABS ((ABS)) warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. Your power brakes will work normally. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, we recommend that you contact your authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

NOTICE

When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and apply your brakes continuously, ABS will be active continuously and the ABS ((ABS)) warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and turn the vehicle off.

Restart the vehicle. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal.

Otherwise, you may have a problem with your ABS system. We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

Information

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the ABS ((ABS)) warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning. Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Electronic Stability Control helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering maneuvers.

ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies braking pressure to any one of the vehicle's brakes and intervenes in the electric vehicle control system to assist the driver with keeping the vehicle on the intended path. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always adjust your speed and driving to the road conditions.

WARNING

Never drive too fast for the road conditions when cornering. ESC will not prevent accidents.

Excessive speed in turns, abrupt maneuvers, and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can result in severe accidents.

ESC operation

ESC ON condition

When the Start/Stop button is in the ON position, ESC and the ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately three seconds. After both lights go off, ESC is enabled.

When operating

When ESC is in operation, the ESC indicator light blinks:

- When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.
- When ESC activates, the vehicle may not respond to the accelerator as it does under routine conditions.
- If Smart Cruise Control (SCC) was in use when ESC activates, Smart Cruise Control (SCC) automatically disengages. Smart Cruise Control (SCC) can be reengaged when the road conditions allow. **See “Smart Cruise Control (SCC)” section in chapter 7 (if equipped).**

ESC OFF condition

To cancel ESC operation:

- State 1

Press the ESC OFF button briefly. The ESC OFF indicator light and/or message 'Traction Control disabled' will illuminate. In this state, the traction control function of ESC (electric vehicle control management) is disabled, but the brake control function of ESC (braking management) still operates.

- State 2

Press and hold the ESC OFF button continuously for more than 3 seconds. The ESC OFF indicator light and/or message 'Traction & Stability Control disabled' illuminates. In this state, both the traction control function of ESC (electric vehicle control management) and the brake control function of ESC (braking management) are disabled.

If the Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the vehicle, ESC will automatically turn on again.

When ESC (electric vehicle control) is deactivated, the vehicle will loose the traction and stability if the vehicle is driven by abrupt steering wheel control. It is possible that the tire may make a collision with the connected parts of the tire. We recommend to do not turn off ESC while driving the vehicle for your safety.

Indicator lights

■ ESC indicator light (blinks)

■ ESC OFF indicator light (comes on)

When the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, the ESC indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating.

If the ESC indicator light stays on, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the ESC system. When this warning light illuminates we recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

The ESC OFF indicator light comes on when ESC is turned off.

WARNING

When ESC is blinking, this indicates ESC is active:

Drive slowly and NEVER attempt to accelerate. NEVER turn ESC off while the ESC indicator light is blinking or you may lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

Driving with wheels and tires with different sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. Before replacing tires, make sure all four tires and wheels are the same size. Never drive the vehicle with different sized wheels and tires installed.

ESC OFF usage

When Driving

The ESC OFF mode should only be used briefly to help free the vehicle if stuck in snow or mud, by temporarily stopping operation of ESC, to maintain wheel torque.

To turn ESC off while driving, press the ESC OFF button while driving on a flat road surface.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the reduction gear:

- **Do not allow wheel(s) of one axle to spin excessively while the ESC, ABS, and Parking Brake warning lights are displayed. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Reduce motor power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively while these lights are displayed.**
- **When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, make sure ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated).**

Information

- **Turning ESC off does not affect ABS or standard brake system operation.**
- **Select 0 step of the regenerative braking system and depress the brake pedal around 10 times to efficiently apply brake disc cleaning.**

  Brake disc cleaning may decrease the driving distance by restraining the regenerative braking system. After brake disc cleaning, the regenerative braking system may be restored.

  If the regenerative braking system is not restored after the brake disc cleaning, we recommend to inspect the vehicle by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Vehicle Stability Management (VSM)

Vehicle Stability Management is a function of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. It helps the vehicle stay stable when accelerating or braking suddenly on wet, slippery and rough roads where traction over the four tires can suddenly become uneven.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Vehicle Stability Management:

- **ALWAYS check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. VSM is not a substitute for safe driving practices.**
- **Never drive too fast for the road conditions. VSM will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in bad weather, on slippery and uneven roads can result in severe accidents.**

VSM operation

When operating

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may activate ESC, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your VSM is active.

Information

VSM does not operate when:

- **Driving on a banked road such as gradient or incline.**
- **Driving in reverse.**
- **The ESC OFF indicator light is on.**
- **The EPS (Electric power steering) warning light ( ) is on or blinks.**

VSM OFF condition

To cancel VSM operation, press the ESC OFF button. ESC OFF (OFF) indicator light will illuminate.

To turn on VSM, press the ESC OFF button again. The ESC OFF indicator light will go out.

WARNING

If the ESC ( ) indicator light or EPS ( ) warning light stays illuminated or blinks, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the VSM system. When the warning light illuminates we recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Driving with wheels and tires with different sizes may cause the VSM system to malfunction. Before replacing tires, make sure all four tires and wheels are the same size. Never drive the vehicle with different sized tires and wheels installed.

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

Trailer stability assist is operated as a vehicle stability control system. The Trailer stability assist system stabilizes the vehicle and trailer when the trailer sways or oscillates. In most cases, trailer sway happens at high speeds.

Factors that can cause trailer sway include:

- High speed
- Strong crosswinds
- Improper overloading
- Sudden steering inputs
- Uneven road

When the Trailer stability assist system detects sway, the front brakes are applied automatically. If it is not enough braking, the brakes are applied on all wheels automatically and vehicle power is reduced.

Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC)

Hill-Start Assist Control helps prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting a vehicle from a stop on a hill. The system operates the brakes automatically for approximately 2 seconds (maximum of 5 seconds when the accelerator pedal is slightly depressed during HAC operation) and releases the brake after 2 seconds or when the accelerator pedal is depressed.

WARNING

Always be ready to depress the accelerator pedal when starting off an incline. Hill-Start Assist Control activates only for approximately 2 seconds (maximum of 5 seconds when the accelerator pedal is slightly depressed during HAC operation).

Information

- **Hill-Start Assist Control does not operate when the gear is shifted to P (Park) or N (Neutral).**
- **Hill-Start Assist Control activates even when the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is off. However, it does not activate, when ESC does not operate normally.**

Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)

Emergency Stop Signal alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop lights, while sharply and severely braking.

The system is activated when:

- The vehicle suddenly stops. (The deceleration power exceeds 7 m/s^2, and the driving speed exceeds 55 km/h (34 mph).)
- ABS is activated and the driving speed exceeds 55 km/h (34 mph).

The hazard warning flasher automatically turns ON after blinking the stop lights:

- When driving speed is under 40 km/h (25 mph),
- When ABS is deactivated, and
- When the sudden braking situation is over.

The hazard warning flasher turns OFF:

- When the vehicle drives at a low speed for a certain period of time.

  The driver can manually turn OFF the hazard warning flasher by pressing the button.

Information

Emergency Stop Signal will not activate, when the hazard warning flashers are already on.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)

Multi-Collision Brake controls the brake automatically in the event of an accident where the air bag deploys to reduce the risk of additional accidents that may occur.

System operation

- From the time the air bag deploys. Multi-Collision Brake monitors the depression intensity of the brake pedal and accelerator pedal for a short period. The system operates when the following conditions are met:
  - Vehicle speed is under 180 km/h (112 mph) at the time of collision.
  - The brake pedal and accelerator pedal is hardly depressed.
- When the driver steps on the brake pedal over a certain level while Multi-Collision Brake is active, the braking power takes priority over automatic braking by Multi-Collision Brake system. However, if the driver takes his/her foot off the brake pedal, automatic braking by Multi-Collision Brake system will maintain automatic braking.

System off

Multi-Collision Brake is canceled in the following situations:

- The accelerator pedal is depressed over a certain level.
- The vehicle stops.
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or electronic devices has malfunctioned.
- In a situation system cannot operate normally.
- Ten seconds have passed since the brake has been controlled automatically by Multi-Collision Brake system.

WARNING

- **Multi-Collision Brake decreases vehicle speed after a collision, but it does not prevent a second collision. You may drive away from the collision spot to avoid other dangerous situations by depressing the accelerator pedal.**
- **After the vehicle is stopped by Multi-Collision Brake, the system stops controlling the brakes. Depending on the situation, the driver should depress the brake or the accelerator pedal to prevent further accidents.**

Good braking practices

WARNING

Whenever leaving the vehicle or parking, always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal. Shift the gear to the P (Park) position, then apply the parking brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

Vehicles parked with the parking brake not applied or not fully engaged may roll inadvertently and may cause injury to the driver and others. ALWAYS apply the parking brake before exiting the vehicle.

Be aware of wet brakes. The brakes may get wet if the vehicle is driven through standing water or if it is washed. Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and we recommend that you call an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for assistance.

DO NOT drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but constant pedal pressure can result in the brakes overheating, brake wear, and possibly even brake failure.

If a tire goes flat while you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead while you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe location.

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped to prevent the vehicle from rolling forward.

ALL WHEEL DRIVE (AWD) (IF EQUIPPED)

When All Wheel Drive (AWD) is activated, driving forces are distributed appropriately to front and rear wheels. It could improve driving performance by maximizing the driving force of vehicles on severe road conditions such as steep hills, unpaved, slippery, etc.

Advantage of electronic AWD

1. Improvement of straight stability
2. Improvement of driving performance on curve
3. Secure stability on severe condition such as wet and sandy roads.
4. Improvement of energy efficiency from driving mode automatic control.

Information

AWD vehicles could change the engagement status of the motor according to the situation required. Auto changing the driving mode(2WD/4WD)helps improve energy efficiency and driving stability.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:

- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of a rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**

NOTICE

- **Do not drive in water if the level is higher than the bottom of the vehicle.**
- **Check your brake condition once you are out of mud or water. Depress the brake pedal several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking return.**
- **Shorten your scheduled maintenance interval if you drive in off-road conditions such as sand, mud or water (see "Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions" section in chapter 9).**
- **Always wash your vehicle thoroughly after off road use, especially the bottom of the vehicle.**
- **Be sure to equip the vehicle with four tires of the same size and type.**
- **Make sure that a full time AWD vehicle is towed by a flat bed tow truck.**

For safe AWD operation

Before driving

- Make sure all passengers are wearing seat belts.
- Sit upright and closer to the steering wheel than usual. Adjust the steering wheel to a position comfortable for you to drive.

Driving on snow-covered or icy roads

- Start off slowly by applying the accelerator pedal gently.
- Use snow tires or tire chains.
- Keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent skids.
- It is difficult to start again if the vehicle stops on an uphill road. Keep your distance from other vehicles and drive slowly.

Information

- **When using Snow Tires, mount them on all four wheels.**
- **When using tire chains, install them on the rear tires. However, driving speed must be below 30 km/h and minimize the driving distance. High-speed or long-term driving with tire chains installed may malfunction or damage the AWD system.**

For more details on Snow Tires and Tire Chains, refer to "Winter Driving" section later in this chapter.

Driving in sand or mud

- Maintain slow and constant speed.
- Use tire chains driving in mud if necessary.
- Keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- Reduce vehicle speed and always check the road condition.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent getting stuck.

NOTICE

When the vehicle is stuck in snow, sand or mud, place a nonslip material under the drive wheels to provide traction OR slowly spin the wheels in forward and reverse directions which causes a rocking motion that may free the vehicle.

Driving up or down hills

- Driving uphill
  - Before starting off, check if it is possible to drive uphill.
  - Drive as straight as possible.
- Driving downhill
  - Do not change gear while driving downhill. Select gear before driving downhill.
  - Drive straight as possible.

WARNING

Exercise extreme caution driving up or down steep hills. The vehicle may flip over depending on the grade, terrain, water and mud conditions.

WARNING

Do not drive across the contour of steep hills. A slight change in the wheel angle can destabilize the vehicle, or a stable vehicle may lose stability if the vehicle stops its forward motion. Your vehicle may roll over and lead to a serious injury or death.

Driving through water

- Try to avoid driving in deep standing water.
- If you need to drive in water, stop your vehicle, set the vehicle in Multi Terrain mode and drive under 8 km/h (5 mph).
- Do not change gear while driving in water.

CAUTION

Always drive slowly in water. If you drive too fast, water may get into the motor compartment, causing your vehicle to suddenly stop.

Additional driving conditions

- Become familiar with the off-road conditions before driving.
- Always pay attention when driving off-road and avoid dangerous areas.
- Drive slowly when driving in heavy wind.
- Reduce vehicle speed when cornering. The center of gravity of AWD vehicles is higher than conventional 2WD vehicles, making them more likely to roll over when you rapidly turn corners.
- Always hold the steering wheel firmly when you are driving off-road.

WARNING

Do not grab the inside of the steering wheel when you are driving off-road. You may hurt your arm by a sudden steering maneuver or from steering wheel rebound due to an impact with objects on the ground. You could lose control of the steering wheel which may lead to serious injury or death.

Emergency precautions

Tires

When replacing tires, be sure to equip all four tires with the same size, type, tread patterns, brand and load-carrying capacity.

WARNING

Do not use tire and wheel with different size and type from the one originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to steering failure or rollover causing serious injury.

WARNING

Never start or run the vehicle while an AWD vehicle is raised on a jack. The vehicle can slip or roll off of a jack causing serious injury or death to you or those nearby.

Towing

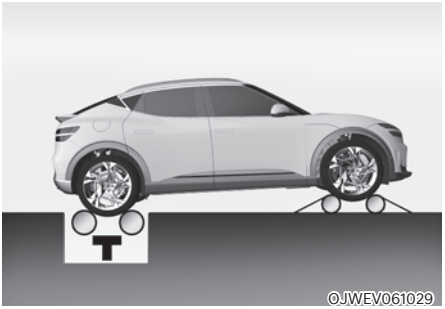
AWD vehicles must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground. **For more details, refer to "Towing" section in chapter 8.**

Vehicle inspection

- If the vehicle needs to be operated on a vehicle lift do not attempt to stop any of the four wheels from turning. This could damage the AWD system.
- Never engage the parking brake while running the vehicle on a car lift. This may damage the AWD system.

Dynamometer testing

An AWD vehicle must be tested on a special four wheel chassis dynamometer.



[A]: Roll tester (Speedometer),
[B]: Temporary free roller

An AWD vehicle should not be tested on a 2WD roll tester. If a 2WD roll tester must be used, perform the following procedure:

1. Check the tire pressures recommended for your vehicle.
2. Place the rear wheels on the roll tester for a speedometer test as shown in the illustration.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Place the front wheels on the temporary free roller as shown in the illustration.

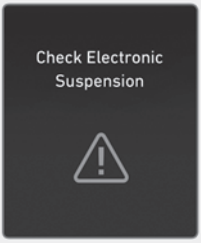
WARNING

Keep away from the front of the vehicle while the vehicle is in gear on the dynamometer. The vehicle can jump forward and cause serious injury or death.

ELECTRONIC CONTROL SUSPENSION (IF EQUIPPED)

Electronic Control Suspension controls the vehicle suspension automatically using vehicle sensors to maximize driving comfort by taking into account the driving conditions such as speed, surface of the road, cornering, braking and acceleration.

System malfunction



OJWEV061048L

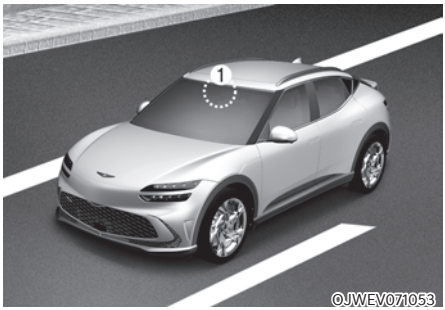
Check Electronic Suspension

When Electronic Control Suspension is not working properly, this warning message will appear on the cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

ELECTRONICALLY CONTROLLED SUSPENSION WITH ROAD PREVIEW (IF EQUIPPED)

Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview controls the vehicle suspension automatically using the front view camera and vehicle sensors to maximize driving comfort by taking into account the driving conditions such as speed, surface of the road, cornering, braking and acceleration.

Front view camera



[1]: Front view camera

The front view camera is a sensor that detects the front road. If the windshield or the front view camera is covered with snow, rain or foreign matters, the data collected by the camera is limited due to the degradation of the camera's performance. Always keep the front view camera clean.

NOTICE

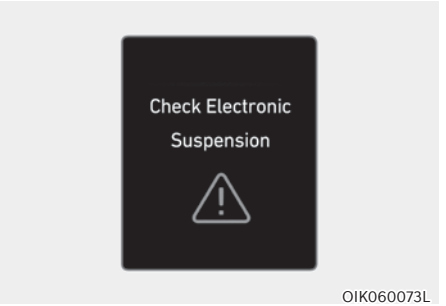
- **NEVER install any accessories or stickers on the front windshield, or tint the front windshield.**
- **NEVER place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) over the dashboard. Any light reflection may prevent the system from functioning properly.**
- **Pay extreme caution to keep the camera dry.**
- **Never disassemble the camera assembly, or apply any impact on the camera assembly.**

Information

We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products when:

- **The windshield glass is replaced.**
- **The front view camera or cover gets damaged or replaced.**

System malfunction



OIK060073L

Check Electronic Suspension

When Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview is not working properly, this warning message will appear on the cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

NOTICE

If the battery level is high or low, Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview may not work temporarily to protect the system. If this occurs, 'Check Electronic Suspension' warning message will appear.

Limitations of the system

Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview always operates while driving according to the vehicle's movement, and the preview function starts to work when the front view camera detects road conditions such as speed bumps. Therefore, the preview function is limited when there is an extreme condition that the front view camera may not work normally. In this case, the electronic control suspension function operates without the preview function in accordance with vehicle movement.

ELECTRONIC LIMITED SLIP DIFFERENTIAL (IF EQUIPPED)

Electronic Limited Slip Differential controls the differential functions of the wheels to help:

- Improve steering performance when circling at high speed.
- Improve launching performance.
- Prevent slipping on rainy or snowy roads due to dissimilar friction of the left and right wheels.

WARNING

Never run the wheels with one of wheels lifted on a jack. It is extremely dangerous for a vehicle equipped with Electronic Limited Slip Differential.

Drive mode selection

The characteristic of Electronic Limited Slip Differential varies according to which drive mode is selected by using the DRIVE MODE or DRIVE/TERRAIN switch.

Selected mode	Characteristic of e-LSD
ECO	NORMAL
COMFORT	NORMAL
SPORT	SPORT
SNOW	SNOW
MY DRIVE	NORMAL/SPORT

For more details, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System“ section in this chapter.

Warning messages

Electronic Limited Slip Differential temporarily disabled due to overheating

Overheating of related parts will temporarily disable Electronic Limited Slip Differential. Wait until the vehicle cools down.

Limited-slip differential disabled. Tire diameter mismatch / Tyre size mismatch. Limited-slip differential disabled. Check tyre sizes

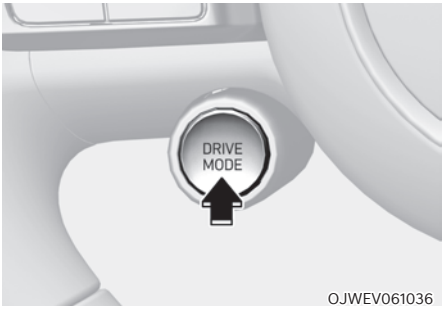
If your vehicle is equipped with different tires (size, type, etc.), the message will appear. To use Electronic Limited Slip Differential, equip the vehicle with the same tires.

Check Limited Slip Differential

When Electronic Limited Slip Differential is not working properly, this warning message will appear on the cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

DRIVE MODE INTEGRATED CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Drive mode



Drive mode may be selected according to the driver's preference or road condition.

The mode changes whenever the driver pushes the DRIVE mode button.

COMFORT mode

COMFORT mode is a driving with auto changing the driving mode (2WD/AWD) on road condition.

ECO mode

ECO mode is a driving mode that helps improve energy efficiency by limiting maximum vehicle power (torque), providing smooth vehicle response and driving the vehicle with the rear wheels (2WD).

Energy efficiency varies according to the driver's driving habit and road condition.

- When ECO mode is selected, the ECO indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster and theme of the instrument cluster will change.

When ECO mode is activated:

- All wheel drive and sharp acceleration and deceleration is limited
- The vehicle will automatically convert between 2WD to AWD when:
  - i-Pedal or One Pedal Driving is operating
  - The temperature is low
  - Driving on a slope or a slippery road

SPORT mode

SPORT mode is a driving mode that provides sporty but firm riding by making the motor response more quickly, making the steering wheel heavier and driving the vehicle with all four wheels (AWD).

In SPORT mode, the energy efficiency may decrease.

- When SPORT mode is selected, the SPORT indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster and theme of the instrument cluster will change.
- Whenever the vehicle is restarted, the drive mode will revert back to COMFORT mode. If SPORT mode is required, re-select SPORT mode.

SNOW mode

SNOW mode is a driving mode improving driving performance by changing the engagement status of the motor according to the situation required. Auto changing the driving mode(2WD/AWD) helps improve driving stability.

- Press and hold the drive mode button to select SNOW mode.
- When SNOW mode is selected, the SNOW indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster and the color of the mood lamp will change.
- When SNOW mode is activated, the driving power is distributed to four wheels automatically, increasing the stability of the vehicle.

NOTICE

- **Depress the accelerator pedal softly on the snow and the ice.**
- **Keep the distance from the vehicle in the front.**
- **Prevent rapid acceleration, deceleration and steering control. Abrupt driving on the snow may cause the accident.**

Drive modes characteristic

The characteristic of each components varies according to which drive mode is selected.

Drive mode	SNOW	COMFORT	ECO	SPORT	MY DRIVE MODE
Characteristics	Snow driving	COMFORT driving mode	High electric energy efficiency mode	Sporty driving mode	Selected
Button activation	Press more than1 sec.	Press	Press	Press	Press more than 1 sec.
Indicator on the cluster	SNOW	-	ECO	SPORT	MY
Climate system control	COMFORT	COMFORT	ECO (ECO/ COMFORT) *1	COMFORT	COMFORT
Speed Limit	-	-	-	-	-
Regenerative braking level	0~1	0~3			
BRAKE MODE	COMFORT	COMFORT/ SPORT *1	COMFORT	COMFORT/ SPORT *1	COMFORT/ SPORT *1

*1 : It is possible to set the driving condition for each drive mode, at the drive mode setting in Infotainment system, for detailed information, scan the QR code in a separately supplied simple manual.

✳ You can reset CUSTOM mode from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Drive Mode → CUSTOM

✳ You can select separate modes for Motor, Steering, Suspension (if equipped) when MY DRIVE MODE is set.

VIRTUAL GEAR SHIFT (VGS) (IF EQUIPPED)

OJWEV062073L

The VGS function artificially adjusts the speedometer, and then displays the gear position and RPM on the instrument cluster to let you experience the sense of acceleration as in the internal combustion engine.

In addition to the active sound design, it controls the motor to artificially create shift feeling.

VGS (Virtual gear shift) settings

- The VGS function must be turned ON from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

  - Setup → Vehicle → Drive Mode → VGS

  Pull the + or - paddle shifter once to shift up or down by one gear. The system changes from automatic shift mode to manual shift mode.

  To release the manual shift mode, press and hold the right paddle shifter for more 2 seconds.

Information

- **To maximize the driving experience similar to that of internal combustion engine, the Active Sound Design is fixed to the G-engine while the VGS is active.**
- **When VGS is ON, the left paddle shifter becomes [-] gear and the right paddle shifter [+] gear.**
- **The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.**

VGS (Virtual gear shift) operation

The VGS function turns on under the following conditions:

- The drive mode is either at COMFORT or SPORT
- Smart Cruise Control is not operating
- Drift mode is not operating
- Remote Smart Parking Assist is not operating
- Electric vehicle control system is activated
- The speed limit is not activated

VGS (Virtual gear shift) disabled

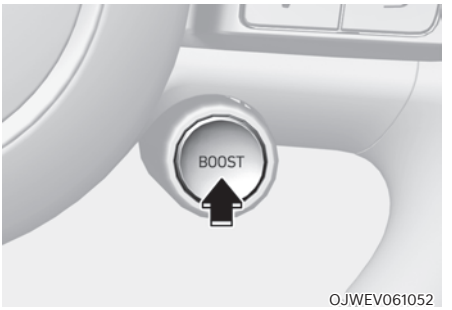
The VGS function is automatically released under the following conditions:

- The drive mode is changed to ECO
- Drift mode is activated
- Boost mode is activated
- Smart Cruise Control is activated
- Remote Smart Parking Assist is activated
- Any problem occurs on the control system
- The speed limit is activated

Information

- **ECO mode does not support the VGS function.**
- **A temporary communication error may disable the VGS function. If the VGS cannot be disabled, refer to the disabled condition.**
- **Press the custom buttons (★) to turn on or off VGS.**
- **VGS is temporarily disabled when drive mode is changed to ECO or boost mode is activated during VGS operation. VGS is activated again when the drive mode is changed.**
- **VGS may be partially limited when the vehicle is in specific conditions, such as fully charged high voltage battery or low SOC and driver safety functions like TCS or ESC are activated.**

BOOST MODE (IF EQUIPPED)



OJWEV061052

Controls motor to maximum performance when pressing BOOST button on the steering wheel remote control in situations where rapid acceleration is required.

Functional description and operating conditions

When BOOST button is pressed:

- When the vehicle accelerates, the motor overboost is activated.
- Boost mode is available for 10 Seconds

Boost mode will turn off during operation or will not operated when:

Shift dial is in P/ R/ N

- Boost function is used for 10 seconds
- Motor malfunction
- Battery malfunction
- Low voltage battery

CAUTION

- **The driver should hold the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle when using Boost mode.**
- **Do not attempt dangerous driving while using N Grin Shift.**

DRIFT MODE

DRIFT mode is a driving mode that automatically activates rear wheels (2WD) and brakes or Electronic Limited Slip Differential (e-LSD) to easily achieve drift with a small steering wheel angle and accelerator pedal.

To activate DRIFT mode

Pull and hold the left and right paddle shift levers for more than 3 seconds at the same time to switch to drift mode. When activated DRIFT mode, the message "DRIFT mode activated" and the DRIFT indicator will illuminate on the instrument panel.

To activate the DRIFT mode, satisfy all of the following conditions:

- Gear in P (Park)
- The ESC OFF is in state 2
- The drive mode is SPORT mode
- Depress the brake pedal

DRIFT mode disabled

The DRIFT mode will be cancelled or limited when:

- If the driving mode is changed to a mode other than SPORT during DRIFT mode operation
- The ESC OFF stage 2 is released
- When pull and hold the left and right paddle shift levers for more than 3 seconds at the same times during DRIFT mode operation
- The power down warning ( ) indicator or service warning ( ) indicator is illuminate
- The ESC or e-LSD indicator is illuminate

WARNING

- **The driver should hold the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle when using DRIFT mode.**
- **Use the drift mode in wide and flat road surface without pedestrians, vehicles or obstacles for the safety of vehicles and pedestrians.**
- **Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **If you drive in DRIFT mode continuous, it can cause premature wear or damage to drive shafts and brake parts.**

ACTIVE SOUND DESIGN

- Active sound design provide various virtual driving sounds based on the vehicle speed, accelerator pedal and driving mode in conjunction with the vehicle's performance. You can adjust the timbre selection, volume and change the settings for acceleration pedal response and sound style.
- To change settings or turn off the Active Sound Design in the infotainment system, select:
  - Setup → Vehicle → Active Sound Design or
  - Setup → Sound → Active Sound Design
- Any unauthorized replacement of the vehicle's speaker and amplifier may cause Active Sound Design to malfunction.

ACTIVE NOISE CONTROL-ROAD

Active noise control-road helps reduce noise caused while driving.

The system may not operate properly in the following conditions:

- Any of the window is open
- Any of the door is open
- The tailgate is open
- Vehicle's microphone and speaker is blocked by loads

NOTICE

If high temperature or high pressure steam is sprayed on the microphone, it may malfunction.

SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving elements are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud and sand, take the following precautions:

- Drive cautiously and maintain a longer braking distance.
- Avoid abrupt braking or steering.
- When your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand, use second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid unnecessary wheel spin.
- Put sand, rock salt, tire chains or other non-slip materials under the wheels to provide additional traction while the vehicle becomes stuck in ice, snow, or mud.

WARNING

Changing the tire speed suddenly could cause the tires to skid while driving on slippery surface. Be careful when driving on slippery surfaces.

Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear.

Try to avoid spinning the wheels, and do not race the vehicle.

To prevent reduction gear wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal while the reduction gear is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that may free the vehicle.

WARNING

If the vehicle is stuck and excessive wheel spin occurs, the temperature in the tires can increase very quickly. If the tires become damaged, a tire blow out or tire explosion can occur. This condition is dangerous - you and others may be injured. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle.

If you attempt to free the vehicle, the vehicle can overheat quickly, possibly causing an motor compartment fire or other damage. Try to avoid spinning the wheels as much as possible to prevent overheating of either the tires or the motor. DO NOT allow the vehicle to spin the wheels above 56 km/h (35 mph).

Information

The ESC system must be turned OFF before rocking the vehicle.

NOTICE

If you are still stuck after rocking the vehicle a few times, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid motor overheating, possible damage to the reduction gear, and tire damage. See “Towing” section in chapter 8.

Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration.

Driving at night

Night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight. Here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other drivers’ headlamps.
- Keep your headlamps clean and properly aimed. Dirty or improperly aimed headlamps will make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlamps of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain or on slick pavement:

- Slow down and allow extra following distance. A heavy rainfall makes it harder to see and increases the distance needed to stop your vehicle.
- Turn OFF your Smart Cruise Control (SCC). (if equipped)
- Replace your windshield wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield.
- Be sure your tires have enough tread. If your tires do not have enough tread, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. **See “Tire Tread” section in chapter 9**.
- Turn on your headlamps to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe your brakes may be wet, apply them lightly while driving until normal braking operation returns.

Hydroplaning

If the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough, your vehicle may have little or no contact with the road surface and actually ride on the water. The best advice is SLOW DOWN when the road is wet.

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the depth of tire tread decreases, refer to “Tire Tread” section in chapter 9.

Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be reduced.

After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times while the vehicle is moving slowly.

Highway driving

Tires

Adjust the tire inflation, as specified. Under-inflation may overheat or damage the tires.

Do not install worn-out or damaged tires, which may reduce traction or fail the braking operation.

Information

Never over-inflate your tires above the maximum inflation pressure, as specified on your tires.

Coolant and high voltage battery

Driving at higher speeds on the highway consumes more electric energy and is less efficient than driving at a slower, more moderate speed. Maintain a moderate speed in order to conserve electric energy when driving on the highway.

Be sure to check both the coolant level and the electric energy level before driving.

Reducing the risk of a rollover

Your multi-purpose passenger vehicle is defined as a Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV). SUV's have higher ground clearance and a narrower track to make them capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications. The specific design characteristics give them a higher center of gravity than ordinary vehicles making them more likely to roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. Due to this risk, driver and passengers are strongly recommended to buckle their seat belts. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

There are steps that a driver can make to reduce the risk of a rollover. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, do not load your vehicle with heavy cargo on the roof, and never modify your vehicle in any way.

WARNING

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- **Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.**
- **Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers.**
- **Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the center of gravity.**
- **Keep tires properly inflated.**
- **Do not carry heavy cargo on the roof.**

WARNING

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Make sure all passengers are wearing their seat belts.

WINTER DRIVING

The severe weather conditions of winter quickly wear out tires and cause other problems. To minimize winter driving problems, you should take the following suggestions:

Snow or icy conditions

You need to keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

Apply the brakes gently. Speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause the vehicle to skid.

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to install tire chains on your tires.

Always carry emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tire chains, tow straps or chains, a flashlight, emergency flares, sand, a shovel, jumper cables, a window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, a blanket, etc.

Snow tires

WARNING

Snow tires should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tires. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

We recommend that you use snow tires when road temperature is below 7°C (45°F). Refer to the below chart, and mount the recommended snow tire for your vehicle.

Standard tire		Recommended snow tire	
Tire size	Wheel size	Tire size	Wheel size
235/55 R19	8.0J x 19	235/55 R19	8.0J x 19
255/45 R20	8.5J x 20	255/45 R20	8.5J x 20
255/40 R21	8.5J x 21	255/40 R21	8.5J x 21

If you mount snow tires on your vehicle, make sure to use the same Inflation pressure as the original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. The traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tires. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

Summer tires

- Summer tires are used to maximize the driving performance on dry roads.
- If the temperature is below 7°C (44°F) or you are driving on snowy or icy roads, the summer tires lose their brake performance and traction as the tire grip weakens significantly.
- If the temperature is below 7°C (44°F) or you are driving on snowy or icy roads, mount snow tires or all-season tires of the same size with your vehicle's standard tire for safe driving. Both snow and all-season tires have M+S markings.
- When using the M+S tires, use tires with the same tread produced by the same manufacturer for safe driving.
- When driving with the M+S tires with the lower maximum allowable speed than that of the vehicle's standard summer tire, be careful not to exceed the speed allowed for the M+S tires.

Tire chains (Auto sock)

OJWEV061037

Since the sidewalls of radial tires are thinner, they can be damaged by mounting some types of snow chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tires is recommended instead of snow chains.

Do not mount tire chains on vehicle equipped with aluminum wheels; snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. If snow chains must be used, use AutoSock (fabric snow chain). Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

When using tire chains, install tire chains only on the rear tires.

WARNING

The use of AutoSock (fabric snow chain) may adversely affect vehicle handling:

- **Drive less than 30 km/h (20 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.**
- **Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or locked wheel braking.**

Information

- **Install AutoSock (fabric snow chain) only in pairs and on the rear tires. It should be noted that installing AutoSock (fabric snow chain) on the tires will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.**
- **Do not install studded tires without first checking local and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.**

Chain Installation

When installing tire chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly possible. Drive slowly (less than 30 km/h (20 mph)) with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until the noise stops. Remove the tire chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning Flasher and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle (if available). Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the parking brake and turn off the vehicle before installing snow chains.

NOTICE

When using AutoSock (fabric snow chain):

- **Wrong size chains or improperly installed chains can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.**
- **If you hear noise caused by chains contacting the body, retighten the chain to prevent contact with the vehicle body.**
- **To prevent body damage, retighten the chains after driving 0.5~1.0 km (0.3~0.6 miles).**

Winter precautions

Check battery and cables

Winter temperatures affect battery performance. **Inspect the battery and cables, as specified in chapter 9.** We recommend that the battery charging level be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products or in a service station.

To prevent locks from freezing

To prevent the locks from being frozen, spray approved de-icing fluid or glycerin into key holes. When a lock opening is already covered with ice, spray approved de-icing fluid over the ice to remove it. When an internal part of a lock freezes, try to thaw it with a heated key. Carefully use the heated key to avoid an injury.

Use approved window washer anti-freeze solution in system

To prevent the window washer from being frozen, add authorized window washer anti-freeze solution, as specified on the window washer container. We recommend that the window washer anti-freeze solution is available from an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products, and most vehicle accessory outlets. Do not use coolant or other types of anti-freeze solution, to prevent any damage to the vehicle paint.

Do not let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. When there is the risk that your parking brake may freeze, temporarily apply it with the gear in P (Park). Also, block the rear wheels in advance, so the vehicle may not roll. Then, release the parking brake.

Do not let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in such conditions during the severe winter, you should check underneath the vehicle on a regular basis, to ensure that the front wheels and the steering components is unblocked.

Carry emergency equipment

In accordance with weather conditions, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment, while driving. Some of the items you may want to carry include tire chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

Do not place objects or materials in the motor compartment

Putting objects or materials in the motor compartment may cause an motor failure. Such damage will not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty.

Do not let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. When there is the risk that your parking brake may freeze, temporarily apply it with the gear in P (Park). Also, block the rear wheels in advance, so the vehicle may not roll. Then, release the parking brake.

Do not let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in such conditions during the severe winter, you should check underneath the vehicle on a regular basis, to ensure that the front wheels and the steering components is unblocked.

Carry emergency equipment

In accordance with weather conditions, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment, while driving. Some of the items you may want to carry include tire chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

Do not place objects or materials in the motor compartment

Putting objects or materials in the motor compartment may cause an motor failure. Such damage will not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty.

TRAILER TOWING

If you are considering to tow with your vehicle, you should first your country's legal requirements. As laws vary the requirements for towing trailers, cars, or other types of vehicles or apparatus may differ. Ask an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for further details before towing.

Remember that trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering requires correct equipment, and it has to be used properly. Damage to your vehicle caused by improper trailer towing is not covered by your vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

This section contains many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

WARNING

Take the following precautions:

- **If you don't use the correct equipment and/or drive improperly, you can lose control of the vehicle when you are pulling a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the braking performance may be reduced. You and your passengers could be seriously or fatally injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section.**
- **Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, GCW (Gross Combination Weight), GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight), GAW (Gross Axle Weight) and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.**
- **When you tow a trailer, make sure to turn off the Idle Stop and Go system.**

Information - For Europe

- **The technically permissible maximum load on the rear axle(s) may be exceeded by not more than 15 % and the technically permissible maximum laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by not more than 10% or 100 kg (220.4 lbs), whichever value is lower. In this case, do not exceed 100 km/h (62.1 mph) for vehicle of category M1 or 80 km/h (49.7 mph) for vehicle of category N1.**
- **When a vehicle of category M1 is towing a trailer, the additional load imposed at the trailer coupling device may cause the tire maximum load ratings to be exceeded, but not by more than 15%. In this case, do not exceed 100 km/h (62.1 mph) and increase the tire inflation pressure by at least 0.2 bar.**

✳ **M1: passenger vehicle (9-seater or under)**

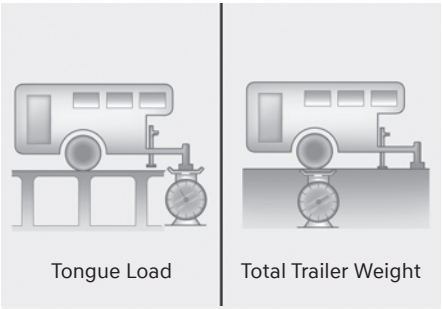
✳ **N1: commercial vehicle (3.5 ton or under)**

If you decide to pull a trailer?

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

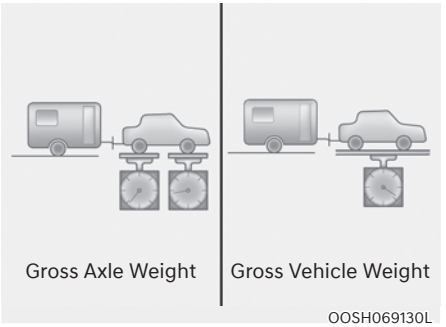
- Consider using a sway control. You can ask a trailer hitch dealer about sway control.
- Do not do any towing with your vehicle during its first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) in order to allow the motor to properly break in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious motor or reduction gear damage.
- When towing a trailer, be sure to consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for further information on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h (60 mph)) or posted towing speed limit.
- On a long uphill grade, do not exceed 70 km/h (45 mph) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower.
- Carefully observe the weight and load limits provided in the following pages.

Trailer weight



What is the maximum safe weight of a trailer? It should never weigh more than the maximum trailer weight with trailer brakes. But even that can be too heavy. It depends on how you plan to use your trailer. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how often your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. The ideal trailer weight can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.

Tongue load



The tongue load is an important weight to measure because it affects the total Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) of your vehicle. The trailer tongue should weigh a maximum of 10% of the total loaded trailer weight, within the limits of the maximum trailer tongue load permissible.

After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they aren't, you may be able to correct them simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

WARNING

Take the following precautions:

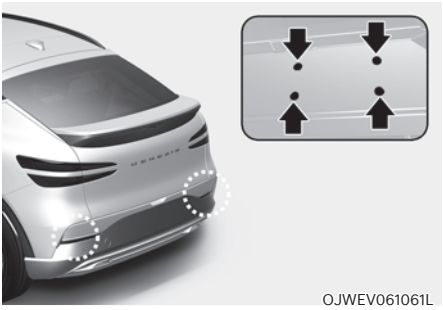
- **Never load a trailer with more weight in the rear than in the front. The front should be loaded with approximately 60% of the total trailer load; the rear should be loaded with approximately 40% of the total trailer load.**
- **Never exceed the maximum weight limits of the trailer or trailer towing equipment. Improper loading can result in damage to your vehicle and/or personal injury. Check weights and loading at a commercial scale or highway patrol office equipped with scales.**

Reference weight and distance hen towing a trailer

Item		Without trailer package	With trailer package
Maximum trailer weight kg (lbs.)	With brake system	-	1600 (3527)
	Without brake system	-	750 (1653)
Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device kg (lbs.)		-	100 (220)
Recommended distance from rear wheel center to coupling point mm (inch)		-	867 (34.13)

Trailer towing equipment

Hitches



OJWEV061061L

Information

The mounting hole for hitches are located on both sides of the underbody behind the rear tires.

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch. Here are some rules to follow:

- Do you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer hitch? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the hitch. If you don't seal them, carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle, as well as dirt and water.
- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to them. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- Any part of the rear number plate or lighting devices of the vehicle must not be obscured by the mechanical coupling device.

  If the rear number plate and/or lighting devices can be obscured partially by any part of the mechanical coupling device, mechanical coupling devices that can not be easily removed or repositioned without use of any tools, except an easily operated (for example, an effort not exceeding 20Nm) release key which is supplied by the manufacturer of the coupling device, are not permitted for use.

  Please note that the mechanical coupling device that is fitted and not in use must always be removed or repositioned if the rear number plate and/or rear lighting devices are obscured by any part of the mechanical coupling device.
- A Genesis Branded Vehicle trailer hitch accessory is available at an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Safety chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer.

Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to your country's regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes loaded, then it needs its own brakes and they must be adequate. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly. Be sure not to modify your vehicle's brake system.

WARNING

Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely certain that you have properly set up the brake system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.

Driving with a trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you must get to know your trailer. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now longer and not nearly as responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer hitch and platform, safety chains, electrical connector(s), lights, tires and brakes.

During your trip, occasionally check to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and trailer brakes are still working.

Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

You will need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because of the increased vehicle length, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

Backing up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making turns

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

Turn signals

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will also flash to alert other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes, or stop.

When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working. You must also check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the wires.

WARNING

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use an approved trailer wiring harness. Failure to do so could result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury. Consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for assistance.

Driving on hills

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get overheated and may not operate efficiently.

On a long uphill grade, reduce your speed to around 70 km/h (45 mph) to reduce the possibility of motor overheating.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes and you have a automatic transmission, you should drive in D (Drive) when towing a trailer.

Operating your vehicle in D (Drive) when towing a trailer will minimize heat build-up and extend the life of your transmission.

NOTICE

To prevent motor and/or transmission overheating:

- **If you tow a trailer with the maximum gross vehicle weight and maximum trailer weight, it can cause the motor or transmission to overheat. When driving in such conditions, allow the motor to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the motor or transmission has cooled sufficiently.**
- **When towing a trailer, your vehicle speed may be much slower than the general flow of traffic, especially when climbing an uphill grade. Use the right hand lane when towing a trailer on an uphill grade. Choose your vehicle speed according to the maximum posted speed limit for vehicles with trailers, the steepness of the grade, and your trailer weight.**

Parking on hills

Generally, if you have a trailer attached to your vehicle, you should not park your vehicle on a hill.

However, if you ever have to park your trailer on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Pull the vehicle into the parking space.
   Turn the steering wheel in the direction of the curb (right if headed down hill, left if headed up hill).
2. Shift the gear to P (Park).
3. Set the parking brake and shut off the vehicle.
4. Place wheel chocks under the trailer wheels on the down hill side of the wheels.
5. Start the vehicle, hold the brakes, shift to neutral, release the parking brake and slowly release the brakes until the trailer chocks absorb the load.
6. Reapply the brakes and parking brakes.
7. Shift the gear to P (Park) when the vehicle is parked on a uphill grade and in R (Reverse) on a downhill.
8. Shut off the vehicle and release the vehicle brakes but leave the parking brake set.

WARNING

To prevent serious or fatal injury:

- **Do not get out of the vehicle without the parking brake firmly set. If you have left the vehicle running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You and others could be seriously or fatally injured.**
- **Do not apply the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle on an uphill.**

VEHICLE WEIGHT

Two labels on your driver's door sill show how much weight your vehicle was designed to carry: the Tire and Loading Information Label and the Certification Label.

Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, from the vehicle's specifications and the Certification Label:

Base Curb Weight

This is the weight of the vehicle including high voltage battery and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle Curb Weight

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

Cargo Weight

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

GAW (Gross Axle Weight)

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Certification Label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)

This is the Base Curb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the Certification Label located on the driver's door sill.

Overloading

WARNING

The Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) and the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the Certification Label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.

7. Driver assistance system

Due to the infotainment software update, the description of each function of the driver assistance system may differ from the owner's manual.
In this case, for detailed information on updates, scan the QR code in the separately supplied simple manual.

Driving safety
- Forward Collision–Avoidance Assist (FCA) 7-2
- Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) 7-27
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) 7-34
- Safe Exit Warning (SEW) 7-48
- Safe Exit Assist (SEA) 7-55
- Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA) 7-62
- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA) 7-65
- Driver Attention Warning (DAW) 7-71
- Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM) 7-77
- Cruise control (CC) 7-79

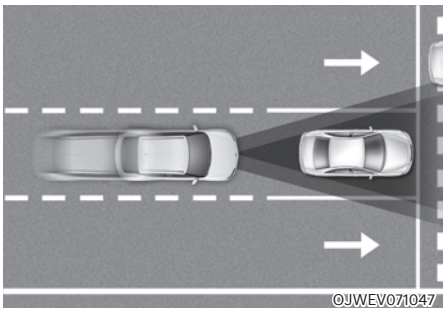
Driving convenience
- Smart Cruise Control (SCC) 7-83
- Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC) 7-103
- Lane Following Assist (LFA) 7-110
- Highway Driving Assist (HDA) 7-114

Parking safety
- Rear View Monitor (RVM) 7-127
- Surround View Monitor (SVM) 7-133
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA) 7-140
- Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) 7-153
- Forward/Side/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) 7-160
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA) 7-168

Parking Convenience
- Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2) 7-179

Declaration of conformity 7-208

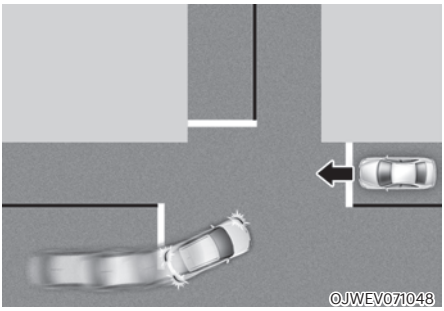
FORWARD COLLISION–AVOIDANCE ASSIST (FCA) (IF EQUIPPED)



Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to help detect and monitor the vehicle ahead or help detect a pedestrian or cyclist in the roadway and warn the driver that a collision is imminent with a warning message and warning and apply emergency braking.

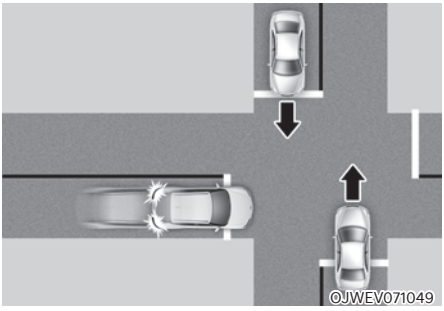
In addition, if equipped with front corner radars, when driving at high speeds, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will help detect vehicles in front and adjacent lanes. If a collision is imminent when changing lanes, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will apply emergency braking to help prevent a collision.

Junction Turning function



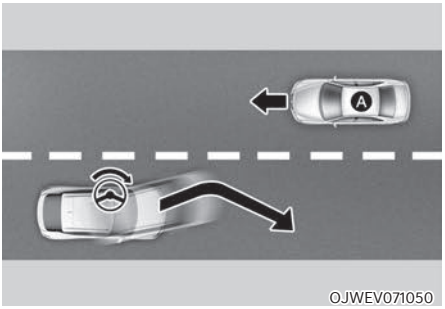
Junction Turning function can help avoid a collision with an oncoming vehicle in an adjacent lane when turning left (left-hand drive) or right (right-hand drive) at a crossroad with the turn signal on by applying emergency braking.

Junction Crossing function (if equipped)



Junction Crossing function can help avoid a collision with oncoming vehicles on the left or right side when crossing an intersection by applying emergency braking.

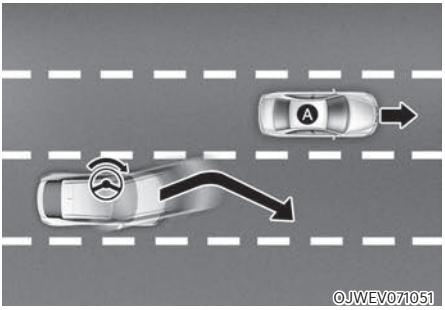
Lane-Change Oncoming function (if equipped)



[A]: Oncoming vehicle

Lane-Change Oncoming function helps avoid a collision with an oncoming vehicle when changing lanes by assisting the driver's steering.

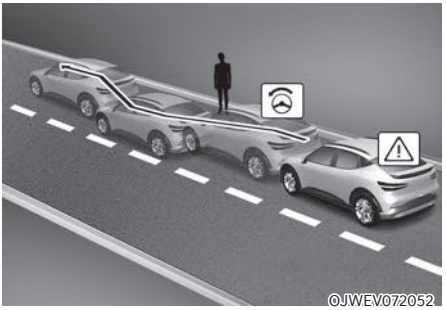
Lane-Change Side function (if equipped)



[A]: Front-side vehicle

Lane-Change Side function helps avoid a collision with the vehicle ahead in the next lane when changing lanes by assisting the driver's steering.

Evasive Steering Assist function (if equipped)

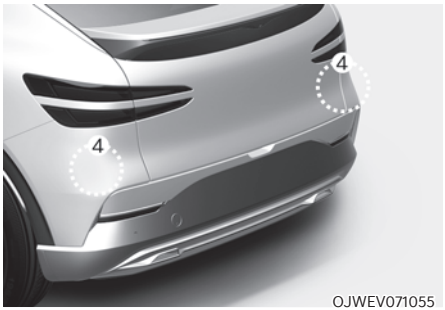


- Driver steering assist

  Evasive Steering Assist function helps avoid a collision with a vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead in the same lane. When a risk of collision is detected, Evasive Steering Assist function will warn the driver and if the driver steers to avoid collision it will assist the driver's steering.
- Evasive steering assist

  Evasive Steering Assist function helps avoid a collision with a pedestrian or cyclist ahead in the same lane. When a risk of collision is detected, Evasive Steering Assist function will warn the driver and if there is space to avoid collision in the lane, it will assist the driver's steering.

Detecting sensor



[1]: Front view camera, [2]: Front radar,
[3]: Front corner radar (if equipped),
[4]: Rear corner radar (if equipped)

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

CAUTION

Take the following precautions to maintain optimal performance of the detecting sensor:

- **Never disassemble the detecting sensor or sensor assembly, or cause any damage to it.**
- **If the detecting sensors have been replaced or repaired, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Never install any accessories or stickers on the front windshield, or tint the front windshield.**
- **Pay extreme caution to keep the front view camera dry.**
- **Never place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) over the dashboard.**
- **Do not place any objects near the front windshield or install any accessories on the front windshield. It can affect the performance of the defogging and defrosting function of the climate control system, which may prevent the Driver Assistance systems from operating.**
- **Do not apply license plate frame or objects, such as a bumper sticker, film or a bumper guard, near the front radar cover.**
- **Always keep the front radar and cover clean and free of dirt and debris.**

  Use only a soft cloth to wash the vehicle. Do not spray pressurized water directly on the sensor or sensor cover.

- **If the radar or around the radar has been damaged or impacted in any way, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate even though a warning message does not appear on the cluster. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Use only genuine Genesis parts to repair or replace a damaged front radar cover. Do not apply paint to the front radar cover.**
- **Vehicles equipped with front corner radar and/or rear corner radar**
  - **Do not apply license plate frame or objects, such as a bumper sticker, film or a bumper guard, near the front corner radar or rear corner radar.**
  - **The function may not work properly when the bumper has been replaced, or the surroundings of the front corner radar or rear corner radar has been damaged or paint has been applied.**
  - **If a trailer, carrier, etc., is installed, it may adversely affect the performance of the rear corner radar or Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly.**

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

Setting features

OJWEV071235L

Forward Safety

With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Forward Safety' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If 'Active Assist' is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver with a warning message, an audible warning and steering wheel vibration depending on the collision risk levels. Braking assist or steering assist (if equipped) will be applied depending on the collision risk levels.

- If ‘Warning Only’ is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver with a warning message, an audible warning and steering wheel vibration depending on the collision risk levels. Braking and steering (if equipped) will not be assisted. The driver must apply the brake pedal or steer the vehicle if necessary.
- If ‘Off’ is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off. The warning light will illuminate on the cluster.

The driver can monitor Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist On/Off status from the Settings menu. If the warning light remains ON when Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is on, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

OJWEV071236L

Forward Cross-Traffic Safety (if equipped)

With the vehicle on, select ‘Driver Assistance → Forward Safety → Forward Cross-Traffic Safety’ from the Settings menu to turn on Junction Crossing function and deselect to turn off the function.

WARNING

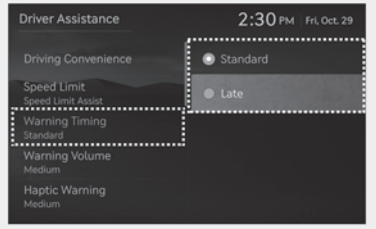
When the vehicle is restarted, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will always turn on. However, if ‘Off’ is selected, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.

CAUTION

- **If 'Warning Only' is selected, braking and steering (if equipped) is not assisted.**
- **The settings for Forward Safety include 'Basic function', 'Junction Turning', 'Lane-Change Oncoming', 'Lane-Change Side' and 'Evasive Steering Assist' (if equipped).**
- **If Forward Safety is set to 'Off', Junction Crossing function will not operate even when 'Forward Cross-Traffic Safety' (if equipped) is selected.**
- **Steering wheel vibration can be turned on or off. Select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Haptic Warning' from the Settings menu.**

Information

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off when ESC is turned off by pressing and holding the ESC OFF button. The warning light will illuminate on the cluster.



OJWEV071237L

Warning Timing

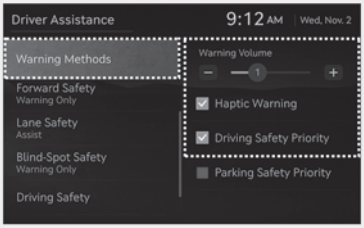
With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Timing' from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist. The warning time can be set to either 'Standard (Normal)' or 'Late (Later)'.

- Use 'Standard (Normal)' in normal driving conditions. If the Warning Timing seems sensitive, change it to 'Late (Later)'.
- If 'Late (Later)' is selected, Forward Collision Avoidance Assist, warns the driver more slowly.

CAUTION

- **The setting of the Warning Timing applies to all functions of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.**
- **Even though 'Standard (Normal)' is selected for Warning Timing, if a detected vehicle in front suddenly stops, the warning may seem late.**
- **Select 'Late (Later)' for Warning Timing when traffic is light and when driving speed is slow.**

■ Type A



OJWEV072186L

■ Type B

OJWEV072441L

Warning Methods

Type A: With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the Warning Volume.

Type B: With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Haptic Warning' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to activate steering wheel vibration.

If 'Driving Safety Priority' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the warning sounds.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**
- **With the Warning Volume in level 0, if you deselect or adjust the Haptic Warning to level 0, the Warning Volume will be automatically adjusted to volume level 2.**
- **With the Haptic Warning deselected or in level 0, if you adjust the Warning Volume to level 0, the Haptic Warning will be selected or automatically adjusted to volume level 2.**

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

Warning and control

The basic function for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is to warn and help control the vehicle depending on the collision risk level: 'Collision Warning', 'Emergency Braking' and 'Stopping vehicle and ending brake control'.

OJWEV071001L

Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the 'Collision Warning' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- If a vehicle is detected in front, the function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-200 km/h (6-124 mph).
- If a pedestrian or cyclist is detected in front, the function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-85 km/h (6-53 mph).
- If 'Active Assist' is selected, braking may be assisted.

OJWEV071002L

Emergency Braking

- To warn the driver that emergency braking will be assisted, the 'Emergency Braking' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- If a vehicle is detected in front, the function will operate with weak braking power when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-200 km/h (6-124 mph)
- If Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist judges that avoiding a collision is difficult even by changing the driving lane, the function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-100 km/h (6-62 mph) (if equipped with front corner radar).

  The function operation range may decrease due to the front traffic condition or the surroundings of the vehicle.

- If a pedestrian or cyclist is detected in front, the function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-65 km/h (6-40 mph).
- In emergency braking situation, braking is assisted with strong braking power by the function to help prevent collision with the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead.

OJWEV071003L

Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the ‘Drive carefully’ warning message will appear on the cluster.

  For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

Junction Turning function

Warning and control

Junction Turning function will warn and control the vehicle depending on the collision risk level: ‘Collision Warning’, ‘Emergency Braking’ and ‘Stopping vehicle and ending brake control’.

■ Left-hand drive

OJWEV071009L

■ Right-hand drive

OJWEV071010L

Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the ‘Collision Warning’ warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-30 km/h (6-19 mph) and the oncoming vehicle speed is between approximately 30-70 km/h (19-44 mph).
- If ‘Active Assist’ is selected, braking may be assisted.

■ Left-hand drive

OJWEV071239L

■ Right-hand drive

OJWEV071240L

Emergency Braking

- To warn the driver that emergency braking will be assisted, the 'Emergency Braking' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-30 km/h (6-19 mph) and the oncoming vehicle speed is between approximately 30-70 km/h (19-44 mph).
- In emergency braking situation, braking is assisted with strong braking power by the function to help prevent collision with the oncoming vehicle.

Information

If the driver's seat is on the left side, Junction Turning function will operate only when you turn left. If the driver's seat position is on the right side, the function will operate only when you turn right.

OJWEV071003L

Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster.

  For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

Junction Crossing function (if equipped)

Warning and control

Junction Crossing function will warn and control the vehicle depending on collision risk level: ‘Collision Warning’, ‘Emergency Braking’ and ‘Stopping vehicle and ending brake control’

OJWEV071004L

OJWEV071005L

Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the ‘Collision Warning’ warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-30 km/h (6-19 mph) and the detected crossing vehicle speed is between approximately 10-60 km/h (6-37 mph).
- If ‘Active Assist’ and 'Forward Cross-Traffic Safety' are selected, braking may be assisted.

OJWEV071007L

OJWEV071006L

Emergency Braking

- To warn the driver that emergency braking will be assisted, the ‘Emergency Braking’ warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-30 km/h (6-19 mph) and the detected crossing vehicle speed is between approximately 10-20 km/h (6-12 mph).
- In emergency braking situation, braking is assisted with strong braking power by the function to help prevent collision with the crossing vehicle.

OJWEV071003L

Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the ‘Drive carefully’ warning message will appear on the cluster.

  For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

CAUTION

If the collision angle with the crossing vehicle is beyond a certain range, Junction Crossing function warning and control may be late or may not operate.

Lane-Change Oncoming function (if equipped)

Warning and control

Lane-Change Oncoming function will warn and control the vehicle depending on collision risk level: ‘Collision Warning’ and ‘Emergency Steering’

■ Left-hand drive

OJWEV071009L

■ Right-hand drive

OJWEV071010L

Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the ‘Collision Warning’ warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 40-145 km/h (25-90 mph) and the detected oncoming vehicle speed is approximately above 10 km/h (6 mph) and the relative speed with your vehicle is approximately below 200 km/h (124 mph).

■ Left-hand drive

OJWEV071011L

■ Right-hand drive

OJWEV071012L

Emergency Steering

- To warn the driver that emergency steering will be assisted, the 'Emergency Steering' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 40-145 km/h (25-90 mph) and the detected oncoming vehicle speed is approximately above 10 km/h (6 mph) and the relative speed with your vehicle is approximately below 200 km/h (124 mph).
- In emergency steering situation, steering is assisted by the function to help prevent collision with the oncoming vehicle.

Lane-Change Side function (if equipped)

Warning and control

Lane-Change Side function will warn and control the vehicle depending on collision risk level: 'Collision Warning' and 'Emergency Steering'

OJWEV071009L

OJWEV071010L

Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the 'Collision Warning' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 40-145 km/h (25-90 mph).

OJWEV071011L

OJWEV071012L

Emergency Steering

- To warn the driver that emergency steering will be assisted, the 'Emergency Steering' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 40-145 km/h (25-90 mph).
- In emergency steering situation, steering is assisted by the function to help prevent collision with the front-side vehicle.

CAUTION

Lane-Change Side function does not operate if the vehicle speed of the oncoming vehicle from the front side is 0 km/h (0 mph).

Evasive Steering Assist function (if equipped)

Warning and control

Evasive Steering Assist function will warn and control the vehicle with 'Emergency steering'.

OJWEV071013L

OJWEV071014L

Emergency Steering (Driver steering assist)

- To warn the driver that emergency steering will be assisted, the 'Emergency Steering' message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 40-85 km/h (25-53 mph).
- If there is a risk of collision with a vehicle, pedestrian and cyclist in front, the steering will be assisted to help prevent collision when the driver steers the vehicle to avoid collision.

OJWEV071013L

OJWEV071014L

Emergency Steering (Evasive steering assist)

- To warn the driver that emergency steering will be assisted, the 'Emergency Steering' message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 65-75 km/h (40-47 mph).
- If there is high risk of collision with a pedestrian and cyclist in front, and the vehicle speed to operate emergency braking is within the operation range, the steering will be assisted to help prevent collision when there is space to avoid collision in the driving lane.

CAUTION

- **The steering wheel may turn automatically when emergency steering is operating.**
- **Emergency steering will automatically cancel when risk factors disappear. If necessary, the driver must steer the vehicle.**
- **Emergency steering may not operate or may cancel during operation if the steering wheel is held tight or steered in the opposite direction.**
- **When steering is assisted to avoid collision with a vehicle, pedestrian and cyclist, Evasive steering assist will be cancelled if collisions with other objects (vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists) are expected.**
- **Evasive steering assist may not operate if space to avoid collision in the driving lane is insufficient.**

Information

For more details on warning messages, refer to Collision Warning in "Basic Function".

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist:

- **For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.**
- **With 'Active Assist' or 'Warning Only' selected, when ESC is turned off by pressing and holding the ESC OFF button, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off automatically. In this case, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist cannot be set from the Settings menu and the warning light will illuminate on the cluster which is normal. If ESC is turned on by pressing the ESC OFF button, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will maintain the last setting.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate in all situations or cannot avoid all collisions.**
- **The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle. Do not solely depend on Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.**
- **Never deliberately operate Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist on people, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the driver depresses the brake pedal to avoid a collision.**
- **Depending on the road and driving conditions, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver.**
- **During Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.**
- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding is noisy.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may turn off or may not operate properly or may operate unnecessarily depending on the road conditions and the surroundings.**

WARNING

- **Even if there is a problem with Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic braking will function normally.**
- **During emergency braking, braking control by Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will automatically cancel when the driver excessively depresses the accelerator pedal or sharply steers the vehicle.**

CAUTION

- **Depending on the condition of the vehicle, pedestrian and cyclist in front and the surroundings, the speed range to operate Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may reduce. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may only warn the driver, or it may not operate.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate under certain conditions by judging the risk level based on the condition of the oncoming vehicle, driving direction, speed and surroundings.**
- **When a collision with a surrounding vehicle is expected, Lane-Change Oncoming, Lane-Change Side and Evasive Steering Assist functions will only warn the driver (if equipped).**

Information

- **In a situation where collision is imminent, braking may be assisted by Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist when braking is insufficient by the driver.**
- **The images and colors in the clustermay differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.**

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction

■ Type A

OTM070094N

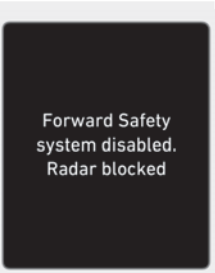
■ Type B

OTM070094L

When Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the 'Check Forward Safety system' (or 'Check forward safety systems') warning message will appear, and the ⚠ and warning lights will illuminate on the cluster. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled

OJX1079005L



OJX1079212L

When the front windshield where the front view camera is located, front radar cover, bumper or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If this occurs the 'Forward Safety system(s) disabled. Camera obscured' or the 'Forward Safety system(s) disabled. Radar blocked' warning message, and the ⚠ and warning lights will illuminate on the cluster.

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed.

If Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate properly after obstruction (snow, rain, or foreign material) is removed (including trailer, carrier, etc., from the rear bumper), we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message or warning light does not appear on the cluster, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain), where any objects are not detected after turning ON the vehicle.**

Limitations of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The detecting sensor or the surroundings are contaminated or damaged
- The temperature around the front view camera is high or low due to surrounding environment
- The camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windshield, damaged glass, or sticky foreign material (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass
- Moisture is not removed or frozen on the windshield
- Washer fluid is continuously sprayed, or the wiper is on
- Driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Street light or light from an oncoming traffic is reflected on the wet road surface, such as a puddle on the road
- An object is placed on the dashboard

- Your vehicle is being towed
- The surrounding is very bright
- The surrounding is very dark, such as in a tunnel, etc.
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel
- The brightness outside is low, and the headlamps are not on or are not bright
- Driving through steam, smoke or shadow
- Only part of the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist is detected
- The vehicle in front is a bus, heavy truck, truck with an unusually shaped cargo, trailer, etc.
- The vehicle in front has no tail lights, tail lights are located unusually, etc.
- The brightness outside is low, and the tail lamps are not on or are not bright
- The rear of the front vehicle is small or the vehicle does not look normal, such as when the vehicle is tilted, overturned, or the side of the vehicle is visble, etc.
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is low or high
- A vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist suddenly cuts in front
- The bumper around the front radar is impacted, damaged or the front radar is out of position
- The temperature around the front radar is high or low
- Driving through a tunnel or iron bridge
- Driving in vast areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- Driving near areas containing metal substances, such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- A material is near that reflects very well on the front radar, such as a guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The cyclist in front is on a bicycle made of material that does not reflect on the front radar
- The vehicle in front is detected late
- The vehicle in front is suddenly blocked by an obstacle
- The vehicle in front suddenly changes lane or suddenly reduces speed
- The vehicle in front is bent out of shape
- The front vehicle's speed is fast or slow
- The vehicle in front steers in the opposite direction of your vehicle to avoid a collision
- With a vehicle in front, your vehicle changes lane at low speed
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow
- You are departing or returning to the lane
- Unstable driving
- You are on a roundabout and the vehicle in front is not detected
- You are continuously driving in a circle
- The vehicle in front has an unusual shape
- The vehicle in front is driving uphill or downhill
- The pedestrian or cyclist is not fully detected, for example, if the pedestrian is leaning over or is not fully walking upright
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing or equipment that makes it difficult to detect

OADAS044

The illustration above shows the image the front view camera and front radar are capable of detecting as a vehicle, pedestrian and cyclist.

- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving very quickly
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is short or is posing a low posture
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front has impaired mobility
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving intersected with the driving direction
- There is a group of pedestrians, cyclists or a large crowd in front
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing that easily blends into the background, making it difficult to detect
- The pedestrian or cyclist is difficult to distinguish from the similarly shaped structure in the surroundings
- You are driving by a pedestrian, cyclist, traffic signs, structures, etc., near the intersection
- Driving in a parking lot
- Driving through a tollgate, construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- Driving on an incline road, curved road, etc.
- Driving through a roadside with trees or streetlights
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations while driving
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tire pressure, etc.
- Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- There is interference by electromagnetic waves, such as driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise

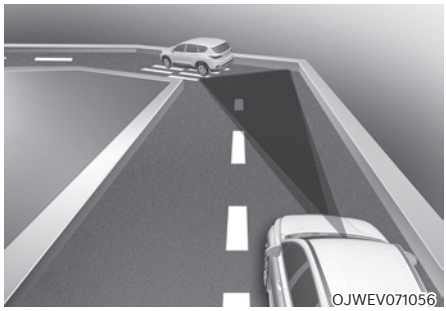
Junction Crossing, Lane-Change Oncoming, Lane-Change Side, Evasive Steering Assist function (if equipped)

- The temperature around the front corner radar or rear corner radar is high or low
- A trailer or carrier is installed around the rear corner radar
- The front corner radar or rear corner radar is covered with snow, rain, dirt, etc.
- The bumper around the front corner radar or rear corner radar is covered with objects, such as a bumper sticker, bumper guard, bike rack, etc.
- The bumper around the front corner radar or rear corner radar is impacted, damaged or the radar is out of position
- The front corner radar or rear corner radar is blocked by other vehicles, walls or pillars
- Driving on a highway (or motorway) ramp
- Driving on a road where the guardrail or wall is in double structure
- The other vehicle drives very close behind your vehicle, or the other vehicle passes by your vehicle in close proximity
- The speed of the other vehicle is very fast that it passes by your vehicle in a short time
- Your vehicle passes by the other vehicle
- Your vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated
- The vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you, or when the vehicle two lanes away moves to the next lane from you
- A motorcycle or bicycle is detected
- A vehicle such as a flat trailer is detected
- A big vehicle such as a bus or truck is detected
- A small moving obstacle such as a pedestrian, animal, shopping cart or a baby stroller is detected
- A vehicle with low height such as a sports car is detected
- The lane is difficult to see due to foreign material, such as rain, snow, dust, sand, oil and water puddles
- The color of the lane marking is not distinguishable from the road

- There are markings on the road near the lane or the markings on the road looks similar to the lane markings
- The shadow is on the lane marking by a median strip, trees, guardrail, noise barriers, etc.
- The lane number increases or decreases, or the lane markings are crossing
- There are more than two lane markings on the road
- The lane markings are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines, such as a construction area
- There are road markings, such as zigzag lanes, crosswalk markings and road signs
- The lane suddenly disappears, such as at the intersection
- The lane is very wide or narrow
- There is a curb or road edges without a lane
- The vehicle in front is driving with one side on the lane marking
- The distance to the front vehicle is extremely short

WARNING

- **Driving on a curved road**


OJWEV071056

OJWEV071057

OJWEV071058

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect other vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists in front of you when driving on curved roads adversely affecting the performance of the sensors. This may result in no warning, braking assist or steering assist (if equipped) when necessary.

When driving on a curve, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer the vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

OJWEV071059

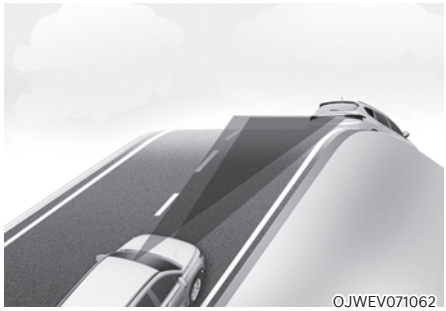
OJWEV071060

OJWEV071061

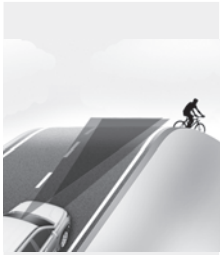
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect a vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in the next lane or outside the lane when driving on a curved road.

If this occurs, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake or steering wheel (if equipped). Always check the traffic conditions around the vehicle.

- **Driving on an inclined road**


OJWEV071062

OJWEV071063


OJWEV071064

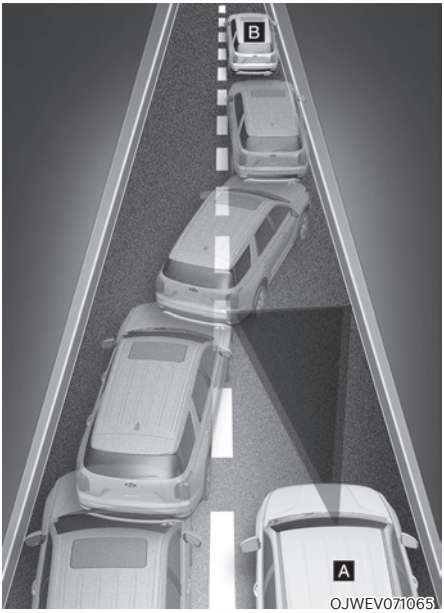
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect other vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists in front of you while driving uphill or downhill, adversely affecting the performance of the sensors.

This may result in unnecessary warning, braking assist or steering assist (if equipped) or no warning, braking assist or steering assist (if equipped) when necessary.

Also, vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when a vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead is suddenly detected.

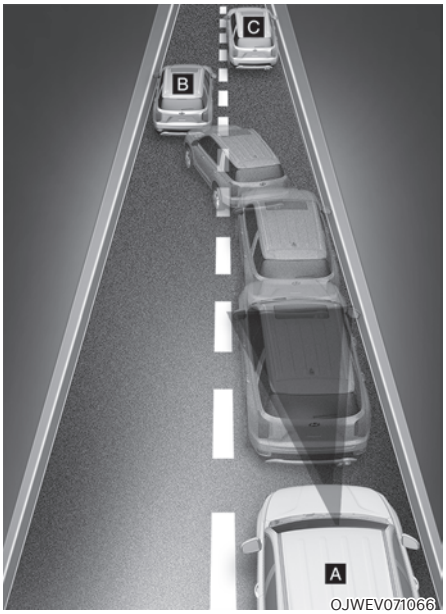
Always have your eyes on the road while driving uphill or downhill and if necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

- **Changing lanes**



[A]: Your vehicle,
[B]: Lane changing vehicle

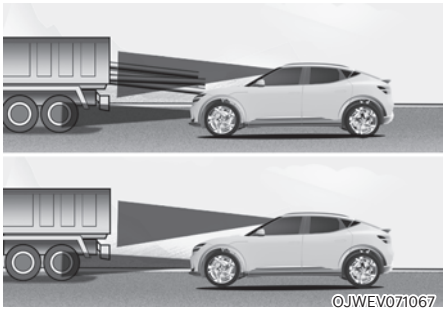
When a vehicle moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect the vehicle when the vehicle changes lanes abruptly. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



[A]: Your vehicle,
[B]: Lane changing vehicle,
[C]: Same lane vehicle

When a vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect the vehicle that is now in front of you. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

- **Detecting vehicle**



If the vehicle in front of you has cargo that extends rearward from the cab, or when the vehicle in front of you has higher ground clearance, additional special attention is required. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not be able to detect the cargo extending from the vehicle. In these instances, you must maintain a safe braking distance from the rearmost object, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.

WARNING

- **When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist for safety reasons.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may operate if objects that are similar in shape or characteristics to vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists are detected.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate on bicycles, motorcycles, or smaller wheeled objects, such as luggage bags, shopping carts, or strollers.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera is initialized.**

LANE KEEPING ASSIST (LKA)

Lane Keeping Assist is designed to help detect lane markings (or road edges) while driving over a certain speed. Lane Keeping Assist will warn the driver if the vehicle leaves the lane without using the turn signal, or will automatically assist the driver's steering to help prevent the vehicle from departing the lane.

Detecting sensor

[1]: Front view camera

The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect lane markings (or road edges).

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

Lane Keeping Assist settings

Setting features

OJWEV071241L

Lane Safety

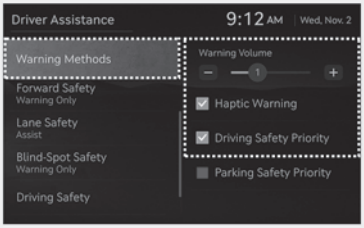
With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Lane Safety' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If 'Assist' is selected, Lane Keeping Assist will automatically assist the driver's steering when lane departure is detected to help prevent the vehicle from moving out of its lane.
- If 'Warning Only' is selected, Lane Keeping Assist will warn the driver with an audible warning and steering wheel vibration when lane departure is detected. The driver must steer the vehicle.
- If 'Off' is selected, Lane Keeping Assist will turn off. The indicator light will turn off on the cluster.

WARNING

- **If 'Warning Only' is selected, steering is not assisted.**
- **Lane Keeping Assist does not control the steering wheel when the vehicle is driven in the middle of the lane.**
- **The driver should always be aware of the surroundings and steer the vehicle if 'Off' is selected.**

■ Type A



OJWEV072186L

■ Type B

OJWEV072441L

Warning Methods

Type A: With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the Warning Volume.

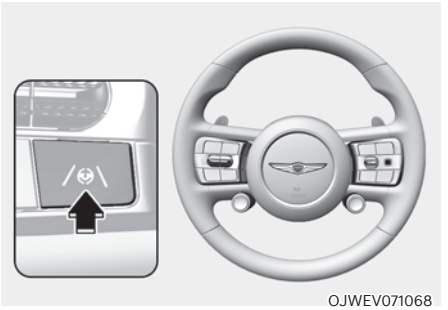
Type B: With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Haptic Warning' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to activate steering wheel vibration.

If 'Driving Safety Priority' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the warning sounds.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**
- **With the Warning Volume in level 0, if you deselect or adjust the Haptic Warning to level 0, the Warning Volume will be automatically adjusted to volume level 2.**
- **With the Haptic Warning deselected or in level 0, if you adjust the Warning Volume to level 0, the Haptic Warning will be selected or automatically adjusted to volume level 2.**

Turning Lane Keeping Assist On/Off



OJWEV071068

Whenever the vehicle is turned on, Lane Keeping Assist will always turn on. The grey indicator light will illuminate on the cluster.

When Lane Keeping Assist is on, press and hold the Lane Driving Assist button to turn off the function.

Information

When the Lane Driving Assist button is pressed shortly, Lane Following Assist will turn on and off.

Lane Keeping Assist operation

Warning and control

Lane Keeping Assist will warn and help control the vehicle with Lane Departure Warning and Lane Keeping Assist.

■ Left

OJWEV072015

■ Right

OJWEV072016

Lane Departure Warning

- To warn the driver that the vehicle is departing from the projected lane in front, the green indicator light will blink on the cluster, the lane line will blink on the cluster depending on which direction the vehicle is veering, and an audible warning will sound. Also, the steering wheel will vibrate.
- Lane Keeping Assist will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 60-200 km/h (40-120 mph).

Lane Keeping Assist

- To warn the driver that the vehicle is departing from the projected lane in front, the green indicator light will blink on the cluster, and the steering wheel will make adjustments to keep vehicle inside the lane.
- Lane Keeping Assist will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 60-200 km/h (40-120 mph).

OJWEV071036L

Hands-off warning

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the 'Keep hands on the steering wheel' warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound in stages.

WARNING

- **The steering wheel may not be assisted if the steering wheel is held very tight or the steering wheel is steered over a certain degree.**
- **Lane Keeping Assist does not operate at all times. It is the responsibility of the driver to safely steer the vehicle and to maintain the vehicle in its lane.**
- **The hands–off warning message may appear late depending on road conditions. Always have your hands on the steering wheel while driving.**
- **If the steering wheel is held very lightly, the hands–off warning message may appear because Lane Keeping Assist may not recognize that the driver has their hands on the steering wheel.**
- **If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.**

Information

- **For more details on setting the functions in the infotainment system Vehicle Settings, refer to “Vehicle Settings” section in chapter 4.**
- **When lane markings (or road edges) are detected, the lane lines on the cluster will change from grey to white and the green indicator light will illuminate.**

■ Lane undetected

OJWEV071017

■ Lane detected

OJWEV071018

- **The images and colors in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the instrument cluster.**
- **Even though the steering is assisted by Lane Keeping Assist, the driver may control the steering wheel.**
- **The steering wheel may feel heavier or lighter when the steering wheel is assisted by Lane Keeping Assist than when it is not.**

Lane Keeping Assist malfunction and limitations

Lane Keeping Assist malfunction

■ Type A

ORG3EV071192L

■ Type B

ORG3EV071193L

When Lane Keeping Assist is not working properly, the ‘Check Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system’ (or ‘Check LKA (Lane Keeping Assist) system’) warning message will appear and the yellow indicator light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Limitations of Lane Keeping Assist

Lane Keeping Assist may not operate properly or may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The lane is contaminated or difficult to detect because:
  - The lane markings (or road edge) are covered with rain, snow, dirt, oil, etc.
  - The color of the lane marking (or road edge) is not distinguishable from the road
  - There are markings (or road edges) on the road near the lane or the markings (or road edges) on the road look similar to the lane markings (or road edge)
  - The lane marking (or road edge) is indistinct or damaged
  - The shadow is on the lane marking (or road edge) by a median strip, trees, guardrail, noise barriers, etc.
  - The number of lanes change or the lanes merge
- There are more than two lane markings (or road edges) on the road
- The lane markings (or road edges) are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines, such as a construction area
- There are road markings, such as zigzag lanes, crosswalk markings and road signs
- The lane suddenly disappears, such as at the intersection
- The lane (or road width) is very wide or narrow
- There is a road edge without a lane
- There is a boundary structure in the roadway, such as a tollgate, sidewalk, curb, etc.
- The distance to the front vehicle is extremely short or the vehicle in front is covering the lane marking (or road edge)

Information

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to “Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)” section in this chapter.

WARNING

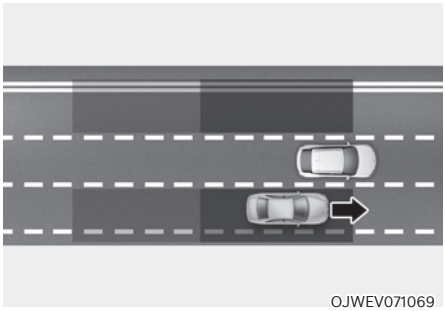
Take the following precautions when using Lane Keeping Assist:

- **The driver should hold the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle. Do not solely rely on Lane Keeping Assist and drive dangerously.**
- **The operation of Lane Keeping Assist can be cancelled or not work properly depending on road conditions and surroundings. Always be cautious while driving.**
- **Refer to "Limitations of Lane Keeping Assist" if the lane is not detected properly.**
- **When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Lane Keeping Assist for safety reasons.**
- **If the vehicle is driven at high speed, the steering wheel will not be controlled. The driver must always follow the speed limit when using Lane Keeping Assist.**
- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Lane Keeping Assist warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Lane Keeping Assist if the surrounding is noisy.**
- **If you attach objects to the steering wheel, steering may not be assisted properly.**
- **Lane Keeping Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera is initialized.**
- **Lane Keeping Assist will not operate when:**
  - **The turn signal or hazard warning flasher is turned on.**
  - **The vehicle is not driven in the center of the lane when Lane Keeping Assist is turned on or right after changing a lane.**
  - **ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or VSM (Vehicle Stability Management) is activated.**
  - **The vehicle is driven on a sharp curve.**
  - **Vehicle speed is below 55 km/h (35 mph) or above 210 km/h (130 mph).**
  - **The vehicle makes sharp lane changes.**
  - **The vehicle brakes suddenly.**

BLIND-SPOT COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (BCA)

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to help detect and monitor approaching vehicles in the driver's blind spot area and warn the driver of a possible collision with a warning message and audible warning.

In addition, if there is a risk of collision when changing lanes or driving forward out of a parking space, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist can help avoid a collision by applying the brake.

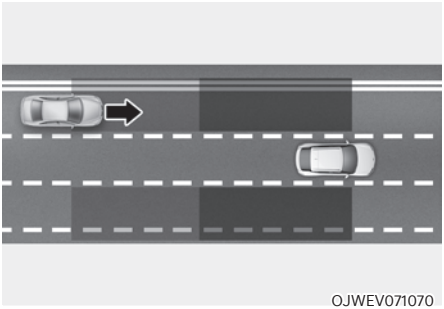


OJWEV071069

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect and informs the driver that a vehicle is in the blind spot.

CAUTION

The detecting range may vary depending on the speed of your vehicle. Even if there is a vehicle in the blind spot area, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn you when you pass by at high speeds.

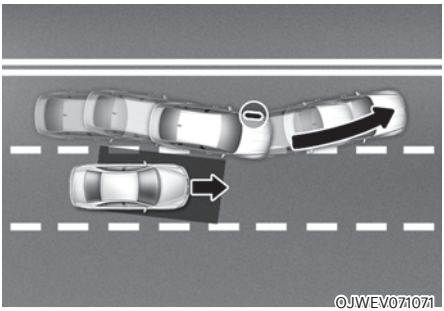


OJWEV071070

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect and informs the driver that a vehicle is approaching at high speed from the blind spot area.

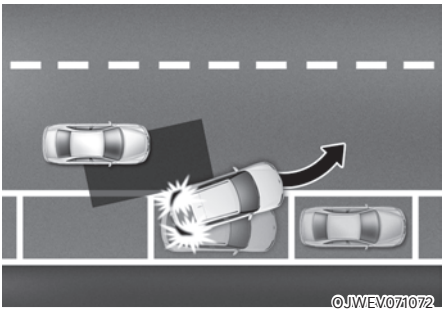
CAUTION

Warning timing may vary depending on the speed of the vehicle approaching at high speed.



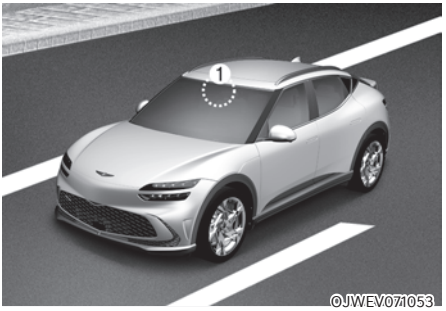
OJWEV071071

When changing lanes by detecting the lane ahead, if Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist detects that there is a collision risk with an approaching vehicle in the blind spot, it can help avoid collision by applying the brake.



When you are driving forward out of a parking space, if Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist judges that there is a collision risk with an approaching vehicle in the blind spot, it can help avoid collision by applying the brake.

Detecting sensor



[1]: Front view camera,
[2]: Rear corner radar

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

CAUTION

Take the following precautions to maintain optimal performance of the detecting sensor:

- **Never disassemble the rear corner radar or radar assembly, or cause any damage to it.**
- **If the rear corner radar or near the radar has been damaged or impacted in any way, even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **If the rear corner radars have been replaced or repaired, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Use only genuine Genesis parts to repair the rear bumper where the rear corner radar is located.**
- **Do not apply license plate frame or objects, such as a bumper sticker, film or a bumper guard near the rear corner radar.**
- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not work properly if the bumper have been replaced, or the surroundings of the rear corner radar has been damaged or paint has been applied.**
- **If a trailer, carrier, etc., is installed, it may adversely affect the performance of the rear corner radar or Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate.**
- **For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.**

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

Setting features

OJWEV071242L

Blind-Spot Safety

With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Blind-Spot Safety' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If 'Active Assist' is selected, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver with a warning message, an audible warning and steering wheel vibration depending on the collision risk levels. Braking assist will be applied depending on the collision risk levels.
- If 'Warning Only' is selected, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver with a warning message, an audible warning and steering wheel vibration depending on the collision risk levels. Braking will not be assisted.
- If 'Off' is selected, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off.

OTM070097N

When the vehicle is restarted with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist off, the 'Blind-Spot Safety System is Off' message will appear on the cluster.

If you change the setting from 'Off' to 'Active Assist' or 'Warning Only', the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink for three seconds.

In addition, if the vehicle is turned on, when Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is set to 'Active Assist' or 'Warning Only', the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink for three seconds.

WARNING

- **If 'Warning Only' is selected, braking is not assisted.**
- **If 'Off' is selected, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.**

Information

If the vehicle is restarted, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will maintain the last setting.

OJWEV071237L

Warning Timing

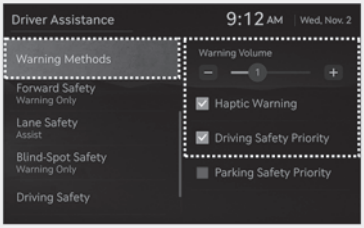
With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Timing' from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist. The warning time can be set to either 'Standard (Normal)' or 'Late (Later)'.

- Use 'Standard (Normal)' in normal driving conditions. If the Warning Timing seems sensitive, change it to 'Late (Later)'.
- If 'Late (Later)' is selected, Forward Collision Avoidance Assist, warns the driver more slowly.

CAUTION

- **The setting of the Warning Timing applies to all functions of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.**
- **Even though 'Standard (Normal)' is selected for Warning Timing, if a detected vehicle in front suddenly stops, the warning may seem late.**
- **Select 'Late (Later)' for Warning Timing when traffic is light and when driving speed is slow.**

■ Type A



OJWEV072186L

■ Type B

OJWEV072441L

Warning Methods

Type A: With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the Warning Volume.

Type B: With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Haptic Warning' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to activate steering wheel vibration.

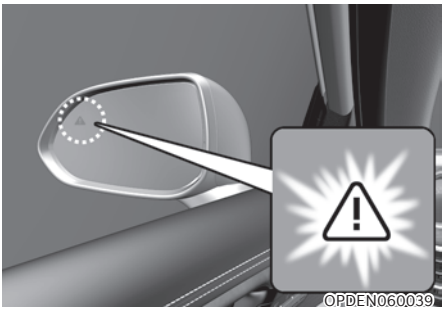
If 'Driving Safety Priority' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the warning sounds.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**
- **With the Warning Volume in level 0, if you deselect or adjust the Haptic Warning to level 0, the Warning Volume will be automatically adjusted to volume level 2.**
- **With the Haptic Warning deselected or in level 0, if you adjust the Warning Volume to level 0, the Haptic Warning will be selected or automatically adjusted to volume level 2.**

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

Warning and control



Vehicle detection

- To warn the driver a vehicle is detected, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror and head-up display (if equipped) will illuminate.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when your vehicle speed is above 20 km/h (12 mph) and the speed of the vehicle in the blind spot area is above 10 km/h (7 mph).

Collision warning

- Collision warning will operate when the turn signal is turned on in the direction of the detected vehicle.
- If 'Warning Only' is selected from the Settings menu, the collision warning will operate when your vehicle approaches the lane the blind spot vehicle is detected.
- To warn the driver of a collision, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror and head-up display (if equipped) will blink. At the same time, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- When the turn signal is turned off or you move away from the lane, the collision warning will be cancelled and Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will return to vehicle detection state.

WARNING

- **The detecting range of the rear corner radar is determined by a standard road width, therefore, on a narrow road, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect other vehicles two lanes over and warn you. In contrast, on a wide road, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not be able to detect a vehicle driving in the next lane and may not warn you.**
- **When the hazard warning flasher is on, the collision warning by the turn signal will not operate.**

OJWEV071145L

Collision-avoidance assist (while driving)

- To warn the driver of a collision, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink and a warning message will appear on the cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound, warning light on the head-up display (if equipped) will blink and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when your vehicle speed is between 60-200 km/h (40-120 mph) and both lane markings of the driving lane are detected.
- Emergency braking will be assisted to help prevent collision with the vehicle in the blind spot area.

WARNING

- **Collision-avoidance assist will be cancelled under the following circumstances:**
  - **Your vehicle enters the next lane by a certain distance**
  - **Your vehicle is away from the collision risk**
  - **The steering wheel is sharply steered**
  - **The brake pedal is depressed**
  - **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating**
- **After Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation or lane change, you must drive to the center of the lane. Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will not operate if the vehicle is not driven in the center of the lane.**

OJWEV071146L

Collision-avoidance assist (while departing)

- To warn the driver of a collision, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink and a warning message will appear on the cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound, warning light on the head-up display (if equipped) will blink and the steering wheel will vibrate.

- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when your vehicle speed is below 3 km/h (2 mph) and the speed of the vehicle in the blind spot area is above 5 km/h (3 mph).
- Emergency braking will be assisted to help prevent collision with the vehicle in the blind spot area.

OJWEV071003L

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster.

  For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist:

- **For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.**
- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist's warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding is noisy.**
- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid collision.**
- **When Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating, braking control by the function will automatically cancel when the driver excessively depresses the accelerator pedal or sharply steers the vehicle.**
- **During Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.**
- **Even if there is a problem with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic braking will function normally.**

- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate in all situations or cannot avoid all collisions.**
- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions.**
- **Driver should maintain control of the vehicle at all times. Do not depend on Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist. Maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.**
- **Never operate Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist on people, animal, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.**

WARNING

The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control).

There will only be a warning when:

- **The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on**
- **ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is engaged in a different function**

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction

OJWEV071019L

When Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the 'Check Blind-Spot Safety system(s)' warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

■ Type A

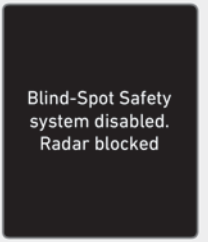
OJWEV071021L

■ Type B

OJWEV071243L

When the outside rearview mirror warning light is not working properly, the ‘Check side view mirror warning light’ (or ‘Check outside mirror warning icon’) warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled



OTM070098N

When the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, or installing a trailer or carrier, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If this occurs, the ‘Blind-Spot Safety system(s) disabled. Radar blocked’ warning message will appear on the cluster.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate properly when such foreign material or trailer, etc., is removed, and then the vehicle is restarted.

If Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate.**
- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain) where any objects are not detected right after the vehicle is turned on, or when the detecting sensor is blocked with foreign material right after the vehicle is turned on.**

CAUTION

Turn off Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist to install or remove a trailer, carrier, or another attachment. Turn on Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist when finished.

Limitations of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- There is inclement weather, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, etc.
- The rear corner radar is covered with snow, rain, dirt, etc.
- The temperature around the rear corner radar is high or low due to surrounding environment
- Driving on a highway (or motorway) ramp
- The road pavement (or the peripheral ground) abnormally contains metallic components (for example, possibly due to subway construction)
- There is a fixed object near the vehicle, such as sound barriers, guardrails, central dividers, entry barriers, street lamps, signs, tunnels, walls, etc. (including double structures)
- Driving in vast areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- Driving on a wet road surface, such as a puddle on the road
- The other vehicle drives very close behind your vehicle, or the other vehicle passes by your vehicle in close proximity
- The speed of the other vehicle is very fast that it passes by your vehicle in a short time
- Your vehicle passes by the other vehicle
- Your vehicle changes lane
- Your vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated
- The vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you, or when the vehicle two lanes away moves to the next lane from you

- A trailer, carrier or other attachment is installed around the rear corner radar
- The bumper around the rear corner radar is covered with objects, such as a bumper sticker, bumper guard, bike rack, etc.
- The bumper around the rear corner radar is impacted, damaged or the radar is out of position
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tire pressure, etc.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly when the following objects are detected:

- A motorcycle or bicycle is detected
- A vehicle such as a flat trailer is detected
- A big vehicle such as a bus or truck is detected
- A moving obstacle such as a pedestrian, animal, shopping cart or a baby stroller is detected
- A vehicle with low height such as a sports car is detected

Braking control may not work, driver's attention is required in the following circumstances:

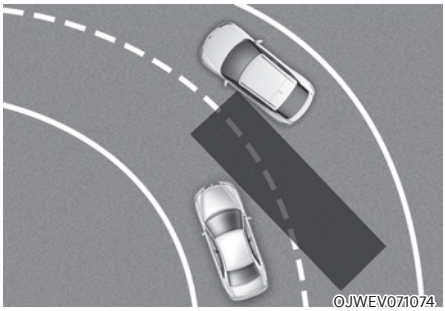
- The vehicle severely vibrates while driving over a bumpy road, uneven road or concrete patch
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- The tire pressure is low or a tire is damaged
- The braking system has been modified
- The vehicle makes abrupt lane changes

Information

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" and "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)" section in this chapter.

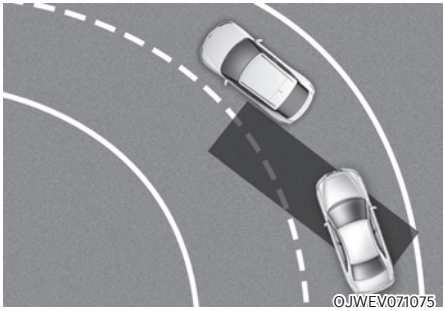
WARNING

- **Driving on a curved road**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving on a curved road. The function may not detect the vehicle in the next lane.

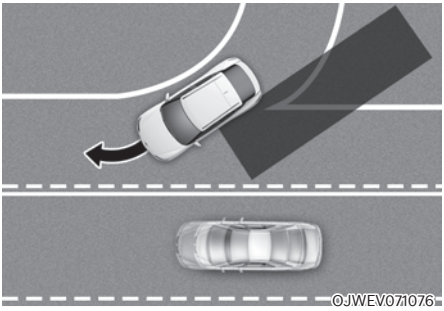
Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving on a curved road. The function may recognize a vehicle in the same lane.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.

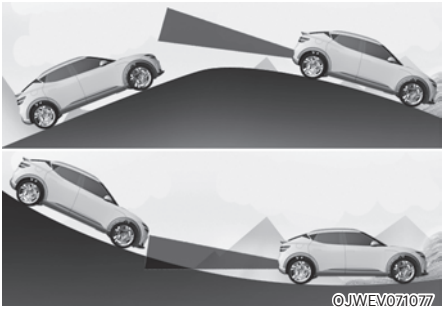
- **Driving where the road is merging/ dividing**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving where the road merges or divides. The function may not detect the vehicle in the next lane.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.

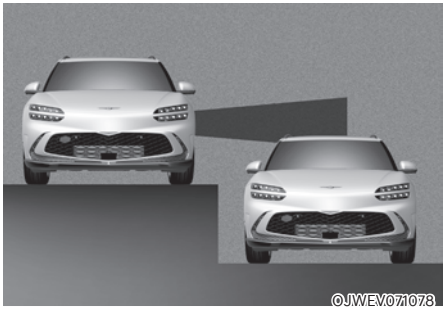
- **Driving on an inclined road**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving on a slope. The function may not detect the vehicle in the next lane or may incorrectly detect the ground or structure.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.

- **Driving where the heights of the lanes are different**



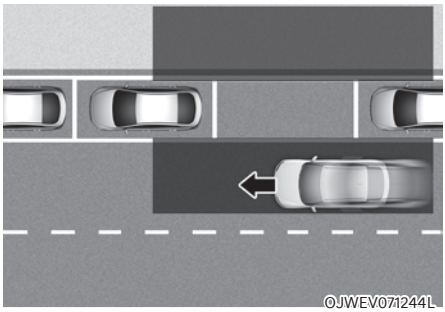
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving where the heights of the lanes are different. The function may not detect the vehicle on a road with different lane heights (underpass joining section, grade separated intersections, etc.).

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.

WARNING

- **When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, make sure that you turn off Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist.**
- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera or rear corner radars are initialized.**

SAFE EXIT WARNING (SEW) (IF EQUIPPED)



After the vehicle stops, when an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected after a passenger opens the door, Safe Exit Warning will warn the driver with a warning message and an audible warning to help prevent a collision.

CAUTION

Warning timing may vary depending on the speed of the approaching vehicle.

Detecting sensor

[1]: Rear corner radar

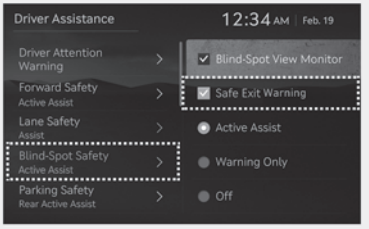
Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the rear corner radars, refer to “Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCA)” section in this chapter.

Safe Exit Warning settings

Setting features



OJWEV071245L

Safe Exit Warning

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Blind-Spot Safety → Safe Exit Warning' from the Settings menu to turn on Safe Exit Warning and deselect to turn off the function.

WARNING

The driver should always be aware of his or her surroundings. If 'Safe Exit Warning' is deselected, Safe Exit Warning cannot assist you.

Information

If the vehicle is restarted, Safe Exit Warning will maintain the last setting.

OJWEV072442L

Warning Methods

With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the Warning Volume.

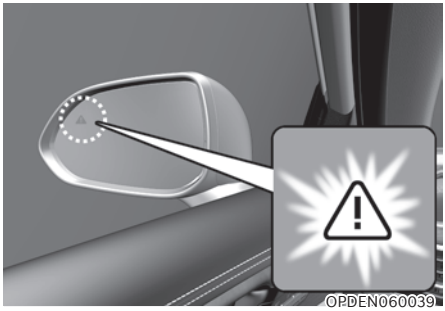
If 'Driving Safety Priority' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the warning sounds.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**

Safe Exit Warning operation

Safe Exit Warning



OPDEN060039

OJWEV052092

OJWEV071022L

Collision warning when exiting vehicle

- When an approaching vehicle from the rear is detected at the moment a door is opened, the ‘Watch (out) for traffic’ warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound. The warning light on the outside rearview mirror or digital side mirror (if equipped)
- Safe Exit Warning will warn the driver when your vehicle speed is below 3 km/h (2 mph), and the speed of the approaching vehicle from the rear is above 6 km/h (4 mph).

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Safe Exit Warning:

- **For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.**
- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Safe Exit Warning's warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Safe Exit Warning if the surrounding is noisy.**
- **Safe Exit Warning does not operate in all situations or cannot prevent all collisions.**
- **Safe Exit Warning may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions. Always check vehicle surroundings.**
- **The driver and passengers are responsible for accidents that occurs while exiting the vehicle. Always check the surroundings before you exit the vehicle.**
- **Never deliberately operate Safe Exit Warning. Doing so may lead to serious injury or death.**
- **Safe Exit Warning does not operate if there is a problem with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist. The warning message of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will appear when:**
  - **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist sensor or the sensor surrounding is polluted or covered**
  - **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist fails to warn passengers or falsely warn passengers**

Information

After the vehicle is turned off, Safe Exit Warning operates approximately for 3 minutes, but turns off immediately if the doors are locked.

Safe Exit Warning malfunction and limitations

Safe Exit Warning malfunction

OJWEV071019L

When Safe Exit Warning is not working properly, the ‘Check Blind-Spot Safety system(s)’ warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

■ Type A

OJWEV071021L

■ Type B

OJWEV071292L

When the outside rearview mirror warning light is not working properly, the ‘Check side view mirror warning light’ (or ‘Check outside mirror warning icon’) warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Safe Exit Warning disabled

OTM070098N

When the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, or installing a trailer or carrier, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Safe Exit Warning.

If this occurs, the 'Blind-Spot Safety system(s) disabled. Radar blocked' warning message will appear on the cluster.

Safe Exit Warning will operate properly when such foreign material or trailer, etc., is removed, and then the vehicle is restarted.

If Safe Exit Warning does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Safe Exit Warning may not properly operate.**
- **Safe Exit Warning may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain) where any objects are not detected right after the vehicle is turned on, or when the detecting sensor is blocked with foreign material right after the vehicle is turned on.**

CAUTION

Turn off Safe Exit Warning to install or remove a trailer, carrier, or another attachment. Turn on Safe Exit Warning when finished.

Limitations of Safe Exit Warning

Safe Exit Warning may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Getting out of the vehicle where trees or grass are overgrown
- Getting out of the vehicle where the road is wet
- The approaching vehicle is very fast or very slow

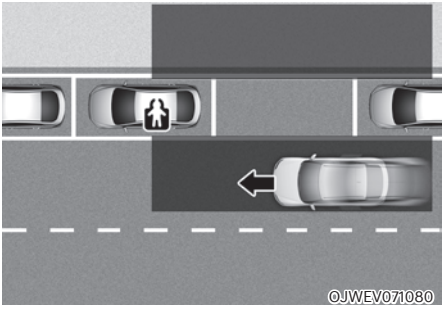
Information

For more details on the limitations of the rear corner radar, refer to “Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)” section in this chapter.

WARNING

- **Safe Exit Warning may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Safe Exit Warning may not operate for 3 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the rear corner radars are initialized.**

SAFE EXIT ASSIST (SEA) (IF EQUIPPED)



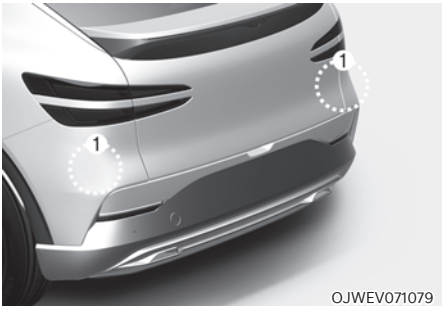
After the vehicle stops, when an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected after a passenger opens the door, Safe Exit Assist will warn the driver with a warning message and an audible warning to help prevent a collision.

In addition, when the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position and an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected, the electronic child safety lock button will not unlock even if the driver presses the button to prevent the rear doors from opening.

CAUTION

Warning timing may vary depending on the speed of the approaching vehicle.

Detecting sensor



[1]: Rear corner radar

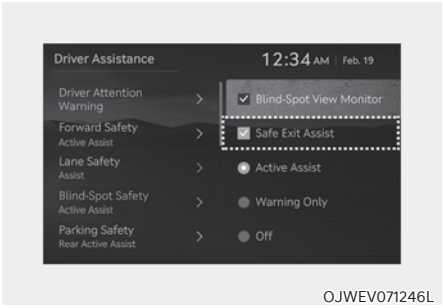
Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the rear corner radars, refer to “Blind-Spot Collision Assist (BCA)” section in this chapter.

Safe Exit Assist settings

Setting features



OJWEV071246L

Safe Exit Assist

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Blind-Spot Safety → Safe Exit Assist' from the Settings menu to turn on Safe Exit Assist and deselect to turn off the function.

WARNING

The driver should always be aware that unexpected and sudden situations can occur. If 'Safe Exit Assist' is deselected, Safe Exit Assist cannot assist you.

Information

If the vehicle is restarted, Safe Exit Assist will maintain the last setting.

OJWEV072442L

Warning Methods

With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the Warning Volume.

If 'Driving Safety Priority' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the warning sounds.

Information

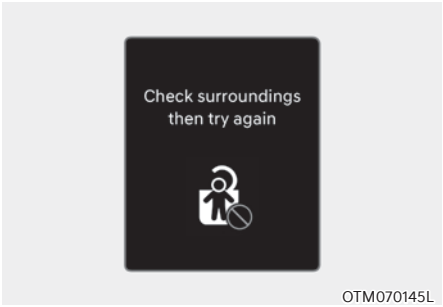
- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**

Safe Exit Assist operation

Warning and control

Collision warning when exiting vehicle

- When an approaching vehicle from the rear is detected at the moment a door is opened, the 'Watch (out) for traffic' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound. The warning light on the outside rearview mirror or digital side mirror (if equipped)
- Safe Exit Assist will warn the driver when your vehicle speed is below 3 km/h (2 mph), and the speed of the approaching vehicle from the rear is above 6 km/h (4 mph).



OTM070145L

Safe Exit Assist linked with Electronic child safety lock

- When Electric child safety lock is operating and an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected, the rear doors cannot be unlocked even if the driver tries to unlock the rear doors using the electronic child safety lock button. The warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink and 'Check surroundings then try again' warning message will appear on the cluster.
- Safe Exit Assist will warn the driver when vehicle speed is below 3 km/h (2 mph) and the speed of the approaching vehicle from the rear is above 6 km/h (4 mph).
- For more details on electric child safety lock button, refer to "Electronic Child Safety Lock" section in chapter 5.

CAUTION

If the driver presses the electronic child lock button again within 10 seconds after the warning message appears, Safe Exit Assist judges that the driver has unlocked the doors acknowledging the rear status. The electronic child safety lock will turn off (button indicator OFF) and the rear doors will unlock. Always check the surroundings before turning off the electronic child safety lock button.

Information

If a rear door is opened from the outside, it will open regardless of Safe Exit Assist operation.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Safe Exit Assist:

- **For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.**
- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Safe Exit Assist warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Safe Exit Assist if the surrounding is noisy.**
- **Safe Exit Assist does not operate in all situations or cannot prevent all collisions.**

- **Safe Exit Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions. Always check vehicle surroundings.**
- **The driver and passengers are responsible for accidents that occurs while exiting the vehicle. Always check the surroundings before you exit the vehicle.**
- **Never deliberately operate Safe Exit Assist. Doing so may lead to serious injury or death.**
- **Safe Exit Assist does not operate if there is a problem with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist. The warning message of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will appear when:**
  - **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist sensor or the sensor surrounding is polluted or covered**
  - **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist fails to warn passengers or falsely warn passengers**

Information

After the vehicle is turned off, Safe Exit Assist operates approximately for 3 minutes, but turns off immediately if the doors are locked.

Safe Exit Assist malfunction and limitations

Safe Exit Assist malfunction

OJWEV071019L

When Safe Exit Assist is not working properly, the 'Check Blind-Spot Safety system(s)' warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

■ Type A

OJWEV071021L

■ Type B

OJWEV071292L

When the outside rearview mirror warning light is not working properly, the ‘Check side view mirror warning light’ (or ‘Check outside mirror warning icon’) warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Safe Exit Assist disabled

OTM070098N

When the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, or installing a trailer or carrier, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Safe Exit Assist.

If this occurs, the ‘Blind-Spot Safety system(s) disabled. Radar blocked’ warning message will appear on the cluster.

Safe Exit Assist will operate properly when such foreign material or trailer, etc., is removed, and then the vehicle is restarted.

If Safe Exit Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Safe Exit Assist may not properly operate.**
- **Safe Exit Assist may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain) where any objects are not detected right after the vehicle is turned on, or when the detecting sensor is blocked with foreign material right after the vehicle is turned on.**

CAUTION

Turn off Safe Exit Assist to install or remove a trailer, carrier, or another attachment. Turn on Safe Exit Assist when finished.

Limitations of Safe Exit Assist

Safe Exit Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Getting out of the vehicle where trees or grass are overgrown
- Getting out of the vehicle where the road is wet
- The approaching vehicle is very fast or very slow

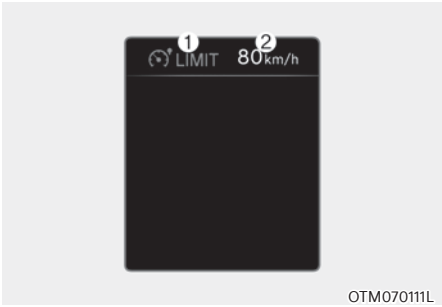
Information

For more details on the limitations of the rear corner radar, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)" section in this chapter.

WARNING

- **Safe Exit Assist may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Safe Exit Assist may not operate for 3 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the rear corner radars are initialized.**

MANUAL SPEED LIMIT ASSIST (MSLA)



OTM070111L

(1) Speed Limit indicator

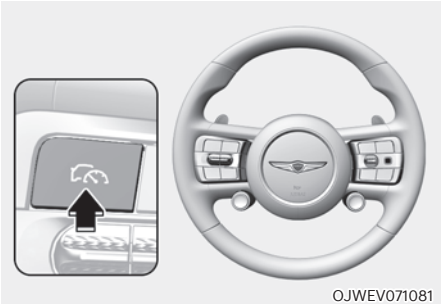
(2) Set speed

You can set the speed limit when you do not want to drive over a specific speed.

If you drive over the preset speed limit, Manual Speed Limit Assist operates (set speed limit will blink and chime will sound) until the vehicle speed returns within the speed limit.

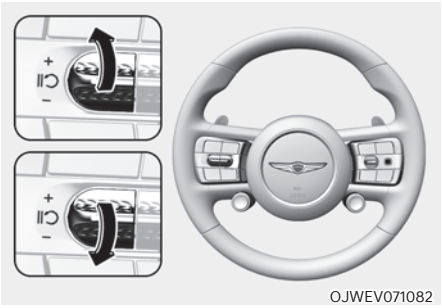
Manual Speed Limit Assist operation

Setting speed limit



OJWEV071081

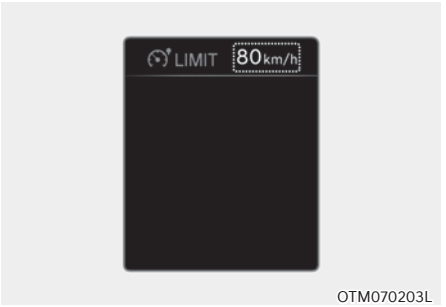
1. Press and hold Driving Assist ( ) button at the desired speed. The Speed Limit (LIMIT) indicator will illuminate on the cluster.



OJWEV071082

2. Push the + switch up or - switch down, and release it at the desired speed.

   Push the + switch up or - switch down and hold it. The speed will increase or decrease to the nearest multiple of ten (multiple of five in mph) at first, and then increase or decrease by 10 km/h (5 mph).



OTM070203L

3. The set speed limit will be displayed on the cluster.

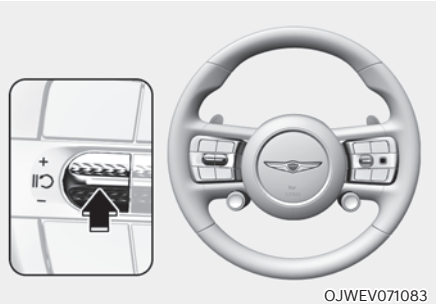
   If you would like to drive over the preset speed limit, depress the accelerator pedal beyond the pressure point to activate the kickdown mechanism.

   The set speed limit will blink and chime will sound until you return the vehicle speed within the speed limit.

Information

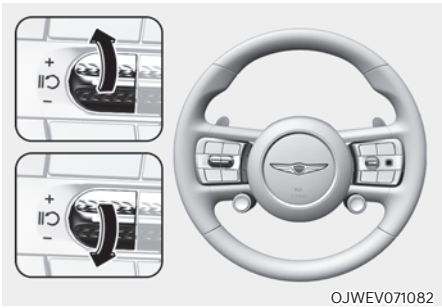
- **When the accelerator pedal is not depressed beyond the pressure point, vehicle speed will maintain within the speed limit.**
- **A clicking sound may be heard from the kickdown mechanism when the accelerator pedal is depressed beyond the pressure point.**

Temporarily pausing Manual Speed Limit Assist


OJWEV071083

Press the II↺ switch to temporarily pause the set speed limit. The set speed limit will turn off but the Speed Limit (LIMIT) indicator will stay on.

Resuming Manual Speed Limit Assist

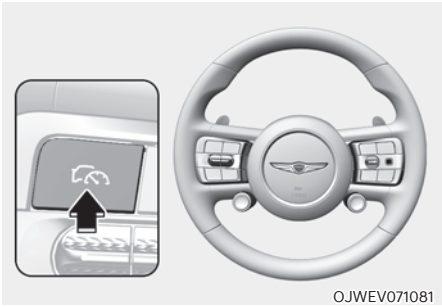


To resume Manual Speed Limit Assist after the function was paused, operate the +, -, II↻ switch.

If you push the + switch up or – switch down, vehicle speed will be set to the current speed on the cluster.

If you press the II↻ switch, vehicle speed will resume to the preset speed.

Turning off Manual Speed Limit Assist



Press the Driving Assist (🚗) button to turn Manual Speed Limit Assist off. The Speed Limit (LIMIT) indicator will go off.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Manual Speed Limit Assist:

- **Always set the vehicle speed under the applicable speed limit.**
- **Keep Manual Speed Limit Assist off when the function is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed. Check that the Speed Limit (LIMIT) indicator is off.**
- **Manual Speed Limit Assist does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely and should always be aware of unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMIT ASSIST (ISLA) (IF EQUIPPED)

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist uses information from the detected road sign and navigation system to inform the driver of the speed limit and additional information of the current road. Also, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist helps the driver to maintain within the speed limit of the road.

CAUTION

- **Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly can more information be provided this is a very general statement.**
- **If a navigation is applied to your vehicle, the navigation needs to be regularly updated for Intelligent Speed Limit Assist to operate properly.**

Detecting sensor

[1]: Front view camera

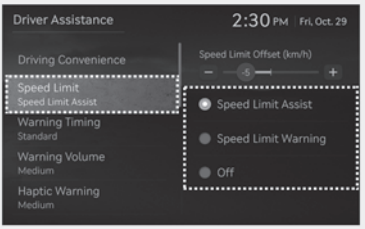
Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist settings

Speed Limit



OJWEV071247L

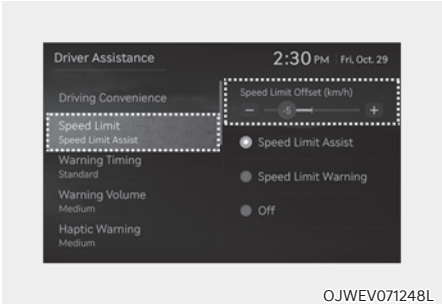
With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Speed Limit' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If 'Speed Limit Assist' is selected, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will inform the driver of speed limit and additional road signs. In addition, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will inform the driver to change set speed of Manual Speed Limit Assist and/or Smart Cruise Control to help the driver stay within the speed limit.
- If 'Speed Limit Warning' is selected, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will inform the driver of speed limit and additional road signs. In addition, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will warn the driver when the vehicle is driven faster than the speed limit.
- If 'Off' is selected, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will turn off.

WARNING

When the vehicle is restarted, Speed Limit Warning will automatically turn on.

Speed Limit Offset



OJWEV071248L

With the vehicle on, when 'Driver Assistance → Speed Limit → Speed Limit Offset' is selected, the Speed Limit Offset can be changed. Speed Limit Warning and Speed Limit Assist will operate by applying the Speed Limit Offset setting to the detected speed limit.

WARNING

- **For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.**
- **Speed Limit Assist function operates based on the Offset setting added to the speed limit. If you want to change the set speed according to the speed limit, adjust the offset to '0'.**
- **Speed Limit Warning function warns the driver when driving speed exceeds the speed at which the set Offset is added to speed limit. If you want Speed Limit Warning to warn you immediately when the driving speed exceeds the speed limit, adjust the offset to '0'.**

Information

The setting of 'Speed Offset' is not reflected in Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC).

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operation

Warning and control

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will warn and control the vehicle by 'Displaying speed limit', 'Warning overspeed' and 'Changing set speed'.

Information

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist warning and control are described based on the Offset adjust to '0'. For details on Offset setting, refer to the "Intelligent Speed Limit Assist Settings".

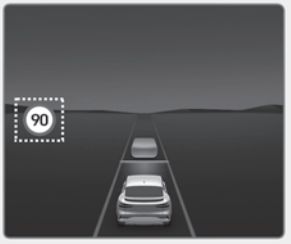
OJWEV071249L

Displaying speed limit

Speed limit information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Information

- **If speed limit information of the road cannot be recognized, '---' sign will be displayed. Please refer to "Limitations of Intelligent Speed Limit Assist" if the road signs are difficult to recognize.**
- **Intelligent Speed Limit Assist provides additional road sign information in addition to speed limit. The additional road sign information provided may vary according to your country.**
- **Supplementary sign displayed under the speed limit or overtaking restriction sign means the conditions under which the signs must be followed. If the supplementary sign is not recognized, it is displayed as blank.**
- **The images and colors in the cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.**



OJWEV071250L

Warning overspeed

When driving at a speed higher than the displayed speed limit, the red speed limit indicator will blink.

ORG3EV072032AU

OJWEV072457L

Changing set speed

If the speed limit of the road changes during the operation of Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control, an arrow in the direction of up or down is displayed to inform the driver that the set speed needs to be changed. At this time, the driver can change the set speed according to the speed limit by using the + or – switch on the steering wheel.

WARNING

- **If the Offset is adjusted over '0', the set speed will change to a higher speed than the speed limit of the road. If you want to drive below the speed limit, adjust the Offset under '0' or use the – switch on the steering wheel to lower the set speed.**
- **Even after changing the set speed according to the speed limit of the road, the vehicle can still be driven over the speed limit. If necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed.**
- **If the speed limit of the road is under 30 km/h (20 mph), the set speed change function will not work.**
- **Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operates using the speed unit in the instrument cluster set by the driver. If the speed unit is set to a unit other than the speed unit used in your country, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly.**

Information

- **For more details on Manual Speed Limit Assist operation, refer to "Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)" section in this chapter.**
- **For more details on Smart Cruise Control operation, refer to "Smart Cruise Control (SCC)" section in this chapter.**

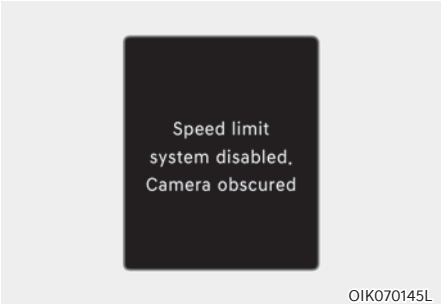
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction and limitations

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction

OJWEV071025L

When Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is not working properly, the 'Check speed limit system' warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist disabled



OIK070145L

When the front windshield where the front view camera is located is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Intelligent Speed Limit Assist. If this occurs, the 'Speed limit system disabled. Camera obscured' warning message will appear on the cluster.

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed.

If Intelligent Speed Limit Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

If the detecting sensor is contaminated immediately after starting the vehicle, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly.

Limitations of Intelligent Speed Limit Assist

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The road sign is contaminated or indistinguishable
  - The road sign is difficult to see due to bad weather, such as rain, snow, fog, etc.
  - The road sign is not clear or damaged
  - The road sign is partially obscured by surrounding objects or shadow
  - A road sign near the road you are driving is detected
- The road signs do not conform to the standards below:
  - The text or picture on the road sign is different from the standard
  - The road sign is installed between the main line and the exit road or between diverging roads
  - There is no conditional road signs on the road sign located on the exit road
  - A sign is attached to another vehicle
- The distance between the vehicle and the road signs is too far
- The vehicle encounters illuminant road signs

- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist incorrectly recognizes numbers or pictures in the street signs or other signs as the speed limit
- A road sign near the road you are driving is detected
- Multiple signs are installed close together
- The minimum speed limit sign is misrecognize
- The minimum speed limit sign is on the road
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel or passing under a bridge
- Headlamps are not used or the brightness of the headlamps are weak at night or in the tunnel
- Road signs are difficult to recognize due to the reflection of sunlight, street lights, or oncoming vehicles
- The navigation information or GPS information contain errors.
- The driver does not follow the guide of the navigation.
- The driver is driving a new road that is not in the navigation system yet.
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Driving on a road that is sharply curved or continuously curved
- Driving through speed bumps, or driving up and down or left to right on steep inclines
- The vehicle is shaking heavily
- Driving on a newly opened road

WARNING

- **Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is a supplemental function that helps the driver to comply with the speed limit on the road, and may not display the correct speed limit or control the driving speed properly.**
- **Always set the vehicle speed to the speed limit in your country.**
- **Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera is initialized.**

Information

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to “Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)” section in this chapter.

DRIVER ATTENTION WARNING (DAW)

Basic function

Driver Attention Warning can help determine the driver's attention level by analyzing driving pattern and driving time while the vehicle is driven. Driver Attention Warning will recommend a break when the driver's attention level falls below a certain level.

Leading vehicle departure alert function

Leading Vehicle Departure Alert function will inform the driver when a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop.

Detecting sensor

[1]: Front view camera

The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to help detect driving patterns and front vehicle departure while vehicle is being driven.

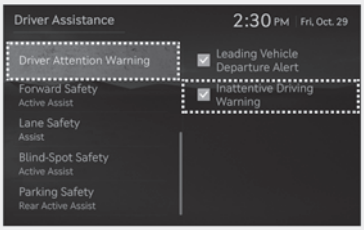
Refer to the picture above for the detected location of the detecting sensor.

CAUTION

- **Always keep the front view camera in good condition to maintain optimal performance of Driver Attention Warning.**
- **For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.**

Driver Attention Warning settings

Setting features



OJWEV071251L

Driver Attention Warning

With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Driver Attention Warning (or DAW (Driver Attention Warning))' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If 'Inattentive Driving Warning' is selected, Driver Attention Warning will inform the driver the driver's attention level and will recommend taking a break when the level falls below a certain level.

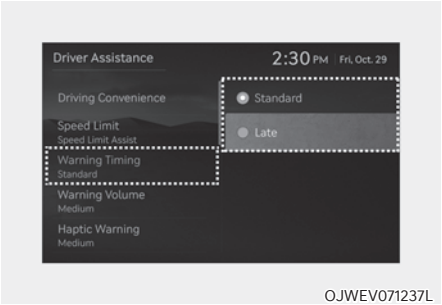
Information

Whenever the vehicle is turned on, Inattentive Driving Warning will always turn on. (For Europe, Australia, Russia)

OJWEV072252L

Leading Vehicle Departure Alert

- If 'Leading Vehicle Departure Alert' is selected, the function will inform the driver when a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop.



OJWEV071237L

Warning Timing

With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Timing' from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist. The warning time can be set to either 'Standard (Normal)' or 'Late (Later)'.

- Use 'Standard (Normal)' in normal driving conditions. If the Warning Timing seems sensitive, change it to 'Late (Later)'.
- If 'Late (Later)' is selected, Forward Collision Avoidance Assist, warns the driver more slowly.

Information

If the vehicle is restarted, Driver Attention Warning will maintain the last setting.

Driver Attention Warning operation

Basic function

Display and warning

The basic function of Driver Attention Warning is to warn the driver 'Consider taking a break'.

OTM070105L

Taking a break

- The 'Consider taking a break' message will appear on the cluster and an audible warning will sound to suggest that the driver take a break, when the driver's attention level is below 1.
- Driver Attention Warning will not suggest a break when the total driving time is shorter than 10 minutes or 10 minutes has not passed after the last break was suggested.
- A break is suggested when your vehicle speed is between approximately 0~210 km/h (6~130 mph).

WARNING

For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.

CAUTION

- **Driver Attention Warning may suggest a break depending on the driver's driving pattern or habits, even if the driver doesn't feel fatigue.**
- **Driver Attention Warning is a supplemental function and may not be able to determine whether the driver is inattentive.**
- **The driver who feels fatigued should take a break at a safe location, even though there is no break suggestion by Driver Attention Warning.**

Information

- **For more details on setting the functions in the infotainment system Vehicle Settings, refer to "Vehicle Settings" section in chapter 4.**
- **Driver Attention Warning resets in the following situations:**
  - **The vehicle is turned off**
  - **The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the driver's door**
  - **The vehicle is stopped for more than 10 minutes**

Leading vehicle departure alert function

■ Type A

OJWEV071030L

■ Type B

OJWEV071253L

When a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert will inform the driver by displaying the 'Leading vehicle is driving away' (or 'Leading vehicle is driving on') message on the cluster and an audible warning will sound.

WARNING

- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.**
- **The driver should hold the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle.**

CAUTION

- **Leading Vehicle Departure Alert is a supplemental function and may not alert the driver whenever the front vehicle departs from a stop.**
- **Always check the front of the vehicle and road conditions before departure.**

Information

The images and colors in the cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.

Driver Attention Warning malfunction and limitations

Driver Attention Warning malfunction

OJWEV071254L

When Driver Attention Warning is not working properly, the 'Check Driver Attention Warning (DAW) system' warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

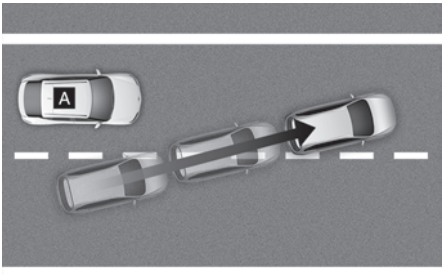
Limitations of Driver Attention Warning

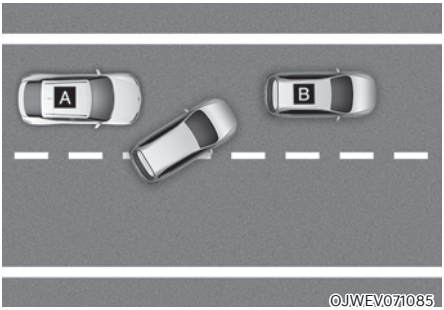
Driver Attention Warning may not work properly in the following situations:

- The vehicle is driven violently
- The vehicle intentionally crosses over lanes frequently
- The vehicle is controlled by Driver Assistance system, such as Lane Keeping Assist

Leading vehicle departure alert function

- When the vehicle cuts in

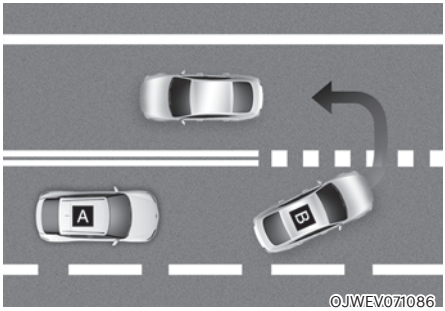




[A]: Your vehicle, [B]: Front vehicle

If a vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, Leading Departure Alert may not operate properly.

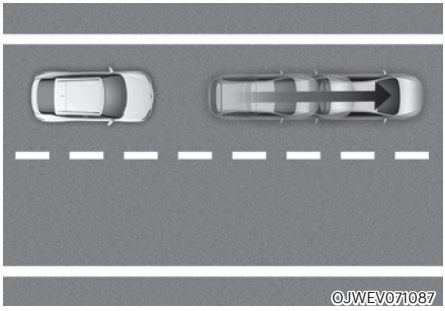
- When the vehicle ahead sharply steers



[A]: Your vehicle, [B]: Front vehicle

If the vehicle in front makes a sharp turn, such as to turn left or right or make a U-turn, etc., Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When the vehicle ahead abruptly departures

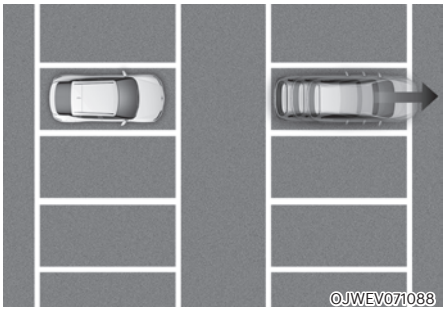


If the vehicle in front abruptly departures, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When a pedestrian or bicycle is between you and the vehicle ahead

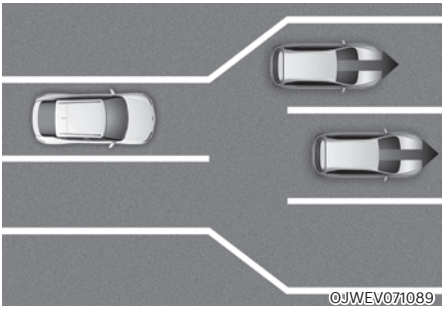
If there is a pedestrian(s) or bicycle(s) in between you and the vehicle in front, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When in a parking lot



If a vehicle parked in front drives away from you, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may alert you that the parked vehicle is driving away.

- When driving at a tollgate or intersection, etc.



If you pass a tollgate or intersection with lots of vehicles or you drive where lanes are merged or divided frequently, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

Information

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to “Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)” section in this chapter.

BLIND-SPOT VIEW MONITOR (BVM) (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Left side

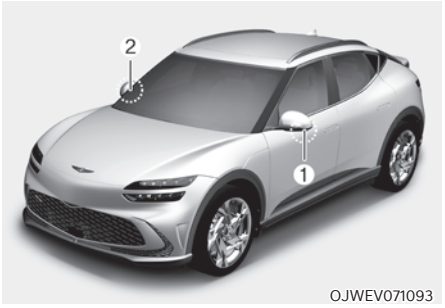
OJWEV072091

■ Right side

OJWEV072092

Blind-Spot View Monitor displays the rear blind spot area of the vehicle in the cluster when the turn signal is turned on to help safely change lanes.

Detecting sensor



OJWEV071093

[1], [2]: Surround-side view camera (camera located at bottom of the mirror)

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

Blind-Spot View Monitor settings

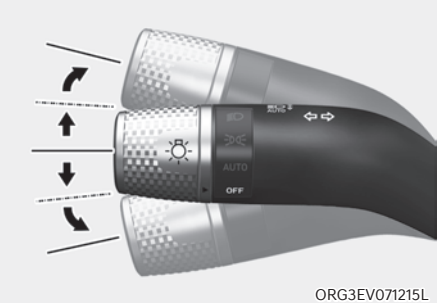
Setting features

Blind-Spot View

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Blind-Spot Safety → Blind-Spot View' from the Settings menu to turn on Blind-Spot View Monitor and deselect to turn off the function.

Blind-Spot View Monitor operation

Operating switch



ORG3EV071215L

Turn signal switch

Blind-Spot View Monitor will turn on and off when the turn signal is turned on and off.

Blind-Spot View Monitor

Operating conditions

When the left or right side turn signal turns on, the image in that direction is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Off conditions

- When the turn signal turns off, the image on the instrument cluster will turn off.
- When the hazard warning flasher is on, Blind-Spot View Monitor will turn off, regardless of the turn signal status.
- When other important warning is displayed on the instrument cluster, Blind-Spot View Monitor may turn off.

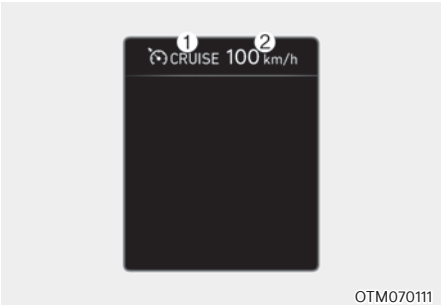
Blind-Spot View Monitor malfunction

When Blind-Spot View Monitor is not working properly, or the cluster display flickers, or the camera image does not display properly, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Brand products.

WARNING

- **The image shown on the cluster may differ from the actual distance of the object. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Blind-Spot View Monitor may not operate properly.**

CRUISE CONTROL (CC) (IF EQUIPPED)



OTM070111

(1) Cruise indicator

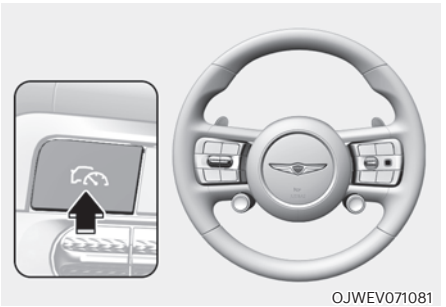
(2) Set speed

Cruise Control will allow you to drive at speeds above 30 km/h (20 mph) without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Cruise Control operation

Setting speed

1. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 30 km/h (20 mph).



OJWEV071081

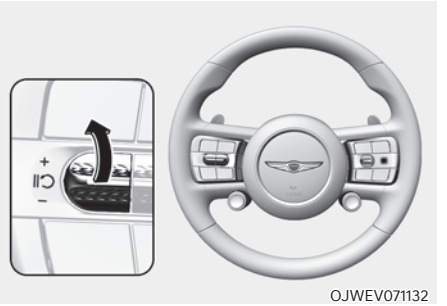
2. Press the Driving Assist button at the desired speed. The set speed and Cruise (CRUISE) indicator will illuminate on the cluster.
3. Release the accelerator pedal.

   Vehicle speed will maintain the set speed even when the accelerator pedal is not depressed.

Information

- **The vehicle may slightly slow down or speed up while driving uphill or downhill.**
- **The Driving Assist button symbol may vary depending on your vehicle option.**

Increasing set speed

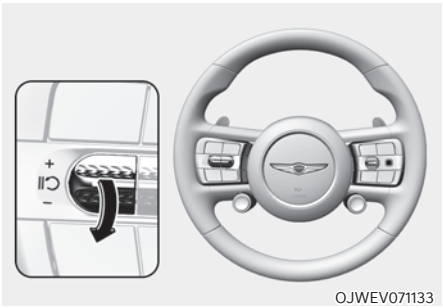


OJWEV071132

- Push the + switch up and release it immediately. The set speed will increase by 1 km/h (1 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.
- Push the + switch up and hold it while monitoring the set speed on the cluster. The set speed will increase to the nearest multiple of ten (multiple of five in mph) at first, and then increase by 10 km/h (5 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.

  Release the switch when the desired speed is shown and the vehicle will accelerate to that speed.

Decreasing set speed



- Push the - switch down and release it immediately. The set speed will decrease by 1 km/h (1 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.
- Push the - switch down and hold it while monitoring the set speed on the cluster. The set speed will decrease to the nearest multiple of ten (multiple of five in mph) at first, and then decrease by 10 km/h (5 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner. Release the switch at the speed you want to maintain.

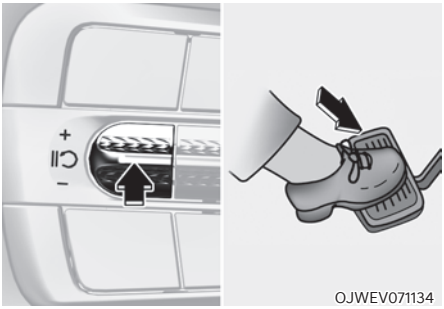
Accelerating temporarily

If you want to speed up temporarily when Cruise Control is on, depress the accelerator pedal.

To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If you push the + switch up or – switch down at increased speed, the set speed will be set to the current increased speed.

Temporarily pausing Cruise Control



Cruise Control will be paused when:

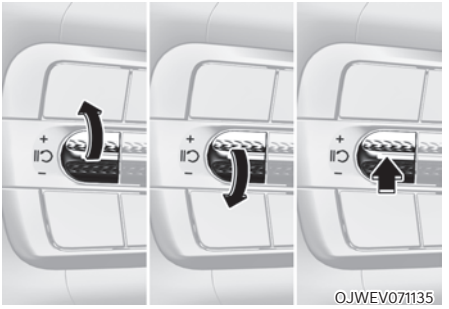
- Depressing the brake pedal.
- Pressing the II↺ switch.
- Shifting the gear to N (Neutral).
- Decreasing vehicle speed to less than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is operating.
- Downshifting to 2nd gear when in Manual Shift mode.

The set speed will turn off but the Cruise (CRUISE) indicator will stay on.

NOTICE

If Cruise Control pauses during a situation that is not mentioned, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Resuming Cruise Control

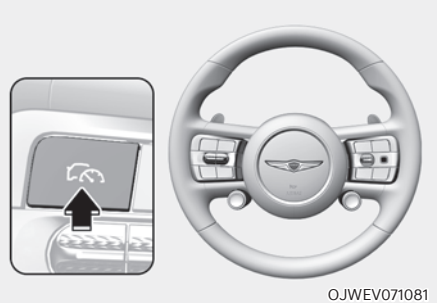


Operate the +, - or ⏸↺ switch. If you push the + switch up or – switch down, vehicle speed will be set to the current speed on the cluster. If you press the ⏸↺ switch, vehicle speed will resume to the preset speed.The vehicle speed must be above 30 km/h (20 mph) for Cruise Control to resume.

WARNING

Check the driving condition before using the ⏸↺ switch. Driving speed may sharply increase or decrease when you press the ⏸↺ switch.

Turning off Cruise Control



Press the Driving Assist button to turn Cruise Control off. The Cruise (CRUISE) indicator will go off.Always press the Driving Assist button to turn Cruise Control off when not in use.

Information

If your vehicle is equipped with Manual Speed Limit Assist, press and hold the Driving Assist button to turn off Cruise Control. However, Manual Speed Limit Assist will turn on.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Cruise Control:

- **Always set the vehicle speed under the speed limit in your country.**
- **Keep Cruise Control off when the system is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed. Check that the Cruise (CRUISE) indicator is off.**
- **Cruise Control does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely and should always be aware of unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **Do not use Cruise Control when it may be unsafe to keep the vehicle at a constant speed:**
  - **When driving in heavy traffic, or when traffic conditions make it difficult to drive at a constant speed**
  - **When driving on rainy, icy, or snow-covered roads**
  - **When driving on hilly or windy roads**
  - **When driving in windy areas**
  - **When driving with limited view (possibly due to bad weather, such as fog, snow, rain and sandstorm)**
- **Do not use Cruise Control when towing a trailer.**

SMART CRUISE CONTROL (SCC)

Smart Cruise Control is designed to help detect the vehicle ahead and help maintain the desired speed and minimum distance between the vehicle ahead.

Overtaking Acceleration Assist

While Smart Cruise Control is operating, if the function judges that the driver is determined to overtake the vehicle in front, acceleration will be assisted.

Based on Driving Style (if equipped)

Smart Cruise Control will operate based on driving style, such as inter-vehicle distance, acceleration, reaction speed.

Detecting sensor

[1]: Front view camera, [2]: Front radar
[3]: Front corner radar (if equipped)

The front view camera and front radar are used as a detecting sensor to help detect vehicles in front.

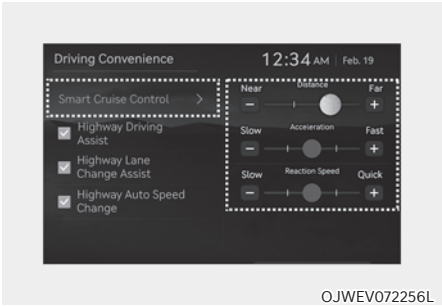
Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

CAUTION

Always keep the front view camera and front radar in good condition to maintain optimal performance of Smart Cruise Control.

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera and front radar, refer to “Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)” section in this chapter.

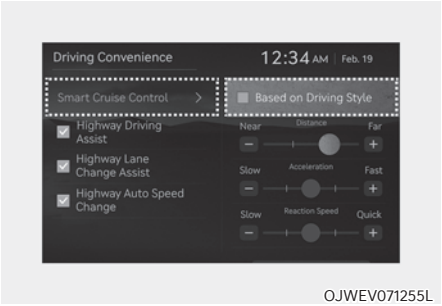
Smart Cruise Control settings



OJWEV072256L

Smart Cruise Control (if equipped)

With the vehicle on, if 'Driver Assistance → Driving Convenience → Smart Cruise Control' is selected from the Settings menu, you can chagne the vehicle distance, the acceleration, the reaction speed.



OJWEV071255L

Based on Driving Style (if equipped)

With the vehicle on, if 'Driver Assistance → Driving Convenience → Smart Cruise Control' is selected from the Settings menu, Smart Cruise Control will operate based on the driver's driving style. Driving style can be change manually, such as vehicle distance, acceleration, reaction speed.

Information

- **If equipped with Based on Driving Style, ‘Based on Driving Style’ can be selected from the settings menu by selecting ‘Driver Assistance → Smart Cruise Control’**
- **While Smart Cruise Control is operating with ‘Driving Style Settings’ selected, if you press and hold the Vehicle Distance ( ) button, 'Driving Style Settings' will change deactivated. If you press and hold the Vehicle Distance ( ) button again, 'Driving Style Setting' will activated.**
- **The driver’s driving style continuously learned and reflected from while the driver drives the vehicle.**

- **When driver's driving style is deactivated, the driver's driving style such as vehicle distance, acceleration, reaction speed will maintain in the same stage as Based on Driving Style.**
- **Even if the steps of the driver's driving style such as vehicle distance, acceleration, reaction speed displayed when the Base on Driving Style is activated or deactivated are the same, the driving style to be controlled may be differently.**

■ Type A

OJWEV072186L

■ Type B

OJWEV072441L

Warning Methods

Type A: With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the Warning Volume.

Type B: With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Haptic Warning' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to activate steering wheel vibration.

If 'Driving Safety Priority' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the warning sounds.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**
- **With the Warning Volume in level 0, if you deselect or adjust the Haptic Warning to level 0, the Warning Volume will be automatically adjusted to volume level 2.**
- **With the Haptic Warning deselected or in level 0, if you adjust the Warning Volume to level 0, the Haptic Warning will be selected or automatically adjusted to volume level 2.**

Smart Cruise Control operation

Operating conditions

Smart Cruise Control operates when the following conditions are satisfied.

Basic function

- The gear is in D (Drive)
- The driver's door is closed
- EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is not applied
- Your vehicle speed is within the operating speed range
  - 10-200 km/h (5-120 mph): when there is no vehicle in front
  - 0-200 km/h (0-120 mph): when there is a vehicle in front
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or ABS is on
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or ABS is not controlling the vehicle
- Your vehicle is not power down ()
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist brake control is not operating
- Remote Smart Parking Assist brake control is not operating (if equipped)
- Hands-off warning for Lane Keeping Assist and Highway Driving Assist is off

Information

At a stop, if there is a vehicle in front of your vehicle, Smart Cruise Control turns on when the brake pedal is depressed

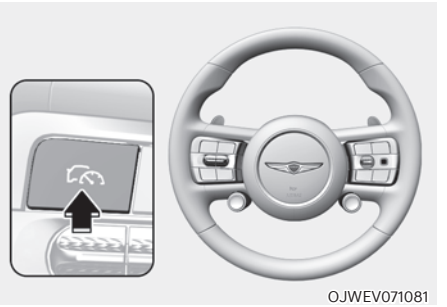
Overtaking Acceleration Assist

Overtaking Acceleration Assist operates when the turn signal indicator is turned on to the left (left-hand drive) or turned on to the right (right-hand drive) while Smart Cruise Control is operating, and the following conditions are satisfied:

- Your vehicle speed is above 60 km/h (40 mph)
- The hazard warning flasher is off
- A vehicle is detected in front of your vehicle
- Deceleration is not needed to maintain distance with the vehicle in front

WARNING

- **When the turn signal indicator is turned on to the left (left-hand drive) or turned on to the right (right-hand drive) while there is a vehicle ahead, the vehicle may accelerate temporarily. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **Regardless of the driving direction in your country, Overtaking Acceleration Assist will operate when the conditions are satisfied. When using the function in countries with different driving direction, always check the road conditions at all times.**



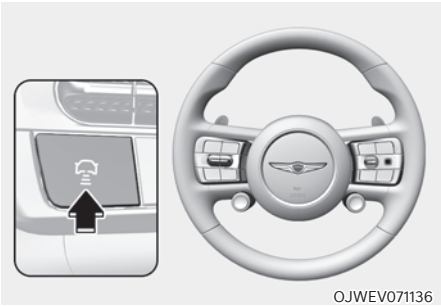
OJWEV071081

Turning on Smart Cruise Control

- Press the Driving Assist button to turn on Smart Cruise Control. The speed will be set to the current speed on the cluster.
- If there is no vehicle in front of you, the set speed will be maintained, but if there is a vehicle in front of you, the speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead. If the vehicle ahead accelerates, your vehicle will travel at a steady cruising speed after accelerating to the set speed.

Information

If your vehicle speed is between 0-30 km/h (0-20 mph) when you press the Driving Assist button, the Smart Cruise Control speed will be set to 30 km/h (20 mph).


OJWEV071136

Setting vehicle distance

Each time the button is pressed, the headway changes as follows:

Distance 4 → Distance 3 → Distance 2

Distance 1 ←

Information

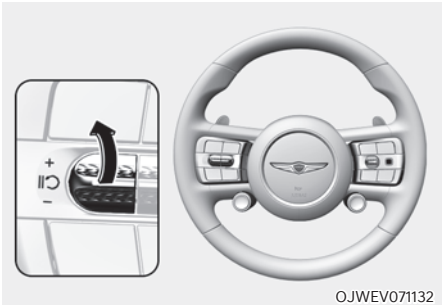
- **If you drive at 90 km/h (56 mph), the distance is maintained as follows:**

  Distance 4 - approximately 53 m (172 ft.)

  Distance 3 - approximately 40 m (130 ft.)

  Distance 2 - approximately 30 m (106 ft.)

  Distance 1 - approximately 25 m (82 ft.)
- **The distance is set to the last set distance when the vehicle is restarted, or when Smart Cruise Control was temporarily cancelled.**

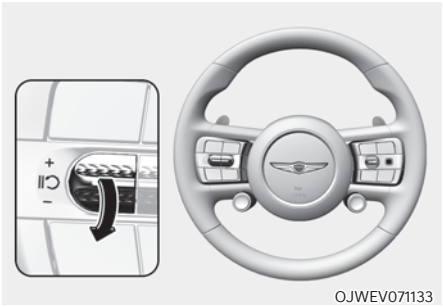

OJWEV071132

Increasing set speed

- Push the + switch up and release it immediately. The set speed will increase by 1 km/h (1 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.
- Push the + switch up and hold it while monitoring the set speed on the cluster. The set speed will increase by 10 km/h (5 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner. Release the switch when the desired speed is shown, and the vehicle will accelerate to that speed. You can increase the set speed to 200 km/h (120 mph).

WARNING

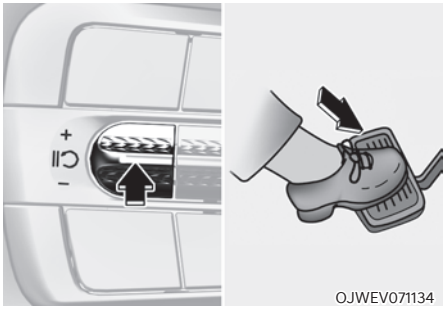
Check the driving condition before using the + switch. Driving speed may sharply increase when you push up and hold the + switch.


OJWEV071133

Decreasing set speed

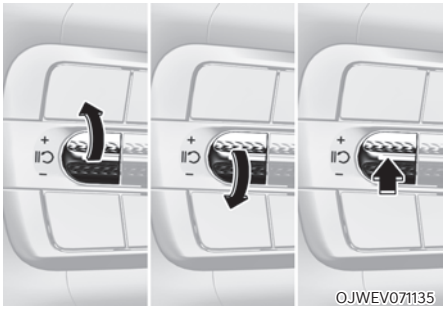
- Push the - switch down and release it immediately. The set speed will decrease by 1 km/h (1 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.
- Push the - switch down and hold it while monitoring the set speed on the cluster. The set speed will decrease by 10 km/h (5 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.

  Release the switch at the speed you want to maintain. You can decrease the set speed to 30 km/h (20 mph).


OJWEV071134

Temporarily cancelling Smart Cruise Control

Press the II↺ switch or depress the brake pedal to temporarily cancel Smart Cruise Control.


OJWEV071135

Resuming Smart Cruise Control

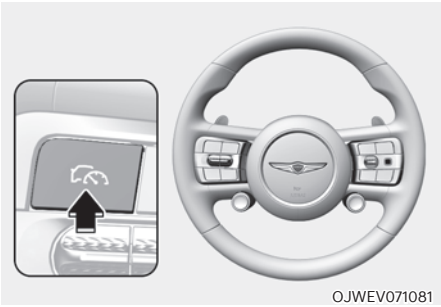
To resume Smart Cruise Control after the function was cancelled, operate the +, - or II↺ switch.

If you push the + switch up or - switch down, vehicle speed will be set to the current speed on the cluster.

If you push the II↺ switch, vehicle speed will resume to the preset speed.

WARNING

Check the driving condition before using the II↺ switch. Driving speed may sharply increase or decrease when you press the II↺ switch.


OJWEV071081

Turning off Smart Cruise Control

Press the Driving Assist (🚗) button to turn Smart Cruise Control off.

i Information

If your vehicle is equipped with Manual Speed Limit Assist, press and hold the Driving Assist (🚗) button to turn off Smart Cruise Control. However Manual Speed Limit Assist will turn on.

Display and control

You can see the status of the Smart Cruise Control operation in the Driving Assist view on the cluster. Refer to “View Modes” section in chapter 4.

Smart Cruise Control will be displayed as below depending on the status of the function.

■ Operating

OJWEV071028

■ Temporarily cancelled

OJWEV072294L

Basic function

- When operating

(1) Whether there is a vehicle ahead and the selected distance level

(2) Set speed

(3) Whether there is a vehicle ahead and the target vehicle distance

- When temporarily cancelled

(1) Your vehicle (shaded)

(2) Previous set speed (shaded)

(3) Vehicle ahead and distance level (shaded) (if equipped)

Information

- **The distance of the front vehicle on the cluster is displayed according to the actual distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.**
- **The target distance may vary according to the vehicle speed and the set distance level. If the vehicle speed is low, even though the vehicle distance have changed, the change of the target vehicle distance may be small.**
- **The images and colors in the cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.**

OJWEV071147

Accelerating temporarily

If you want to speed up temporarily without altering the set speed while Smart Cruise Control is operating, depress the accelerator pedal. While the accelerator pedal is depressed, the set speed, distance level and target distance will blink on the cluster.

However, if the accelerator pedal is depressed insufficiently, the vehicle may decelerate.

WARNING

Be careful when accelerating temporarily, because the speed and distance is not controlled automatically even if there is a vehicle in front of you.

OJWEV071295L

OJWEV071032

Based on Driving Style operating

When Based on Driving Style is operating, ‘Driving Style Adaptive SCC’ message will appear on the cluster for 2 seconds, and the distance level and target distance will be displayed based on the driving style.

■ Type A

OTM070113N

■ Type B

OTM070113L

Temporarily cancelling Smart Cruise Control

Smart Cruise Control will be temporarily cancelled automatically when:

- The vehicle speed is above 210 km/h (130 mph)
- The vehicle is stopped for a certain period of time
- The accelerator pedal is continuously depressed for a certain period of time
- The conditions for the Smart Cruise Control to operate is not satisfied

If Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled automatically, the ‘Smart Cruise Control cancelled’ (or ‘SCC (Smart Cruise Control) cancelled’) warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound to warn the driver.

Information

If Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled while the vehicle is at a standstill with the function activated, EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) maybe applied.

WARNING

When Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled, distance with the front vehicle will not be maintained. Always have your eyes on the road while driving, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

■ Type A

OTM070112N

■ Type B

OTM070112L

Smart Cruise Control conditions not satisfied

If the Driving Assist button, + switch, - switch or switch is pushed when Smart Cruise Control operating conditions are not satisfied, the ‘Smart Cruise Control conditions not met’ (or SCC (Smart Cruise Ctrl. conditions not met’) will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound.

OJWEV071037L

In traffic situation

In traffic, your vehicle will stop if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving, your vehicle will start as well. In addition, after the vehicle has stopped and a certain time have passed, the 'Use switch or pedal to accelerate' message will appear on the cluster. Depress the accelerator pedal or push the + switch, - switch or RES switch to start driving.

OJWEV071149L

Warning road conditions ahead

In the following situation, the 'Watch for surrounding vehicles' warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound to warn the driver of road conditions ahead.

- The vehicle in front disappears when Smart Cruise Control is maintaining the distance with the vehicle ahead while driving below a certain speed.
- While the 'Use switch or pedal to accelerate' message is displayed on the cluster, if there is no vehicle in front or the vehicle is far away from you, and the + switch, – switch or RES switch is pushed.

WARNING

Always pay attention to vehicles or objects that may suddenly appear in front of you, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

OJWEV071001L

Collision Warning

While Smart Cruise Control is operating, when the collision risk with the vehicle ahead is high, the 'Collision Warning' warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound to warn the driver. Always have your eyes on the road while driving, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

WARNING

In the following situations, Smart Cruise Control may not warn the driver of a collision.

- **The distance from the front vehicle is near, or the vehicle speed of the front vehicle is faster or similar with your vehicle**
- **The speed of the front vehicle is very slow or is at a standstill**
- **The accelerator pedal is depressed right after Smart Cruise Control is turned on**

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Smart Cruise Control:

- **Smart Cruise Control does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.**
- **Smart Cruise Control may not recognize unexpected and sudden situations or complex driving situations, so always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.**
- **Keep Smart Cruise Control off when the function is not in use to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.**
- **Do not open the door or leave the vehicle when Smart Cruise Control is operating, even if the vehicle is stopped.**
- **Always be aware of the selected speed and headway distance.**
- **Keep a safe distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed. If the headway distance is too close during high-speed driving, a serious collision may result.**

- **When maintaining distance with the vehicle ahead, if the front vehicle disappears, Smart Cruise Control may suddenly accelerate to the set speed. Always be aware that unexpected and sudden situations can occur.**
- **Vehicle speed may decrease on an upward slope and increase on a downward slope.**
- **Always be aware of situations such as when a vehicle cuts in suddenly.**
- **When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Smart Cruise Control for safety reasons.**
- **Turn off Smart Cruise Control when your vehicle is being towed.**
- **Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Smart Cruise Control may not detect an obstacle in front and lead to a collision. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **Vehicles moving in front of you with a frequent lane change may cause a delay in Smart Cruise Control reaction or may cause Smart Cruise Control to react to a vehicle actually in an adjacent lane. Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **Always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely, even though a warning message does not appear or an audible warning does not sound.**
- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or warning sound is generated, Smart Cruise Control warning message may not be displayed and warning sound may not be generated.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding is noisy.**
- **The vehicle manufacturer is not responsible for any traffic violation or accidents caused by the driver.**
- **Always set the vehicle speed under the speed limit in your country.**
- **Vehicle distance, acceleration and reaction speed may change if the driver's driving style changes.**

CAUTION

- **The vehicle must be driven sufficiently to reflect the actual driving style of the driver, such as inter-vehicle distance, acceleration and reaction speed.**
- **Based on Driving style does not reflect whether the driver has changed when determining the driver's driving style.**
- **If you are driving in special conditions, such as snow, rain, fog or steep slopes, the vehicle may not be driven according to the driver's driving style.**

Information

- **Smart Cruise Control may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started or the front view camera or front radar is initialized.**
- **You may hear a sound when the brake is controlled by Smart Cruise Control.**
- **Based on Driving Style may not reflect the driver's driving style or driving conditions that affects driving safety.**
- **Based on Driving Style does not reflect any other driving style other than inter-vehicle distance, acceleration and reaction speed.**

Smart Cruise Control malfunction and limitations

Smart Cruise Control malfunction

■ Type A

OJWEV071257L

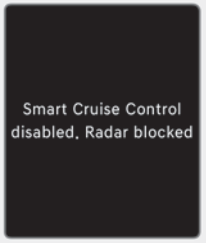
■ Type B

OJWEV071258L

When Smart Cruise Control is not working properly, the 'Check Smart Cruise Control system' (or 'Check SCC (Smart Cruise Control) system') warning message will appear, and the ⚠ warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

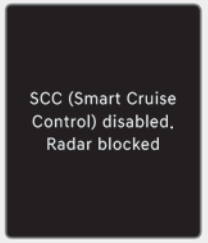
Smart Cruise Control disabled

■ Type A



OTM070115N

■ Type B



OTM070115L

When the front radar cover or sensor is covered with snow, rain, or foreign material, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Smart Cruise Control.

If this occurs the 'Smart Cruise Control disabled. Radar blocked' (or 'SCC (Smart Cruise Control) disabled. Radar blocked') warning message will appear for a certain period of time on the cluster.

Smart Cruise Control will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed.

WARNING

Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Smart Cruise Control may not properly operate.

CAUTION

Smart Cruise Control may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain), where any objects are not detected after turning ON the vehicle.

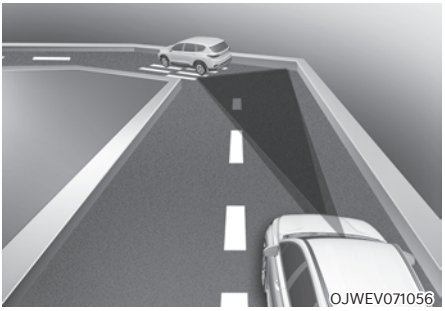
Limitations of Smart Cruise Control

Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The detecting sensor or the surroundings are contaminated or damaged
- Washer fluid is continuously sprayed, or the wiper is on
- The camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windshield, damaged glass, or sticky foreign material (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass
- Moisture is not removed or frozen on the windshield
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Street light or light from an oncoming vehicle is reflected on the wet road surface, such as a puddle on the road
- The temperature around the front view camera is high or low
- An object is placed on the dashboard
- The surrounding is very bright
- The surrounding is very dark, such as in a tunnel, etc.
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel
- The brightness outside is low, and the headlamps are not on or are not bright
- Driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog
- Driving through steam, smoke or shadow

- Only part of the vehicle is detected
- The vehicle in front has no tail lights, tail lights are located unusually, etc.
- The brightness outside is low, and the tail lamps are not on or are not bright
- The rear of the front vehicle is small or does not look normal (for example, tilted, overturned, etc.)
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is low or high
- A vehicle suddenly cuts in front
- Your vehicle is being towed
- Driving through a tunnel or iron bridge
- Driving near areas containing metal substances, such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- An object reflecting off the front radar such as a guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The bumper around the front radar is impacted, damaged or the front radar is out of position
- The temperature around the front radar is high or low
- Driving in vast areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- The vehicle in front is made of material that does not reflect on the front radar
- Driving near a highway (or motorway) interchange or tollgate
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- Driving on a curved road
- The vehicle in front is detected late
- The vehicle in front is suddenly blocked by an obstacle
- The vehicle in front suddenly changes lane or suddenly reduces speed
- The vehicle in front is bent out of shape
- The front vehicle's speed is fast or slow
- With a vehicle in front, your vehicle changes lane at low speed
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow
- Unstable driving
- You are on a roundabout and the vehicle in front is not detected
- You are continuously driving in a circle
- Driving in a parking lot
- Driving through a construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- Driving on an incline road, curved road, etc.
- Driving through a roadside with trees or streetlights
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations while driving
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tire pressure, etc.
- Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- There is interference by electromagnetic waves, such as driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise

- Driving on a curved road



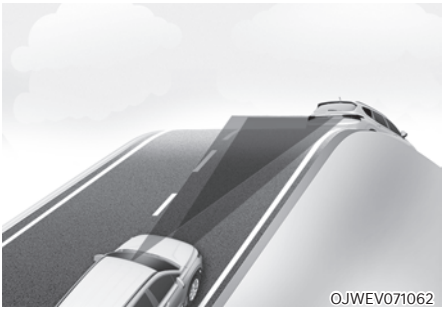
On curves, Smart Cruise Control may not detect a vehicle in the same lane, and may accelerate to the set speed. Also, vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when the vehicle ahead is detected suddenly.

Select the appropriate set speed on curves and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.

Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane.

Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate set speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of the Smart Cruise Control.

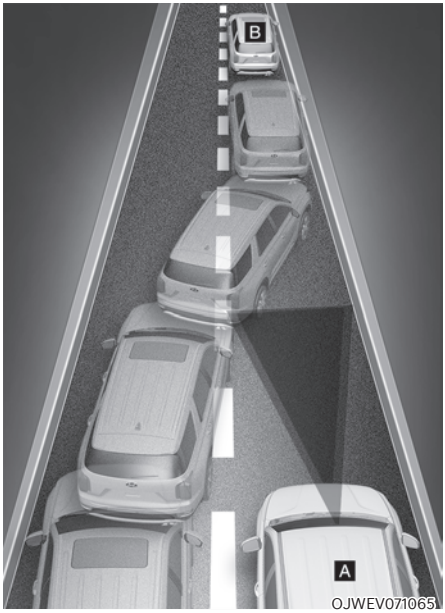
- Driving on an inclined road



During uphill or downhill driving, the Smart Cruise Control may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and cause your vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Also, vehicle speed will rapidly decrease when the vehicle ahead is detected suddenly.

Select the appropriate set speed on inclines and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.

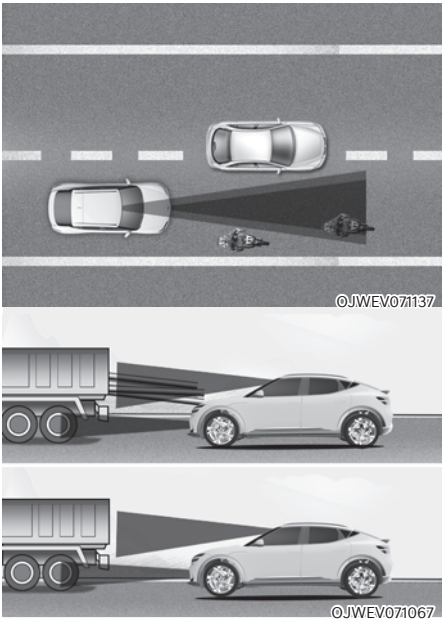
- Changing lanes



[A]: Your vehicle,
[B]: Lane changing vehicle

When a vehicle moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range. Smart Cruise Control may not immediately detect the vehicle when the vehicle changes lanes abruptly. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

- Situations when detecting are limited



In the following cases, some vehicles in your lane cannot be detected by the sensor:

- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden-decelerating vehicles
- Vehicles with higher ground clearance or vehicles carrying loads that stick out of the back of the vehicle
- Vehicles that has the front lifted dueto heavy loads
- Vehicles within approximately 6 feet(2 m) from your vehicle
- Oncoming vehicles
- Stopped vehicles
- Vehicles with small rear profile, such as trailers

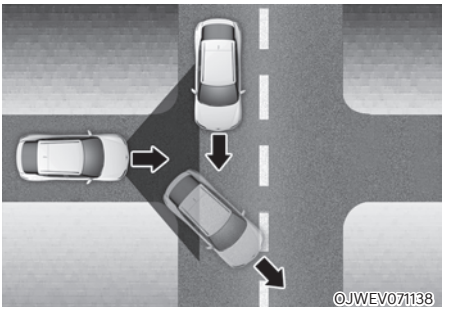
- Narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Special vehicles
- Animals and pedestrians

Adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.

In the following cases, the vehicle in front cannot be detected by the sensor:

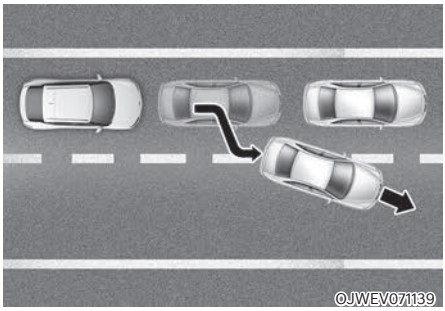
- You are steering your vehicle
- Driving on narrow or sharply curved roads

Adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.



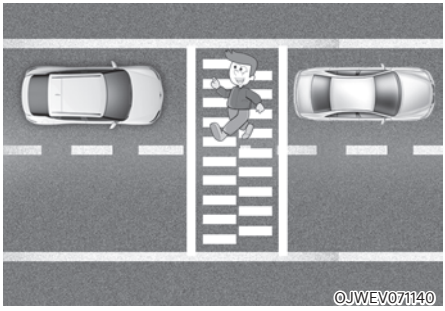
- When a vehicle ahead disappears at an intersection, your vehicle may accelerate.

  Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.



- When a vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, Smart Cruise Control may not immediately detect the new vehicle that is now in front of you.

  Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.



- Always look out for pedestrians when your vehicle is maintaining a distance with the vehicle ahead.

NAVIGATION-BASED SMART CRUISE CONTROL (NSCC) (IF EQUIPPED)

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control can help drive at a certain speed according to the road conditions when driving on highways (or motorways) by using road information from the navigation system while Smart Cruise Control is operating.

Information

- **Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is available only on controlled access road of certain highways.**

✳ **Controlled access road indicates roads with limited entrances and exits that allow uninterrupted high speed traffic flow. Only passenger cars and motorcycles are allowed on controlled access roads.**

- **Additional highways may be expanded by future navigation updates.**

Information

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operates on main roads of highways (or motorways), and does not operate on interchanges or junctions.

Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown

If vehicle speed is high, Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function will temporarily decelerate your vehicle or limit acceleration to help you drive safely on a curve based on the curve information from the navigation.

Highway Set Speed Auto Change

Highway Set Speed Auto Change function automatically changes Smart Cruise Control set speed based on the speed limit information from the navigation.

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control settings

OJWEV071259L

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Driving Assist → Highway Auto Speed Change' from the Settings menu to turn on Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control and deselect to turn off the function.

Highway Set Speed Auto Change

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Driving Convenience → Highway Auto Curve Slowdown (or Curve slowdown (motorway))' from the Settings menu to turn on Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown and deselect to turn off the function.

Information

When there is a problem with Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control, the function cannot be set from the Settings menu.

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operation

Operating conditions

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is ready to operate if all of the following conditions are satisfied:

- Smart Cruise Control is operating
- Driving on main roads of highways (or motorways)

Information

For more details on how to operate Smart Cruise Control, refer to "Smart Cruise Control (SCC)" section in this chapter.

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control display and control

When Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operates, it will be displayed on the cluster as follows:

OJWEV071033

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control standby

If the operating conditions are satisfied, the white NAV symbol will illuminate.

OJWEV071034L

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operating

If temporary deceleration is required in the standby state and Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is operating, the green NAV symbol will illuminate on the cluster.

If the Highway Set Speed Auto Change function operates, the NAV symbol and set speed will illuminate in green on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound.

WARNING

OJWEV071296L

'Drive carefully' warning message will appear in the following circumstances:

- **Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is not able to slow down your vehicle to a safe speed**

Information

Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown and Highway Set Speed Auto Change function uses the same NAV symbol.

Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown

- Depending on the curve ahead on the highway (or motorway), the vehicle will decelerate, and after passing the curve, the vehicle will accelerate to Smart Cruise Control set speed.
- Vehicle deceleration time may differ depending on the vehicle speed and the degree of the curve on the road. The higher the driving speed, deceleration will start faster.

Highway Set Speed Auto Change

- Highway Set Speed Auto Change function will operate when Smart Cruise Control set speed and the highway (or motorway) speed limit is matched.
- While Highway Set Speed Auto Change function is operating, when the highway (or motorway), speed limit changes, Smart Cruise Control set speed automatically changes to the changed speed limit.
- If Smart Cruise Control set speed is adjusted different from the speed limit, Highway Set Speed Auto Change function will be in the standby state.
- If Highway Set Speed Auto Change function has changed to the standby state by driving on a road other than the highway (or motorway) main road, Highway Set Speed Auto Change function will operate again when you drive on the main road again without setting the set speed.

- If Highway Set Speed Auto Change function has changed to the standby state by depressing the brake pedal or pressing the switch on the steering wheel, press the switch to restart the function.
- Highway Set Speed Auto Change function does not operate on highway interchanges or junctions.

Information

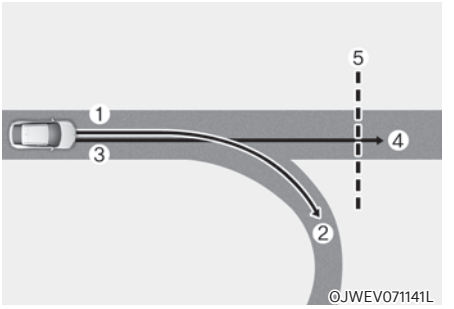
- **Highway Set Speed Auto Change function only operates based on the speed limits of the highway (or motorway), it does not work with the speed cameras.**
- **When Highway Set Speed Auto Change function is operating, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates when the highway (or motorway) speed limit changes.**
- **The maximum set speed for Highway Set Speed Auto Change function is 140 km/h (86 mph).**
- **If the speed limit of a new road is not updated in the navigation, Highway Set Speed Auto Change function may not operate properly.**
- **If the speed unit is set to a unit other than the speed unit used in your country, Highway Set Speed Auto Change function may not operate properly.**

Limitations of Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly under the following circumstances:

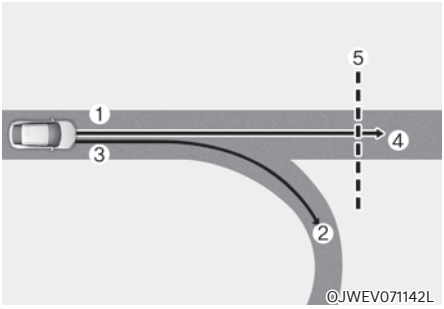
- The navigation is not working properly
- Map information is not transmitted due to infotainment system's abnormal operation
- Speed limit and road information in the navigation is not updated
- The map information and the actual road is different because of real-time GPS data or map information error
- The navigation searches for a route while driving
- GPS signals are blocked in areas such as a tunnel
- A road that divides into two or more roads and joins again

- The driver goes off course the route set in the navigation
- The route to the destination is changed or cancelled by resetting the navigation
- The vehicle enters a service station or rest area
- Android Auto or Car Play is operating
- The navigation cannot detect the current vehicle position (for example, elevated roads including overpass adjacent to general roads or nearby roads exist in a parallel way)
- The navigation is being updated while driving
- The navigation is being restarted while driving
- The speed limit of some sections changes according to the road situations
- Driving on a road under construction
- Driving on a road that is controlled
- There is bad weather, such as heavy rain, heavy snow, etc.
- Driving on a road that is sharply curved



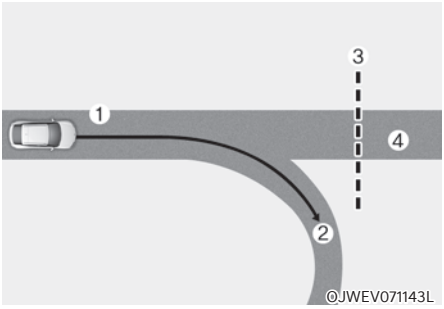
[1]: Set route, [2]: Branch line, [3]: Driving route, [4]: Main road, [5]: Curved road section

- When there is a difference between the navigation set route (branch line) and the driving route (main road), Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function may not operate until the driving route is recognized as the main road.
- When the vehicle's driving route is recognized as the main road by maintaining the main road instead of the navigation set route, Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function will operate. Depending on the distance to the curve and the current vehicle speed, vehicle deceleration may not be sufficient or may decelerate rapidly.



[1]: Set route, [2]: Branch line, [3]: Driving route, [4]: Main road, [5]: Curved road section

- When there is a difference between the navigation route (main road) and the driving route (branch line), Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function will operate based on the curve information on the main road.
- When it is judged that you are driving out of the route by entering the highway interchange or junction, Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function will not operate.



[1]: Driving route, [2]: Branch line, [3]: Curved road section, [4]: Main road

- If there is no destination set on the navigation, Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function will operate based on the curve information on the main road.
- Even if you depart from the main road, Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function may temporarily operate due to navigation information of the highway curve section.

WARNING

- Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a convenience function. Always have your eyes on the road, and it is the responsibility of the driver to avoid violating traffic laws.
- The navigation's speed limit information may differ from the actual speed limit information on the road. It is the driver's responsibility to check the speed limit on the actual driving road or lane.
- Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control will automatically be cancelled when you leave the highway (or motorway) main road. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.
- Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not operate due to the existence of leading vehicles and the driving conditions of the vehicle. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.
- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control for safety reasons.
- After you pass through a tollgate on a highway (or motorway), Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control will operate based on the first lane. If you enter one of the other lanes, Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly.
- The vehicle will accelerate if the driver depresses the accelerator pedal while Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is operating, and the function will not decelerate the vehicle. However, if the accelerator pedal is depressed insufficiently, the vehicle may decelerate.
- If the driver accelerates and releases the accelerator pedal while Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is operating, the vehicle may not decelerate sufficiently or may rapidly decelerate to a safe speed.
- If the curve is too large or too small, Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may not operate.

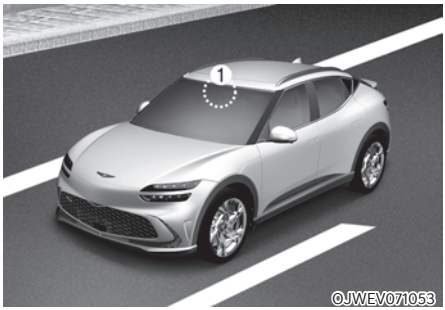
Information

- A time gap could occur between the navigation's guidance and when Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operation starts and ends.
- The speed information on the cluster and navigation may differ.
- Even if you are driving at a speed lower than Smart Cruise Control set speed, acceleration may be limited by the curve sections ahead.
- If Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control is operating while leaving the main road to enter an interchange, junction, rest area, etc., the function may operate for a certain period of time.
- Deceleration by Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control may feel it is not sufficient due to road conditions such as uneven road surfaces, narrow lanes, etc.

LANE FOLLOWING ASSIST (LFA)

Lane Following Assist is designed to help detect lane markings and/or vehicles on the road, and assists the driver's steering to help center the vehicle in the lane.

Detecting sensor



[1]: Front view camera

The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect lane markings and front vehicles.

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

Lane Following Assist settings

Warning Methods

With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the Warning Volume.

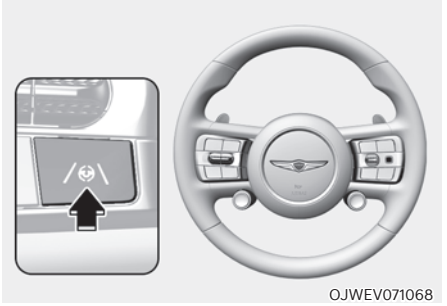
If 'Driving Safety Priority' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the warning sounds.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**

Lane Following Assist operation

Warning and control



OJWEV071068

Turning Lane Following Assist On/Off

With the vehicle on, shortly press the Lane Driving Assist button located on the steering wheel to turn on Lane Following Assist. The grey or green indicator light will illuminate on the cluster.

Press the button again to turn off the function.

OJWEV071035

Lane Following Assist

If the vehicle ahead and/or both lane markings are detected and your vehicle speed is below 200 km/h (120 mph), the green indicator light illuminates on the cluster, and Lane Following Assist helps center the vehicle in the lane by assisting the steering wheel.

CAUTION

When the steering wheel is not assisted, the white indicator light blinks and change to grey.

OJWEV071260L

Hands-off warning

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the 'Keep hands on the steering wheel' warning message will appear and an audible warning will sound in stages.

First stage : Warning message

Second stage : Warning message (red steering wheel) and audible warning

■ Type A

OJWEV071261L

■ Type B

OJWEV071262L

If the driver still does not have their hands on the steering wheel after the hands-off warning, the ‘Lane Following Assist (LFA) cancelled’ (or ‘LFA (Lane Following Assist) cancelled’) warning message will appear and Lane Following Assist will be automatically cancelled.

WARNING

- **The steering wheel may not be assisted if the steering wheel is held very tight or the steering wheel is steered over a certain degree.**
- **Lane Following Assist does not operate at all times. It is the responsibility of the driver to safely steer the vehicle and to maintain the vehicle in its lane.**
- **The hands–off warning message may appear late depending on road conditions. Always have your hands on the steering wheel while driving.**
- **If the steering wheel is held very lightly the hands–off warning message may appear because Lane Following Assist may not recognize that the driver has their hands on the steering wheel.**
- **If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.**

Information

- **For more details on setting the functions in the infotainment system Vehicle Settings, refer to “Vehicle Settings” section in chapter 4.**
- **When both lane markings are detected, the lane lines on the cluster will change from grey to white.**

■ Lane undetected

OJWEV071017

■ Lane detected

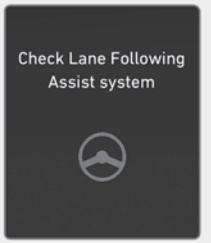
OJWEV071018

- **The images and colors in the cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster**
- **If lane markings are not detected, steering wheel control by Lane Following Assist can be limited depending on whether a vehicle is in front or the driving conditions of the vehicle.**
- **Even though the steering is assisted by Lane Following Assist, the driver may control the steering wheel.**
- **The steering wheel may feel heavier or lighter when the steering wheel is assisted by Lane Following Assist than when it is not.**

Lane Following Assist malfunction and limitations

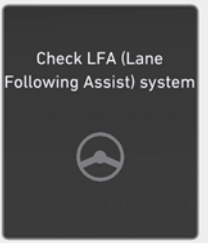
Lane Following Assist malfunction

■ Type A



OJWEV071263L

■ Type B



OJWEV071264L

When Lane Following Assist is not working properly, the ‘Check Lane Following Assist (LFA) system’ (or ‘Check LFA (Lane Following Assist) system’) warning message will appear for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Limitations of Lane Following Assist

For more details on Lane Following Assist limitations, refer to “Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)” section in this chapter.

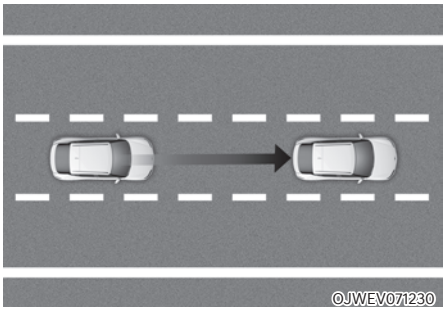
Information

For more details on Lane Following Assist precautions, refer to “Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)” section in this chapter.

HIGHWAY DRIVING ASSIST (HDA) (IF EQUIPPED)

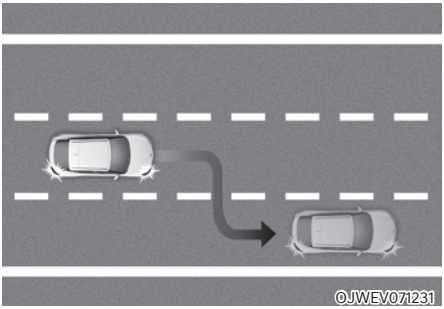
Basic function

Highway Driving Assist is designed to help detect vehicles and lanes ahead, and help maintain distance from the vehicle ahead, maintain the set speed, help center the vehicle in the lane while driving on the highway (or motorway).



Highway Lane Change Assist (if equipped)

Highway Lane Change Assist function helps change lanes to the direction the driver slightly moves the turn signal switch if the function judges that lane change is possible.



Information

- **Highway Driving Assist is available only on controlled access road of certain highways.**

✳ **Controlled access road indicates roads with limited entrances and exits that allow uninterrupted high speed traffic flow. Only passenger cars and motorcycles are allowed on controlled access roads.**

- **Additional highways may be expanded by future navigation updates.**

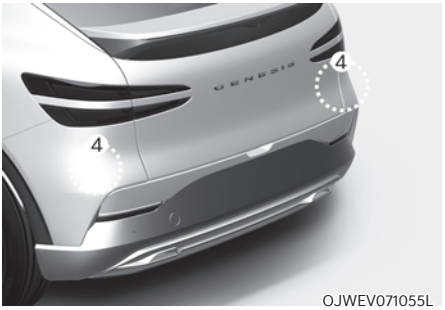
Information

Highway Driving Assist operates on main roads of highways (or motorways), and does not operate on interchanges or junctions.

Detecting sensor

OJWEV071053

OJWEV071054



OJWEV071055L

[1]: Front view camera, [2]: Front radar,
[3]: Front corner radar (if equipped),
[4]: Rear corner radar

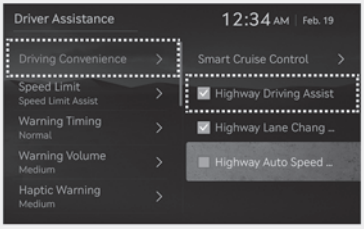
Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the detecting sensors, refer to “Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)” section in this chapter.

Highway Driving Assist settings

Setting features



OJWEV071265L

Highway Driving Assist

With the vehicle on, select or deselect ‘Driver Assistance → Driving Convenience’ from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If ‘Highway Driving Assist’ is selected, it helps maintain distance from the vehicle ahead, maintain the set speed, and helps center the vehicle in the lane.

Highway Lane Change Assist (if equipped)

- If 'Highway Lane Change Assist' is selected, it helps the driver change lanes.

Information

- **When 'Highway Driving Assist' is deselected, the setting for 'Highway Lane Change Assist' cannot be changed.**
- **If there is a problem with the functions, the settings cannot be changed. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **If the vehicle is restarted, the functions will maintain the last setting.**

WARNING

For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.

OJWEV072442L

Warning Methods

With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the Warning Volume.

If 'Driving Safety Priority' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the warning sounds.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**

Highway Driving Assist operation

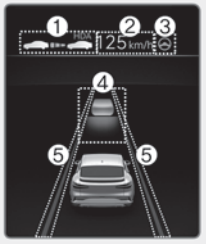
Basic function

Display and control

You can see the status of the Highway Driving Assist operation in the Driving Assist view on the cluster. Refer to "View Modes" section in chapter 4.

Highway Driving Assist will be displayed as below depending on the status of the function.

■ Operating state



OJWEV071151

■ Standby state

OJWEV072297L

(1) Highway Driving Assist indicator, whether there is a vehicle ahead and the selected distance level are displayed.

✳ Highway Driving Assist indicator

- Green HDA : Operating state
- Grey HDA : Standby state
- White HDA blink: Accelerator depressed state

(2) Set speed

(3) Lane Following Assist indicator

(4) Whether there is a vehicle ahead and the selected headway

(5) Whether the lane is detected or not

Information

For more details on the display refer to "Smart Cruise Control (SCC)" and "Lane Following Assist (LFA)" sections in this chapter.

Highway Driving Assist operating

Highway Driving Assist operates when:

- Driving on the main road of highways, and turning on Highway Driving Assist by pressing the Driving Assist ( ) button.
- Entering the main road of highways while Lane Following assist and Smart Cruise Control are operating

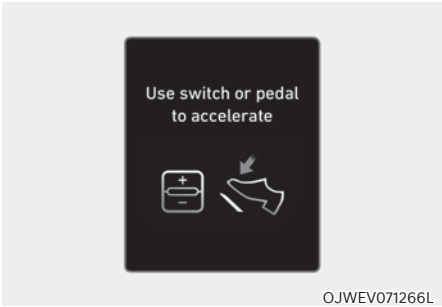
Information

The images and colors in the cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.

Information

- **While driving on the highway (or motorway), if Smart Cruise Control starts operating, Highway Driving Assist will operate.**
- **When entering the main roads of highways (or motorways) while Smart Cruise Control is operating, Driving Assist will not turn on if Lane Following Assist is turned off.**

- Restarting after stopping



OJWEV071266L

When Highway Driving Assist is operating, your vehicle will stop if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving within 30 seconds after the stop, your vehicle will start as well. In addition, after the vehicle has stopped and 30 seconds have passed, the 'Use switch or pedal to accelerate' message will appear on the cluster. Depress the accelerator pedal or push the + switch, - switch or II switch to start driving.

- Hands-off warning

OJWEV071260L

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the 'Keep hands on the steering wheel' warning message will appear and an audible warning will sound in stages.
First stage : Warning message
Second stage : Warning message (red steering wheel) and audible warning

■ Type A

OJWEV071267L

■ Type B

OJWEV071268L

If the driver still does not have their hands on the steering wheel after the hands-off warning, the 'Highway Driving Assist (HDA) cancelled' (or 'HDA (Highway Driving Assist) cancelled') warning message will appear and Highway Driving Assist and Lane Change Assist will be automatically cancelled.

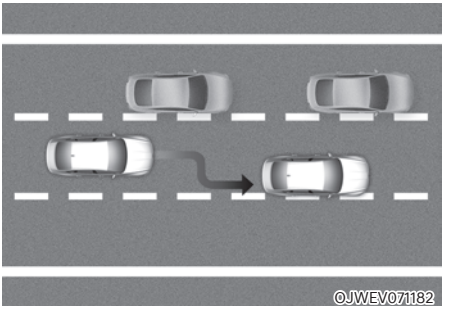
- Driving speed limit

OJWEV071269L

When Highway Driving Assist is cancelled by the hands-off warning, The driving speed will be limited.

While Driving Speed Limit function is operating, the 'Driver's grasp not detected. Driving speed will be limited' warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound continuously.

- Driving to one side within lane (if equipped)



OJWEV071182

When vehicle speed is above 60 km/h (40 mph), if a detected vehicle around you is driving at a close distance, your vehicle will control steering in the opposite direction of the vehicle to assist in safe driving.

If there a detected vehicle in both sides of the lane that are driving close to you, the function will not veer to the opposite side of the lane.

Highway Driving Assist standby

When the Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled while Highway Driving Assist is operating, Highway Driving Assist will be in the standby state. At this time, Lane Following Assist will operate properly.

Information

- **Driving Speed Limit helps you drive below 60 km/h (40 mph). At this time, the vehicle decelerates due to the vehicle ahead. After the vehicle has decelerated, it cannot automatically accelerate.**
- **Driving Speed Limit will cancel in the following circumstances:**
  - **When the driver grabs the steering wheel again**
  - **When the driver turns on Lane Following Assist by pressing the Lane Driving Assist button**
  - **When +, -, switch or button is operated, or the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal is depressed**

Highway Lane Change Assist (if equipped)

Display and control

You can see the status of the Highway Lane Change Assist function operation in the Driving Assist view on the cluster. Refer to “View Modes” section in chapter 4.

Highway Lane Change Assist function will be displayed as below depending on the status of the function.

■ Ready/Operating

OJWEV071298L

■ Standby/Canceled

OJWEV072039L

(1) Highway Lane Change Assist indicator
- Green on: Ready state
- Green blink: Operating state
- Grey on: Standby state
- White blink: Canceled state (display only a certain time)

(2) Green lane line

The green lane line is displayed when the function starts operating, and until the vehicle steps on the lane line.

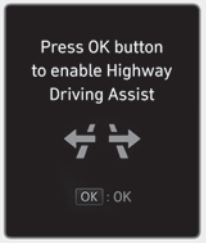
(3) Green arrow and shade

The green arrow is displayed when a certain amount of time has passed after the function has started operating, and until the lane change has completed.

(4) Message

- Message is displayed when the function does not operate even though the turn signal lever is used.
- Message is displayed when the function is cancelled while operating.

■ Type A



OJWEV071270L

■ Type B

ORG3EV071200L

To turn on Highway Lane Change Assist

Highway Lane Change Assist function will turn on when the following conditions are satisfied.

- The Driving Assist button or Lane Driving Assist button is used to turn on Highway Driving Assist.
- The OK button is pressed on the steering wheel while a message asking to use Highway Lane Change Assist is displayed on the cluster.

Highway Lane Change Assist ready to operate

While Highway Lane Change Assist function is on, the function will be ready to operate when all the following conditions are satisfied:

- Highway Driving Assist is operating
- Lane Following Assist is operating
- A vehicle in the rear area of your vehicle is detected more than once after the vehicle is turned on
- Your vehicle speed is above 80 km/h (50 mph)
- Hands-off warning is not displayed on the cluster
- Hazard warning flasher is off

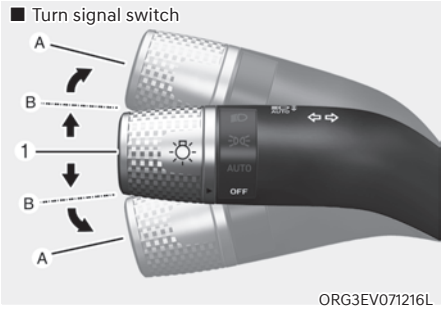
Information

- **While Lane Change Assist function is turned on (indicator on), Lane Following Assist will not cancel even if the turn signal indicator or hazard warning flasher is operating.**
- **Lane Change Assist function turns off automatically when driven in the following road conditions:**
  - **One driving lane**
  - **A road with a intersection or crosswalk ahead**
  - **A road with no structure, such as a medium strip, guardrails, etc.**
  - **There is a pedestrian or cyclist on the road ahead**
- **When the function is in the ready state, and vehicle speed is below 75 km/h (45 mph), the function will change to the standby state.**

WARNING

When Highway Lane Change Assist function turns off while operating, steering assist will be temporarily cancelled. Always be cautious while driving.

Highway Lane Change Assist operating



[1]: Center

Highway Lane Change Assist function will operate, when you push the turn signal lever up or down to the A or B position while the function is in the ready state (indicator is green), and all of the following conditions are satisfied:

- The driver has his/her hand on the steering wheel
- There is no collision risk in the direction of lane change
- There is a single dotted lane line in the direction of lane change
- There are no Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist and Blind Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist warnings
- The vehicle is driven in the middle of the lane (should not be driving close to one side of the lane)
- The road you are driving on, or the road you are about to change lane is a road that the function can operate

Information

When the turn signal lever is placed at B position for a certain period of time, the green arrow will appear. At this time, even when the lever is released and returns to it's original position (1), lane change will still be assisted.

While lane change is being made by the function, the turn signal indicator will blink even when the turn signal lever is not held, and the turn signal indicator will turn off when lane change is complete.

Highway Lane Change Assist standby

Highway Lane Change Assist function will be in the standby state when one of the ready state condition is not satisfied, or when entering or driving on one of the following roads:

- Road within a certain distance from the tollgate on the main road of the highway (or motorway)
- The road ahead ends without an interchange or junction
- Road with sharp curves
- Road with narrow lanes
- Road that is under construction

Highway Lane Change Assist cancel

The function will be cancelled when:

- The turn signal lever is turned on in the opposite direction of lane change
- The steering wheel is steered sharply

WARNING

- **While the function is operating, the function will cancel if one of the following occurs:**
  - **Highway Driving Assist is turned off**
  - **Lane Following Assist or Smart Cruise Control is turned off or temporarily cancelled**
  - **Hands-off warning message is displayed on the cluster**
  - **The turn signal lever is placed at A position**
  - **The hazard warning flasher is turned on**
  - **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist or Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist warning message is displayed**
  - **Possible collision is detected in the next lane, even though there are no Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist and Blind Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist warning**
  - **Entering a road under construction**
  - **The target lane to make a lane change disappears**
  - **The target lane to make a lane change is not detected**
  - **There is a problem with turn signal lamps**

  - **Highway Lane Change Assist function is off (The function turns off when the function is turned off from the settings menu, when the road changes to a one-way road, when there is a intersection or crosswalk ahead, when you enter a road with no structure, such as a medium strip, guardrail, etc., or when there is a pedestrian or cyclist on the driving lane.)**
  - **Your vehicle speed is below 75 km/h (45 mph)**
- **While the function is operating, when the function is cancelled, depending on the driving conditions, the vehicle may drive to the middle of the driving lane or steering assist may stop. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.**
- **The function may not operate properly on roads with pedestrians or cyclists, such as an intersection or crosswalk. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions while driving.**

Highway Driving Assist malfunction and limitations

Highway Driving Assist malfunction

OJWEV071271L

OJWEV071272L

When Highway Driving Assist or Highway Lane Change function is not working properly, the 'Check Highway Driving Assist (HDA) system' or 'Check Lane Change Assist function' warning message will appear, and the ⚠ warning light will illuminate on the cluster.
We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products

WARNING

- **The driver is responsible for controlling the vehicle for safe driving.**
- **Always have your hands on the steering wheel while driving.**
- **Highway Driving Assist is a supplemental function that assists the driver in driving the vehicle and is not a complete autonomous driving system. Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely.**
- **Always have your eyes on the road, and it is the responsibility of the driver to avoid violating traffic laws. The vehicle manufacturer is not responsible for any traffic violation or accidents caused by the driver.**
- **Highway Driving Assist may not be able to recognize all traffic situations. Highway Driving Assist may not detect possible collisions due to limitations of the function. Always be aware of the limitations of the function. Obstacles (vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, unspecified objects, structures, etc.) that may collide with a vehicle may not be detected.**
- **Highway Driving Assist will turn off automatically under the following situations:**
  - **Driving on roads that Highway Driving Assist does not operate, such as a rest area, intersection, junction, etc.**
  - **The navigation does not operate properly such as when the navigation is being updated or restarted**
- **Highway Driving Assist may inadvertently operate or turn off depending on road conditions (navigation information) and surroundings.**
- **Lane Following Assist function may be temporarily disabled when the front view camera cannot detect lanes properly or the hands-off warning is on.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Highway Driving Assist if the surrounding is noisy.**
- **If the vehicle is driven at high speed above a certain speed at a curve, your vehicle may drive to one side or may depart from the driving lane.**
- **When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Highway Driving Assist for safety reasons.**
- **The hands–off warning message may appear early or late depending on how the steering wheel is held or road conditions. Always have your hands on the steering wheel while driving.**
- **For your safety, please read the owner's manual before using the Highway Driving Assist.**
- **Highway Driving Assist will not operate when the vehicle is started, or when the detecting sensors or navigation is being initialized.**

Limitations of Highway Driving Assist

Highway Driving Assist and Highway Lane Change function may not operate properly, or it may not operate under the following circumstances:

- The map information and the actual road is different because the navigation is not updated
- The map information and the actual road is different because of real-time GPS data or map information error
- The infotainment system is overloaded by simultaneously performing functions such as route search, video playback, voice recognition, etc.
- GPS signals are blocked in areas such as a tunnel
- The driver goes off course or the route to the destination is changed or cancelled by resetting the navigation
- The vehicle enters a service station or rest area
- Android Auto or Car Play is operating
- The navigation cannot detect the current vehicle position (for example, elevated roads including overpass adjacent to general roads or nearby roads exist in a parallel way)
- White single dotted lane line or road edge cannot be detected
- The road is temporarily controlled due to construction, etc.
- There is no structure, such as a medium strip, guardrails, etc., on the road
- There is a changeable lane in the direction of lane change

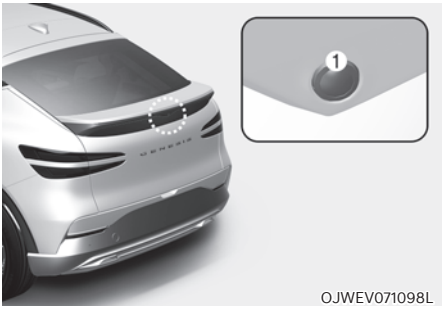
Information

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, front radar, front corner radar and rear corner radar, refer to “Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)” section in this chapter.

REAR VIEW MONITOR (RVM) (IF EQUIPPED)

Rear View Monitor shows the area behind the vehicle to assist you when parking or backing up.

Detecting sensor



OJWEV071098L

[1]: Rear view camera

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

Rear View Monitor settings

OJWEV072445L

Warning Methods

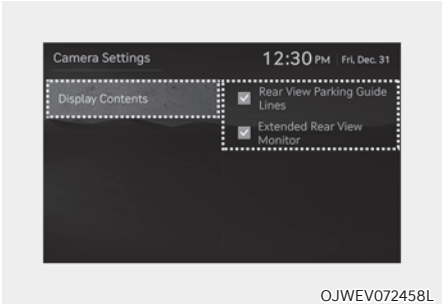
With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

If 'Parking Safety Priority' is selected, the vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when Rear View Monitor is operating for safe parking.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**

Camera settings

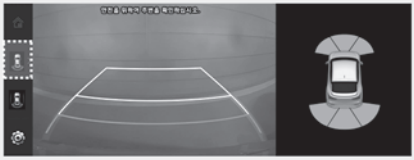


OJWEV072458L

You can change Rear View Monitor ‘Display Contents’ or ‘Display Settings’ by touching the setup icon (⚙) on the screen while Rear View Monitor is operating, or selecting ‘Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Camera Settings’ from the Settings menu while the vehicle is on.

- If 'Camera Settings' is selected, you may set whether to use 'Rear View Parking Guide Lines' or 'Extended Rear View Monitor'.

Rear View Parking Guide Lines



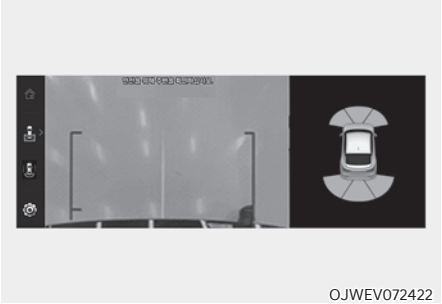
OJWEV072421

If 'Rear View Parking Guide Lines' is selected, the rear view parking guide lines will be displayed at the left side of the infotaintment system screen.

Information

The horizontal guideline shows the distance of 0.5 m (1.6 ft.), 1 m (3.3 ft.) and 2.3 m (7.6 ft.) from the vehicle.

Top View Parking Guide Lines



OJWEV072422

If 'Rear View Parking Guide Lines' is selected, the top view parking guide lines will be displayed at the left side of the infotaintment system screen.

Information

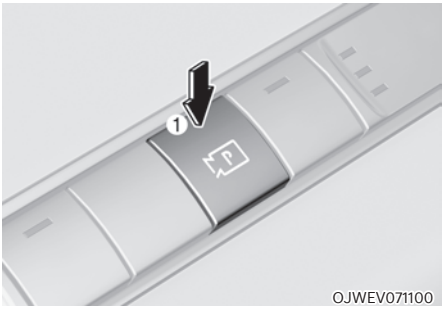
The horizontal guideline of the Top View Parking Guidance lines shows the tailgate opening distance.

Extended rear view settings

With the vehicle on, select 'Display → Keep Rear Camera' from the infotainment system Settings menu to turn on Extended rear view function and deselect to turn off the function.

Rear View Monitor operation

Parking/View button



Press the Parking/View button (1) to turn on Rear View Monitor.

Press the button again to turn off the function.

Rear view function

Rear view function shows the area behind the vehicle while driving or parking.

Rear View while driving

Rear View while driving will turn on under the following conditions:

- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed, while the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and vehicle speed is 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.
- is selected among the view buttons (3) when the Rear View is on.

Rear View while driving will turn off under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed.
- The infotainment system button (2) is pressed.
- The Home button (4) is pressed.

Information

The rear view does not turn off when the gear is in R (Reverse).

Rear View while parking

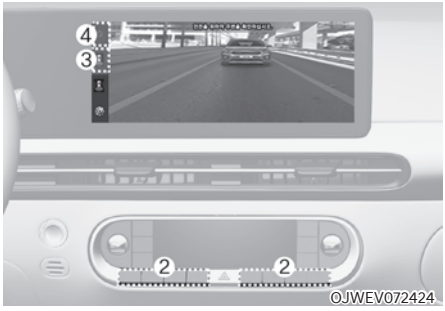
Rear View while parking will turn on under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed, while the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and vehicle speed is 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.
- is selected among the view buttons (3) when the Rear View is on

Rear View while parking will turn off under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed.
- The Home button (4) is pressed.
- The gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive) when vehicle speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph).

Rear Wide View



Rear Wide View function shows a wide view of the area behind the vehicle while driving or parking.

The operating conditions of the Rear Wide View function is the same as the Rear View function. However, when the gear is in R (Reverse), must be selected among the view buttons (3).

Extended Rear View function

Extended Rear View function maintains showing the rear view when the gear is R (Reverse), N (Neutral) or D (Drive).

Extended Rear View will turn on under the following conditions:

- The gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and vehicle speed is 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.

Extended Rear View will turn off under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed.
- The infotainment system button (2) is pressed.
- The Home button (4) is pressed.
- Vehicle speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph).

Rear Top View

Rear Top View shows the rear top view of your vehicle when parking for you to check the distance between an object and behind the vehicle.

Rear Top View will turn on under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse) and is selected among the view buttons (3).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed, while the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and vehicle speed is 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.

Rear Top View will turn off under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed.
- The infotainment system button (2) is pressed.
- The Home button (4) is pressed.
- The gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive) when vehicle speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph).

Information

- **The rear views do not turn off when the gear is in R (Reverse).**
- **When the Rear View Monitor is turned on, the previous view mode will be displayed. However, if the gear is in R (Reverse), the rear view will be displayed.**
- **The rear parking guide lines appear when using Top View and Rear Top View.**

Rear View Monitor malfunction and limitations

Rear View Monitor malfunction

When Rear View Monitor is not working properly, or the screen flickers, or the camera image does not display properly, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Limitations of Rear View Monitor

When the vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter or when the vehicle is parked in an indoor parking lot, the exhaust fumes may temporarily blur the image.

WARNING

- **The rear view camera does not cover the complete area behind the vehicle. The driver should always check the rear area directly through the inside and outside rearview mirror before parking or backing up.**
- **The image shown on the screen may differ from the actual distance of the object. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.**
- **Always keep the rear view camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Rear View Monitor may not operate properly. However, do not use chemical solvents such as strong detergents containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (gasoline, acetone etc.). This may damage the camera lens.**

SURROUND VIEW MONITOR (SVM) (IF EQUIPPED)

Surround View Monitor will assist in parking by allowing the driver to see around the vehicle.

Detecting sensor

OJWEV071103

OJWEV071104

[1]: Surround-front view camera,
[2],[3]: Surround-side view camera (under the outside rearview mirror),
[4]: Surround-rear view camera

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

Surround View Monitor settings

OJWEV072445L

Warning Methods

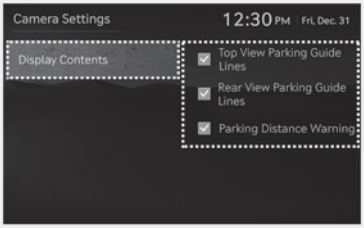
With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

If 'Parking Safety Priority' is selected, the vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when Rear View Monitor is operating for safe parking.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**

Camera settings



OJWEV072459L

You can change Surround View Monitor 'Display Contents' or 'Display Settings' by touching the setup icon (⚙) on the screen while Surround View Monitor is operating, or selecting 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Camera Settings' from the Settings menu while the vehicle is on.

Top View Parking Guidance

■ Front top view

OJWEV071220L

■ Rear top view

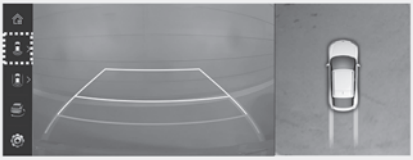
OJWEV071221L

When the 'Top View Parking Guidance' is selected, parking guidance is displayed on the right side of the Surround View Monitor screen.

Information

The horizontal guideline shows the tailgate opening distance and the distance of 2 m (6.6 ft.) from the vehicle.

Rear View Parking Guidance Lines



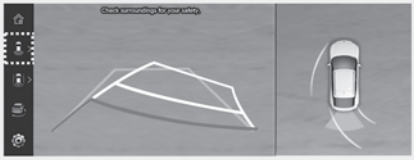
OJWEV072222

When the ‘Rear View Parking Guidance’ is selected, parking guidance is displayed in the rear view.

Information

The horizontal guideline shows the distance of 0.5 m (1.6 ft.), 1 m (3.3 ft.) and 2.3 m (7.6 ft.) from the vehicle.

Parking Distance Warning



OJWEV071224L

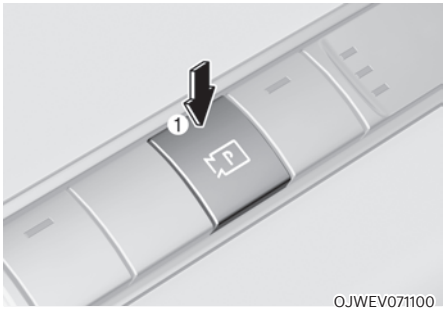
When the ‘Parking Distance Warning’ is selected, parking distance warning is displayed on the right side of the Surround View Monitor screen.

- The image will be displayed only when Parking Distance Warning is warning the driver.

Surround View Monitor Auto On

With the vehicle on, select ‘Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Surround View Monitor Auto On’ from the Settings menu to use the function.

Surround View Monitor operation



Press the Parking/View button (1) to turn on Surround View Monitor.

Press the button again to turn off the function.

Front view

The front image is displayed on the screen when the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive) to assist in parking. Using the view button (2) you may select top view, front view, side view and 3D view.

The front view function will turn on under the following conditions:

- The gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and vehicle speed is 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed, while the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and vehicle speed is 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.
- Parking Distance Warning warns the driver while driving in D (Drive).

Information

When the front view is turned on, the previous view mode will be displayed.

The front view function will turn off under the following conditions:

- The Parking/View button (1) or the infotainment system button (3) is pressed.
- Vehicle speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The Home button (4) is pressed.
- The gear is shifted to P (Park).

Information

Surround View Monitor will turn off when vehicle speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph). However, Surround View Monitor will not turn on again although vehicle speed drops below 10 km/h (6 mph).

Rear view

The rear image is displayed on the screen when the gear is in P (Park) to assist in parking. Using the view button (2) you may select top view, front view, side view and 3D view.

The rear view function will turn on under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse).
- The Parking/View button (1) button is pressed when gear is in P (Park).

The rear view function will turn off under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted from R (Reverse) to P (Park).
- The Parking/View button (1) button is pressed when gear is in P (Park).

Information

When the gear is in R (Reverse), the rear view does not turn off even if the infotainment system button (3) is pressed.

Rear View while driving

The driver can check the rear view on the screen while driving. The rear view while driving consist of a rear view while driving and a rear wide view while driving. Also, you can change the view mode you want to select by pressing the view button (2) on the infotainment system screen.

Rear View while driving function will turn on under the following conditions:

- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed, while driving above 10 km/h (6 mph).
- is selected among the view buttons (2) when vehicle speed is 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.

Rear View while driving function will turn off under the following conditions:

- The Parking/View button (1) or the infotainment system button (1) is pressed.
- The gear is shifted to P (Park).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed.
- The Home button (4) is pressed.
- Other view modes are selected when vehicle speed is 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.

3D view

The 3D view shows the image around the vehicle from various angles.

You can change angles by tapping the screen. Press the 3D View button again to return to the initial angle.

3D view will turn on when the 3D view is selected among the view buttons (2) under the following conditions:

- The gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive) when vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The Surround View Monitor is turned on when the gear is in R (Reverse).

When the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), 3D view will turn off under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed.
- The infotainment system button (3) is pressed.
- The Home button (4) is pressed.
- Vehicle speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph).

Information

3D view does not display guidelines.

Surround View Monitor malfunction and limitations

Surround View Monitor malfunction

When Surround View Monitor is not working properly, or the screen flickers, or the camera image does not display properly, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Limitations of Surround View Monitor

- When the vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter or when the vehicle is parked in an indoor parking lot, the exhaust fumes may temporarily blur the image.
- The screen may be displayed abnormally, and an icon will appear at the top left side of the screen under the following circumstances:
  - The trunk is opened
  - The driver or front passenger door is opened
  - The outside rearview mirror is folded

WARNING

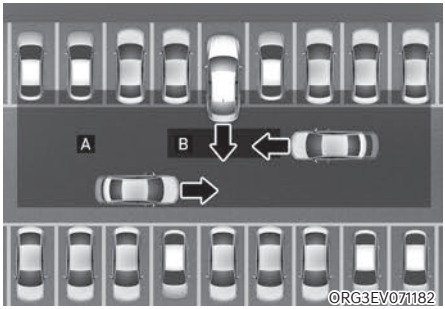
- **ALWAYS look around your vehicle to make sure there are no objects or obstacles before moving the vehicle. What you see on the screen may differ from the actual vehicle's location.**
- **The image shown on the screen may differ from the actual distance of the object. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.**
- **Surround View Monitor is designed to be used on a flat surface. Therefore, if used on roads with different heights such as curbs and speed bumps, the image in the screen my not look correct.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Surround View Monitor may not operate properly. However, do not use chemical solvents such as strong detergents containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (gasoline, acetone etc.). This may damage the camera lens.**

Information

- **When Rear View while Driving is on, it stays on while driving regardless of vehicle speed.**
- **When Rear View while Driving is on while backing up, the screen changes to the rear view.**

REAR CROSS-TRAFFIC COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (RCCA)

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to help detect vehicles approaching from the left and right side while your vehicle is reversing, and warn the driver that a collision is imminent with a warning message and an audible warning. Also, braking is assisted to help prevent collision.



[A]: Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning operating range,
[B]: Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operating range

CAUTION

Warning timing may vary depending on vehicle speed of the approaching vehicle.

Detecting sensor

[1]: Rear corner radar

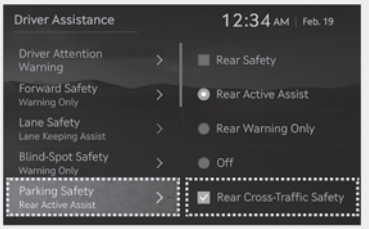
Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

Information

For more details on the precautions of the rear corner radar, refer to “Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)” section in this chapter.

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

Setting features



OJWEV071274L

Rear Cross-Traffic Safety

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Rear Cross-Traffic Safety' from the Settings menu to turn on Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist and deselect to turn off the function.

WARNING

When the vehicle is restarted, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will always turn on. However, if 'Off' is selected after the vehicle is restarted, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.

OJWEV071237L

Warning Timing

With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Timing' from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist. The warning time can be set to either 'Standard (Normal)' or 'Late (Later)'.

- Use 'Standard (Normal)' in normal driving conditions. If the Warning Timing seems sensitive, change it to 'Late (Later)'.
- If 'Late (Later)' is selected, Forward Collision Avoidance Assist, warns the driver more slowly.

■ Type A

OJWEV072446L

■ Type B

OJWEV072447L

Warning Methods

Type A: With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the Warning Volume.

Type B: With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Haptic Warning' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to activate steering wheel vibration.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**
- **With the Warning Volume in level 0, if you deselect or adjust the Haptic Warning to level 0, the Warning Volume will be automatically adjusted to volume level 2.**
- **With the Haptic Warning deselected or in level 0, if you adjust the Warning Volume to level 0, the Haptic Warning will be selected or automatically adjusted to volume level 2.**

CAUTION

- **The setting of the Warning Timing applies to all functions of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.**
- **Even though 'Standard (Normal)' is selected for Warning Timing, if a detected vehicle in front suddenly stops, the warning may seem late.**
- **Select 'Late (Later)' for Warning Timing when traffic is light and when driving speed is slow.**

Information

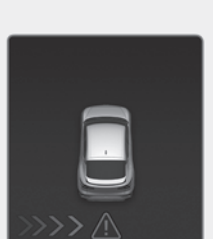
If the vehicle is restarted, Warning Timing and Warning Volume will maintain the last setting.

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

Warning and control

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn and control the vehicle depending on collision risk level: 'Collision Warning', 'Emergency Braking' and 'Stopping vehicle and ending brake control'.

OJWEV052092



OJWEV071040

OJWEV071225L

Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of an approaching a detected vehicle from the rear left/ right side of your vehicle, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror or digital side mirror (if equipped) will blink and a warning will appear on the cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate. If the Rear View Monitor is operating, a warning will also appear on the infotainment system screen.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when all the following conditions are satisfied:
  - The gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
  - Vehicle speed is below 8 km/h (5 mph)
  - The approaching a detected vehicle is within approximately 25 m (82 ft.) from the left and right side of your vehicle
  - The speed of the a detected vehicle approaching from the left and right is above 5 km/h (3 mph)

Information

- **If the operating conditions are satisfied, there will be a warning whenever the vehicle approaches from the left or right side even though your vehicle speed is 0 km/h (0 mph).**
- **The images and colors in the cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.**

OJWEV052092

OJWEV071041L

OJWEV071225L

Emergency Braking

- To warn the driver of an approaching a detected vehicle from the rear left/ right side of your vehicle, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror or digital side mirror (if equipped) will blink and a warning message will appear on the cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate. A warning will also appear on the infotainment system screen.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when all the following conditions are satisfied:
  - The gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
  - Vehicle speed is below 8 km/h (5 mph)
  - The approaching a detected vehicle is within approximately 1.5 m (5 ft.) from the left and right side of your vehicle
  - The speed of the a detected vehicle approaching from the left and right is above 5 km/h (3 mph)
- Emergency braking will be assisted to help prevent collision with approaching vehicles from the left and right.

WARNING

Brake control ends when the conditions of the approaching vehicle from the rear left or right side are as below:

- **The approaching vehicle is out of the detecting range**
- **The approaching vehicle passes behind your vehicle**
- **The approaching vehicle does not drive toward your vehicle**
- **The approaching vehicle speed slows down**
- **The driver depresses the brake pedal with sufficient power**

OJWEV071042L

Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster.
- For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.
- During emergency braking, braking control by Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will automatically cancel when the driver excessively depresses the brake pedal.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist:

- **For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.**
- **If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist's warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.**
- **You may not hear the warning sound of Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding is noisy.**
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid collision.**
- **During Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.**
- **Even if there is a problem with Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic braking will function normally.**
- **When Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating, braking control by function will automatically cancel when the driver excessively depresses the accelerator pedal.**

- **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate in all situations or cannot avoid all collisions.**
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions.**
- **The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle. Do not solely depend on Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.**
- **Never deliberately operate Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist on people, animal, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.**

CAUTION

The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control).

There will only be a warning when:

- **The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on**
- **ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is engaged in a different function**

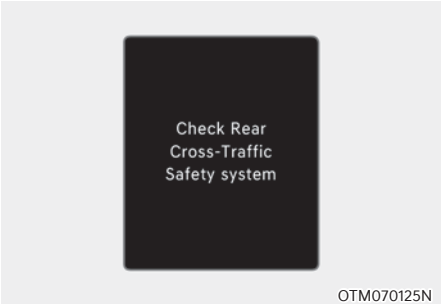
Information

If braking is assisted by Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist, the driver must immediately depress the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings.

- **Brake control will end when the driver depresses the brake pedal with sufficient power.**
- **After shifting the gear to R (Reverse), braking control will operate once for left and right vehicle approach.**

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction



OTM070125N

When Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the 'Check Rear Cross-Traffic Safety system(s)' warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

■ Type A

OJWEV071275L

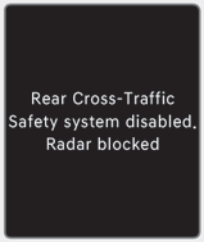
■ Type B

OJWEV071276L

When the outside rearview mirror warning light is not working properly, the 'Check side view mirror warning light' (or 'Check outside mirror warning icon') warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled

■ Type A



OTM070124N

■ Type B

OTM070124L

When the rear bumper around the rear-side radar or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, or installing a trailer or carrier, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If this occurs, the 'Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled. Radar blocked' (or 'Rear cross-traffic safety functions disabled. Radar blocked') warning message will appear on the cluster.

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate properly when such foreign material or trailer, etc., is removed.

If Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

- **Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly.**
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly in an area (for example, open terrain), where any substance are not detected after turning ON the vehicle.**

CAUTION

Turn off Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist to install or remove a trailer, carrier, or another attachment. Turn on Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist when finished.

Limitations of Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Departing from where trees or grass are overgrown
- Departing from where roads are wet
- Speed of the approaching vehicle is fast or slow

Braking control may not work, driver's attention is required in the following circumstances:

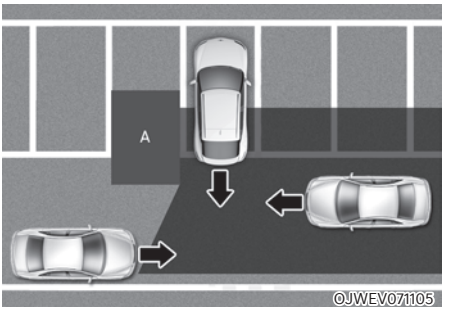
- The vehicle severely vibrates while driving over a bumpy road, uneven road or concrete patch
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- The tire pressure is low or a tire is damaged
- The braking system has been modified
- Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating (if equipped)

Information

For more details on the limitations of the rear corner radar, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)" section in this chapter.

WARNING

- **Driving near a vehicle or structure**

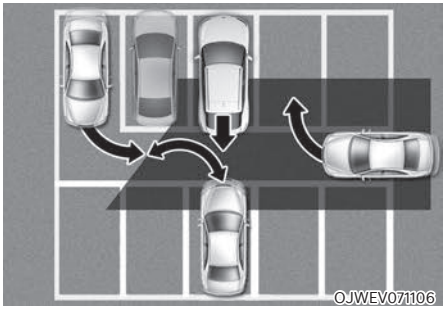


[A]: Structure

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when driving near a vehicle or structure, and may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the function may not warn the driver or control the brakes when necessary.

Always check your surroundings while backing up.

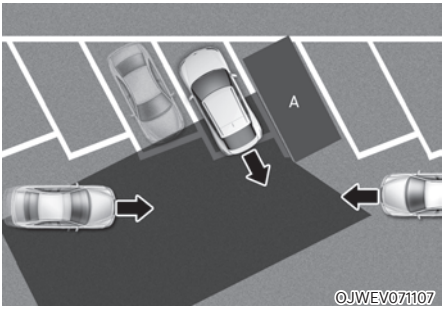
- **When the vehicle is in a complex parking environment**



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles which are parking or pulling out near your vehicle (example, a vehicle leaving beside your vehicle, a vehicle parking or pulling out in the rear area, a vehicle approaching your vehicle making a turn, etc.). If this occurs, the function may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake.

Always check your surroundings while backing up.

- **When the vehicle is parked diagonally**

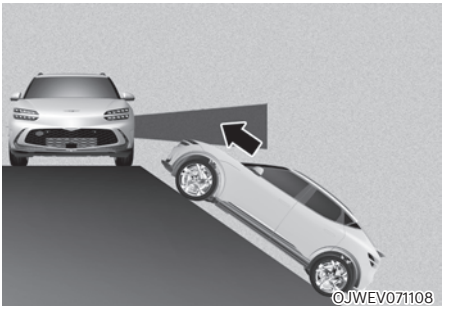


[A]: Vehicle

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when backing up diagonally, and may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the function may not warn the driver or control the brakes when necessary.

Always check your surroundings while backing up.

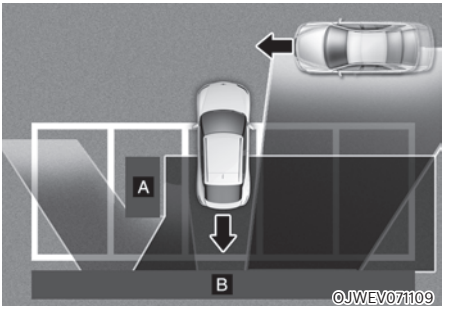
- **When the vehicle is on or near a slope**



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when the vehicle is on a uphill or downhill slope, or near it, and may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the function may not warn the driver or control the brakes when necessary.

Always check your surroundings while backing up.

- **Pulling into the parking space where there is a structure**

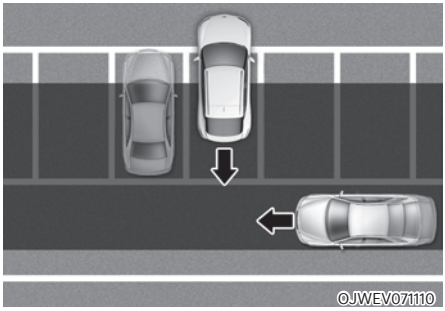


[A]: Structure, [B]: Wall

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles passing by in front of you when parking in reverse into a parking space with a wall or structure in the rear or side area. If this occurs, the function may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake.

Always check your surroundings while backing up.

- **When the vehicle is parked rearward**



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles passing by behind you when parking in reverse into a parking space. If this occurs, the function may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake.

Always check your surroundings while backing up.

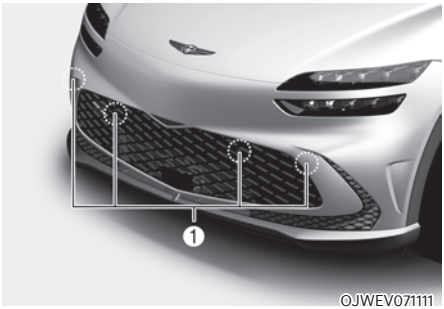
WARNING

- **When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist for safety reasons.**
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.**
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the rear corner radars are initialized.**

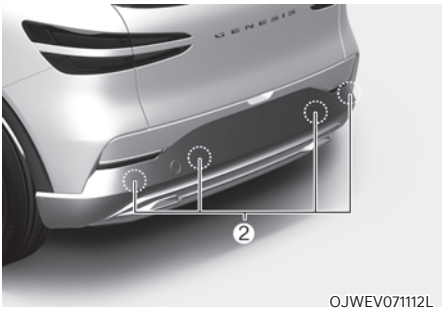
FORWARD/REVERSE PARKING DISTANCE WARNING (PDW) (IF EQUIPPED)

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will help warn the driver if an obstacle is detected within a certain distance when the vehicle is moving forward or in reverse at low speeds.

Detecting sensor



OJWEV071111



OJWEV071112L

[1]: Front ultrasonic sensors,
[2]: Rear ultrasonic sensors

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning settings

Warning Methods

OJWEV072449L

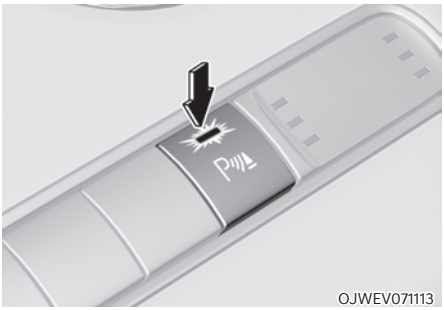
With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the Warning Volume.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning operation

Operating button



Parking Safety button

- Press the Parking Safety (P) button to turn on Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning. Press the button again to turn off the function.
- When Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is off (button indicator light off), if you shift the gear to R (Reverse), Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will automatically turn on.
- When Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning turns on, the button indicator light will turn on. If vehicle speed is above 20 km/h (12 mph), Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will turn off (button indicator light off).

✳ If equipped with Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or Remote Smart Parking Assist, Forward/ Reverse Parking Distance Warning will turn off (button indicator light off) when vehicle speed is above 30 km/h (18 mph).

Forward Parking Distance Warning

- Forward Parking Distance Warning will operate when one of the condition is satisfied.
  - The gear is shifted from R (Reverse) to D (Drive) with Reverse Parking Distance Warning on
  - The gear is in D (Drive) and the Parking Safety (P) button indicator light is on
  - ‘Parking Distance Warning Auto On’ is selected from the Settings menu and the gear is in D (Drive)
  - The vehicle's forward speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).

Information

- **Forward Parking Distance Warning does not operate when the vehicle's forward speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph) even when the Parking Safety (P) button indicator is on. Forward Parking Distance Warning will operate again when the vehicle's forward speed decreases below 10 km/h (6 mph) while the Parking Safety (P) button indicator is on.**
- **Forward Parking Distance Warning is deactivated if the vehicle speed reaches above 30km/h (18mph). It will not reactivate although the vehicle speed drops below 10km/h (6mph). (Only when Parking Warning Auto On is not selected)**

Distance from object	Warning indicator when driving forward	Warning sound
60~100 cm (24~40 in.)		Buzzer beeps intermittently
30~60 cm (12~24 in.)		Beeps more frequently
within 30 cm (12 in.)		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will illuminate whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning will sound.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one will be warned with an audible warning.
- When people, animals, or other objects are not positioned directly in front of the ultrasonic sensor, the distance might be differently detected.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

Reverse Parking Distance Warning

Rear Parking Distance Warning will operate under following conditions.

- When the gear is shifted to R (Reverse).
- When vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).

Information

Parking Distance Warning detects and warns the driver of both rear and front corners, when the vehicle speed is below 10km/h (6mph).

Distance from object	Warning indicator when driving backward	Warning sound
60~120 cm (24~48 in.)		Buzzer beeps intermittently
30~60 cm (12~24 in.)		Beeps more frequently
within 30 cm (12 in.)		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will illuminate whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning will sound.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one will be warned with an audible warning.
- When people, animals, or other objects are not positioned directly in front of the ultrasonic sensor, the distance might be differently detected.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning malfunction and limitations

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning malfunction

After starting the vehicle, a beep will sound when the gear is shifted to R (Reverse) to indicate Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is operating properly.

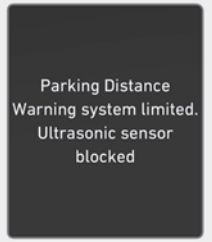
However, if one or more of the following occurs, first check whether the ultrasonic sensor is damaged or blocked with foreign material. If it still does not work properly, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

- The audible warning does not sound.
- The buzzer sounds intermittently.
- The 'Ultrasonic sensor error or blockage' warning message appears on the cluster.

OJWEV071232L

OJWEV071234

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning disabled



OJWEV071233L

OJWEV071234

If this occurs the 'Parking Distance Warning system limited. Ultrasonic sensor blocked' warning message appears on the cluster. Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed. If Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning does not operate properly after obstruction (snow, rain, or foreign material) is removed (including trailer, carrier, etc., from the rear bumper), we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

- **Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is a supplemental function. The operation of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the front and rear views before and while parking.**
- **Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle due to the malfunction of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning.**
- **Pay close attention when driving near objects, pedestrians, and especially children. Some objects may not be detected by the ultrasonic sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.**

Limitations of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning

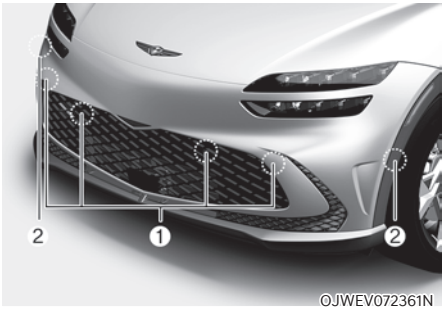
- Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning may not operate properly when:
  - Moisture is frozen to the sensor
  - Sensor is covered with foreign substance, such as snow or water (Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will operate properly when such substance is removed.)
  - The weather is extremely hot or cold
  - The sensor or sensor assembly is disassembled
  - The surface of the sensor is pressed hard or hit with a hard object
  - The surface of the sensor is scratched with a sharp object
  - The sensors or its surrounding area is directly sprayed with high pressure washer
- Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning may malfunction when:
  - Heavy rain or water spray is present
  - Water flows on the surface of the sensor
  - Affected by another vehicle's sensors
  - The sensor is covered with snow or ice
  - Driving on uneven road, gravel roads or bushes
  - Objects that generates ultrasonic waves are near the sensor
  - License plate is installed in a different spot from the original location
  - The vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
  - Attaching equipment or accessories next to the ultrasonic sensors

- The following objects may not be detected:
  - Sharp or slim objects, such as ropes, chains or small poles.
  - Narrow objects, such as corners of a square column
  - Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
  - Objects smaller than 100 cm (40 in.) in length and narrower than 14 cm (6 in.) in diameter.
  - Pedestrians, animals or objects that are very close to the ultrasonic sensors
- Parking Distance Warning Indicators may be displayed differently from the actual detected location when the obstacle is located between the sensors.
- Parking Distance Warning indicator may not occur sequentially depending on vehicle speed or obstacle shape.
- If Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning needs repair, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

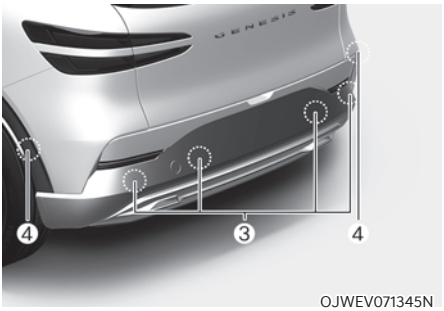
FORWARD/SIDE/REVERSE PARKING DISTANCE WARNING (PDW) (IF EQUIPPED)

Forward/Side/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will help warn the driver if an obstacle is detected within a certain distance when the vehicle is moving forward or in reverse at low speeds.

Detecting sensor



OJWEV072361N



OJWEV071345N

[1]: Front ultrasonic sensors,
[2]: Front side ultrasonic sensors,
[3]: Rear ultrasonic sensors,
[4]: Rear side ultrasonic sensors

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

Parking Distance Warning Settings

Warning Methods

OJWEV072449L

With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the Warning Volume.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**

Parking Distance Warning Auto On

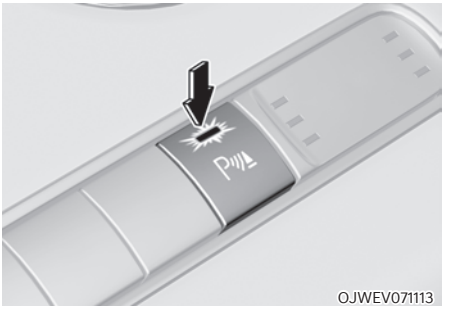
To use Parking Distance Warning Auto On function, select 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Parking Distance Warning Auto On' from the infotainment system Settings menu.

Information

When Parking Distance Warning Auto On is selected, the Parking Safety button indicator (P) stays on.

Parking Distance Warning Operation

Operating button



Parking Safety button

- Press the Parking Safety (P) button to turn on Parking Distance Warning. Press the button again to turn off the function.
- When the gear is shift to R (Reverse), Parking Distance Warning will automatically turn on (Parking Safety button indicator on).
- When the gear is in R (Reverse), Parking Distance Warning does not turn off even if the Parking Safety button is pressed.

Forward Parking Distance Warning

Forward Parking Distance Warning will operate under the following conditions.

- The gear is shifted from R (Reverse) to D (Drive) with Reverse Parking Distance Warning on
- The gear is in D (Drive) and the Parking Safety (P) button indicator light is on
- 'Parking Distance Warning Auto On' is selected from the Settings menu and the gear is in D (Drive)
- Vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).

Information

- **Forward Parking Distance Warning does not operate when the vehicle's forward speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph) even when the Parking Safety (P) button indicator is on. Forward Parking Distance Warning will operate again when the vehicle's forward speed decreases below 10 km/h (6 mph) while the Parking Safety (P) button indicator is on.**
- **Forward Parking Distance Warning is deactivated if the vehicle speed reaches above 30 km/h (18 mph). It will not reactivate although the vehicle speed drops below 10 km/h (6 mph). (Only when Parking Warning Auto On is not selected)**

Distance from object	Warning indicator when driving forward	Warning sound
60~100 cm (20~40 in.)		Buzzer beeps intermittently
30~60 cm (12~24 in.)		Beeps more frequently
30 cm (within 12 in.)		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will illuminate whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning will sound.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one will be warned with an audible warning.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

Side Parking Distance Warning

Side Parking Distance Warning will operate under the following conditions.

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse).
- The gear is shifted from R (Reverse) to D (Drive) with Reverse Parking Distance Warning on
- The gear is in D (Drive) and the Parking Safety (P) button indicator light is on
- 'Parking Distance Warning Auto On' is selected from the Settings menu and the gear is in D (Drive)
- The vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).

Distance from object	Warning indicator when driving forward/ rearward	Warning sound
60~100 cm (20~40 in.)		-
30~60 cm (12~24 in.)		-
30 cm (within 12 in.)		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will illuminate whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range.
- If an object located within 30 cm (12 in.) from the side of the vehicle's path is detected, an audible warning will sound.
- If an object outside the side of the vehicle's path is detected, the warning indicator will be displayed.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

Information

Side Parking Distance Warning operated only when Forward or Reverse Parking Distance Warning is on.

Reverse Parking Distance Warning

Rear Parking Distance Warning will operate under the following conditions.

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse).
- Vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).

Information

Parking Distance Warning detects and warns the driver of both rear and front corners, when the vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).

Distance from object	Warning indicator when driving backward	Warning sound
60~100 cm (20~40 in.)		Buzzer beeps intermittently
30~60 cm (12~24 in.)		Beeps more frequently
30 cm (within 12 in.)		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will illuminate whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning will sound.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one will be warned with an audible warning.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

Parking Distance Warning Malfunction and Limitations

Parking Distance Warning malfunction

After starting the vehicle, a beep will sound when the gear is shifted to R (Reverse) to indicate Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is operating properly.

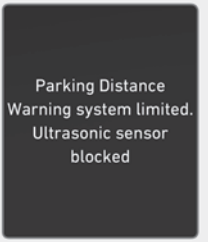
However, if one or more of the following occurs, first check whether the ultrasonic sensor is damaged or blocked with foreign material. If it still does not work properly, have the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

- The audible warning does not sound.
- The buzzer sounds intermittently.
- The 'Ultrasonic sensor error or blockage' warning message appears on the cluster.

OJWEV071232L

OJWEV071350N

Parking Distance Warning disabled



OJWEV071233L

If this occurs the 'Parking Distance Warning system limited. Ultrasonic sensor blocked' warning message appears on the cluster. Parking Distance Warning will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed. If Parking Distance Warning does not operate properly after obstruction (snow, rain, or foreign material) is removed (including trailer, carrier, etc., from the rear bumper), have the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Limitations of Parking Distance Warning

- Parking Distance Warning may not operate properly when:
  - Moisture is frozen to the sensor
  - Sensor is covered with foreign substance, such as snow or water (Parking Distance Warning will operate properly when such substance is removed.)
  - The weather is extremely hot or cold
  - The sensor or sensor assembly is disassembled
  - The surface of the sensor is pressed hard or hit with a hard object
  - The surface of the sensor is scratched with a sharp object
  - The sensors or its surrounding area is directly sprayed with high pressure washer
- Parking Distance Warning may malfunction when:
  - Heavy rain or water spray is present
  - Water flows on the surface of the sensor
  - Affected by another vehicle's sensors
  - The sensor is covered with snow or ice
  - Driving on uneven road, gravel roads or bushes
  - Objects that generates ultrasonic waves are near the sensor
  - License plate is installed in a different spot from the original location
  - The vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
  - Attaching equipment or accessories next to the ultrasonic sensors
- The following objects may not be detected:
  - Sharp or slim objects, such as ropes, chains or small poles.
  - Narrow objects, such as corners of a square column
  - Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
  - Objects smaller than 100 cm (40 in.) in length and narrower than 14 cm (6 in.) in diameter.
  - Pedestrians, animals or objects that are very close to the ultrasonic sensors
  - An object in the side space between the front corner ultrasonic sensor and the rear corner ultrasonic sensor or an object approaching the side space

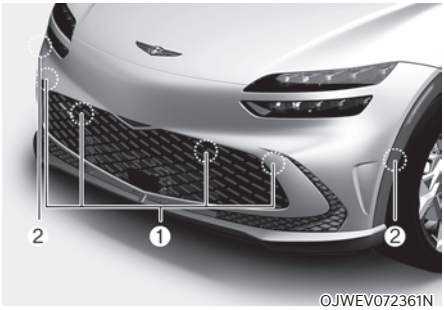
WARNING

- **Parking Distance Warning is a supplemental function. The operation of Parking Distance Warning can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the front and rear views before and while parking.**
- **Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle due to the malfunction of Parking Distance Warning.**
- **Pay close attention when driving near objects, pedestrians, and especially children. Some objects may not be detected by the ultrasonic sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.**
- **Parking Distance Warning does not warn you in the order of detection. It varies depending on the speed of the vehicle or the shape of a person, animal, or object.**
- **If the Parking Distance Warning does not operate properly, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

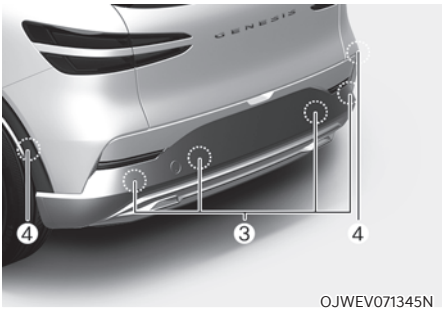
PARKING COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (PCA) (IF EQUIPPED)

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist can warn the driver or assist with braking to help reduce the possibility of collision with a pedestrian or an object while driving at low speed.

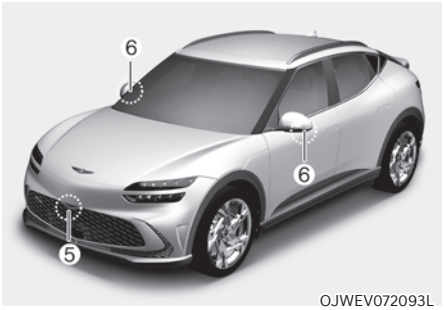
Detecting sensor



OJWEV072361N



OJWEV071345N



OJWEV072093L

OJWEV072104L

[1]: Front ultrasonic sensors,
[2]: Front side ultrasonic sensors,
[3]: Rear ultrasonic sensors,
[4]: Rear side ultrasonic sensors,
[5]: Wide front view camera,
[6]: Wide side view camera (Below the outside rearview mirror),
[7]: Wide rear view camera

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist Settings

Setting features

Parking Safety

OJWEV072362N

With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If 'Front/Side Safety' is selected, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver and assist with braking when a collision with a pedestrian or an object is imminent from the front or the side.
- If 'Rear Safety' is selected, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver and assist with braking when a collision with a pedestrian or an object is imminent from behind.

Information

'Forward/Side Safety' can be selected only when 'Rear Safety' is selected. If the vehicle is restarted, 'Rear Safety' is selected and 'Forward/Side safety' maintains the last setting.

OJWEV071237L

Warning Timing

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Warning Timing' from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist. The warning time can be set to either 'Standard' or 'Late'.

- Use 'Standard' in normal driving conditions. If the Warning Timing seems too sensitive, change it to 'Late'.
- If 'Late' is selected, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist warns the driver more slowly.

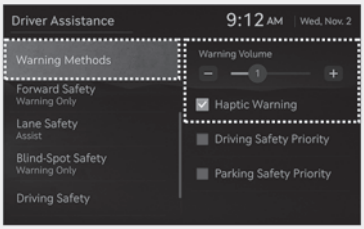
Information

If you change the Warning Timing, the Warning Timing of other Driver Assistance systems may change.

■ Type A

OJWEV072447L

■ Type B



OJWEV072446L

Warning Methods

Type A: With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the Warning Volume.

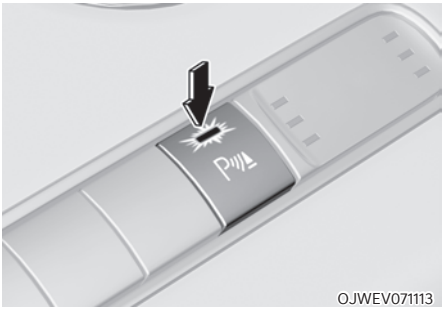
Type B: With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Haptic Warning' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to activate steering wheel vibration.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**
- **With the Warning Volume in level 0, if you deselect or adjust the Haptic Warning to level 0, the Warning Volume will be automatically adjusted to volume level 2.**
- **With the Haptic Warning deselected or in level 0, if you adjust the Warning Volume to level 0, the Haptic Warning will be selected or automatically adjusted to volume level 2.**

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist Operation

Turning Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist On/Off



Press and hold the Parking Safety (P) button more than 2 seconds, to turn the Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist on or off.

Operating conditions

Select 'Rear Safety' from the 'Parking Safety' menu of the infotainment system. Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist is enabled when the following conditions are satisfied:

Rear Safety

- The liftgate and door are closed
- The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is released
- A trailer is not connected
- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
- Vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph) (detecting pedestrians)
- Vehicle speed is below 4 km/h (2.4 mph) (detecting objects)
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist components such as the rear view camera and the rear ultrasonic sensors are in normal conditions

Front/Side Safety

- The liftgate and door are closed
- The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is released
- A trailer is not connected
- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse) or D (Drive)
- Vehicle speed is below 4 km/h (2.4 mph) (for pedestrians, objects)
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist components such as the wide rear view camera and the rear ultrasonic sensors are in normal conditions

When Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist activates, a line appears behind the vehicle image in the instrument cluster.

- Rear Safety: Behind the vehicle image
- Front/Side Safety: In front of vehicle image

OJWEV071319N

Information

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operates only once after shifting the gear to R (Reverse) or D (Drive). To reactivate Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist, shift the gear from another gear to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist

If Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects a risk of collision around the vehicle with a pedestrian or an object, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver with an audible warning and warning message on the instrument cluster. If the infotainment screen is on, a warning will appear on the screen.If collision is imminent, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will assist you with braking.

Front/Side Safety

Braking assist is released 2 seconds at D (drive) and 5 minutes at R (reverse). Immediately depress the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings. Braking assist is also released in the following conditions when:

- The gear is shifted to other positions but N(Neutral)
- The brake pedal is depressed with sufficient power

Rear Safety

Braking assist is released after 5 minutes. Immediately depress the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings. Braking assist is also released in the following conditions when:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park) or D (Drive)
- The brake pedal is depressed with sufficient power

Information

When Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist is activated while reversing, braking control will be released after 5 minutes and the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) will be engaged.

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist Malfunction and Limitations

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction

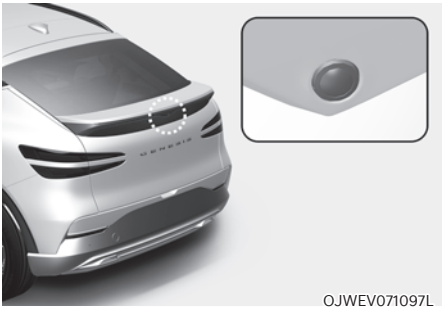
OJWEV071300L

OJWEV071350N

When Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or other related functions are not working properly, the 'Check Parking Safety system' warning message will appear on the cluster, and Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off automatically. Have the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

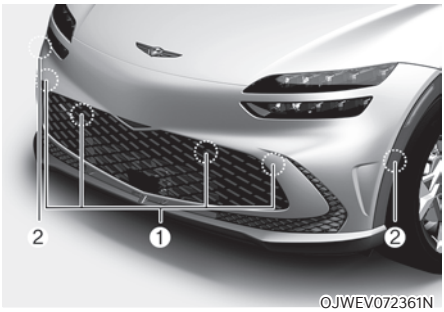
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled

OJWEV071349N

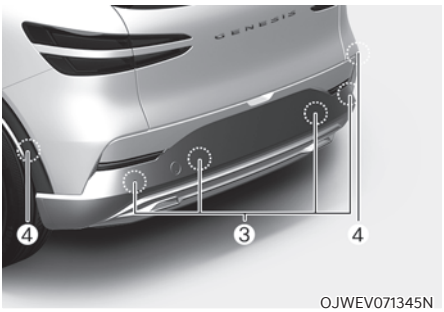


OJWEV071097L

The wide view cameras are used as detecting sensors to detect pedestrians. If the camera lens is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it may adversely affect camera performance and Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly. Always keep the camera lens clean.



OJWEV072361N



OJWEV071345N

[1]: Front ultrasonic sensors,
[2]: Front side ultrasonic sensors,
[3]: Rear ultrasonic sensors,
[4]: Rear side ultrasonic sensors

The ultrasonic sensors detect objects around the vehicle. If the sensors are covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it may adversely affect sensor performance and Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly. Always keep the rear bumper clean.

OJWEV071301L

OJWEV071302L

OJWEV071350N

The ‘Camera error or blockage’ or ‘Ultrasonic sensor error or blockage’ warning message will appear on the cluster if the following situations occur:

- The camera(s) or ultrasonic sensor(s) is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, etc.
- There is inclement weather, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, etc.

If this occurs, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may turn off or may not operate properly. Check whether the cameras and ultrasonic sensors are clean.

Limitations of Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not assist braking or warn the driver even if there are pedestrians or objects under the following circumstances:

- Any non-factory equipment or accessory is installed
- Your vehicle is unstable due to an accident or other causes
- Bumper height or rear ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
- Wide view camera (s) or ultrasonic sensor (s) is damaged
- Wide view camera(s) or the ultrasonic sensor (s) is stained with foreign material, such as snow, dirt, etc.
- Wide view camera (s) is obscured by a light source or by inclement weather, such as heavy rain, fog, snow, etc.
- The surrounding is very bright or very dark
- Outside temperature is very high or very low
- The wind is either strong (above 20 km/h (12 mph)) or blowing perpendicular to the rear bumper
- Objects generating excessive noise, such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle vehicles or truck air brakes, are near your vehicle
- An ultrasonic sensor with similar frequency is near your vehicle
- The road is slippery or inclined
- The pedestrians are difficult to detect
- The image of the pedestrian in the front view camera is indistinguishable from the background
- There is ground height difference between the vehicle and the pedestrian
- The pedestrian is near the rear edge of the vehicle
- The pedestrian is not standing upright
- The pedestrian is either very short or very tall to detect
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing that easily blends into the background, making it difficult to detect
- The pedestrian is wearing clothing that does not reflect ultrasonic waves well
- Size, thickness, height, or shape of the object does not reflect ultrasonic waves well (for example, pole, bush, curbs, carts, edge of a wall, etc.)
- The pedestrian or the object is moving
- The pedestrian or the object is very close to the rear of the vehicle
- There is a large object such as a wall is behind the pedestrian or the object
- The object is not located at the front or rear center of your vehicle
- The object is not parallel to the rear bumper
- The pedestrians or objects are close to the left/right side of the vehicle
- The sensors cannot detect the pedestrians and objects
- The road is slippery or inclined
- The driver drives the vehicle immediately after shifting to R (Reverse) or D (Drive)
- The driver accelerates or circles the vehicle
- The vehicle moves forward and backward repeatedly
- The vehicle is driven car immediately after starting the vehicle

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may unnecessarily warn the driver or assist with braking even if there are no pedestrians or objects under the following circumstances:

- Any non-factory equipment or accessory is installed
- Your vehicle is unstable due to an accident or other causes
- Bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tire pressure, etc.
- Wide view camera(s) or the rear ultrasonic sensor(s) is stained with foreign material, such as snow, dirt, etc.
- The pattern on the road is mistaken for a pedestrian
- There is shadow or light reflecting on the ground
- Pedestrians or objects are around the path of the vehicle
- Objects generating excessive noise, such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle vehicles or truck air brakes, are near your vehicle
- Your vehicle is backing towards a narrow passage or parking space
- Your vehicle is backing towards an uneven road surface, such as an unpaved road, gravel, bump, gradient, etc.
- A trailer or carrier is installed on the rear of your vehicle
- An ultrasonic sensor with similar frequency is near your vehicle
- The pedestrian or the object is moving
- The driver accelerates or circles the vehicle
- The vehicle moves forward and backward repeatedly

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist:

- **Always pay extreme caution while driving. The driver is responsible for controlling the brake for safe driving.**
- **Always pay attention to road and traffic conditions while driving, whether or not there is a warning.**
- **Always look around your vehicle to make sure there are no pedestrians or objects before moving the vehicle.**
- **The performance of Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may vary under certain conditions. If vehicle speed is above 2 mph (4 km/h), Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will provide collision avoidance assist only when pedestrians are detected. Always look around and pay attention when driving your vehicle.**
- **Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may operate differently under certain conditions. If the vehicle moves forward and backward repeatedly, the Collision-Avoidance Assist may fail to assist braking or to warn the driver. Always pay attention when driving your vehicle.**
- **Some objects may not be detected by the ultrasonic sensors due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.**
- **Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly or may operate unnecessarily depending on the road conditions and the surroundings.**
- **Do not solely rely on Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist. Doing so may lead to vehicle damage or injuries.**

CAUTION

- Noise may be heard when sudden braking occurs to avoid a collision.
- If any other warning sound such as the seat belt warning chime is already generated, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist warning may not sound.
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not work properly if the bumper has been damaged, replaced or repaired.
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
- Playing the vehicle audio system at high volume may prevent passengers from hearing Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist warning sounds.
- Turn off Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist when towing a trailer. If towing and moving in reverse, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will activate as it detects the trailer.
- The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control).

  There will only be a warning when:

  - The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on
  - ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is engaged in a different function
- Check the condition of the brake oil and brake pad on a regular basis. Brake performance may be reduced depending on the condition.

CAUTION

Take the following precautions to maintain optimal performance of the detecting sensors:

- Always keep the wide angle cameras and ultrasonic sensors clean.
- Do not use any cleanser containing acid or alkaline detergents when cleaning the camera lens. Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Do not spray the wide angle cameras or the rear ultrasonic sensors or their surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. It may cause the wide angle cameras or the ultrasonic sensors to malfunction.
- Do not apply objects, such as a bumper sticker or a bumper guard, near the wide angle cameras or ultrasonic sensors or apply paint to the bumper. Doing so may adversely affect the performance of Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist.
- Never disassemble or apply impact on the wide angle cameras or the ultrasonic sensors components.
- Do not apply unnecessary force on the wide angle cameras or the ultrasonic sensors. Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly if the wide angle cameras or the ultrasonic sensor(s) is forcibly moved out of proper alignment. Have the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

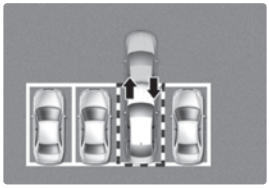
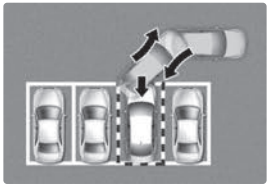
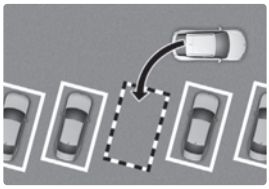
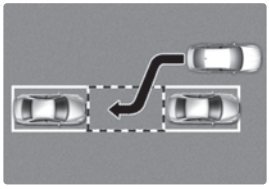
Information

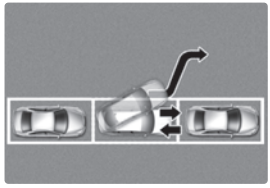
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist can detect a pedestrian or an object when:

- **A pedestrian is standing behind the vehicle**
- **A large obstacle, such as a vehicle, is parked in the rear center of your vehicle**

REMOTE SMART PARKING ASSIST 2 (RSPA 2) (IF EQUIPPED)

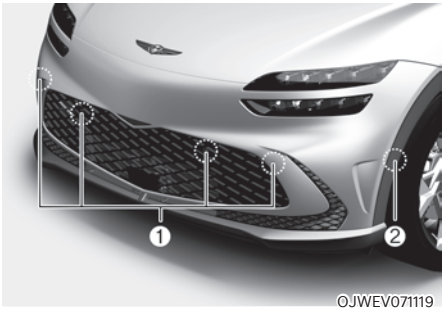
Remote Smart Parking Assist uses vehicle sensors to help the driver park and exit parking spaces remotely from outside the vehicle by controlling the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshifts.

Function	Description
Remote Operation	Remotely moving forward or backward  ORG3EV071159
Smart Parking or Remote Smart Parking	Perpendicular reverse parking  ORG3EV071160
	Diagonal reverse parking  OJWEV071320N
	Parallel reverse parking  ORG3EV071161

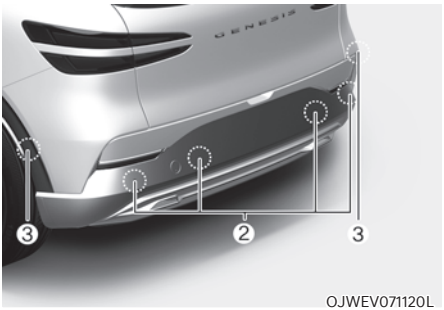
Function	Description
Smart Exit	Parallel forward exit  ORG3EV071162

- Remote Smart Parking and Remote Operation function may be operated from outside the vehicle using the smart key.
- Smart Parking and Remote Smart Parking function may be operated from inside the vehicle.
- Smart Parking and Remote Smart Parking function helps the driver with perpendicular reverse parking and parallel reverse parking.
- Smart Exit function helps the driver with parallel forward exit.
- When Remote Smart Parking Assist operates, Parking Distance Warning and Surround View Monitor will also operate. For more details, refer to “Parking Distance Warning (PDW)” and “Surround View Monitor (SVM)” sections in this chapter.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist helps parking by recognizing the parking lines with the wide angle camera.

Detecting sensors



OJWEV071119



OJWEV071120L

[1]: Front ultrasonic sensors,
[2]: Front corner ultrasonic sensors,
[3]: Rear corner ultrasonic sensors,
[4]: Rear ultrasonic sensors

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

Wide angle camera

OJWEV071103

OJWEV071104

[1]: Wide front view camera,
[2], [3]: Wide side view camera,
[4]: Wide rear view camera

CAUTION

Take the following precautions to maintain optimal performance of the detecting sensors:

- **Never disassemble the detecting sensor or sensor assembly, or cause any damage to it.**
- **If the detecting sensors need repair, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

- **Remote Smart Parking Assist may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.**
- **When the ultrasonic sensor is frozen or stained with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be not operate until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.**
- **Do not push, scratch or strike the ultrasonic sensor. Sensor damage could occur.**
- **Do not spray the ultrasonic sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate properly.**
- **Do not manually adjust the rearview mirror or use Remote Smart Parking Assist after a hard impact on the rearview mirror.**

  When a collision occurs or the outside rearview mirror is manually operated, Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate properly.

Remote Smart Parking Assist settings

Settings features

OJWEV072449L

Warning Methods

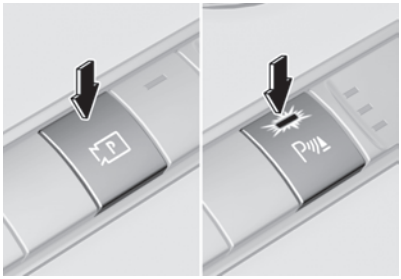
With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the Warning Volume.

Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**

Remote Smart Parking Assist operation

Remote Smart Parking Assist button

Parking/View button, Parking Safety button	Smart key
 OJWEV071121	OJWEV071154

Location	Name	Symbol	Description
Inside vehicle	Parking/View button	P	• Press and hold the Parking/View button to turn on Remote Smart Parking Assist. Also, Forward/ Reverse Parking Distance warning will automatically turn on. However, functions may differ depending on the situations. Refer to each function's description for more details in the following pages. • Press and hold the Parking/View button while Smart Parking or Smart Exit function is on to operate the function.
	Parking Safety button	P	• Press the Parking Safety button while Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating to end Remote Smart Parking Assist operation.
Smart key	Remote Start button	HOLD	• Press the Remote Start button after the door is locked with the vehicle off to start the vehicle remotely. • Press the Remote Start button while Remote Smart Parking or Remote Operation function is operating to end function operation.
	Forward button	P	• When using Remote Smart Parking function, regardless of which direction button is pressed, parking is supported while the button is pressed. • When using the Remote Operation function, the vehicle moves in the direction of the button while the button is pressed.
	Backward button	P	

Remote Operation

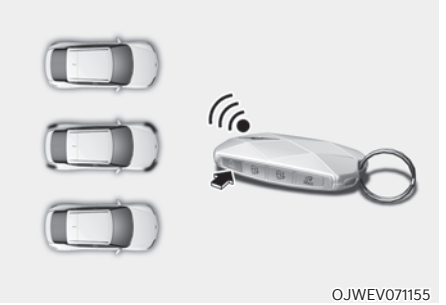
Operating order

Remote Operation function operates in the following order:

1. Getting ready to remotely move forward and backward
2. Remotely moving forward and backward

1. Getting ready to remotely move forward and backward

There are two ways to operate Remote Operation function.



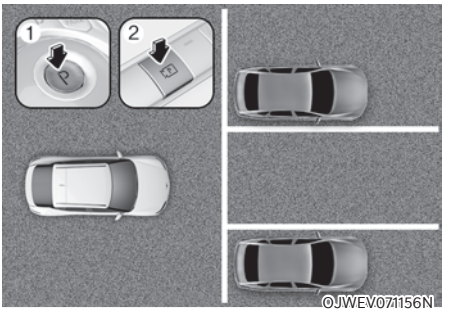
OJWEV071155

Method (1) Using the function with vehicle off

(1) Within a certain range from the vehicle press the door lock ( ) button on the smart key and lock all doors.

(2) Press and hold the Remote Start button (HOLD) within 4 seconds until the vehicle starts.

- For more details on remotely starting the vehicle, refer to “Remote Start” section in chapter 6.



OJWEV071156N

OJWEV071277L

Method (2) Using the function with vehicle on

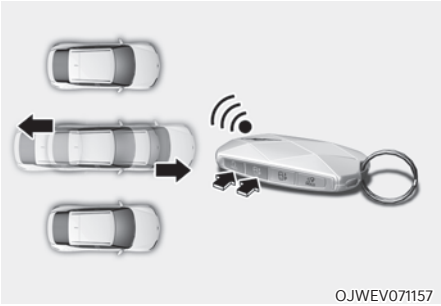
(1) Park the vehicle in front of the space where you want to use Remote Operation function, and shift the gear to P (Park).

(2) Press and hold the Parking/View (P) button to turn on Smart Parking Assist. A message ‘Remote Parking Instructions’ will appear on the infotainment system screen.

(3) Get out of the vehicle with the smart key and close all doors.

- 'Agree' must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use Remote Operation function.
- Method (2) can be used after the vehicle has been driven above 5 km/h (3 mph).
- If the function is turned on again after parallel parking is completed by Remote Smart Parking Assist, Remote Operation function can be used with Method (2).
- Check that all smart keys are outside the vehicle when using Remote Operation function.

2. Remotely moving forward and backward



OJWEV071157

(1) Press and hold one of the Forward (P) or Backward (P) button on the smart key. Remote Smart Parking Assist will automatically control the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift. The vehicle will move in the direction of the button pressed.

(2) While Remote Operation function is operating, if you do not hold down the Forward (P) or Backward (P) button, the vehicle will stop and function control will pause. The function will start operating again when the button is pressed and held again.

(3) When the vehicle reaches the target location, release the smart key Forward or Backward button.

(4) When the driver gets in the vehicle with the smart key, a message will appear informing the driver Remote Operation function is complete on the infotainment system screen and the vehicle will remain on.

In addition, when the Remote Start (HOLD) button is pressed on the smart key from outside the vehicle, a message will appear informing the driver Remote Operation function is complete and the vehicle will turn off.

Information

- **Check that all smart keys are outside the vehicle when using Remote Operation function.**
- **Remote Operation function will operate only when the smart key is within 4 m (13 ft.) from the vehicle. If there is no vehicle movement even when the Forward or Backward button is pressed on the smart key, check the distance to the vehicle and press the button again.**
- **The detecting range of the smart key may vary depending on the surroundings that are affected by radio waves such as transmission tower, broadcast station, etc.**
- **When remotely moving forward using method (1), it is recognized as an exit situation, and the vehicle moves 4 m (13 ft.) to check for pedestrians, animals or objects around the vehicle. After confirmation, the steering wheel is controlled according to the condition ahead.**
- **When remotely moving forward using method (2), it is recognized as a parking situation, and will immediately control the steering wheel according to the condition ahead to assist with entering the parking space and aligning the vehicle. However, performance may reduce depending on the pedestrians, animals, shape of objects, location, etc., around the vehicle.**
- **For moving remotely backward, both method (1) and (2) aligns the steering wheel first, and then will only move the vehicle straight.**
- **When remotely moving forward or backward is completed, the vehicle will automatically shift to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).**

CAUTION

- **When using Remote Operation function, make sure that all passengers have gotten out of the vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle's battery is discharged or Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunctions when parked in a narrow parking space, Remote Operation function will not operate. Always park your vehicle in a space wide enough for you to get in or out of your vehicle.**
- **Please note that depending on the parking space, you may not be able to exit from the space you have entered by using Remote Operation function.**
- **After parking, the surrounding may change due to the movement of surrounding vehicles. If this occurs, Remote Operation function may not operate.**
- **Before leaving the vehicle, close windows and sunroofs, and make sure the vehicle is off before locking the doors.**

Remote Operation function operation status

Operation status	Smart key LED	Hazard warning light
Under control	Green LED continuously blinks	-
Pause	Red LED continuously blinks	Blinks
Off	Red LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	Blinks 3 times and turns off
Complete	Green LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	Blinks 1 time and turns off

✳ Operation status by the hazard warning light may not be applicable based on the regulation of your country.

✳ If the smart key is not within the operating range from the vehicle (approximately 4m (13 ft.)), the smart key LED will not illuminate or blink. Use the smart key within the operating range.

How to turn off Remote Operation function while operating

- Press the Parking/View (P) button while the infotainment system screen guides the driver using method 2.
- Shift the gear except to P (Park) while the infotainment system screen guides the driver using method 2.
- Press the Parking Safety (P) button or select 'Cancel' on the infotainment system screen.
- Press the Remote Start (HOLD) button on the smart key while the vehicle is being controlled by Remote Operation function. Remote Operation function will turn off. At this time, the vehicle will turn off.
- Get on the vehicle with the smart key. Remote Operation function will turn off. At this time, the vehicle will remain on.

The function will pause in the following conditions when:

- There is a detected pedestrian, animal or object in the direction the vehicle is moving
- The door or tailgate is open
- The Forward (P) or Backward (P) button is not continuously pressed
- Simultaneously pressing multiple buttons on a smart key
- The smart key is not operated within 4 m (13 ft.) from the vehicle
- Button of another smart key is pressed in addition to the operating smart key

- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates while the vehicle is being controlled in the reverse direction.
- The vehicle moves 7 m (22 ft.) while the smart key is pressed with Remote Operation function (maximum travel distance per button press)

When Remote Operation function is paused, the vehicle will stop. If the condition that made the function to pause disappears, the function may operate again.

The function will cancel in the following conditions when:

- The steering wheel is steered
- The gear is shifted while the vehicle is moving
- Operating EPB while the vehicle is moving
- The hood is open
- The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed when all the doors are closed
- The smart key is outside the vehicle when the brake pedal is depressed while the driver's door is open
- Rapid acceleration occurs
- Vehicle skid occurs
- The wheel is stuck by an obstacle and cannot move
- Approximately 3 minutes and 50 seconds have past after Remote Operation function has started to operate
- The slope of the road exceeds the operational range
- The function is paused for more than 1 minute
- The total travel distance of the vehicle has exceeded 14 m (45 ft.) after Remote Operation function operation
- The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly
- There is a problem with the smart key or the smart key battery is low
- ABS, TCS or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions
- The alarm of the Theft Alarm System sounds
- The charging door is open

When Remote Operation function is cancelled, the vehicle will automatically stop, shift the gear to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

Smart Parking, Remote Smart Parking

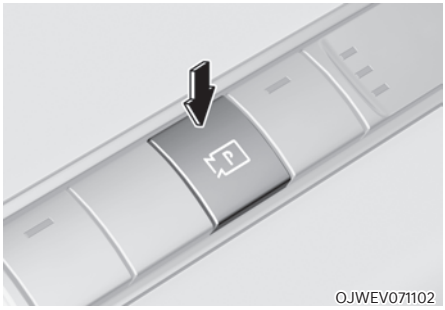
Operating order

Parking function operates in the following order:

1. Getting ready for parking
2. Searching for parking space
3. Select parking type and operating mode
4. Smart Parking
5. Remote Smart Parking

- Parking function includes Smart Parking and Remote Smart Parking.

1. Getting ready for parking



OJWEV071102

(1) With the vehicle turned on, depress the brake pedal and shift the gear to D (Drive) or N (Neutral).

(2) Press and hold the Parking/View (P) button to turn on Remote Smart Parking Assist.

- 'Agree' must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use Parking function.
- If you drive above 5 km/h (3 mph) with the vehicle on, you may use the Parking function with the gear shifted to N (Neutral).

2. Searching for parking space

OJWEV071278L

(1) Slowly drive forward maintaining the distance of approximately 100 cm (40 in.) from the parked vehicles.

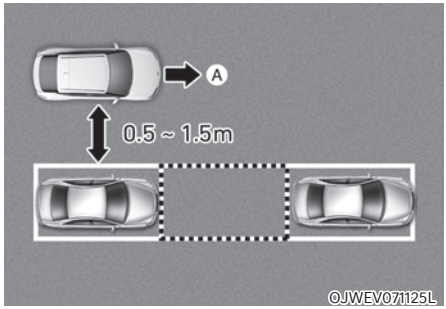
(2) When searching for a parking space is complete, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen with an audible sound to notify the search is complete.

(3) 'Select Parking Type' will be displayed on the infotainment system screen and the selected parking space will appear on Top View screen of Surround View Monitor.

- Remote Smart Parking Assist searches for parking spaces that are next to parked vehicles, or parking spaces with parked vehicles in front or rear.
- While searching for a parking space, when vehicle speed is above 20 km/h (12 mph), a message will appear on the infotainment system screen informing you to slow down. When vehicle speed is above 30 km/h (18 mph), Parking function will turn off.

- Searching for a parking space will be completed when there is enough space to move the vehicle in addition to the parking space.
- Even if an audible sound is heard to notify that searching for a parking space is complete, search completion can be cancelled

Information



[A]: Searching for parking space

- **If the distance is below 50 cm (20 in.) or over 150 cm (59 in.), Remote Smart Parking Assist may not be able to search for a parking space.**
- **If you do not maintain a certain distance from the parked vehicle, the performance to search for a parking space may reduce.**
- **Even if a diagonal parking space is searched as a parking space, parking is not assisted normally.**
- **Due to abnormal performance of the ultrasonic sensor or the influence of the surroundings, Parking function may not be able to search for a parking space even if there is a parking space, or may search for a space that is not suitable for parking.**
- **If the parking space is on a incline or is diagonal, the parking type displayed may be different from the actual parking type which should be selected. If this occurs, do not select the parking type, and search for another parking space.**

3. Select parking type and operating mode

OJWEV071279L

(1) Parking type – Perpendicular reverse (Left/Right), Parallel reverse (Left/Right)

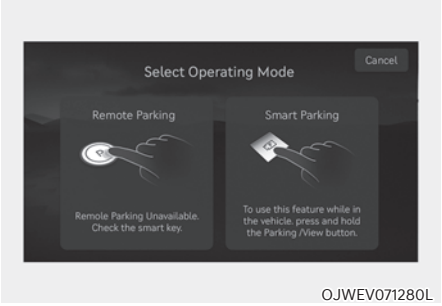
With the vehicle stopped by depressing the brake pedal, touch the infotainment system screen or use the central controller to select the desired parking type.

- If you continue to drive without stopping after the parking type selection screen appears, Remote Smart Parking Assist will return to the previous stage and search for a parking space.
- If Parking function is cancelled unintentionally by pressing the Parking/View (P) button before the parking type is selected, you can return to the parking type selection stage by pressing and holding the button again while the vehicle is stopped.

CAUTION

Before selecting the Parking type, the driver should check whether the parking space is suitable.

If the searched parking space by Remote Smart Parking Assist is narrow or unsuitable for parking, do not select the Parking type and move the vehicle to search for another parking space.



OJWEV071280L

(2) Operating mode – Remote Parking, Smart Parking

After selecting a parking type, the infotainment system screen will guide you with Remote Smart Parking function and Smart Parking function. Follow the instructions to operate Remote Smart Parking Assist.

Information

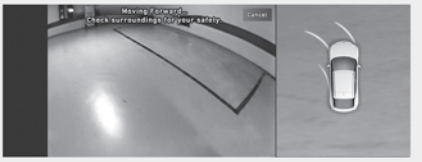
- **Operating instructions will be displayed on the screen for each desired function you select.**
- **Do not take your foot off the brake pedal during the Parking function guide. When the vehicle moves, Remote Smart Parking Assist will turn off.**

Information

OJWEV071281L

If Remote Smart Parking Assist cannot activate Remote Smart Parking function, only the Smart Parking guide will be displayed on the infotainment system screen.

4. Smart Parking



OJWEV071226L

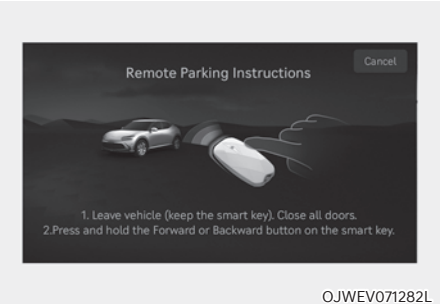
OJWEV071227L

(1) Press the Parking/View (P) button when the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, Remote Smart Parking Assist will automatically control the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift.

(2) While Smart Parking function is operating, if you do not hold down the Parking/View button, the vehicle will stop and function control will pause. The function will start operating again when the Parking/View button is pressed and held again.

(3) When the vehicle reaches the target parking position, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen to inform you that parking is complete.
- Smart Parking function will not operate if the door is open or the seat belt is not fastened.
- The parking location indicator is displayed on Surround View Monitor screen and is displayed until the vehicle enters the parking space for the first time by Smart Parking function.
- Vehicle speed can be adjusted by depressing the brake pedal while Smart Parking function is operating. However, the vehicle does not accelerate even when the accelerator pedal is depressed.
- Depending on parking environments, if the vehicle is stopped by a stopper, parking may be completed.
- If you need to change the vehicle's position or location, manually complete parking your vehicle.

5. Remote Smart Parking



OJWEV071282L

(1) Shift the gear to P (Park), get out of the vehicle with the smart key, and close all doors.

(2) Press and hold one of the Forward (P) or Backward (P) button on the smart key. Remote Smart Parking Assist will automatically control the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift.

(3) While Remote Smart Parking function is operating, if you do not hold down the Forward (P) or Backward (P) button, the vehicle will stop and function control will pause. The function will start operating again when the button is pressed and held again.

(4) When the vehicle reaches the target parking position, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen to inform you that parking is complete. The vehicle will automatically shift to P (Park), engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) and the vehicle will turn off.

- When operating Remote Smart Parking function, make sure all smart keys are outside of the vehicle.
- Remote Smart Parking function will operate only when the smart key is within 4 m (13 ft.) from the vehicle. If there is no vehicle movement even when the Remote Forward or Backward button is pressed on the smart key, check the distance to the vehicle and press the button again.
- The detecting range of the smart key may vary depending on the surroundings that are affected by radio waves such as transmission tower, broadcast station, etc.
- The parking location indicator is displayed on Surround View Monitor screen and is displayed until the vehicle enters the parking space for the first time by Remote Smart Parking function.
- Depending on parking environments, if the vehicle is stopped by a stopper, parking may be completed.
- If you need to change the vehicle's position or location, manually complete parking your vehicle.

CAUTION

- **When using Remote Smart Parking function, make sure that all passengers have gotten out of the vehicle.**
- **After ending or turning off Remote Smart Parking function, before leaving the vehicle, close windows and sunroofs, and make sure the vehicle is off before locking the doors.**

How to turn off Parking function while operating

- Press the Parking/View (P) button in the following stage:
  - Searching for parking space
  - Select parking type
- Shift the gear to R (Reverse) in the following stage:
  - Searching for parking space
  - Select parking type
  - Select operating mode
- Press the Parking Safety (P) button or select 'Cancel' on the infotainment system screen to turn off Parking function.
- While Smart Parking function is operating:
  - If the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal, and the gear is shifted, Parking function will turn off. At this time, EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) will not be engaged.
- While Remote Smart Parking function is operating:
  - Press the Remote Start (HOLD) button on the smart key. Parking function will turn off.
  - Get on the vehicle with the smart key. Parking function will turn off. At this time, the vehicle will remain on.

Parking function operation status

- Smart Parking function

Operation status	Turn signal
Under control	The turn signal of the parking direction blinks until the first reverse is complete.

- Smart Parking function

Operation status	Smart key LED	Hazard warning light	Turn signal
Under control	Green LED continuously blinks	-	The turn signal of the parking direction blinks until the first reverse is complete.
Pause	Red LED continuously blinks	Blinks	-
Off	Red LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	Blinks 3 times and turns off	-
Complete	Green LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	Blinks 1 time and turns off	-

✳ Operation status the hazard warning light and the turn signal light may not be applicable based on the regulation of your country.

✳ If the smart key is not within the operating range from the vehicle (approximately 4m (13 ft.)), the smart key LED will not illuminate or blink. Use the smart key within the operating range.

The function will pause in the following conditions when:

- Smart Parking
  - There is a pedestrian, animal or object in the direction the vehicle is moving
  - The door or tailgate is open
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened
  - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear-Cross Traffic Collision Assist operates while the vehicle is being controlled in the reverse direction
  - The Parking/View ( ) button is not continuously pressed
  - The vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal

- Remote Smart Parking
  - There is a pedestrian, animal or object in the direction the vehicle is moving
  - The door or tailgate is open
  - The Forward ( ) or Backward ( ) button is not continuously pressed
  - Simultaneously pressing multiple buttons on a smart key
  - The smart key is not operated within 4 m (13 ft.) from the vehicle
  - Button of another smart key is pressed in addition to the operating smart key
  - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear-Cross Traffic Collision Assist operates while the vehicle is being controlled in the reverse direction

When Parking function is paused, the vehicle will automatically stop. If the condition that made the function to pause disappears, the function may operate again.

The function will cancel in the following conditions when:

- Smart Parking
  - The steering wheel is steered
  - The gear is shifted while the vehicle is moving
  - Operating EPB while the vehicle is moving
  - The hood is open
  - The driver opens the door with the seatbelt unfastened
  - Rapid acceleration occurs
  - Vehicle skid occurs
  - The wheel is stuck by an obstacle and cannot move
  - There are pedestrians, animals or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time
  - Approximately 3 minutes and 50 seconds have past after Smart Parking function has started to operate
  - The slope of the road exceeds the operational range
  - The function is paused for more than 1 minute
  - The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly
  - ABS, TCS or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions
  - The charging door is open

When Smart Parking function is cancelled, the vehicle will automatically stop, shift the gear to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

- Remote Smart Parking
  - The steering wheel is steered
  - The gear is shifted
  - Operating EPB while the vehicle is moving
  - The hood is open
  - The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed when all the doors are closed
  - The smart key is outside the vehicle when the brake pedal is depressed while the driver's door is open.
  - Rapid acceleration occurs
  - Vehicle skid occurs
  - The wheel is stuck by an obstacle and cannot move
  - There are detected pedestrians, animals or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time
  - Approximately 3 minutes and 50 seconds have past after Remote Smart Parking function has started to operate
  - The slope of the road exceeds the operational range
  - The function is paused for more than 1 minute
  - The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly
  - There is a problem with the smart key or the smart key battery is low
  - ABS, TCS or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions
  - The alarm of the Theft Alarm System sounds
  - The charging door is open

When Remote Smart Parking function is cancelled, the vehicle will automatically stop, shift the gear to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

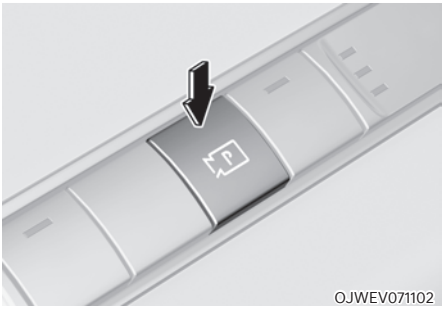
Smart Exit

Operating order

Smart Exit function operates in the following order:

1. Getting ready for exit
2. Checking space
3. Select exit direction
4. Smart Exit

1. Getting ready for exit



(1) With the vehicle turned on, depress the brake pedal and shift the gear to P (Park) or N (Neutral).

(2) Press and hold the Parking/View (P) button to turn on Remote Smart Parking Assist.

- 'Agree' must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use Smart Smart Exit function.
- Drive below 5 km/h (3 mph) with the vehicle on and shift the gear to N (Neutral), Smart Exit function can be used.
- If the function is turned on again after parallel parking is completed by Remote Smart Parking Assist, Smart Exit function can be used.

2. Checking space

OJWEV071283L

(1) When the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal, the vehicle sensors will detect the distance from nearby objects and check for space to exit.

(2) When checking for space is complete, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen with an audible sound to notify the search is complete.

WARNING

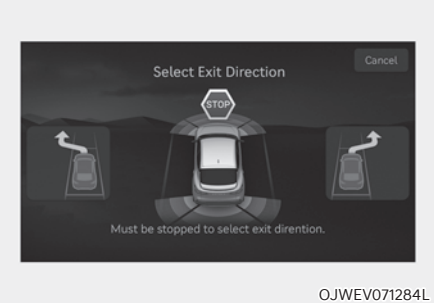
- **While checking for space, if there is a risk of collision with pedestrian, animal or object in the direction of vehicle exit, for your safety, Smart Exit function can be turned off.**
- **Even if check for space is completed, objects in the blind spot area cannot be detected by the sensors. The driver must directly check the blind spot area and continue using the function.**

Information

Due to abnormal performance of the ultrasonic sensor or the influence of the surroundings, Parking function may not be able to search for a parking space even if there is a parking space, or may search for a space that is not suitable for parking.

- **The parked vehicle has objects attached to the bumper such as bumper guard, trailer hitch, etc.**

3. Select exit direction



OJWEV071284L

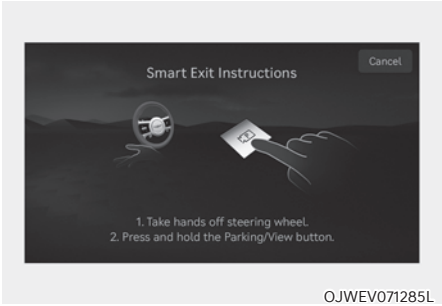
(1) With the vehicle stopped by depressing the brake pedal, the infotainment system screen displays the possible directions for parallel exit.

(2) Touch the infotainment system screen or use the central controller to select the desired exit direction.

CAUTION

- **Before selecting the Exit Direction, the driver should check whether the space for exit is suitable.**
- **If the searched exit space by Remote Smart Parking Assist is narrow or unsuitable (surrounding vehicles are parked vertically, etc.), do not use the Smart Exit function.**

4. Smart Exit



OJWEV071285L

(1) Press the Parking/View (P) button when the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, Remote Smart Parking Assist will automatically control the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift.

(2) While Smart Exit function is operating, if you do not hold down the Parking/View button, the vehicle will stop and function control will pause. The function will start operating again when the Parking/View button is pressed and held again.

(3) When the vehicle reaches the target exit location, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen to inform you that exit is complete.

- Smart Exit function will not operate if the door is open or the seat belt is not fastened.
- Vehicle speed can be adjusted by depressing the brake pedal while Smart Exit function is operating. However, the vehicle does not accelerate even when the accelerator pedal is depressed.
- If exit is completed while depressing the brake pedal, Smart Exit function will complete with the gear in D (Drive).
- If exit is completed while depressing the accelerator pedal, you must take your foot off the accelerator pedal once for the accelerator pedal to operate.
- If there is no vehicle operation such as depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal within 4 seconds after exit is complete, the vehicle will automatically shift to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).
- After Exit function is complete, always check the surroundings before driving.

Smart Exit operation status

Operation status	Turn signal
Under control	The turn signal of the exit direction blinks until the exit is complete or Smart Exit is cancelled.

✳ Operation status by the turn signal may not be applicable based on the regulation of your country.

How to turn off Smart function while operating

- Press the Parking/View (P) button in the following stage:
  - Checking space
  - Select exit direction
- Shift the gear to R (Reverse) in the following stage:
  - Checking space
  - Select exit direction
- Press the Parking Safety (P) button or select 'Cancel' on the infotainment system screen to turn off Exit function.
- While Smart Exit function is operating, if the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal, and the gear is shifted, Exiting function will turn off. At this time, EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) will not be engaged.

The function will pause in the following conditions when:

- There is a detected pedestrian, animal or object in the direction the vehicle is moving
- The door or tailgate is open
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear-Cross Traffic Collision Assist operates while the vehicle is being controlled in the reverse direction
- The Parking/View (P) button is not continuously pressed
- The vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal

When Exit function is paused, the vehicle will stop. If the condition that made the function to pause disappears, the function may operate again.

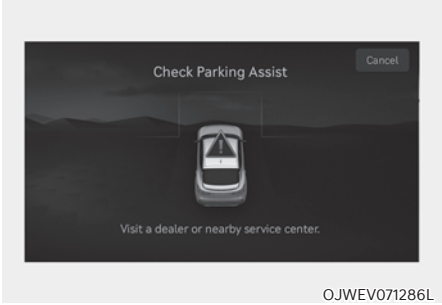
The function will cancel in the following conditions when:

- Smart Exit
  - The steering wheel is steered
  - The gear is shifted while the vehicle is moving
  - Operating EPB while the vehicle is moving
  - The hood is open
  - The driver opens the door with the seatbelt unfastened
  - Rapid acceleration occurs
  - Vehicle skid occurs
  - The wheel is stuck by an obstacle and cannot move
  - There are detected pedestrians, animals or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time
  - Approximately 3 minutes and 50 seconds have past after Smart Exit function has started to operate
  - The slope of the road exceeds the operational range
  - The function was paused for more than 1 minute
  - The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly
  - ABS, TCS or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions
  - The charging door is open
  - The vehicle is utility mode

When Smart Exit function is cancelled, the vehicle will automatically stop, shift the gear to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction and limitations

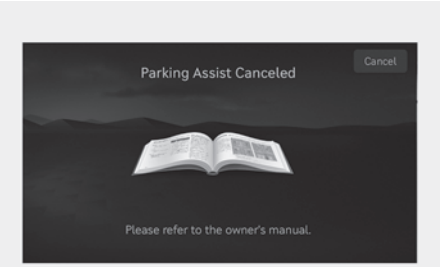
Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction



OJWEV071286L

Remote Smart Parking Assist check

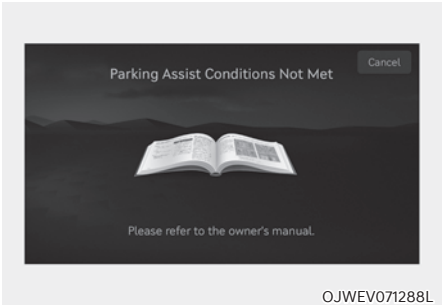
When Remote Smart Parking Assist is not working properly, the ‘Check Parking Assist’ warning message will appear on the infotainment system screen. If the message appears, stop using Remote Smart Parking Assist, and we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.



OJWEV071287L

Remote Smart Parking Assist cancelled

When Remote Parking Assist is operating, the function can be cancelled, and the ‘Parking Assist Canceled’ warning message may appear regardless of the parking order. Other messages may appear depending on the situations. Follow the instructions provided on the infotainment system screen while parking your vehicle with Remote Parking Assist. Always look around and pay attention when using Remote Smart Parking Assist.



OJWEV071288L

Remote Smart Parking Assist standby

When ‘Parking Assist Conditions Not Met’ message appears, when Parking/View (P) button has been pressed and held, Remote Smart Parking Assist is in standby. After a while, press and hold the Parking/View (P) button again to see if Remote Smart Parking Assist works.

The message appears even when the smart key's battery is low. Check the smart key battery level.

It does not work even when the EV mode is in the Utility mode. For related information refer to Utility Mode in ‘Electric vehicle system overview’.

Limitations of Remote Smart Parking Assist

In the following circumstances, Remote Smart Parking Assist performance to park or exit the vehicle may be limited, there may be a risk of collision, or Remote Smart Parking Assist may turn off. Park or exit the vehicle manually if necessary.

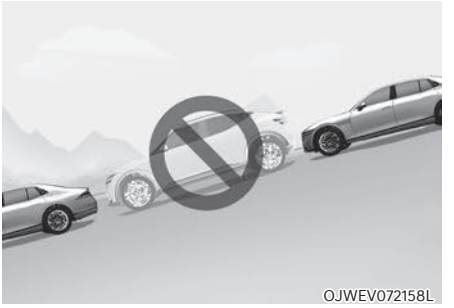
- An object is attached to the steering wheel
- The vehicle is installed with a snow chain, spare tire or different size wheel
- Tire pressure is lower or higher than the standard tire pressure
- Your vehicle is loaded with cargo longer or wider than your vehicle or a trailer is connected to your vehicle
- There is a problem with the wheel alignment
- Your vehicle is leaned severely to one side
- Your vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch
- The license plate is installed differently from the original location
- There is a person, animal or object above or below the ultrasonic sensor when Remote Smart Parking Assist is activated
- The parking space is curved or diagonal

- There is an obstacle such as a person, animal or object (trash can, bicycle, motorcycle, shopping cart, narrow pillar, etc.) near the parking space
- There is a circular pillar or narrow pillar, or a pillar surrounded by objects such as fire extinguisher, etc., near the parking space
- The road surface is bumpy (curbstone, speed bump, etc.)
- The road is slippery
- The parking space is near a vehicle with higher ground clearance or big, such as a truck, etc.
- The parking space is Inclined
- The road surface of parking space with lines is wet due to snow, puddles, or there is a road marker inside the parking space
- The road surface of the parking space with lines is bumpy due to road cracks
- The parking line is too thin or thick
- The parking line is partially erased or blurred
- The parking line is obscured by people, animals, or objects such as snow, boxes, etc.
- There is heavy wind
- Operating Remote Smart Parking Assist on uneven roads, gravel roads, bushes, etc.
- The performance of the ultrasonic sensor is affected by extremely hot or cold weather
- The ultrasonic sensor is covered with snow or water
- An object that generates ultrasonic waves is nearby
- A wireless device with a transmission function operates near the ultrasonic sensors
- Your vehicle is affected by another vehicle's Parking Distance Warning
- The sensor is mounted or positioned incorrectly by an impact to the bumper
- The cameras is improperly mounted or out of position due to outside rearview mirror damage
- The ultrasonic sensor cannot detect the following objects when:
  - Sharp or slim objects, such as ropes, chains or small poles
  - Objects smaller than 40 in. (100 cm) in length and narrower than 6 in. (14 cm) in diameter
  - Objects which tend to absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material or snow
  - A narrow object such as a corner of a square pillar
  - Person, animal or object near the ultrasonic sensor

- The cameras may not properly recognize or may not recognize the parking line and objects when:
  - There are small objects (curb, etc.), sharp objects, or thin objects (rope, etc.) around
  - People, animals or objects are too close or too far from the vehicle
  - Objects are on a higher position, such as pickup trucks
  - The camera is obscured by dirt or moisture
  - The camera is exposed to strong light
  - The surrounding is too dark
  - The light is reflected from the surface

Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate properly under the following circumstances:

- Parking on inclines



Park manually when parking on inclines.

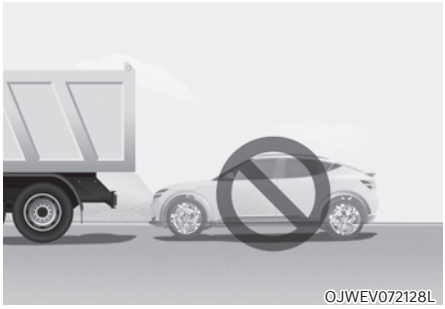
- Parking in snow

Snow may interfere with sensor operation, or Remote Smart Parking Assist may cancel if the road is slippery while parking.

- Parking on uneven road

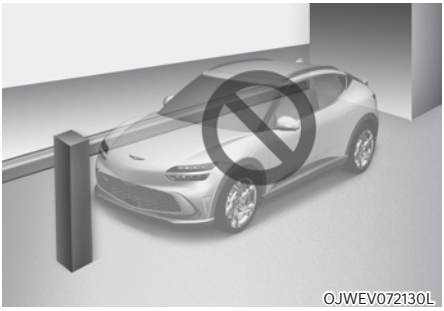
Remote Smart Parking Assist may cancel when the vehicle slips, or the vehicle cannot move due to road conditions such as pebbles or fragmented stones.

- Parking behind a truck



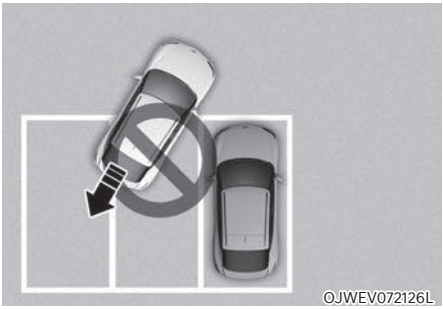
Do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist around vehicles with higher ground clearance, such as a bus, truck, etc. It may lead to an accident.

- Parking near a pillar



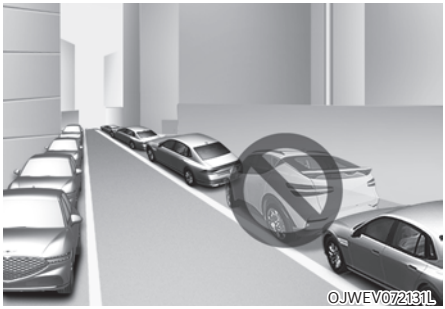
Remote Smart Parking Assist performance may reduce or collision with an obstacle may occur when there is a narrow object, circular pillar, square pillar, or a pillar surrounded by objects such as a fire extinguisher, etc., near the parking space. The driver should park the vehicle properly.

- Parking in a parking space with a vehicle on one side only



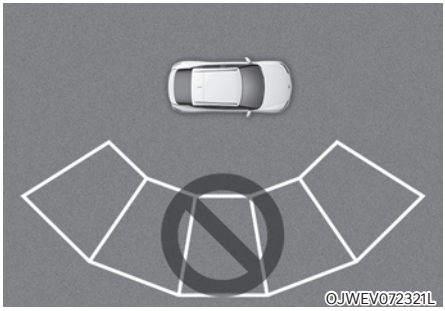
If Remote Smart Parking Assist is used, when parking in a parking space with a vehicle only on one side, your vehicle may cross the parking line to avoid the parked vehicle.

- Leaving a parking space near a wall or parking in a narrow space



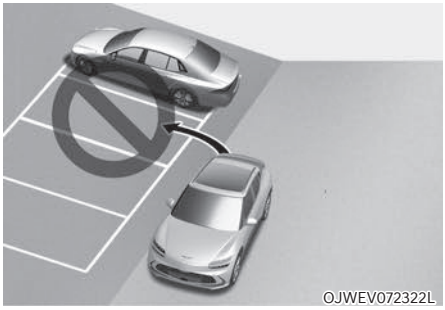
- Remote Smart Parking Assist my not operate properly when leaving a parking space that is narrow and near a wall. Always check for pedestrians, animals, objects while leaving.
- For your safety, Remote Smart Parking Assist does not search for parking spaces at areas with narrow parking spaces that are narrower than the minimum space required for parking.

- Abnormal parking space



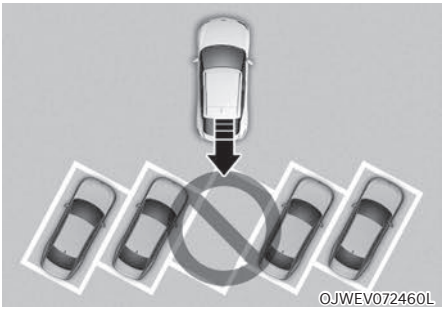
Remote Smart Parking Assist does not work properly when the parking lines are not parallel. Do not park although the parking space is recognized by the sensor.

- Inclined parking space



Remote Smart Parking Assist does not work properly on a inclined or curved road surface. Do not park although the parking space is recognized by the sensor.

- Parking diagonal



Remote Smart Parking Assist does not provide diagonal parking. Even if your vehicle was able to enter the parking space, do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist because the function cannot operate properly.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Remote Smart Parking Assist:

- **The driver is responsible for safe parking and exit when using Remote Smart Parking Assist.**
- **When using Remote Smart Parking Assist, stay out of the way in the direction the vehicle moves for your safety.**
- **Always check surroundings when using Remote Smart Parking Assist. You may collide with pedestrians, animals, or objects if they are near the sensor or are in the sensor's blind spot area.**
- **A collision may occur if a pedestrian, animal, or object suddenly appears while Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating.**
- **Do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist when under the influence of alcohol.**
- **Do not let children or other people to use the smart key.**
- **If Remote Smart Parking Assist is used continuously for a long period, it may adversely affect Remote Smart Parking Assist performance.**
- **Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate properly if the vehicle needs wheel alignment adjustment such as when the vehicle tilts to one side. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded Products.**
- **Noise may be heard when braking occurs by Remote Smart Parking Assist or when the brake pedal is depressed by the driver.**
- **Remote Smart Parking Assist may suddenly apply the brake to avoid collision.**
- **Use Remote Smart Parking Assist only in a parking space that is large enough for the vehicle to move safely.**

NOTICE

- **If the 3rd stage warning (continuous beep) of the Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning sounds while Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating, it means the obstacle detected is close to your vehicle. At this time, Remote Smart Parking Assist will temporarily stop operating. Make sure there are no pedestrians, animals, or objects around your vehicle.**
- **Depending on brake operation, the stop lights may come on while the vehicle is moving.**
- **If the vehicle is remotely started that has been parked in cold weather for a long time, the operation of Remote Smart Parking function may be delayed or cancelled depending on vehicle condition.**

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY (IF EQUIPPED)

Front radar

The radio frequency components (front radar) complies:

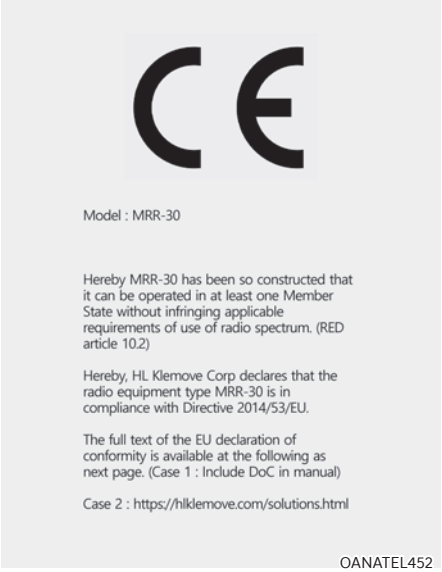
■ For Israel

OANATEL465

■ United of Kingdom

OANATEL454

■ For Europe and other Europe territories



OANATEL452

■ For Taiwan

OANATEL469

■ For China

OANATEL491

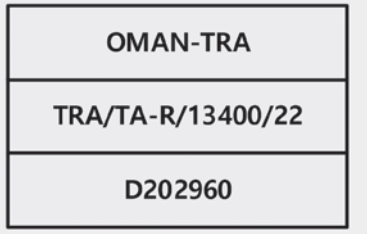
■ For Japan

OANATEL349

■ For Indonesia

OANATEL494

■ For Oman



OANATEL457

■ For Untied Arab Emirates

OANATEL458

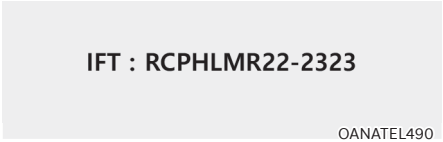
■ For Brazil

OANATEL492

■ For Philippines

OANATEL472

■ For Mexico



OANATEL490

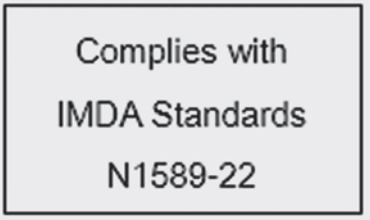
■ For Korea

OANATEL453

■ For Paraguay

OANATEL470

■ For Singapore



OANATEL471

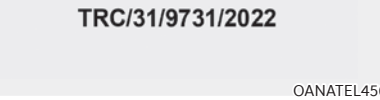
■ For Uzbekistan

OANATEL250

■ Republic of South Africa

OANATEL493

■ For Jordan



OANATEL456

■ For Thailand

OANATEL468

Front Corner Radar and Rear Corner Radar

The radio frequency components (Front Corner Radar and Rear Corner Radar) complies:

■ For Thailand

OANATEL320

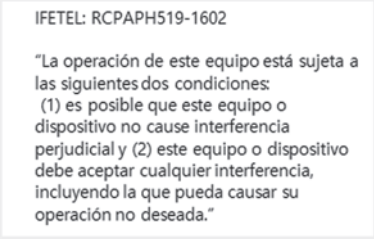
■ For Malaysia

OANATEL317

■ For Singapore

OANATEL318

■ For Mexico



OANATEL311

■ For Ukraine

OANATEL354

■ For Israel

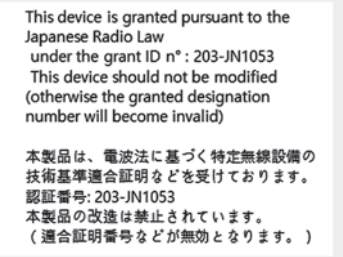
14. תנאים מיוחדים והשלות השימוש:
למנוי השיווק ידאג היבואן שעל אריזה חיצונית של המוצר יודבק מדבקה, בה יהיה רשום כי:
א. השימוש בכשיר היגו של בשיים "משני" ופטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
כלומר - לא מוגן מהפרעות וללא הפרעה למערכות אחרות המופעלות כדין.
ב. רק "בפעלת בזק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, הציוד פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
מותן "שרות בזק" לצד ג' מחייב רשיון מיוחד ממשרד התקשורת.
ג. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

תיק מספר : 63-67459

א. השימוש במכשיר הינו על בסיס "משני" ופטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
כלומר - לא מוגן מהפרעות וללא הפרעה למערכות אחרות המופעלות כדין.
ב. רק "בפעלת בזק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, הציוד פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
מותן "שרות בזק" לצד ג' מחייב רשיון מיוחד ממשרד התקשורת.
ג. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.
ד האישור הנ"ל תקף אך ורק עבור צוד אלחוטי, הפועל 'operating frequencies of the device' אשר בתחום תדרים של.
הספק השידור שלו אינו עולה על 'output power of the device'

OANATEL321

■ For Japan



OANATEL356

■ Ghana

OANATEL313

■ Serbia and Montenegro

OANATEL315

■ Republic of South Africa

OANATEL355

■ For Europe and CE certified countries

OANATEL459

■ For Korea

OANATEL357

■ For China

OANATEL358

■ For Brazil

OANATEL360

■ For Taiwan

OANATEL359

■ For United Arab Emirates

OANATEL361

■ For Paraguay

OANATEL316

■ For Jordan

OANATEL363

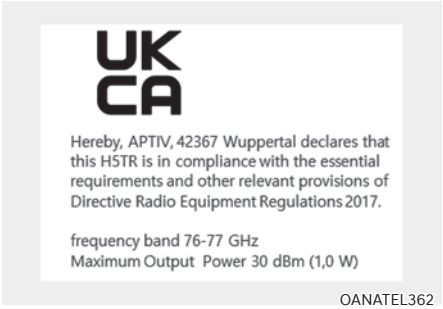
■ For Morocco

OANATEL364

■ For Australia

OANATEL327

■ For United Kingdom



OANATEL362

■ For Indonesia

OANATEL411

■ For Pakistan

OANATEL412

■ For Oman

OANATEL413

■ For Nigeria

OANATEL414

■ For Zambia

OANATEL415

■ For Senegal

OANATEL416

■ For Philippines

OANATEL460

8. Emergency situations

Hazard warning flasher 8-2

In case of an emergency while driving 8-2
- If the vehicle stalls while driving 8-2
- If the vehicle stalls at a crossroad or crossing 8-2
- If you have a flat tire while driving 8-3

If the vehicle will not start 8-3
- Confirm the EV battery is not low on the charge gauge 8-3

Jump starting (12V battery) 8-4

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 8-8
- Check tire pressure 8-8
- Tire pressure monitoring system 8-9
- Low tire pressure warning light 8-10
- Low tire pressure position and tire pressure telltale 8-10
- TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator 8-11
- Changing a tire with TPMS 8-11

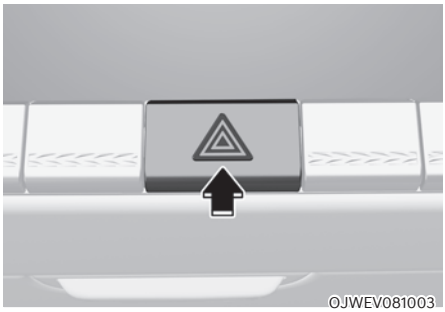
If you have a flat tire (with Tire Mobility Kit) 8-13
- Introduction 8-13
- Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit 8-14
- Components of the Tire Mobility Kit 8-15
- Using the Tire Mobility Kit When a tire is flat 8-16
- How to adjust tire pressure 8-19
- Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit 8-20

Towing 8-21
- Towing service 8-21
- Removable towing hook 8-22

Emergency commodity 8-23
- Fire extinguisher 8-23
- First aid kit 8-23
- Triangle reflector 8-23
- Tire pressure gauge 8-23

Pan-European eCall System 8-25
- Information on data processing 8-27
- Pan-European eCall System 8-28

HAZARD WARNING FLASHER



The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

To turn the hazard warning flasher on or off, press the hazard warning flasher button with the Start/Stop button in any position. The hazard warning flasher button is located in the center fascia panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates regardless of whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILE DRIVING

If the vehicle stalls while driving

- Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
- Turn on your hazard warning flasher.
- Try to start the vehicle again. If your vehicle will not start, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products or seek other qualified assistance.

If the vehicle stalls at a crossroad or crossing

If the vehicle stalls at a crossroads or crossing, if safe to do so, shift the gear to N (Neutral) and then push the vehicle to a safe location.

To stay N (Neutral) while the vehicle is off, refer to ‘To stay in N (Neutral) when vehicle is OFF’ in chapter 6.

If you have a flat tire while driving

If a tire goes flat while you are driving:

- Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down while driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
- When the vehicle is stopped, press the hazard warning flasher button, shift the gear to P (Park), apply the regenerative brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
- Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
- When changing a flat tire, follow the instructions provided later in this chapter.

IF THE VEHICLE WILL NOT START

Confirm the EV battery is not low on the charge gauge

- Be sure the gear is in P (Park). The vehicle starts only when the gear is in P (Park).
- Check the 12-volt battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
- Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the 12V battery is drained.

Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. This could cause damage to your vehicle.

See instructions for “Jump Starting” provided in this chapter.

JUMP STARTING (12V BATTERY)

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Follow the jump starting procedure in this section to avoid serious injury or damage to your vehicle. If in doubt about how to properly jump start your vehicle, we strongly recommend that you have a service technician or towing service do it for you.

WARNING

To prevent SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH to you or bystanders, always follow these precautions when working near or handling the battery:

Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.

Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.

Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.

Hydrogen is always present in battery cells, is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.

Keep batteries out of reach of children.

Batteries contain sulfuric acid which is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing.

If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.

- **When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**
- **Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.**
- **NEVER attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.**
- **The electrical ignition system works with high voltage.**

  NEVER touch these components with the vehicle running or when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
- **The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. NEVER touch these components with the (READY) indicator ON or when the START/ STOP button is in the ON position.**
- **Do not allow the (+) and (-) jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.**
- **The battery may rupture or explode when you jump start with a low or frozen battery.**

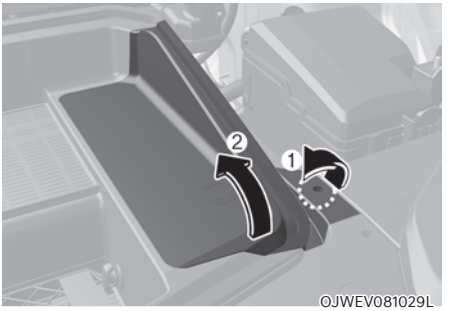
- **Do not directly connect the (-) to the jump cable. Connect the (-) to the one of the metallic parts located far from the jump cable in the vehicle. The direct (-) connection to the jump cable may cause an explosion.**
- **Be sure to use only 12V battery to jump start. Using batteries with other voltages to jump start can damage the battery or even provoke an explosion.**

WARNING

- **Keep sparks away from the battery as the explosive gas is generated by the sparks while the battery is running.**
- **When connecting the supplementary battery and the discharged battery with a jump cable because the jump start does not operate with jump start terminal in the motor compartment, do not directly connect the (-) to the jump cable. Connect the (-) to the one of the metallic parts located far from the jump cable in the vehicle. The direct (-) connection to the jumpcable may cause an explosion.**
- **The battery contains dilute sulfuric acid, which is highly corrosive, so be careful not to let the battery liquid get on your body, clothes, or car body. If dilute sulfuric acid gets on your body or eyes, immediately rinse the area with clean water for about 15 minutes and then consult a doctor.**

Jump starting procedure

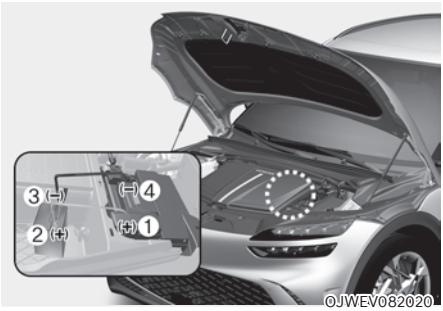
1. Position the vehicles close enough that the jumper cables will reach, but do not allow the vehicles to touch.
2. Avoid fans or any moving parts in the motor compartment at all times, even when the vehicles are turned off.
3. Turn off all electrical devices such as radios, lights, air conditioning, etc. Put the vehicles in P (Park) and set the parking brake. Turn both vehicles OFF.
4. Open the hood.



5. Remove the fastener (1) located inside of the front trunk after then remove the battery cover (2).

CAUTION

Before jump starting, make sure to correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals to avoid reverse polarity connections.



6. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one jumper cable to the red, positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).
7. Connect the other end of the jumper cable to the red, positive (+) battery/ jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
8. Connect the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) battery/ jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (3).
9. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) chassis ground of your vehicle (4).

   Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery or jumper terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

WARNING

Do not connect the jumper cable to the negative (-) jumper terminal of the discharged battery. A spark could cause the battery to explode and lead to a personal injury or vehicle damage.

10. Start the assisting vehicle and let it run at approximately for a few minutes. Then start your vehicle.
11. Keep your vehicle operating for at least 30 minutes at idle or driving to assure your battery receives enough charge to be able to start on its own after the vehicle is shut off. A completely discharged battery may require as long as 60 minutes runtime to fully recharge it. If the vehicle is run for less, the vehicle may not restart.

If your vehicle will not start after a few attempts, it probably requires service. In this event please seek qualified assistance. If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Disconnect the jumper cables in the exact reverse order you connected them:

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) chassis ground of your vehicle (4).
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) battery/chassis ground of the assisting vehicle (3).
3. Disconnect the second jumper cable from the red, positive (+) battery/ jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the red, positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).

Information

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to your vehicle:

- **Only use a 12-volt power supply (battery or jumper system) to jump start your vehicle.**
- **Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle by push-starting.**
- **Always be sure that the battery cover and cable are tightened after finishing jump start your vehicle. Otherwise is may cause damage to the relevant parts, noise trouble, or entrance of foreign substances.**

WARNING

While jump starting your vehicle, avoid the positive (+) and negative (-) cables to come in contact. A spark could cause personal injury.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

OJWEV081004

OJWEV081002L

(1) Low Tire Pressure Telltale/TPMS Malfunction Indicator

(2) Low Tire Pressure Position Telltale and Tire Pressure Telltale (Shown on the LCD display)

Check tire pressure

OJWEV081001L

- You can check the tire pressure in the Utility view on the cluster display.

  Refer to the “View Modes” section in chapter 4.
- Tire pressure is displayed after a few minutes of driving after initial vehicle start up.
- If tire pressure is not displayed when the vehicle is stopped, ‘Drive to display’ message will appear. After driving, check the tire pressure.
- The displayed tire pressure values may differ from those measured with a tire pressure gauge.
- You can change the tire pressure unit from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:
  - Setup → General Settings → Unit → Tire Air Pressure Unit → psi/kPa/bar

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Tire pressure monitoring system

WARNING

Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tire life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tire failure that may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure.

Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

NOTICE

If any of the below happens, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

1. **The Low Tire Pressure Telltale/ TPMS Malfunction Indicator does not illuminate for 3 seconds when the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position or when the vehicle is running.**
2. **The TPMS Malfunction Indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute.**
3. **The Low Tire Pressure Position Telltale remains illuminated.**

Low tire pressure warning light

Low tire pressure position and tire pressure telltale

OJWEV081001L

When the tire pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated and a warning message displayed on the cluster display, one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. The Low Tire Pressure Position Telltale will indicate which tire is significantly underinflated by illuminating the corresponding position light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible. Inflate the tires to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tire inflation pressure label located on the driver's side center pillar outer panel.

If you cannot reach a service station or if the tire cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tire with the spare tire (if equipped).

The Low Tire Pressure Telltale will remain on and the TPMS Malfunction Indicator may blink for one minute and then remain illuminated (when the vehicle is driven approximately 10 minutes at speed above 25 km/h (15.5 mph)) until you have the low pressure tire repaired and replaced on the vehicle.

CAUTION

In winter or cold weather, the Low Tire Pressure Telltale may be illuminated if the tire pressure was adjusted to the recommended tire inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tire pressure.

When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is greatly higher or lower, you should check the tire inflation pressure and adjust the tires to the recommended tire inflation pressure.

WARNING

Low pressure damage

Significantly low tire pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.

Continued driving on low pressure tires can cause the tires to overheat and fail.

TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator

The TPMS Malfunction Indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

NOTICE

If there is a malfunction with the TPMS, the Low Tire Pressure Position Telltale will not be displayed even though the vehicle has an under-inflated tire.

NOTICE

The TPMS Malfunction Indicator may illuminate after blinking for one minute if the vehicle is near electric power supply cables or radio transmitters such as police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, transmitting towers, etc.

Additionally, the TPMS Malfunction Indicator may illuminate if snow chains are used or electronic devices such as computers, chargers, remote starters, navigation, etc. This may interfere with normal operation of the TPMS.

Changing a tire with TPMS

If you have a flat tire, the Low Tire Pressure and Position telltales will come on. We recommend that the flat tire be repaired by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible or replace the flat tire with the spare tire (if equipped).

NOTICE

It is recommended that you do not use a puncture-repairing agent not approved by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products or the equivalent specified for your vehicle to repair and/or inflate a low pressure tire. Tire sealant not approved by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products or the equivalent specified for your vehicle may damage the tire pressure sensor.

The spare tire (if equipped) does not come with a tire pressure monitoring sensor. When the low pressure tire or the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the Low Tire Pressure Telltale will remain on. Also, the TPMS Malfunction Indicator will illuminate after blinking for one minute if the vehicle is driven at speed above 25 km/h (15.5 mph) for approximately 10 minutes.

Once the original wheel equipped with a tire pressure monitoring sensor is reinflated to the recommended pressure and reinstalled on the vehicle, the Low Tire Pressure Telltale and TPMS Malfunction Indicator will go off within a few minutes of driving.

If the indicators do not extinguish after a few minutes we recommend to consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem (except for the spare tire). You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

You may not be able to identify a tire with low pressure by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tire pressure gauge to measure. Please note that a tire that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tire that is cold.

A cold tire means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1.6 km (1 mile) in that 3 hour period.

Allow the tire to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tire is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

WARNING

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.**
- **If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

WARNING

Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tire pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.

WARNING

For Europe

- **Do not modify the vehicle; it may interfere with the TPMS function.**
- **The wheels on the market do not have a TPMS sensor.**

  For your safety, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- **If you use the wheels on the market, we recommend that you use a TPMS sensor approved by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products or the equivalent approved for your vehicle. If your vehicle is not equipped with a TPMS sensor or TPMS does not work properly, you may fail the periodic vehicle inspection conducted in your country.**

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE (WITH TIRE MOBILITY KIT, IF EQUIPPED)

OJWEV081006L

For safe operation, carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual before use.

(1) Compressor

(2) Sealant bottle

The tire mobility kit is a temporary fix to the tire we recommend the tire be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products or the equivalent approved for your vehicle as soon as possible.

CAUTION

When two or more tires are flat, do not use the tire mobility kit because the sealant provided with the Tire Mobility Kit must be used for only one flat tire.

WARNING

Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit to repair punctures in the tire walls. This can result in an accident due to tire failure.

WARNING

Have your tire repaired as soon as possible. The tire may lose air pressure at any time after inflating with the Tire Mobility Kit.

Introduction

With the Tire Mobility Kit you stay mobile even after experiencing a tire puncture.

The compressor and sealing compound system effectively and comfortably seals most punctures in a passenger car tire caused by nails or similar objects and reinflates the tire.

After you ensure that the tire is properly sealed you can drive cautiously on the tire (distance up to 200 km (120 miles)) at a max. speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) in order to reach a service station or tire dealer for the tire replacement.

It is possible that some tires, especially with larger punctures or damage to the sidewall, cannot be sealed completely.

Air pressure loss in the tire may adversely affect tire performance.

For this reason, you should avoid abrupt steering or other driving maneuvers, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or if a trailer is in use.

The Tire Mobility Kit is not designed or intended as a permanent tire repair method and is to be used for one tire only.

This instruction shows you step by step how to temporarily seal the puncture simply and reliably.

Read the section “Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit”.

WARNING

Do not use the TMK if a tire is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.

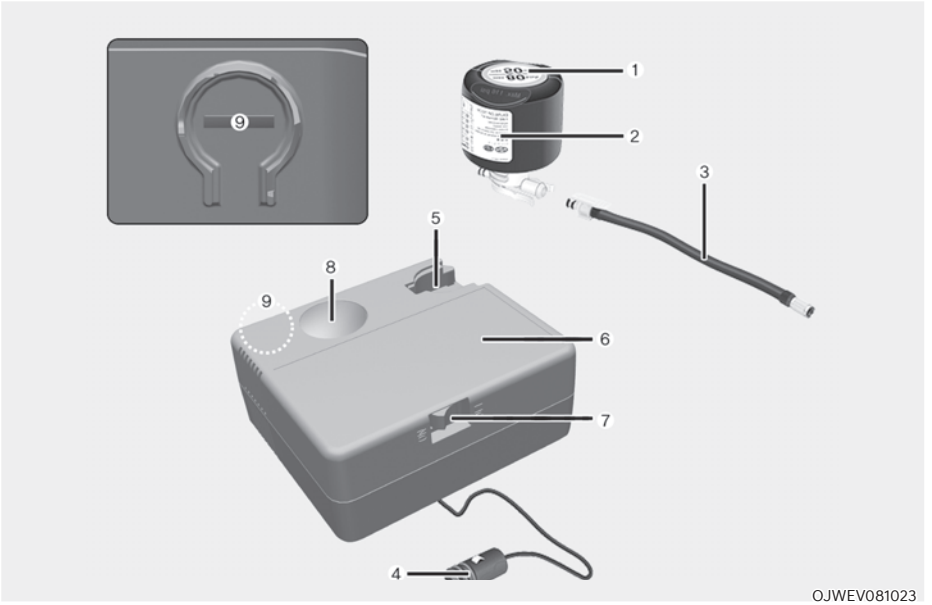
Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tire can be sealed using the TMK.

Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit

- Park your car at the side of the road so that you can work with the Tire Mobility Kit away from moving traffic.
- To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake.
- Only use the Tire Mobility Kit for sealing/inflation passenger car tires. Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tire can be sealed using the tire mobility kit.
- Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tires.
- When the tire and wheel are damaged, do not use Tire Mobility Kit for your safety.
- Use of the Tire Mobility Kit may not be effective for tire damage larger than approximately 4 mm (16 inch).

  We recommend to contact the nearest authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products if the tire cannot be made roadworthy with the tire mobility kit.
- Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit if a tire is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.
- Do not remove any foreign objects such as nails or screws that have penetrated the tire.
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the vehicle running. Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.
- Never leave the Tire Mobility Kit unattended while it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 minutes at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit if the ambient temperature is below -30°C (-22°F).
- In case of skin contact with the sealant, wash the area thoroughly with plenty of water. If the irritation persists, seek medical attention.
- In case of eye contact with the sealant, flush your eyes for at least 15 minutes. If the irritation persists, seek medical attention.
- In case of swallowing the sealant, rinse the mouth and drink plenty of water. However, never give anything to an unconscious person and seek medical attention immediately.
- Long time exposure to the sealant may cause damage to bodily tissue such as kidney, etc.

Components of the Tire Mobility Kit



1. Speed restriction label
2. Sealant bottle and label with speed restriction
3. Filling hose from sealant bottle to wheel
4. Connectors and cable for power outlet direct connection
5. Holder for the sealant bottle
6. Compressor
7. ON/OFF switch
8. Pressure gauge for displaying the tire inflation pressure
9. Button for reducing the tire inflation pressure

Strictly follow the specified sequence, otherwise the sealant may escape under high pressure.

WARNING

Expired sealant

Do not use the Tire sealant after the sealant has expired (for example, pasted the expiration date on the sealant container). This can increase the risk of tire failure.

WARNING

Sealant

- **Keep out of reach of children.**
- **Avoid contact with eyes.**
- **Do not swallow.**

Using the Tire Mobility Kit When a tire is flat

CAUTION

OJWEV081007

Detach the speed restriction label (1) from the sealant bottle (2), and place it in a highly visible place inside the vehicle such as on the steering wheel to remind the driver not to drive too fast.

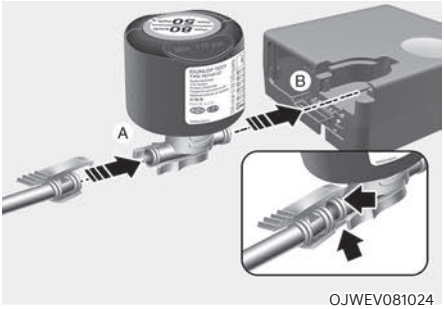
CAUTION

If only the tire pressure needs to be adjusted, refer to "How to Adjust Tire Pressure" in this chapter.

Before using the Tire Mobility Kit, be fully aware of the explanation on the sealant.

ORG3EV081022

1. Shake the sealant bottle (2).



OJWEV081024

2. Connect the filling hose (3) to the sealant bottle (2) in the direction of (A) and connect the sealant bottle to the compressor (6) in the direction of (B).
3. Ensure that the compressor is switched OFF.

4. Unscrew the valve cap from the valve of the defective wheel and screw the filling hose (3) of the sealant bottle onto the valve.

CAUTION

Securely install the sealant filling hose to the valve. If not, sealant may flow backward, possibly clogging the filling hose.

5. Plug the compressor power cord (4) into the vehicle power outlet.

NOTICE

Only use the front passenger side power outlet when connecting the power cord.

6. With the vehicle ON (**READY** indicator ON), switch on the compressor and let it run for approximately 5~7 minutes to fill the sealant up to proper pressure. (refer to the Tire and Wheels, chapter 2). The inflation pressure of the tire after filling is unimportant and will be checked/corrected later.

   Be careful not to overinflate the tire and stay away from the tire when filling it.

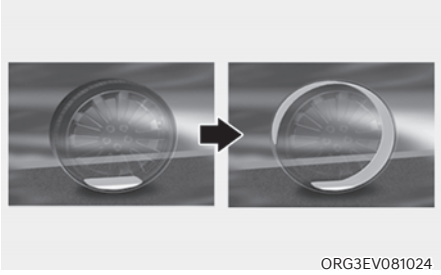
CAUTION

Tire pressure

Do not attempt to drive your vehicle if the tire pressure is below 200 kPa (29 psi). This could result in an accident due to sudden tire failure.

7. Switch off the compressor.
8. Detach the hoses from the sealant bottle connector and from the tire valve.

Return the Tire Mobility Kit to its storage location in the vehicle.



9. Immediately drive approximately 7~10 km (4~6 miles or, about 10min) to evenly distribute the sealant in the tire.

Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). If possible, do not fall below a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph).

While driving, if you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise, reduce your speed and drive with caution until you can safely pull off of the side of the road.

Call for road side service or towing.

OJWEV081008

10. After driving approximately 7~10 km (4~6 miles or about 10 min), stop at a safety location.
11. Connect the filling hose (3) of the compressor directly to the tire valve.
12. Plug the compressor power cord into the vehicle power outlet.
13. Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the recomended tire inflation.

    With the Vehicle is ON (**READY** indicator ON) proceed as follows.

    - To increase the inflation pressure: Switch on the compressor. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.
    - To reduce the inflation pressure: Press the button (9) on the compressor.

NOTICE

Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.

Information

The pressure gauge may show higher than actual reading when the compressor is running. To get an accurate tire pressure, the compressor needs to be turned off.

CAUTION

If the inflation pressure is not maintained, drive the vehicle a second time, refer to step 9.

Then repeat steps 10 to 13.

Use of the TMK may be ineffectual for tire damage larger than approximately 4 mm (0.16 in).

We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products if the tire cannot be made roadworthy with the Tire Mobility Kit.

WARNING

The tire inflation pressure must be at least 220 kPa (32 psi). If it is not, do not continue driving.

Call for road side service or towing.

CAUTION

Tire pressure sensor (if equipped with TPMS)

The sealant on the tire pressure sensor and wheel should be removed when you replace the tire with a new one and inspect the tire pressure sensors. We recommend that you get this done at an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Information

When reinstalling the repaired or replaced tire and wheel on the vehicle, tighten the wheel bolt to 14~16 kgf·m (101~116 lbf·ft).

How to adjust tire pressure

1. Park your vehicle in a safe location.
2. Connect the filling hose (3) of the compressor directly to the tire valve.
3. Plug the compressor power cord into the vehicle power outlet.
4. Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the recomended tire inflation.

   With the Vehicle is ON (**READY** indicator ON), proceed as follows.

   - To increase the inflation pressure: Switch on the compressor. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.
   - To reduce the inflation pressure: Press the button (9) on the compressor.

NOTICE

Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.

Information

- **The pressure gauge may show higher than actual reading when the compressor is running. To get an accurate tire reading, the compressor needs to be turned off.**
- **When reinstalling the repaired or replaced tire and wheel on the vehicle, tighten the wheel bolt to 14~16 kgf·m (101~116 lbf·ft).**

CAUTION

Do not use the sealant when the tire pressure only needs to be adjusted.

WARNING

The tire inflation pressure must be at least 220 kPa (32 psi). If it is not, do not continue driving.

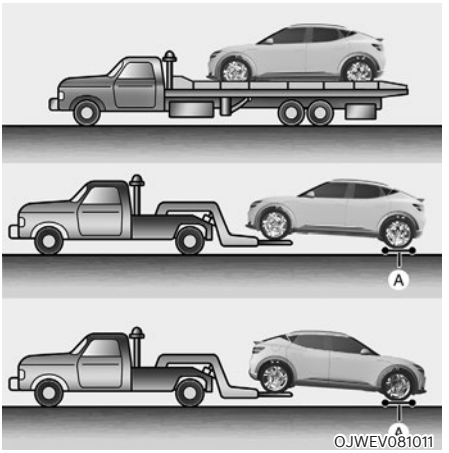
Call for road side service or towing.

Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit

- Park your car at the side of the road so that you can work with the Tire Mobility Kit away from moving traffic.
- To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake.
- Only use the Tire Mobility Kit for sealing/inflation passenger car tires. Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tire can be sealed using the tire mobility kit.
- Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tires.
- When the tire and wheel are damaged, do not use Tire Mobility Kit for your safety.
- Use of the Tire Mobility Kit may not be effective for tire damage larger than approximately 4 mm (0.15 in).
- If the tire cannot be made roadworthy with the Tire Mobility Kit, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit if a tire is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.
- Do not remove any foreign objects such as nails or screws that have penetrated the tire.
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the Vehicle is ON (**READY** indicator ON). Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.
- Never leave the Tire Mobility Kit unattended while it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 min. at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit if the ambient temperature is below -30°C (-22°F).
- In case of skin contact with the sealant, wash the area thoroughly with plenty of water. If the irritation persists, seek medical attention.
- In case of eye contact with the sealant, flush your eyes for at least 15 minutes. If the irritation persists, seek medical attention.
- In case of swallowing the sealant, rinse the mouth and drink plenty of water. However, never give anything to an unconscious person and seek medical attention immediately.
- Long time exposure to the sealant may cause damage to bodily tissue such as kidney, etc.

TOWING

Towing service



[A]: Dollies

If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products or a commercial tow-truck service.

Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or flatbed is recommended.

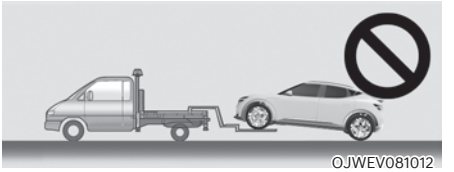
For 2WD vehicles, it is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the rear wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the rear wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the rear of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the front.

CAUTION

Do not tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.



For AWD vehicles, it must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground.

Precautions when moving a short distance before towing a vehicle

Move short distances within 10 m (33 feet) at a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph) or less only when loading on a tow truck or if the vehicle needs to be repositioned.

At this time, the gear must be in the N (Neutral) position and the parking brake must be released. If it is impossible to operate the reduction gear and parking brake, move the vehicle with the rear wheel lifted.

NOTICE

Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts. Otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.

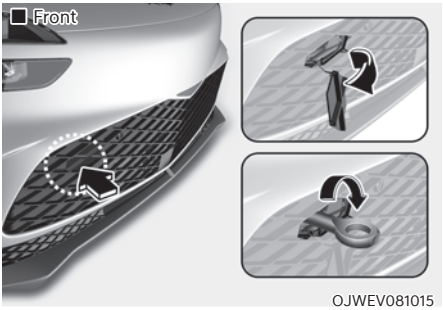
CAUTION

Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.

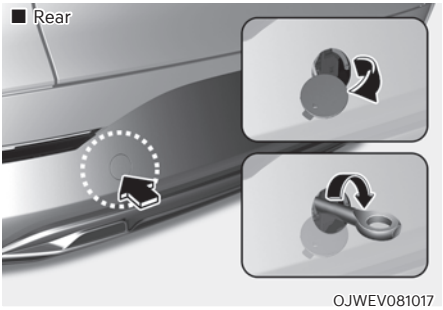
OJWEV082013CN

Removable towing hook

1. Open the tailgate, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.



OJWEV081015



OJWEV081017

2. Remove the hole cover by pressing the lower part of the cover on the bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.

EMERGENCY COMMODITY (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle is equipped with emergency commodities to help you respond to emergency situation.

Fire extinguisher

NOTICE

This vehicle is equipped with the powder-type fire extinguisher exclusively for the fire caused by the electricity in the vehicle. Using water or other inappropriate fire extinguisher may cause the electric shock and collateral damage. If the fire cannot be controlled by the fire extinguisher equipped in the vehicle, avoid approaching to the fire and call fire station. Make sure to announce that the fire is caused by the electric vehicle.

If there is small fire and you know how to use the fire extinguisher, follow these steps carefully.

1. Pull out the safety pin at the top of the extinguisher that keeps the handle from being accidentally pressed.
2. Aim the nozzle towards the base of the fire.
3. Stand approximately 2.5 m (8 ft) away from the fire and squeeze the handle to discharge the extinguisher. If you release the handle, the discharge will stop.
4. Sweep the nozzle back and forth at the base of the fire. After the fire appears to be out, watch carefully since it may re-ignite.

First aid kit

Supplies for use in giving first aid such as scissors, bandage and adhesive tape, etc., are provided.

Triangle reflector

Place the triangle reflector on the road to warn oncoming vehicles during emergencies, such as when the vehicle is parked by the roadside due to problems.

Tire pressure gauge (if equipped)

Tires normally lose some air in day-to-day use, and you may have to add a air periodically and usually it is not a sign of a leaking tire, but of normal wear. Always check tire pressure when the tires are cold because tire pressure increases with temperature.

To check the tire pressure, take the following steps:

1. Unscrew the inflation valve cap that is located on the rim of the tire.
2. Press and hold the gauge against the tire valve. Some air will leak as you begin and more will leak if you don't press the gauge in firmly.
3. A firm non-leaking push will activate the gauge.
4. Read the tire pressure on the gauge to see whether the tire pressure is low or high.
5. Adjust the tire pressure to the specified pressure. Refer to "Tires and Wheels" section in chapter 2.
6. Reinstall the inflation valve cap.

WARNING

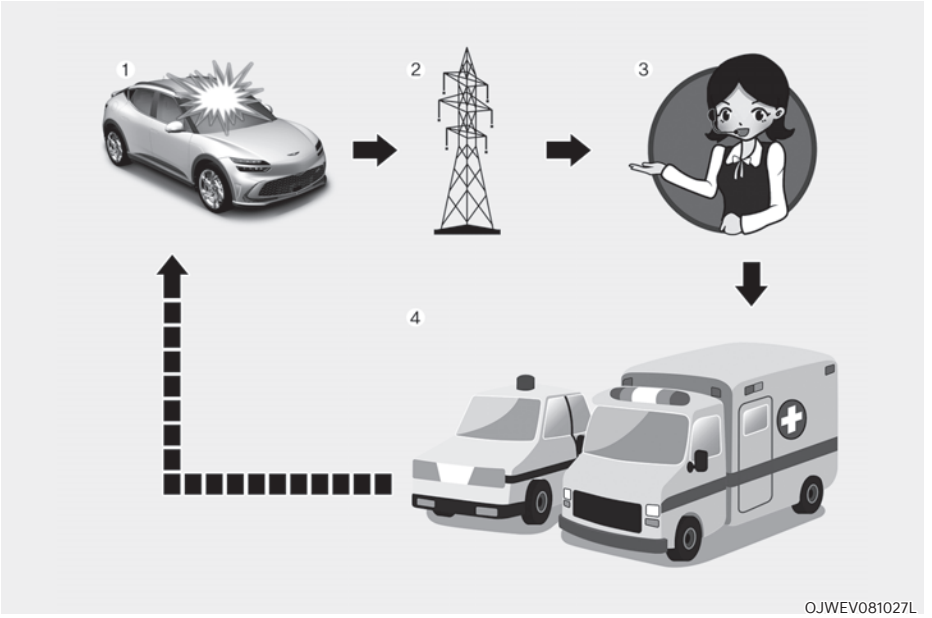
- **When an accident occur, park the vehicle to a safe place. To avoid the leak of electricity in high voltage battery, turn the vehicle off and pull the yellow label in the high voltage battery switch to shut down the high voltage battery. Also, disconnect the auxiliary battery(12V) cable to shut down. Be sure to disconnect both (+) cable and (-) cable.**
- **Do not touch the exposed electric wires. Do not touch high voltage wires (orange), connectors and other electric components.**
- **When an accident occur, the lethal gas and fluid from damaged high voltage battery can be leaked. Be aware not to touch or exposed to the gas and fluid. When flammable or poison gas leak inside the vehicle, open windows and evacuate to a safe place. When leaked fluid comes in contact with your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water. When the fluid contacts with your skin, wash it with salt water. Get immediate medical attention afterward.**
- **When the vehicle is flooded, immediately turn the vehicle off and evacuate to a safe place. For your safety we recommend to call the fire station and or contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **When the fire spread to the high voltage battery, the additional fire may occur. In this situation, be sure to accompany a fire truck when the vehicle is being towed.**

PAN-EUROPEAN ECALL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The vehicle is equipped with a device* connected with the Pan-European eCall system for making emergency call to response teams. The Pan-European eCall system is an automatic emergency call service made in event of a traffic accident or other** accidents on the roads of Europe. (only in countries with regulation on this system)

The system allows contacting with an officer of the single duty dispatch service in case of accidents on the roads of Europe. (only in countries with regulation on this system)

The Pan-European eCall system given conditions, stated in the Owner's Manual as well as Warranty and Service book transmits data to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) including such information as vehicle location, vehicle type, VIN (vehicle identification number of the vehicle).



OJWEV081027L

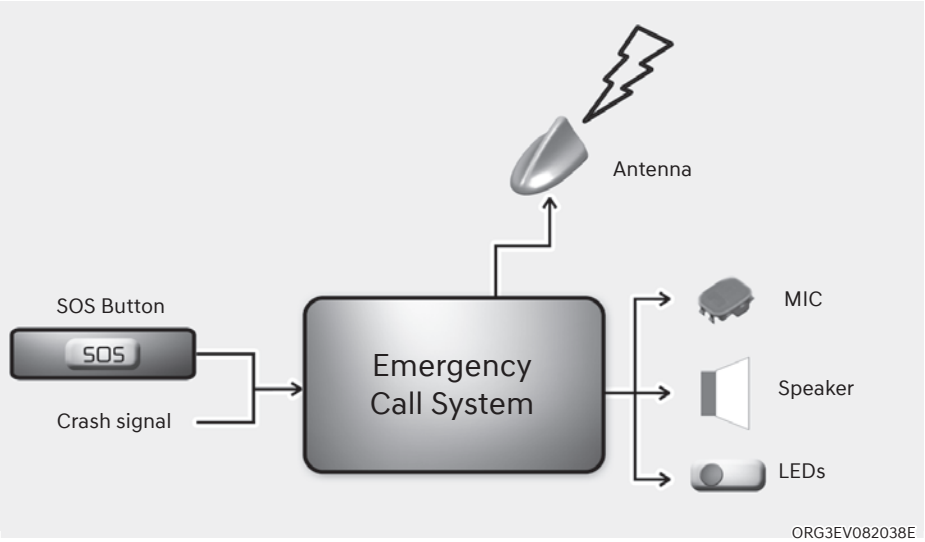
1. Road accident
2. Wireless network
3. Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP)
4. Rescue

* Pan-European eCall device in the Owner's Manual means equipment, installed in the vehicle, which provides connection with the Pan-European eCall system.

** "Other accidents" mean any accidents on the roads of Europe (only in countries with regulation on this system) resulted in injured people and/or necessity of provision of assistance. In case of registration of any accident, it is necessary to stop a vehicle, press button SOS (location of the button is specified on the picture in the chapter "Pan-European eCall (if equipped)") of the Owner's Manual. When making a call, the system gathers information about the vehicle (from which a call was made), after which connects the car with an officer of the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) to tell about the reason of the emergency call.

Once the data which is stored in the Pan-European eCall system is delivered to the rescue center to assist the driver and passengers with proper rescue operations, the data will be deleted after rescue operation is completed.

Description of the ecall in-vehicle system



Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: refer to this section. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of invehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident.

It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: refer to this section.

In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: refer to this section.

Information on data processing

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3).

Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.

Types of data and its recipients

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:

- Vehicle Identification Number
- Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle)
- Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen)
- Vehicle recent locations and direction of travel
- Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp
- Any additional data (if applicable): Not applicable

Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112. Additional information (if available): Not applicable

(1) Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).

(2) Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).

(3) Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

Arrangements for data processing

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered. Additional remarks (if any): Not applicable

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status. Additional remarks (if any): Not applicable

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.

The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.

The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated. Additional remarks (if any): Not applicable

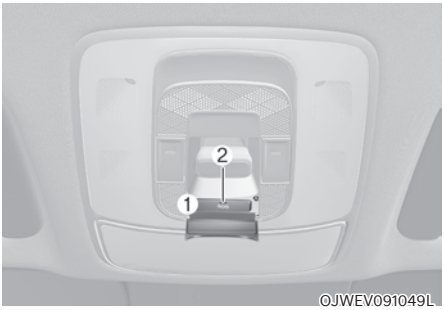
Modalities for exercising data subject's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Not applicable

Pan-European eCall System



Elements of the Pan-European eCall system, installed in passenger compartment:

(1) SOS button

(2) LED

SOS button: the driver/passenger makes an emergency call to the single duty dispatch service by pressing the button.

LED: The LED illuminates for 3 seconds when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position. After that they will switch off at normal operation of the system.

If there are some problems in the system, the SOS indicator light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Automatic accident reporting

OJWEV081026L

The Pan-European eCall device automatically makes an emergency call to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) for proper rescuing operations in event of vehicle accident.

For proper emergency services and support the Pan-European eCall system automatically transmits the accident data to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) when a traffic accident is detected.

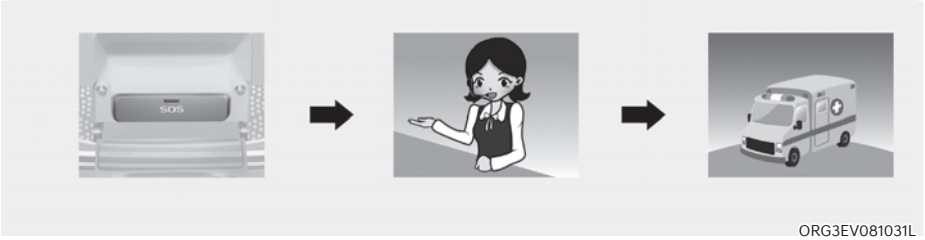
In this case, the emergency call cannot be hung up by pressing the SOS button and the Pan-European eCall system remains connected until the emergency service officer, receiving the call, disconnects the emergency call.

In minor traffic accidents the Pan-European eCall system may not execute an emergency call. However, an emergency call may be made manually by pressing the SOS button.

CAUTION

Operation of the system is impossible in case of absence of mobile transmission and GPS and Galileo signals.

Manual accident reporting



ORG3EV081031L

The driver or passenger manually can make an emergency call in the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP), by pressing SOS button to call the necessary emergency services.

A call to the emergency services through the Pan-European eCall system can be cancelled by pressing the SOS button again only before the call connection.

After activation of emergency call in the manual mode (for proper emergency services and support), the Pan-European eCall system automatically transmits the road accident data / or data on other accident to the officer of the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) (during emergency call) by pressing the SOS button.

If the driver or passenger accidentally presses the SOS button, it can be canceled by pressing the button again. (For Russia)

It can be canceled by pressing the button again in 3 seconds. It can't be canceled after that. (Except Russia)

In case of road accident or other accident for activation of emergency call in manual mode it is necessary:

1. Stop the vehicle in accordance with traffic rules to ensure safety to yourself and other participants of road traffic;
2. Press the SOS button, when pressing the button SOS registration of the device in the wireless telephonic communication networks is carried out, minimum data set about vehicle and its location is collected in accordance with of the technical requirements of the device. After that connection with the officer of the Pan-European eCall system is made for clearing up reasons (conditions) of the emergency call.
3. After clearing up reasons of the emergency call, the officer of the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) sends emergency services and completes the emergency call.

If the emergency call is not carried out in accordance with the procedure, mentioned above, the emergency call will be considered as erroneous.

WARNING

Emergency power supply of the Pan-European eCall system from the battery

- **The Pan-European eCall system battery supplies power during 1 hour in case main power source of the vehicle is cut off due to the collision during the emergency situations.**
- **The Pan-European eCall system battery should be replaced every 3 years. For more information refer to the Maintenance Schedule in chapter 9.**

The SOS indicator light in the instrument cluster (system malfunction)

If the SOS indicator light illuminates in normal driving conditions, this can indicate malfunction of the Pan-European eCall system. We recommend to have the Pan-European eCall system checked at an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Otherwise correct operation of the Pan-European eCall system device, installed in your vehicle is not guaranteed. Owner of the vehicle incurs liability for consequences, occurred as a result of nonobservance of conditions, mentioned above.

Arbitrary Removal or Modification

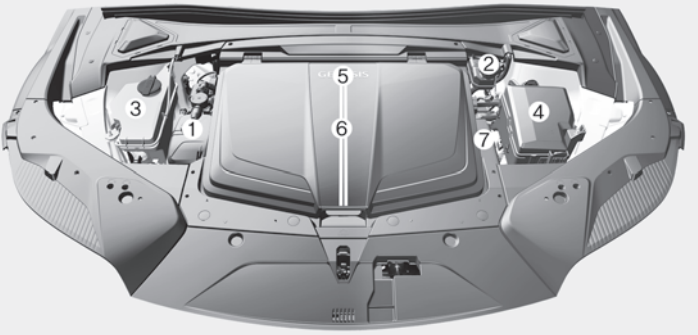
The Pan-European eCall system calls emergency services for assistance. Thus, any arbitrary removal or changes to the Pan-European eCall system settings may affect your driving safety. Also, it may even make an erroneous emergency call to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP). Thereby, we kindly ask you not to make any changes by yourself or by the third parties in the settings of the equipment of the Pan-European eCall system, installed in your vehicle.

9. Maintenance

Motor compartment 9-3
Maintenance services 9-4
Owner's responsibility 9-4
Owner maintenance precautions 9-4
Owner maintenance 9-5
Owner maintenance schedule 9-6
Scheduled maintenance services 9-7
Normal maintenance schedule 9-8
Maintenance under severe usage conditions 9-10
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items 9-11
Coolant 9-12
Brake fluid 9-14
Checking the brake fluid level 9-14
Reduction gear fluid 9-15
Washer fluid 9-15
Checking the washer fluid level 9-15
Cabin air filter 9-16
Filter inspection 9-16
Filter replacement 9-16
Wiper blades 9-17
Blade inspection 9-17
Blade replacement 9-17
Battery (12 volt) 9-19
For best battery service 9-20
Battery capacity label 9-20
Battery recharging 9-21
Reset items 9-22
Tires and wheels 9-23

Tire care 9-23
Recommended cold tire inflation pressures 9-23
Check tire inflation pressure 9-24
Tire rotation 9-25
Wheel alignment and tire balance 9-25
Tire replacement 9-26
Wheel replacement 9-27
Tire traction 9-27
Tire maintenance 9-27
Tire sidewall labeling 9-27
Low aspect ratio tires 9-30
Fuses 9-31
Instrument panel fuse replacement 9-32
Motor compartment panel fuse replacement 9-33
Fuse/relay panel description 9-34
Light bulbs 9-44
Headlamp, position lamp, turn signal lamp, Daytime Running Light (DRL) replacement 9-46
Headlamp aiming 9-46
Puddle lamp replacement 9-49
Rear combination lamp replacement 9-49
Rear fog lamp replacement 9-49
High mounted stop lamp replacement 9-50
License plate lamp replacement 9-50
Front trunk lamp replacement 9-51
Interior light replacement 9-51
Appearance care 9-53
Exterior care 9-53
Interior care 9-58

MOTOR COMPARTMENT



The actual motor compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJWEV091001

1. Coolant reservoir
2. Brake fluid reservoir
3. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
4. Fuse box
5. Cabin air filter
6. Front trunk
7. Battery

MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

We recommend you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products. An authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products meets Genesis Branded Vehicle's high service quality standards and receives technical support from Genesis Branded Vehicle in order to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.

Owner's responsibility

Maintenance service and record retention are the owner's responsibility.

You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

Owner maintenance precautions

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury. This chapter provides instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

Your vehicle should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle.

NOTICE

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Service Passport provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any service or maintenance procedure, have it done by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

OWNER MAINTENANCE

WARNING

Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend that it is done by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products. ALWAYS follow these precautions for performing maintenance work:

- **Park your vehicle on level ground. Shift the vehicle to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Start/ Stop button to the OFF position.**
- **Block the tires (front and back) to prevent the vehicle from moving.**

  Remove loose clothing or jewelry that can become entangled in moving parts.
- **Keep flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery parts.**

WARNING

Make sure to turn the START/STOP button to the 'OFF' position to shut down the vehicle before performing maintenance work on the vehicle.

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your dealer as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance vehicle checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labor, parts and lubricants used.

The electric control system in the vehicle may cause malfunction or other negative impact on the artificial heart and the artificial internal organs. Be sure to inquire the impact of the electric control system on the artificial organs from the medical product corporation.

Owner maintenance schedule

When you stop for charging:

- Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir.
- Check the windshield washer fluid level.
- Check for low or under-inflated tires.

WARNING

Be careful when checking your coolant level when the motor compartment is hot. This may result in coolant being blown out of the opening and cause serious burns and other injuries.

While operating your vehicle:

- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice if there is any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when traveling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your gear shift occurs, check the shift gear fluid level.
- Check the shift gear P (Park) function.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

At least monthly:

- Check coolant level in the coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tires including the spare (if equipped) for tires that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.
- Check for loose wheel bolts.

At least twice a year: (for example, every Spring and Autumn)

- Check radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check windshield washer spray and wiper operation. Clean wiper blades with a clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check headlamp alignment.
- Check the seat belts for wear and function.

At least once a year:

- Clean body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate door hinges and hood hinges.
- Lubricate door and hood locks and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weather strips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate shift gear linkage and controls.
- Clean the battery (12V) and terminals.
- Check the brake fluid level.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICES

Follow Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, you must follow the Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt spread roads
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- Driving in heavy dust condition
- Driving in heavy traffic area with the ambient temperature higher than 32 °C (90 °F) while consuming more than 50% of electric energy.
- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly
- Towing a trailer, or using a camper or roof rack
- Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use or vehicle towing
- Frequently driving under high speed or rapid acceleration/deceleration
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After the periods or distance shown in the chart, continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.

Normal maintenance schedule

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good vehicle performance.

Keep receipts for all vehicle services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
	Months	24	48	72	96	120	144	168	192
	Miles×1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160
	Km×1,000	30	60	90	120	150	180	210	240
Cooling system		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Coolant *1		At first, replace at 200,000km (125,000miles) or 10 years; after that, replace every 40,000km (25,000miles) or 24 months.							
Reduction gear fluid			I		I		I		I
12V auxiliary battery condition	For Europe	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
	Except Europe	Inspect 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months							
All electrical system		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake pedal		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Parking brake		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake fluid		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Brake discs and pads		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*1: When replacing or adding coolant, we recommend that you visit an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Normal maintenance schedule

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
	Months	24	48	72	96	120	144	168	192
	Miles×1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160
	Km×1,000	30	60	90	120	150	180	210	240
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Driveshaft and boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire (pressure & tread wear)		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Front suspension ball joints		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Bolt and nuts on chassis and body		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air conditioner refrigerant		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air conditioner compressor		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cabin air filter	For Europe	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	Except Europe	Replace every 15,000km (10,000 miles)							
Pan-European eCall system battery (if equipped)		Replace every 3 years							

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Maintenance under severe usage conditions

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions.

Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.

R : Replace

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

Maintenance item	Maintenance operation	Maintenance intervals	Driving condition
Reduction gear fluid	R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	B, D, G, H
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Front suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	B, C, D, E, F
Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Driveshaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I
Cabin air filter	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	B, D, F

Severe driving conditions

A. Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature
B. Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt spread roads
C. Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
D. Driving in heavy dust condition
E. Driving in heavy traffic area with the ambient temperature higher than 32 °C (90 °F) while consuming more than 50% of electric energy.
F. Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly
G. Using for towing or camping, and driving with loads on the roof
H. Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use or vehicle towing
I. Frequently driving under high speed or rapid acceleration/deceleration
J. Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

Cooling system

Check cooling system components, such as radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Reduction gear fluid

The reduction gear fluid should be inspected according to the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

Brake fluid

Check the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between the MIN and the MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 4 specification.

Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads, the disc, and the rotor for any excessive wear-out. Inspect calipers for any fluid leakage.

For more information on checking the pads or lining wear limit, refer to the Genesis Branded Vehicle web site.

(http:service.hyundai-motor.com)

Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and the vehicle off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel. Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage.

Replace any damaged parts.

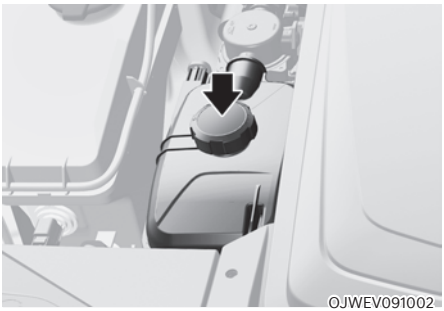
Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

Air conditioning refrigerant

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

COOLANT



Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between the MAX or F and the MIN or L marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the parts in the motor compartment is cool.

If the coolant is low, we recommend to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Adding other types of water or antifreeze can damage the vehicle.

WARNING

The electric motor for the cooling fan may continue to operate or start up when the vehicle is not running and can cause serious injury.

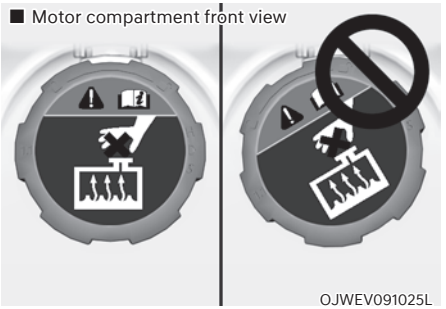
Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the rotating fan blades of the cooling fan.

The electric motor for the cooling fan is controlled by vehicle coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. As the vehicle coolant temperature decreases, the electric motor will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.

WARNING

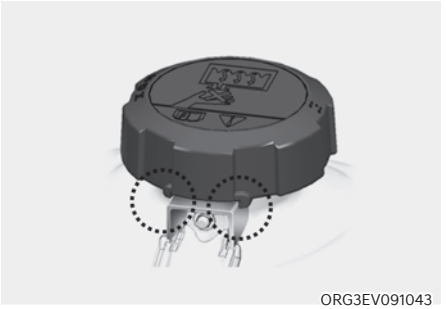
-
  Check the coolant level when the motor compartment is cooled. Coolant level is influenced by temperature, and if the coolant reservoir cap is removed when coolant temperature is high, hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.
- **Make sure the coolant cap is properly closed after refilling coolant. Otherwise the motor could be overheated while driving.**

■ Motor compartment front view



OJWEV091025L

1. **Check if the coolant cap label is straight in front.**

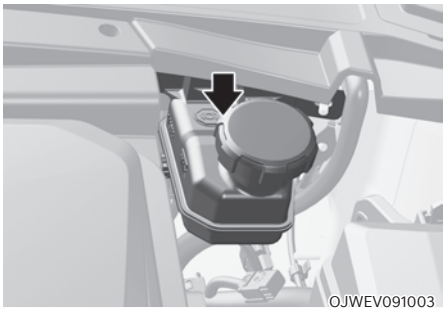


ORG3EV091043

2. **Make sure that the tiny protrusions inside the coolant cap is securely interlocked.**

BRAKE FLUID

Checking the brake fluid level



Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add the specified brake fluid to the MAX level. The level will fall with accumulated kilometers. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings. If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that the brake system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

If the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid this could indicate a leak in the brake system. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

Do not allow brake fluid to come in contact with your eyes. If brake fluid comes in contact with your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.

NOTICE

- **Do not allow brake fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result.**
- **Brake fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should NEVER be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be disposed of properly.**
- **Do not use the wrong kind of brake fluid. A few drops of mineral based oil, in your brake system can damage brake system parts.**

Information

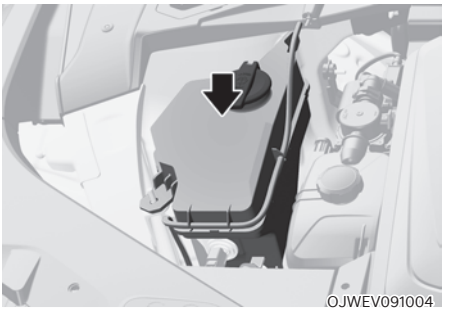
Use only the specified brake fluid (refer to "Recommended Lubricants and Capacities" section in chapter 2).

REDUCTION GEAR FLUID

There is no reduction gear fluid level gauge in the vehicle. Check the reduction gear fluid every 60,000 km regularly. If the vehicle is driven under severe condition, check the maintenance under severe usage condition and we recommend that have you to consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WASHER FLUID

Checking the washer fluid level



Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death, take the following safety precautions when using washer fluid:

- **Do not use coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir. Coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident or damage to paint and body trim.**
- **Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Washer fluid may contain alcohol and can be flammable.**
- **Do not drink washer fluid and avoid contact with skin. Washer fluid is harmful to humans and animals.**
- **Keep washer fluid away from children and animals.**

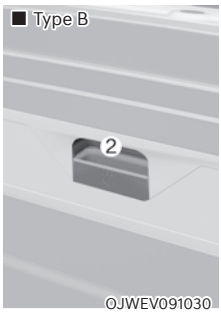
CABIN AIR FILTER

Filter inspection

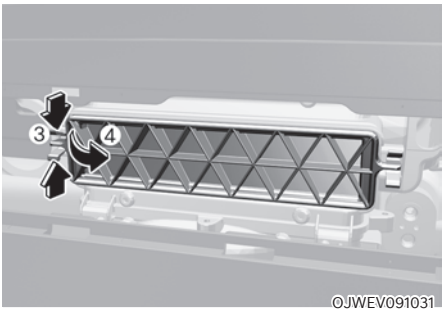
The cabin air filter should be replaced according to the Maintenance Schedule. If the vehicle is operated in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced sooner. Replace the cabin air filter by following the procedure below and be careful to avoid damaging other components.

Filter replacement

1. Lift up the front trunk cover while depressing the front trunk lever (1).

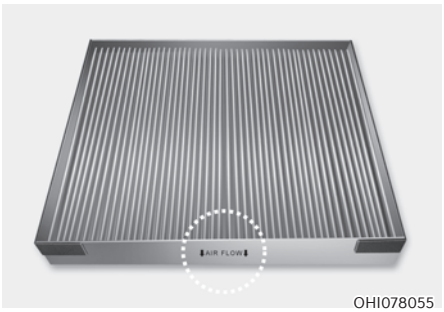


2. Remove the cover by pulling the front trunk handle (2).



3. Press and hold the lock (3) on the left side of the cover (4).
4. Replace the cabin air filter.
5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

NOTICE



Install a new cabin air filter in the correct direction with the arrow symbol (↓) facing downwards, to prevent noise and reduce effectiveness.

WIPER BLADES

Blade inspection

Contamination of either the windshield or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windshield wipers.

Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, arms or other components, do not:

- **Use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.**
- **Attempt to move the wipers manually.**
- **Use non-specified wiper blades.**

Information

Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windshield difficult to clean.

Information

Wiper blades are consumable items. Normal wear of the wipers may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

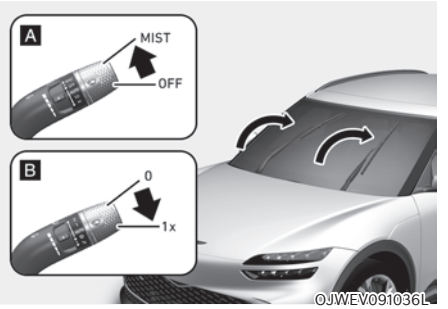
Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

NOTICE

- **In order to prevent damage to the hood and the wiper arms, the wiper arms should only be lifted when in the top wiping position.**
- **Always return the wiper arms to the windshield before driving.**

Front windshield wiper blade replacement

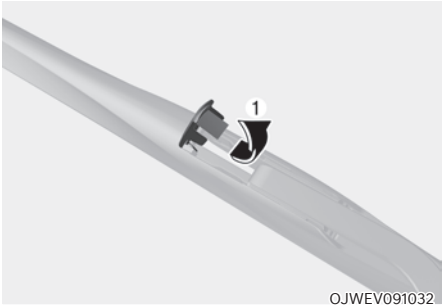


[A] : Type A, [B] : Type B

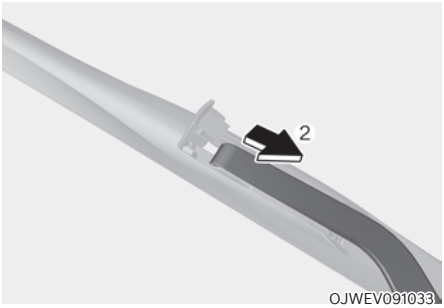
1. Within 20 seconds of turning off the vehicle, lift up (or push down) and hold the wiper lever to the MIST (or 1x) position for about 2 seconds until the wipers move to the top wipe position.
2. At this time you can lift the wipers off the windshield.

Information

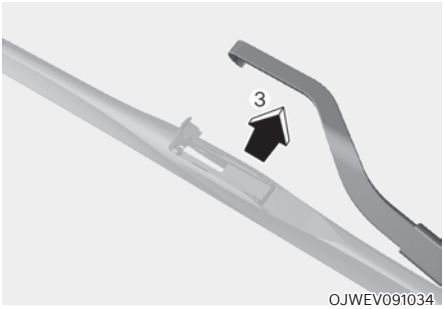
This vehicle has a “hidden” wiper design which means that the wipers cannot be lifted manually when they are in their bottom resting position.



1. Lift up the wiper blade clip (1).



2. Then slide the wiper blade down.



3. Remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm (5).
4. Install the new blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.
5. Return the wiper arm on the windshield.

BATTERY (12 VOLT)

WARNING

To prevent SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH to you or bystanders, always follow these precautions when working near or handling the battery:

Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.

Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.

Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.

Hydrogen is always present in battery cells, is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.

Keep batteries out of reach of children.

Batteries contain sulfuric acid which is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing.

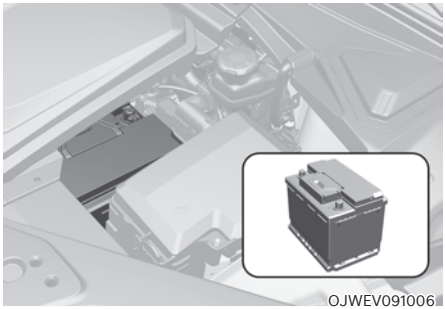
If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.

- **When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**
- **Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.**
- **NEVER attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.**
- **The electrical ignition switch works with high voltage. NEVER touch these components with the (READY) indicator ON or when the START/STOP button is in the ON position.**

NOTICE

- **Always follow these instructions when handling your vehicle's battery to prevent damage to your battery.**
- **When you do not use the vehicle for a long time in a low temperature area, disconnect the battery and keep it indoors.**
- **Always charge the battery fully to prevent battery case damage in low temperature areas.**
- **Prevent liquid from wetting the battery terminals. The performance of the battery may be degraded, and may cause injury. Be cautious when loading liquid in the motor compartment.**
- **Do not tilt the battery.**
- **If you connect unauthorized electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorized devices.**

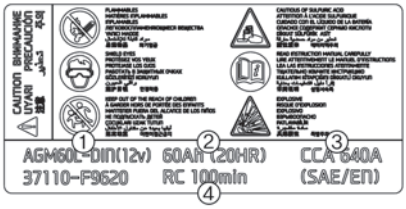
For best battery service



OJWEV091006

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

Battery capacity label



OJWEV091047L

✳ The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. AGM60L-DIN(12v) : The Genesis Branded Vehicle model name of battery
2. 60Ah (20HR) : The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
3. CCA 640A : The cold-test current in amperes by SAE / EN
4. RC 100min : The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)

Battery recharging

By battery charger

Should your vehicle's battery become discharged either run the motor for at least 60 minutes driving. Alternatively you may connect a fully automatic regulated charger to the battery in the motor compartment.

WARNING

Always follow these instructions when recharging your vehicle's battery to avoid the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH from explosions or acid burns:

- **Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the vehicle.**
- **Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.**
- **Always work outdoors or in an area with plenty of ventilation.**
- **Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.**
- **The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in a well ventilated area.**
- **Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin boiling violently.**
- **The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected. Disconnect the battery charger in the following order:**
  1. **Turn off the battery charger main switch.**
  2. **Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.**
  3. **Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.**
- **We recommend that you use batteries for replacement from an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

NOTICE

AGM battery

- **Absorbent Glass Matt (AGM) batteries are maintenance-free and we recommend that the AGM battery be serviced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products. For charging your AGM battery, use only fully automatic battery chargers that are specially developed for AGM batteries.**
- **When replacing the AGM battery, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Do not open or remove the cap on top of the battery. This may cause leaks of internal electrolyte that could result in severe injury.**

By jump starting

After a jump start from a good battery, drive the vehicle for 20-30 minutes before it is shutoff. The vehicle may not restart if you shut it off before the battery had a chance to adequately recharge. See “Jump Starting” in chapter 8 for more information on jump starting procedures.

Information

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

Reset items

The following items may need to be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Driving info/After recharging/ Accumulated info (items in Utility view) (see chapter 4)
- Integrated memory system (see chapter 5)
- Power window (see chapter 5)
- Power tailgate (see chapter 5)
- Climate control system (see chapter 5)
- Clock (see Infotainment system manual)
- Infotainment system (see Infotainment system manual)

TIRES AND WHEELS

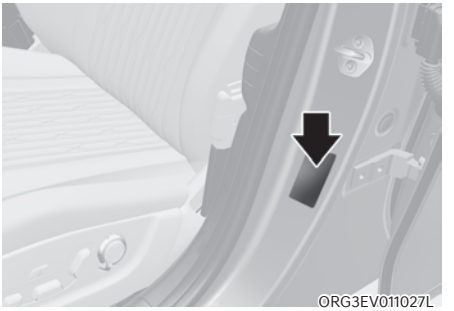
WARNING

Tire failure may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. To reduce risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH, take the following precautions:

- **Inspect your tires monthly for proper inflation as well as wear and damage.**
- **The recommended cold tire pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tire label located on the driver's side center pillar. Always use a tire pressure gauge to measure tire pressure. Tires with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling.**
- **Check the pressure of the spare(if equipped) every time you check the pressure of the other tires on your vehicle.**
- **Replace tires that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tires can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, or traction.**
- **ALWAYS replace tires with the same size, type, construction and tread pattern as each tire that was originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tires and wheels other than the recommended sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) resulting in a serious accident.**

Tire care

For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum electric energy economy, you must always maintain recommended tire inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.



All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the driver's side center pillar.

Recommended cold tire inflation pressures

All tire pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tires are cold. "Cold tires" means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km (one mile).

Warm tires normally exceed recommended cold tire pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tires to adjust the pressure or the tires will be under-inflated. For recommended inflation pressure, refer to "Tire and Wheels" section in chapter 2.

WARNING

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, vehicle handling, and minimum tire wear.

Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tire life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tire failure that could result in loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Severe under-inflation can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tire failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.

CAUTION

- **Under-inflation results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced electric energy economy. Wheel deformation is also possible. Keep your tire pressures at the proper levels. If a tire frequently needs refilling, we recommend it be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Over-inflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the center of the tire tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.**

Check tire inflation pressure

Check your tires, including the spare tire (if equipped), once a month or more.

How to check

Use a good quality tire pressure gauge to check tire pressure. You can not tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated when they are under-inflated.

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tire and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended pressure. Make sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

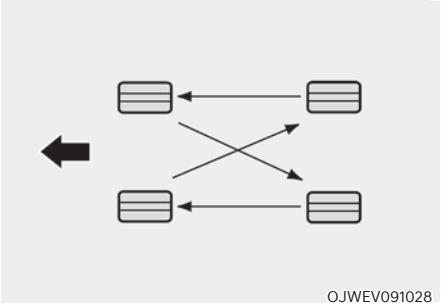
If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

Tire rotation

To equalize tread wear, Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends that the tires be rotated every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tires for correct balance.

When rotating tires, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tire pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tire. Replace the tire if you find any of these conditions. Replace the tire if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tire pressures to specification and check wheel bolt tightness (proper torque is 14~16 kgf.m [101~116 lbf.ft]).



OJWEV091028

Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tires are rotated.

Information

The outside and inside of the unsymmetrical tire is distinguishable. When installing an unsymmetrical tire, be sure to install the side marked “outside” face the outside. If the side marked “inside” is installed on the outside, it will have a negative effect on vehicle performance.

WARNING

- **Do not use the compact spare tire for tire rotation.**
- **Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tires under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**

Wheel alignment and tire balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance.

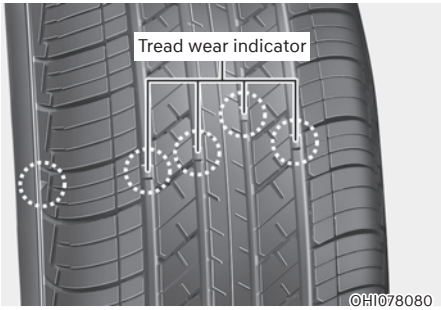
In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

NOTICE

Incorrect wheel weights can damage your vehicle’s aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.

Tire replacement



If the tire is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) of tread left on the tire. Replace the tire when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tire.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY:

- **Replace tires that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tires can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, and traction.**
- **Always replace tires with the same size as each tire that was originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tires and wheels other than the recommended sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) resulting in a serious accident.**
- **When replacing tires (or wheels), it is recommended to replace the two front or two rear tires (or wheels) as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.**
- **Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends that tires be replaced after six (6) years of normal service.**
- **Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this warning may cause sudden tire failure, which could lead to a loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**

Compact spare tire (if equipped) replacement

A compact spare tire has a shorter tread life than a regular size tire. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tire. The replacement compact spare tire should be the same size and design tire as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tire wheel. The compact spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tire wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tire.

WARNING

The original tire should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare (if equipped) and loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. The compact spare tire (if equipped) is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle over 80 km/h (50 mph) when using the compact spare tire.

Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

Tire traction

Tire traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tires, tires that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tires should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road.

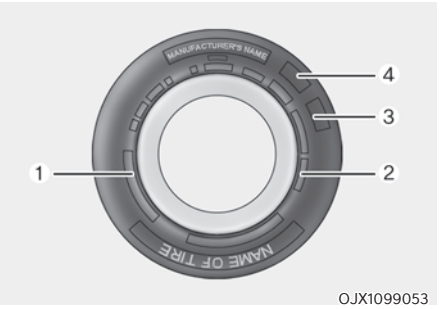
Tire maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tires installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tire life. Additionally, a tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

Tire sidewall labeling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides the tire identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tire in case of a recall.



OJX1099053

1. Manufacturer or brand name

Manufacturer or brand name is shown.

2. Tire size designation

A tire's sidewall is marked with a tire size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tires for your car. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tire size designation mean.

Example tire size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tire size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

245/45R19 101H

245 - Tire width in millimeters.

45 - Aspect ratio. The tire's section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tire construction code (Radial).

19 - Rim diameter in inches.

105 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry.

W - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

8.5J X 19

8.5 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

19 - Rim diameter in inches.

Tire speed ratings

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger vehicle tires. The speed rating is part of the tire size designation on the sidewall of the tire. This symbol corresponds to that tire's designed maximum safe operating speed.

Speed Rating Symbol	Maximum Speed
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

3. Checking tire life (TIN : Tire Identification Number)

Any tires that are over six years old, based on the manufacturing date, (including the spare tire) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tire sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tire consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

DOT : XXXX XXXX OOOO

The front part of the DOT shows a plant code number, tire size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 5222 represents that the tire was produced in the 52nd week of 2022.

4. Genesis exclusive tire

Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends that tires designed specifically for Genesis vehicles be used. You may find the marking “GOE” (Genesis Original Equipment) embossed on the tire sidewall.

5. Tire ply composition and material

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tire. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tire, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter “R” means radial ply construction; the letter “D“ means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter “B” means belted-bias ply construction.

6. Maximum permissible inflation pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tire. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

7. Maximum load rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. When replacing the tires on the vehicle, always use a tire that has the same load rating as the factory installed tire.

8. Uniform tire quality grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the sidewalls of passenger vehicle tires. The tires available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicle may vary with respect to grade.

Traction - AA, A, B & C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire’s ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature - A, B & C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, over-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tire failure. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Low aspect ratio tires (if equipped)

The aspect ratio is lower than 50 on low aspect ratio tires.

Because low aspect ratio tires are optimized for handling and braking, their sidewall is a little stiffer than a standard tire. Also low aspect ratio tires tend to be wider and consequently have a greater contact patch with the road surface. In some instances they may generate more road noise compared with standard tires.

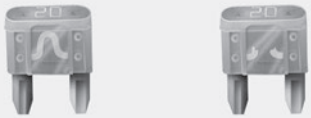
CAUTION

The side wall of a low aspect ratio tire is shorter than the normal one. Thus, the low-aspect wheel and tire are easily damaged. Follow the below instructions.

- **When driving on a rough road or driving off a road, be careful not to damage the tires and wheels. After driving, inspect the tires and wheels.**
- **When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or curb stone, drive the vehicle slowly so as not to damage the tires and wheels.**
- **When there is an impact on a tire, inspect the tire condition. Or, we recommend that have you to contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Inspect the tire condition and pressure every 3,000 km (1,800 miles) to prevent tire damage.**
- **It is difficult to recognize a tire damage only with your eyes. When there is a slight hint of a tire damage, check and replace the tire to prevent the damage caused by air leakage.**
- **When a tire is damaged while driving on a rough road, off a road, or over obstacles, such as a pothole, manhole, or curb stone, your warranty does not cover the damage.**
- **The tire information is specified on the tire side wall.**

FUSES

■ Blade type

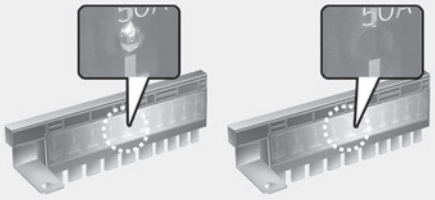


Normal Blown

■ Cartridge type

Normal Blown

■ Multi type



Normal Blown

OTM078035

A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 2 fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the other in the vehicle compartment.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will be melted or broken.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel. Before replacing a blown fuse, turn the vehicle and all switches off, and then disconnect the negative battery cable. Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved. We recommend that you immediately consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

NEVER replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.

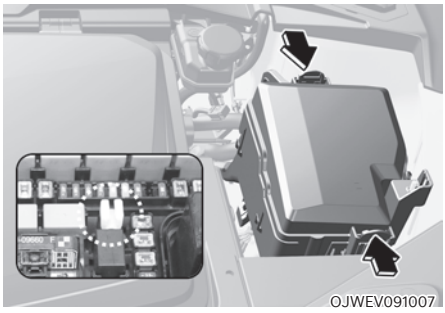
- **A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly cause a fire.**
- **Do not install a wire or aluminum foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and possibly a fire.**

NOTICE

Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

Instrument panel fuse replacement

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Turn all other switches off.
3. Open the fuse panel cover.
4. Refer to the label on the inside of the fuse panel cover to locate the suspected fuse location.



5. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool (1) provided in the motor compartment fuses panel.
6. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. Spare fuses are provided in the instrument panel fuse panels (or in the motor compartment fuse panel).
7. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

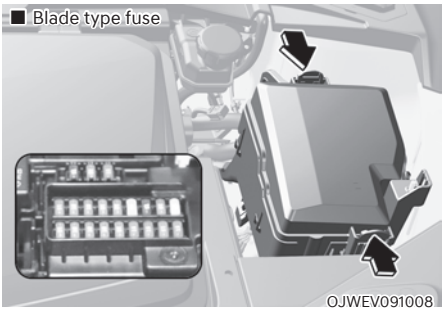
In an emergency, if you do not have a spare fuse, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigarette lighter fuse.

If the headlamps or other electrical components do not work and the fuses are undamaged, check the fuse panel in the motor compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced with the same rating.

Motor compartment panel fuse replacement

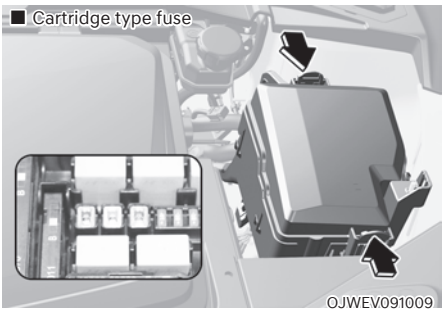
Blade fuse / Cartridge fuse

■ Blade type fuse



OJWEV091008

■ Cartridge type fuse



OJWEV091009

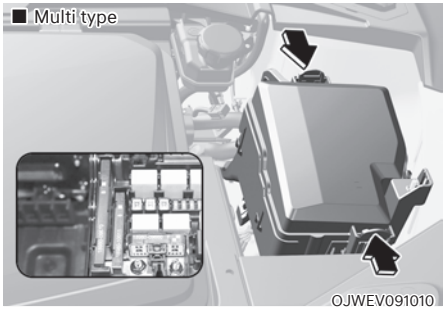
1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Turn all other switches off.
3. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tap and pulling up.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the removal tool in the motor compartment fuse panel.
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

NOTICE

After checking the fuse panel in the motor compartment, securely install the fuse panel cover. You may hear a clicking sound if the cover is securely latched. If it is not securely latched, electrical failure may occur from water contact.

Multi fuse

■ Multi type



OJWEV091010

If the multi fuse or midi fuse is blown, we recommend that you consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Fuse/relay panel description

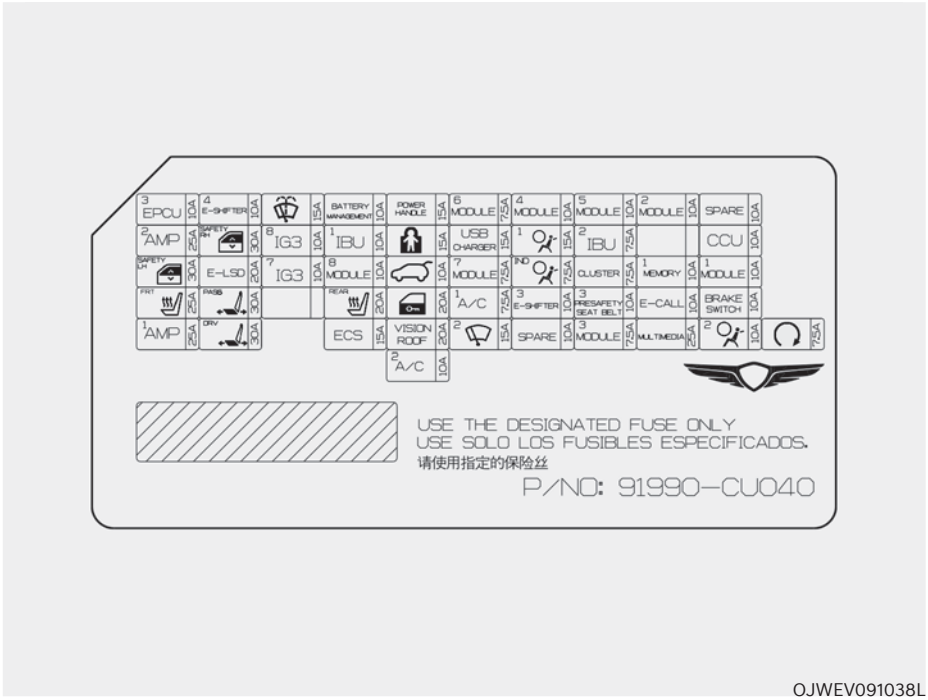
Instrument panel fuse panel

OJWEV091013

Inside the fuse/relay box cover, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay names and ratings.

Information

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle; the information is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse box on your vehicle, refer to the fuse box label.



OJWEV091038L

Instrument panel fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
EPCU3	3 EPCU	10A	Rear Inverter (System)
E-SHIFTER 4	4 E-SHIFTER	10A	SCU
WASHER		15A	Washer Relay
BATTERY MANAGEMENT	BATTERY MANAGEMENT	10A	Battery System Assembly (BMU)
POWER HANDLE	POWER HANDLE	15A	Steering Tilt & Telescopic Unit
MODULE 6	6 MODULE	7.5A	IBU, IAU
MODULE 4	4 MODULE	10A	ELSD Unit, Rear Inverter (System), ECS Unit, Rear Corner Radar LH/RH, Front View Camera, ADAS unit (Driving/Parking), Crash Pad Switch, VESS Unit, Steering Tilt & Telescopic Unit, Front Radar, Front Corner Radar LH/RH, Front Inverter (System)
MODULE 5	5 MODULE	10A	Data Link Connector, CCIC Head Unit, Electro Chromic Mirror, DCU, CCIC Keyboard, Smart Phone Wireless Charger, Console Switch, AMP, Driver/Passenger Power Seat Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module, Front/Rear Seat Warmer Control Module, Face Recognition Unit, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module
MODULE 2	2 MODULE	10A	Face Recognition Unit, Center Control Panel, AMP, IBU, CCIC Head Unit,P/R Junction Block (RLY. 11), Instrument Cluster, CCU, DCU, IAU, ADAS Unit (Parking)
SPARE (B+)	SPARE	10A	Not Used

Instrument panel fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
AMP2	2 AMP	25A	AMP
SAFETY P/ WINDOW RH	SAFETY RH	30A	Rear Safety Power Window Module RH, [LHD] Passenger Safety Power Window Module [RHD] Driver Safety Power Window Module
IG3 8	3 IG3	10A	Rear Inverter (System)
IBU1	1 IBU	10A	IBU, IAU
CHILD LOCK		15A	Child Lock/Unlock Relay
USB CHARGER	USB CHARGER	15A	Console USB Charger Connector
AIRBAG 1	1	15A	SRS Control Module, Passenger Occupant Detection Sensor
IBU 2	2 IBU	7.5A	IBU
CCU	CCU	10A	CCU

Instrument panel fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
SAFETY P/ WINDOW LH		30A	Rear Safety Power Window Module LH, [LHD] Driver Safety Power Window Module [RHD] Passenger Safety Power Window Module
E-LSD	E-LSD	20A	ELSD Unit
IG3 7	7 IG3	10A	Instrument Cluster, CCU, A/C Controller, PM Sensor, CCIC Head Unit, Incar Temperature Sensor, DCU, A/C PTC Heater, A/C Control Module
MODULE 8	8 MODULE	10A	Driver/Passenger Door DSM Monitor, Driver/ Passenger Outside Mirror Unit
TAILGATE OPEN		10A	Tailgate Relay
MODULE 7	7 MODULE	7.5A	Head Lamp LH/RH, Passenger Power Seat Module
A/BAG IND		7.5A	Overhead Console
CLUSTER	CLUSTER	7.5A	Instrument Cluster, Head-Up Display
MEMORY 1	1 MEMORY	10A	Driver Door Mood Lamp #1/#2/#3 (Handle/Garnish/ Pocket), Passenger Door Mood Lamp #1/#2/#3 (Handle/Garnish/Pocket), Rear Door Mood Lamp LH #1/#2 (Handle/Garnish), Rear Door Mood Lamp RH #1/#2 (Handle/Garnish), A/C Controller, HUD, A/C Control Module, Security IND, Cluster, Mood Lamp Master, ADAS Unit(Driving/ Parking)
MODULE 1	1 MODULE	10A	Data Link Connector, Multifunction Switch, CCIC Keyboard, Rain Sensor, BLE Unit, Interior UBW Unit #1/#2/#3, Front UWB Unit LH/RH, AFCU, P/R Junction Block (RLY.9), Driver/Passenger Door Outside Handle, Face Recognition Unit, Driver Power Window Switch, UIP Sensor, Driver Power Outside Mirror Switch, Rear UWB Unit LH/RH, UIP Siren, Driver/Passenger Outside Mirror Unit, Power Tailgate Unit, Driver Power Seat Module, Driver Power Seat Switch, Driver Lumbar Support Motor, Passenger Power Seat Module, Passenger Power Seat Switch
S/HEATER FRT		25A	Passenger Power Seat Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Driver Power Seat Module

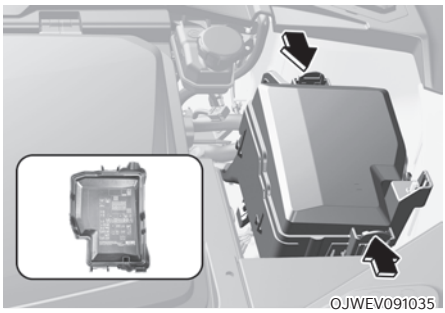
Instrument panel fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
P/SEAT PASS		30A	Passenger Power Seat Switch, Passenger Power Seat Module
S/HEATER RR		20A	Rear Seat Warmer Control Module
DOOR LOCK		20A	Dead Lock Relay, Door Lock/Unlock Relay
A/C 1	1 A/C	7.5A	A/C Control Module, A/C Controller
E-SHIFTER 3	3 E-SHIFTER	10A	Electronic ATM Shift Dial
PRESAFETY SEAT BELT 3	3 PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	10A	Preactive Seat Belt Unit
E-CALL	E-CALL	10A	DCU
BRAKE SWITCH	BRAKE SWITCH	10A	Stop Lamp Switch, IBU
AMP 1	1 AMP	25A	AMP
P/SEAT DRV		30A	Driver Power Seat Switch, Driver Power Seat Module
ECS	ECS	15A	ECS Unit
VISION ROOF	VISION ROOF	20A	Vision Roof Unit

Instrument panel fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
WIPER FRT 2		15A	Multifunction Switch
SPEAR (IG2)	SPARE	10A	Not Used
MODULE 3		7.5A	Stop Lamp Switch, IAU, IBU, CCU, Multifunction Switch, Driver/Passenger Door DSM Monitor, Driver Power Window Switch, Overhead Console
MULTIMEDIA	MULTI MEDIA	25A	CCIC Head Unit
AIRBAG 2		10A	SRS Control Module
START		7.5A	VCU, IBU
A/C 2	A/C	10A	A/C Control Module

Motor compartment fuse panel

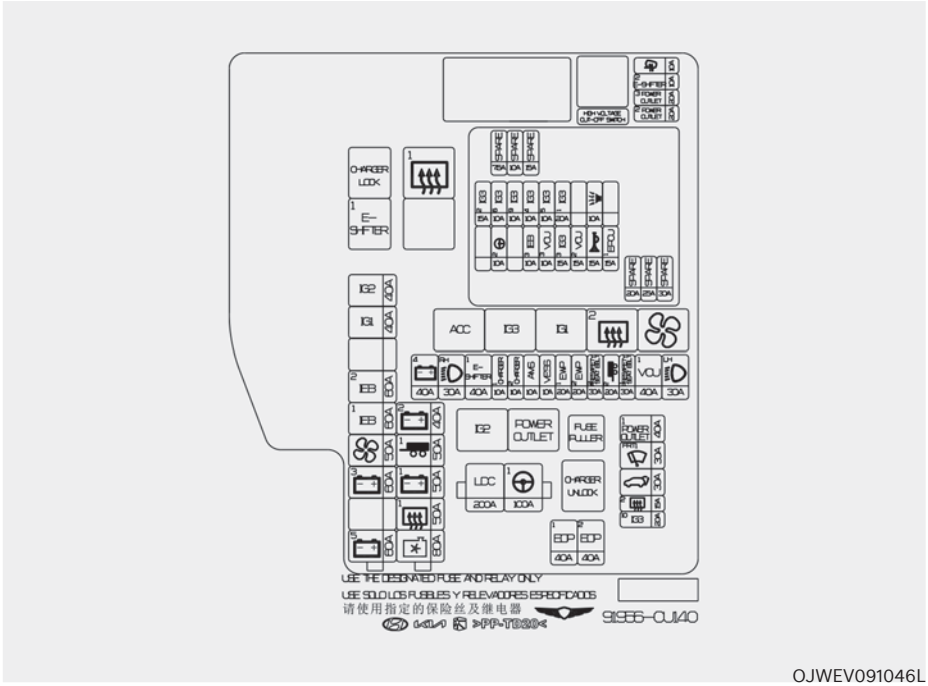


OJWEV091035

Inside the fuse/relay box cover, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay names and ratings.

Information

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle; the information is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.



OJWEV091046L

Vehicle compartment fuse panel

Type	Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
MULTI FUSE-1	LDC	LDC	200A	P/R Junction Block (Fuse : F2, S1, S2, S3, S4, S5)
	MDPS1[*1]	1 1	100A	MDPS Unit
MULTI FUSE-2	C/FAN		80A	Cooling Fan Motor
	RR HTD1		50A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.3)
	B+1	1	50A	ICU Junction Block (IPS1, IPS2, IPS3, IPS4, IPS5)
	TRAILER1	1	50A	CTM (CAN Type Trailer Module)
	B+2	2	40A	ICU Junction Block (IPS6, IPS7, IPS8)
MULTI FUSE-3	B+5	5	60A	PCB Block (IG3 Main Relay, Fuse : F2, F3, F4, F6)
	B+3	3	60A	ICU Junction Block (Fuse : F1, F11, F12, F21, F22, F31,F32, F41, F42, F51)
	BLOWER		50A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.9)
	IEB1	1 IEB	60A	IEB Unit
	IEB2	2 IEB	60A	IEB Unit
	IG1	IG1	40A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.5, RLY.7)
	IG2	IG2	40A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.10)

*1 : MDPS (Motor Driven Power Steering) is the same as EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Motor compartment fuse panel

Type	Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
FUSE	EOP 1	1 EOP	40A	Rear Electronic Oil Pump
	EOP 2	2 EOP	40A	Front Electronic Oil Pump
	TAILGATE OPEN		30A	Power Tailgate Unit
	FRT WIPER1		30A	Wiper Motor
	POWER OUTLET1	1 POWER OUTLET	40A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.11)
	B+4		40A	P/R Junction Block (Long Term Load Latch Relay, Fuse : F4, F5, F14, F15, F20, F24, F25, F30, F34, F35, F40, F44, F49)
	HEAD LAMP RH		30A	Head Lamp RH
	E-SHIFTER 1	1 E-SHIFTER	40A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.2 Fuse : F13)
	VCU 1	1 VCU	40A	VCU
	HEAD LAMP LH		30A	Head Lamp LH
	IG3 10	10 IG3	20A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.6)
	REAR HEATED 2		15A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.8)
	CHARGER 1	1 CHARGER	10A	ICCU, VCMS, P/R Junction Block (RLY.1/12)
	CHARGER 2	2 CHARGER	10A	Charging Door Module
	AMS	AMS	10A	12V Battery Sensor
	VESS	VESS	10A	VESS Unit

Motor compartment fuse panel

Type	Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
FUSE	EWP 1	1 EWP	20A	Electronic Water Pump #1 (HV Battery)
	EWP 2	2 EWP	20A	Electronic Water Pump #2 (HV Battery)
	PRESAFETY SEAT BELT 2	2 PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	30A	Preactive Seat Belt
	TRAILER 2	2	20A	CTM (CAN Type Trailer Module)
	PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	1 PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	30A	Preactive Seat Belt
	MIRR HTR		10A	Driver/Passenger Outside Mirror Unit
	E-SHIFTER 2	2 E-SHIFTER	10A	SCU, Electronic ATM Shift Lever, P/R Junction Block (RLY.2)
	POWER OUTLET 3	3 POWER OUTLET	20A	Luggage Power Outlet
	POWER OUTLET 2	2 POWER OUTLET	20A	Front Power Outlet

LIGHT BULBS

We recommend that have Consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products to replace most vehicle light bulbs. It is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true for removing the headlamp assembly to get to the bulb(s).

Removing/installing the headlamp assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.

WARNING

- **Prior to working on a light, depress the foot brake, shift to P (Park), apply the parking brake, press the Start/ Stop button to the OFF position and take the key with you when leaving the vehicle to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and to prevent possible electric shock.**
- **Be aware the bulbs may be hot and may burn your fingers.**

NOTICE

Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the fuse or electrical wiring system.

NOTICE

To prevent damage, do not clean the headlamp lens with chemical solvents or strong detergents.

Information - Headlamp desiccant

This vehicle is equipped with desiccant to reduce fogging inside the headlamp due to moisture. The desiccant is consumable and its performance may change based on the used period or environment. If fogging inside the headlamp due to moisture continues for a long time, we recommend that you consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Information

The headlamp and tail lamp lenses could appear frosty if the vehicle is washed after driving or the vehicle is driven at night in wet weather. This condition is caused by temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside and, it does not indicate a problem with your vehicle. When moisture condenses in the lamp, it will be removed after driving with the headlamp on. The removable level may differ depending on lamp size, lamp position and environmental condition. However, if moisture is not removed, we recommend that your vehicle is inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Information

- **A normally functioning lamp may flicker momentarily to stabilize the vehicle's electrical control system. However, if the lamp goes out after flickering momentarily, or continues to flicker, we recommend the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **The position lamp may not turn on when the position lamp switch is turned on, but the position lamp and headlamp switch may turn on when the headlamp switch is turned on. This may be caused by network failure or vehicle electrical control system malfunction. If this occurs, we recommend the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

Information

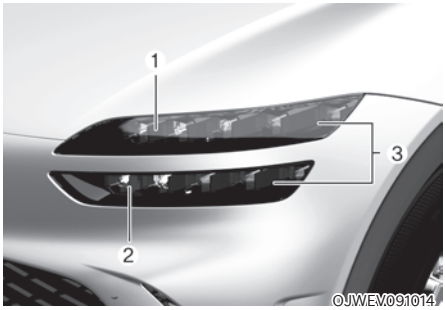
The headlamp aiming should be adjusted after an accident or after the headlamp assembly is reinstalled.

Information

Traffic Change (for Europe)

The low beam light distribution is asymmetric. If you go abroad to a country with opposite traffic direction, this asymmetric part will dazzle oncoming car driver. To prevent dazzle, ECE regulation demand several technical solutions (ex. automatic change system, adhesive sheet, down aiming). This headlamps are designed not to dazzle opposite drivers. So, you need not change your headlamps in a country with opposite traffic direction.

Headlamp, position lamp, turn signal lamp, Daytime Running Light (DRL) replacement



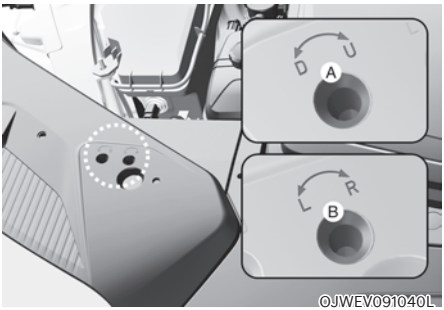
(1) Headlamp (Low)
(2) Headlamp (High / Sub low)
(3) Position lamp/Daytime running light/ Turn signal lamp

If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Headlamp aiming

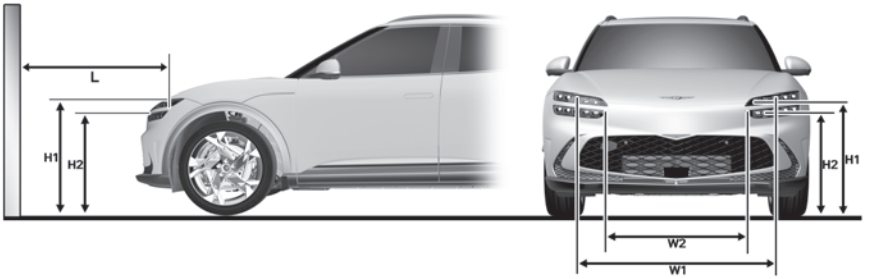


[A] : Low beam and high beam vertical aiming
[B] : Low beam and high beam horizontal aiming

1. Inflate the tires to the specified pressure and remove any loads from the vehicle except the driver, spare tire, and tools.
2. The vehicle should be placed on a flat floor.
3. Draw vertical lines (Vertical lines passing through respective head lamp centers) and a horizontal line (Horizontal line passing through center of head lamps) on the screen.
4. With the headlamp and battery in normal condition, aim the headlamps so the brightest portion falls on the horizontal and vertical lines.
5. To aim the low beam and high beam left or right, turn the driver clockwise or counterclockwise.

   To aim the low beam and high beam up or down, turn the driver clockwise or counterclockwise.

Aiming point



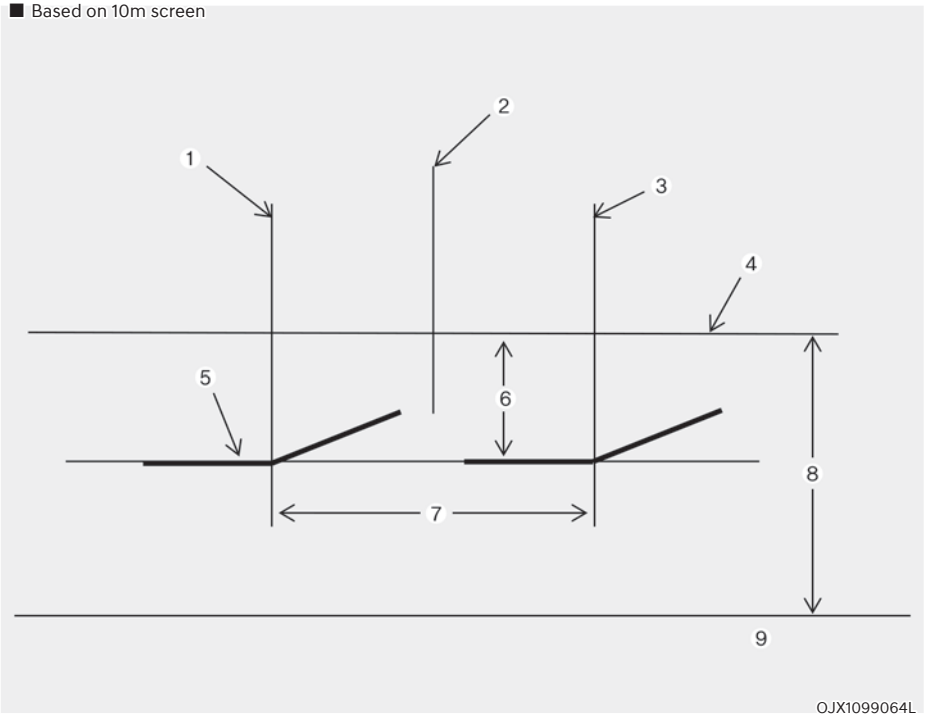
OJWEV091041L

H1 : Height between the head lamp bulb center and ground (Low beam)
H2 : Height between the head lamp bulb center and ground (High beam)
W1 : Distance between the two head lamp bulbs centers (Low beam)
W2 : Distance between the two head lamp bulbs centers (High beam)

Vehicle condition	H1	H2	W1	W2
Without driver mm (in)	818 (32.2)	733 (28.85)	1181 (46.49)	1170 (46.06)
With driver mm (in)	810 (31.88)	725 (28.54)	1181 (46.49)	1170 (46.06)

Headlamp beam

■ Based on 10m screen



[1]: Vertical line of the left headlamp bulb center
[2]: Car axis
[3]: Vertical line of the right headlamp bulb center
[4]: Horizontal line of headlamp bulb center
[5]: Cut-off line
[6]: -1%
[7]: W1 (Low beam)
[8]: H1 (Low beam)
[9]: Ground

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If headlamp leveling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp leveling device switch to “0”.

✳ The high beam is aimed simultaneously when aiming the low beam.

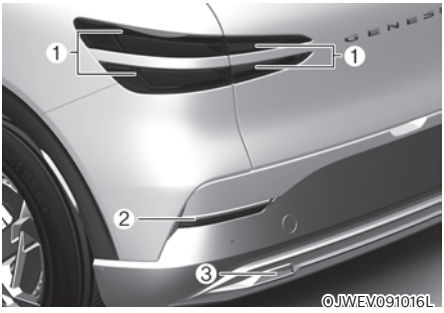
Puddle lamp replacement

If the LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Rear combination lamp replacement



(1) Stop/Tail lamp
(2) Turn signal lamp
(3) Backup lamp

If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Rear fog lamp replacement

If the LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

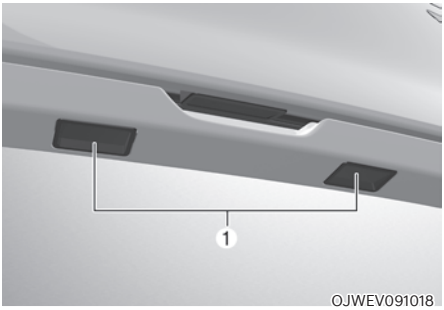
High mounted stop lamp replacement

If the LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

License plate lamp replacement

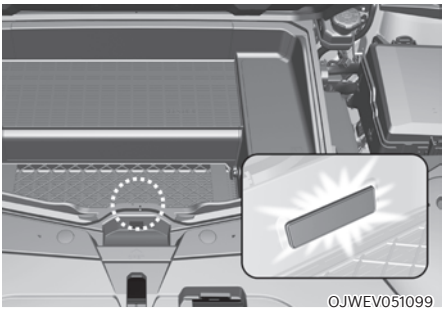


If the LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Front trunk lamp replacement


OJWEV051099

If the LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

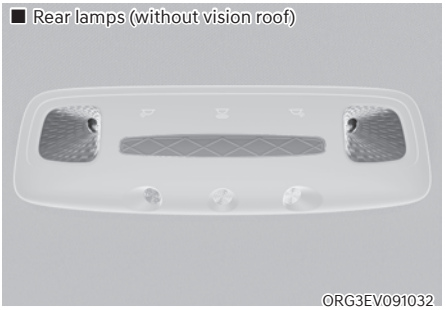
A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Interior light replacement

■ Front lamps

OJWEV091019L

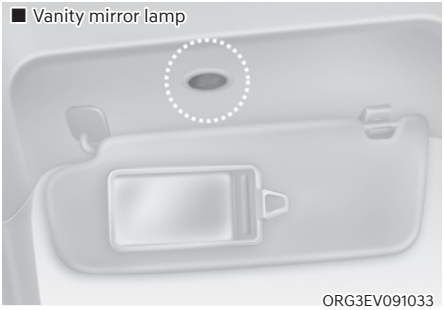
■ Rear lamps (without vision roof)


ORG3EV091032

■ Rear lamps (with vision roof)

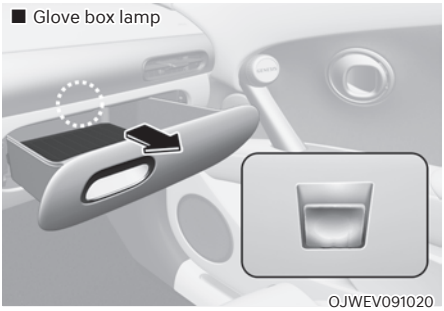
ORG3EV091041

■ Vanity mirror lamp



ORG3EV091033

■ Glove box lamp

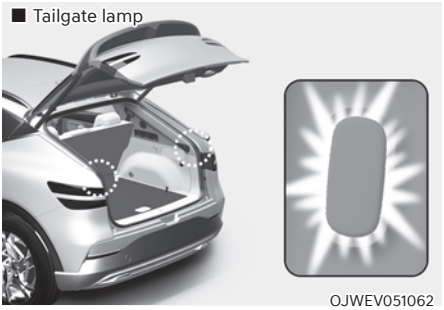


OJWEV091020

■ Mood lamp

OJWEV051243L

■ Tailgate lamp



OJWEV051062

If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

APPEARANCE CARE

Exterior care

NOTICE

If you park your vehicle near a stainless steel sign or glass facade building, the vehicle's exterior plastic parts such as a bumper, spoiler, garnish, lamp or outside rearview mirror might be damaged due to sunlight reflected from the sign or building. To prevent damage of the exterior plastic parts, you should avoid parking in areas where light may be reflected or use a car cover. (The exterior plastic parts applied to your vehicle may vary.)

Exterior general caution

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

Finish maintenance

Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, should be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

High-pressure washing

- When using high-pressure washers, make sure to maintain sufficient distance from the vehicle.

  Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure can lead to component damage or water penetration.
- Do not spray the camera, sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors as they may be damaged if they come into contact with high pressure water.

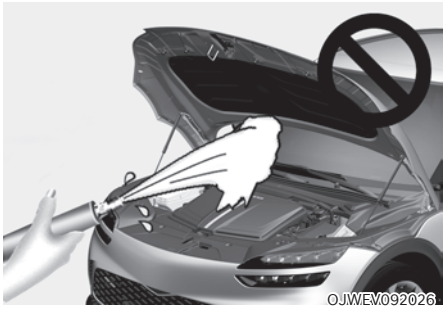
WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water before getting on the road. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.

NOTICE

- **Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.**
- **Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle.**
- **Especially, with high-pressure water, water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.**
- **To prevent damage to the plastic parts, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.**

NOTICE


OJWEV092026

- **Water washing in the motor compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the vehicle compartment.**
- **Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/ electronic components inside the vehicle as water or other liquids may flow in to the motor compartment through the front trunk and damage electrical/electronic components.**

NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

Automatic car wash which uses rotating brushes should not be used as this can damage the surface of your vehicle. A steam cleaner which washes the vehicle surface at high temperature may result the oil to adhere and leave stains that is difficult to remove.

Use a soft cloth (for example, microfiber towel or sponge) when washing your vehicle and dry with a microfiber towel. When you hand wash your vehicle, you should not use a cleaner that finishes with wax. If the vehicle surface is too dirty (sand, dirt, dust, contaminant, etc.), clean the surface with water before washing the car.

Waxing

A good coat of wax is a barrier between your paint and contaminate. Keeping a good coat of wax on your vehicle will help protect it.

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

NOTICE

- **Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.**
- **Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.**

NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

Do not use any polish protector such as a detergent, an abrasive and a polish. In case wax is applied, remove the wax immediately using a silicon remover and if any tar or tar contaminant is on the surface use a tar remover to clean. However, be careful not to apply too much pressure on the painted area.

Finish damage repair

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

NOTICE

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

In case of matte paint finish vehicles, it is impossible to modify only the damaged area and repair of the whole part is necessary. If the vehicle is damaged and painting is required, we recommend that you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products. Take extreme care, as it is difficult to restore the quality after the repair.

Bright-metal maintenance

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of brightmetal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

Underbody maintenance

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the frame and floor pan, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not be allowed to clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.

Aluminum wheel maintenance

The aluminum wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum wheels.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, clean the wheels after driving on salted roads.
- Do not wash the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any cleaners containing acid or alkaline detergents.

Corrosion protection

Protecting your vehicle from corrosion

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, GENESIS produces vehicles of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

Common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion on your vehicle are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the vehicle.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

High-corrosion areas

If you live in an area where your vehicle is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

Moisture breeds corrosion

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the vehicle surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your vehicle clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the vehicle.

To help prevent corrosion

Keep your vehicle clean

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your vehicle clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the vehicle is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc., —, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your vehicle at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the vehicle, pay particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.
- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

Keep your garage dry

Don't park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your vehicle in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

Keep paint and trim in good condition

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

Interior care

Interior general precautions

Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oil, from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. See the instructions for the proper way to clean vehicle interior surfaces.

NOTICE

- **Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/ electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.**
- **When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/ alkaline detergents, the color of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.**

Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim

Vehicle interior surfaces (if equipped)

Remove dust and loose dirt from interior surfaces with a whisk broom or a vacuum cleaner. If necessary, clean interior surfaces with a mixture of warm water and mild non-detergent cleaner (test all cleaners on a concealed area before use).

Fabric (if equipped)

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its color can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

NOTICE

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

Leather (if equipped)

- Features of seat leather
  - Leather is made from the outer skin of an animal, which goes through a special process to be available for use. Since it is a natural product, each part differs in thickness or density.

    Wrinkles may appear as a natural result of stretching and shrinking depending on the temperature and humidity.
  - The seat is made of stretchable fabric to improve comfort.
  - The parts contacting the body are curved and the side supporting area is high which provides driving comfort and stability.
  - Wrinkles may appear naturally from usage. It is not a fault of the products.

NOTICE

- **Wrinkles or abrasions which appear naturally from usage are not covered by warranty.**
- **Belts with metallic accessories, zippers or keys inside the back pocket may damage the seat fabric.**
- **Make sure not to wet the seat. It may change the nature of natural leather.**
- **Jeans or clothes which could bleach may contaminate the surface of the seat covering fabric.**

- Caring for the leather seats
  - Vacuum the seat periodically to remove dust and sand on the seat. It will prevent abrasion or damage of the leather and maintain its quality.
  - Wipe the natural leather seat cover often with dry or soft cloth.
  - Use of proper leather protector may prevent abrasion of the cover and helps maintain the color. Be sure to read the instructions and consult a specialist when using leather coating or protective agent.
  - Light colored (beige, cream beige) leather is easily contaminated and the stain is noticeable. Clean the seats frequently.
  - Avoid wiping with wet cloth. It may cause the surface to crack.
- Cleaning the leather seats
  - Remove all contaminations instantly. Refer to instructions below for removal of each contaminant.
  - Cosmetic products (sunscreen, foundation, etc.)

    Apply cleansing cream on a cloth and wipe the contaminated spot. Wipe off the cream with a wet cloth and remove water with a dry cloth.
  - Beverages (coffee, soft drink, etc.)

    Apply a small amount of neutral detergent and wipe until contaminations do not smear.
  - Oil

    Remove oil instantly with absorbable cloth and wipe with stain remover used only for natural leather.
  - Chewing gum

    Harden the gum with ice and remove gradually.

Interior wooden trim

- Use a wooden furniture protector (for example, wax, coating compound) to clean the interior wooden trim.
- Often wipe the interior wooden trim with a lint-free, clean cloth to maintain the unique wooden textures for a longer period of time.
- If you spill beverage (for example, water, coffee) over the interior wooden trim, immediately wipe it with clean, dry cloth.
- Sharp objects (for example, driver, knife), adhesive materials, or tapes may damage the interior wooden trim.
- Any strong impacts may damage the interior wooden trim.
- If the coating finish over the interior wooden trim is removed, moisture may damage or change wood traits.
- If the interior wooden trim is damaged, you may get a splinter from the wood surface. Therefore, you should immediately have replaced the damaged interior wooden trim. We recommend that you contact an authorized Retailer of Genesis Branded Products.
- Forged wood is an eco-friendly wooden trim made from recycled wood chips. Due to these material characteristics, the grain direction is not constant and small dots or natural cracks may occur. These are natural appearance characteristics of real wood from the manufacturing method and are not appearance defects.

Cleaning the seat belt webbing

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken the seat belt.

Cleaning the interior window glass

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

NOTICE

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.

Index

A

Active noise control-road 6-63
Active sound design 6-63
Accessing your vehicle 5-5
  Immobilizer system 5-12
  Smart key 5-5
Advanced rear occupant alert (ROA) 5-46
  Declaration of Conformity 5-48
  System operation 5-46
  System precautions 5-47
  System setting 5-46
Air bag - supplemental restraint system 3-50
  Additional safety precautions 3-69
  Air bag warning labels 3-69
  Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat 3-62
  How does the air bags system operate? 3-58
  SRS care 3-68
  What to expect after an air bag inflates 3-61
  Where are the air bags? 3-53
  Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? 3-63
Air conditioner compressor label 2-17
Air conditioning system 2-13
All Wheel Drive (AWD) 6-49
  Emergency precautions 6-52
Appearance care 9-53
  Exterior care 9-53
  Interior care 9-58
Automatic climate control system 5-112
  Automatic temperature control mode 5-113
  Manual temperature control mode 5-114
  System maintenance 5-126
  System operation 5-125

B

Battery (12 volt) 9-19
Battery capacity label 9-20
Battery recharging 9-21
For best battery service 9-20
Reset items 9-22
Before driving 6-4
Before entering the vehicle 6-4
Before starting 6-4
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) 7-34
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations 7-42
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation 7-39
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist settings 7-36
Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM) 7-77
Blind-Spot View Monitor malfunction 7-78
Blind-Spot View Monitor operation 7-77
Blind-Spot View Monitor settings 7-77
Boost mode 6-61
Functional description and operating conditions 6-61
Brake fluid 9-14
Checking the brake fluid level 9-14
Braking system 6-30
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 6-39
Auto Hold 6-36
Disc brakes wear indicator 6-31
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) 6-32
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 6-41
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) 6-46
Good braking practices 6-48
High performance brake 6-31
Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC) 6-46
Multi-Collision Brake (MCB) 6-47
Power-assist brakes 6-30
Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) 6-45
Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) 6-44
Bulb wattage 2-11

C

Cabin air filter....9-16
Filter inspection....9-16
Filter replacement....9-16
Center console overview (left-hand drive)....2-6
Center console overview (right-hand drive)....2-7
Charge indicator lamp for electric vehicle....1-24
Charging status....1-24
Locking charging cable....1-25
Charge types for electric vehicle....1-22
Charging Information....1-22
Charging time information....1-22
Charging types....1-23
Charging the electric vehicle (abrupt stop)....1-50
Action to be taken when charging stops abruptly....1-50
Child Restraint System (CRS)....3-37
Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)....3-40
Our recommendation: Children always in the rear....3-37
Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)....3-38
Climate control additional features....5-132
Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)....5-134
Auto defogging system....5-132
Auto dehumidify....5-133
Recirculating air when washer fluid is used....5-134
Sunroof inside air recirculation....5-134
Cluster display....4-30
Cluster display control....4-30
Option menu....4-34
View modes....4-30
Coolant....9-12
Cruise control (CC)....7-79
Cruise Control operation....7-79

D

Declaration of conformity....2-18
Digital side mirror (DSM)....5-62
Adjusting the DSM cameras....5-64
Displaying the guidelines....5-63
DSM camera defroster....5-67
DSM warnings and indicators....5-63
Folding/Unfolding the DSM cameras....5-65
Operating the digital side mirrors....5-63
Setting the DSM screen brightness....5-67
Switching to wide view when backing up....5-66
Dimensions....2-10
Door locks....5-38
Automatic door lock and unlock features....5-42
Child-protector rear door locks....5-43
Deadlocks....5-42
Electronic child safety lock....5-43
Operating door locks from inside the vehicle....5-39
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle....5-38
Drift mode....6-62
DRIFT mode disabled....6-62
To activate DRIFT mode....6-62
Drive mode integrated control system....6-57
Drive mode....6-57
Drive modes characteristic....6-59
Driver Attention Warning (DAW)....7-71
Driver Attention Warning malfunction and limitations....7-74
Driver Attention Warning operation....7-73
Driver Attention Warning settings....7-71
Driving electric vehicle....1-51
Cluster display messages....1-58
Distance to empty....1-52
Electricity use....1-54
How to start the vehicle....1-51

How to stop the vehicle 1-51
Power/Charge Gauge 1-55
State of charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery 1-55
Tips for improving distance to empty 1-53
Virtual engine sound system 1-52
Warning and Indicator lights (related to electric vehicle) 1-56

E

Electric vehicle specifications 2-10
Electronically controlled suspension with road preview 6-54
Limitations of the system 6-55
System malfunction 6-55
Electronic control suspension 6-53
System malfunction 6-53
Electronic limited slip differential 6-56
Drive mode selection 6-56
Warning messages 6-56
EV mode 1-9
Charging and climate 1-11
Energy information 1-10
EV mode screen 1-9
EV settings 1-19
Nearby charging stations 1-19
Next departure 1-10
Vehicle to load (V2L) 1-13
Electric vehicle 1-6
Battery Information 1-6
Characteristics of electric vehicles 1-6
Electric vehicle 1-6
Emergency commodity 8-23
Fire extinguisher 8-23
First aid kit 8-23
Tire pressure gauge 8-23
Triangle reflector 8-23
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items 9-11
Exterior features 5-77
Charging door 5-89
Front trunk 5-79

Hood 5-78
Power tailgate 5-81
Roof rack 5-77
Smart tailgate 5-87
Exterior overview (front view) 2-2
Exterior overview (rear view) 2-3

F

Face connect 5-28
Face Connect Operation 5-30
Face Connect Settings 5-28
Legal Compliance 5-31
Limitations of Face Connect 5-30
When Purchasing a Used Vehicle 5-31
Fingerprint authentication system 5-32
Fingerprint authentication system operation 5-33
Fingerprint authentication system settings 5-32
Limitations of the system 5-34
Used vehicle 5-34
Forward Collision–Avoidance Assist (FCA) 7-2
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations 7-18
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation 7-9
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings 7-5
Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) 7-153
Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning malfunction and limitations 7-157
Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning operation 7-154
Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning settings 7-153
Forward/Side/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) 7-160
Parking Distance Warning Malfunction and Limitations 7-165
Parking Distance Warning Operation 7-161
Parking Distance Warning Settings 7-160
Fuses 9-31
Fuse/relay panel description 9-34
Instrument panel fuse replacement 9-32
Motor compartment panel fuse replacement 9-33

G

Genesis digital key....5-14
Digital Key (Card Key)....5-21
Digital Key (Smart Phone)....5-14
Limitations of the System....5-27
Personalized Profile and Vehicle Settings....5-24
Used Vehicle/Digital Key Maintenance....5-27

H

Hazard warning flasher....8-2
Head-up display (HUD)....5-91
Head-up display information....5-91
Head-up display settings....5-91
Precautions while using the head-up display....5-92
High Beam Assist (HBA)....5-101
High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations....5-103
High Beam Assist operation....5-102
High Beam Assist setting....5-101
Highway Driving Assist (HDA)....7-114
Highway Driving Assist malfunction and limitations....7-124
Highway Driving Assist operation....7-117
Highway Driving Assist settings....7-115

I

If the vehicle will not start....8-3
If you have a flat tire (with Tire Mobility Kit)....8-13
Components of the Tire Mobility Kit....8-15
How to adjust tire pressure....8-19
Introduction....8-13
Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit....8-14
Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit....8-20
Using the Tire Mobility Kit When a tire is flat....8-16
Important safety precautions....3-2
Air bag hazards....3-2
Always wear your seat belt....3-2

Control your speed 3-2
Driver distraction 3-2
Keep your vehicle in safe condition 3-2
Restrain all children 3-2
In case of an emergency while driving 8-2
If the vehicle stalls at a crossroad or crossing 8-2
If you have a flat tire while driving 8-3
Infotainment system 5-148
Antenna 5-148
Bang&Olufsen sound system 5-150
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology 5-150
Infotainment system 5-149
Steering wheel remote controls 5-148
USB Port 5-148
Voice recognition 5-149
Instrument cluster 4-4
Cluster display messages 4-21
Gauges and meters 4-6
Instrument cluster control 4-5
Warning and indicator lights 4-11
Integrated memory system 5-49
Recalling memory positions 5-50
Resetting the system 5-50
Seat easy access 5-51
Storing memory positions 5-49
Intelligent Front-Lighting System (IFS) 5-98
System malfunction and limitations 5-99
System operation 5-98
System setting 5-98
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA) 7-65
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction and limitations 7-68
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operation 7-66
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist settings 7-65

Interior features....5-137
Cargo security screen....5-146
Clock....5-143
Coat hook....5-143
Cup holder....5-137
Diffuser....5-138
Floor mat anchor(s)....5-144
Luggage net holder....5-145
Power outlet....5-139
Rear side window sunshades....5-145
Sunvisor....5-138
USB charger....5-140
Vehicle to load (V2L)....5-143
Wireless smart phone charging system....5-141
Interior lights....5-104
Door mood lamp....5-106
Front lamps....5-104
Front trunk lamp....5-107
Glove box lamp....5-105
Interior lamp AUTO cut....5-104
Puddle lamp....5-107
Rear lamps....5-105
Tailgate lamp....5-106
Vanity mirror lamp....5-105
Interior overview (left-hand drive)....2-4
Interior overview (right-hand drive)....2-5

J

Jump starting (12V battery)....8-4

L

Lane Following Assist (LFA)....7-110
Lane Following Assist malfunction and limitations....7-113
Lane Following Assist operation....7-111
Lane Following Assist settings....7-110

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) 7-27
Lane Keeping Assist malfunction and limitations 7-31
Lane Keeping Assist operation 7-29
Lane Keeping Assist settings 7-27
Light bulbs 9-44
Front trunk lamp replacement 9-51
Headlamp aiming 9-46
Headlamp, position lamp, turn signal lamp, Daytime Running Light (DRL) replacement 9-46
High mounted stop lamp replacement 9-50
Interior light replacement 9-51
License plate lamp replacement 9-50
Puddle lamp replacement 9-49
Rear combination lamp replacement 9-49
Rear fog lamp replacement 9-49
Lighting 5-93
Exterior lights 5-93
Load and speed capacity tires (for europe) 2-13

M

Main components of electric vehicle 1-7
High voltage battery(lithium-ion battery) 1-7
High voltage battery warmer system 1-8
Main components of electric vehicle 1-7
Maintenance services 9-4
Owner maintenance precautions 9-4
Owner’s responsibility 9-4
Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA) 7-62
Manual Speed Limit Assist operation 7-62
Mirrors 5-57
Inside rearview mirror 5-57
Outside rearview mirrors 5-58
Reverse parking aid 5-60
Motor compartment 9-3
Motor compartment overview 2-9
Motor number 2-16

N

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC) 7-103
Limitations of Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control 7-106
Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control operation 7-104
Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control settings 7-103

O

Open Source Software Notice 2-18
OTA software update 5-35
Approving software update 5-35
Downloading software 5-35
Preparing software update 5-35
Updating software 5-36
Owner maintenance 9-5
Owner maintenance schedule 9-6

P

Pan-European eCall System 8-25
Information on data processing 8-27
Pan-European eCall System 8-28
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA) 7-168
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist Malfunction and Limitations 7-173
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist Operation 7-171
Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist Settings 7-169

R

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA) 7-140
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations 7-147
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation 7-143
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist settings 7-141
Rear View Monitor (RVM) 7-127
Rear View Monitor malfunction and limitations 7-131
Rear View Monitor operation 7-129
Rear View Monitor settings 7-127

Recommended lubricants and capacities 2-14
Reduction gear 6-10
Cluster display messages 6-16
Good driving practices 6-18
Reduction gear operation 6-10
Rotate the shift dial manually in case of emergency 6-11
Reduction gear fluid 9-15
Refrigerant label 2-17
Regenerative braking system 6-20
i-Pedal 6-22
One pedal driving 6-21
Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2) 7-179
Front Corner Radar and Rear Corner Radar 7-212
Front radar 7-208
Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction and limitations 7-200
Remote Smart Parking Assist operation 7-182
Remote Smart Parking Assist settings 7-181

S

Safe Exit Assist (SEA) 7-55
Safe Exit Assist malfunction and limitations 7-59
Safe Exit Assist operation 7-57
Safe Exit Assist settings 7-56
Safe Exit Warning (SEW) 7-48
Safe Exit Warning malfunction and limitations 7-52
Safe Exit Warning operation 7-50
Safe Exit Warning settings 7-49
Safety precautions for electric vehicle 1-63
High voltage cut-off switch 1-65
If an accident occurs 1-63
Other precautions for electric vehicle 1-64
Scheduled charging 1-26
AC charge 1-31
Charging precautions 1-26
DC charge 1-35

Disconnecting charging connector in emergency 1-31
Electric charging label..... 1-29
Electric charging label symbol table 1-30
How to check the symbol on the charging label (For Europe)..... 1-28
Portable charge..... 1-39
Scheduled charging 1-26
Scheduled maintenance services.....9-7
Maintenance under severe usage conditions 9-10
Normal maintenance schedule 9-8
Seat belts.....3-26
Additional seat belt safety precautions 3-34
Care of seat belts..... 3-36
Pre-Active Seat Belt (PSB) 3-33
Seat belt restraint system..... 3-29
Seat belt safety precautions..... 3-26
Seat belt warning light 3-27
Seats.....3-3
Air ventilation seats..... 3-24
Front seats 3-7
Headrest..... 3-18
Rear seats 3-14
Safety precautions..... 3-6
Seat warmers 3-22
Smart Cruise Control (SCC).....7-83
Smart Cruise Control malfunction and limitations 7-96
Smart Cruise Control operation 7-86
Smart Cruise Control settings 7-84
Smart recuperation system.....6-23
How to operate 6-25
Limitations of the system..... 6-27
Ready to operate..... 6-24
Smart recuperation system setting 6-23
Smart recuperation system will be temporarily cancelled when:..... 6-25
System malfunction..... 6-27

To activate smart recuperation system 6-23
To resume Smart Recuperation System 6-25
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance recognition sensor (Front radar) 6-26
Special driving conditions 6-64
Driving at night 6-65
Driving in flooded areas 6-66
Driving in the rain 6-65
Hazardous driving conditions 6-64
Highway driving 6-66
Reducing the risk of a rollover 6-67
Rocking the vehicle 6-64
Smooth cornering 6-65
Start/Stop button 6-5
Remote start 6-9
Starting the vehicle 6-7
Start/Stop button positions 6-6
Turning off the vehicle 6-8
Steering wheel 5-52
Electric Power Steering (EPS) 5-52
Heated steering wheel 5-55
Horn 5-55
Tilt / Telescopic steering 5-53
Steering wheel control overview 2-8
Storage compartment 5-135
Center console storage 5-135
Glove box 5-135
Sunglass holder 5-136
Surround View Monitor (SVM) 7-133
Surround View Monitor malfunction and limitations 7-139
Surround View Monitor operation 7-136
Surround View Monitor settings 7-133

T

Theft-alarm system 5-45
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 8-8
Changing a tire with TPMS 8-11

Check tire pressure 8-8
Low tire pressure position and tire pressure telltale 8-10
Low tire pressure warning light 8-10
Tire pressure monitoring system 8-9
TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator 8-11
Tires and wheels 2-12
Tires and wheels 9-23
Check tire inflation pressure 9-24
Low aspect ratio tires 9-30
Recommended cold tire inflation pressures 9-23
Tire care 9-23
Tire maintenance 9-27
Tire replacement 9-26
Tire rotation 9-25
Tire sidewall labeling 9-27
Tire traction 9-27
Wheel alignment and tire balance 9-25
Wheel replacement 9-27
Tire specification and pressure label 2-16
Towing 8-21
Removable towing hook 8-22
Towing service 8-21
Trailer towing 6-73
Driving with a trailer 6-78
If you decide to pull a trailer? 6-74
Trailer towing equipment 6-77

V

Vehicle certification label 2-15
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 2-15
Vehicle settings (infotainment system) 4-35
Setting your vehicle 4-35
Vehicle weight 6-81
Overloading 6-81

Vehicle weight and luggage volume 2-13
Virtual gear shift (VGS) 6-60
Vision roof 5-74
Resetting the vision roof 5-76

W

Washer fluid 9-15
Windows 5-68
Power windows 5-70
Remote window opening/closing function 5-73
Windshield defrosting and defogging 5-129
Defogging logic 5-130
Rear window defroster 5-131
To defog inside windshield 5-129
To defrost inside windshield 5-130
Winter driving 6-68
Snow or icy conditions 6-68
Winter precautions 6-71
Wiper blades 9-17
Blade inspection 9-17
Blade replacement 9-17
Wipers and washers 5-109
Front windshield wipers 5-109
Windshield washers 5-111